JOURNAL

OF THE

AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY.

SIXTH VOLUME.

NEW HAVEN:
FOR THE AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY,
PRINTED BY E. HAYES, PRINTER TO YALE COLLEGE.
MDCCCLX.

SOLD BY THE SOCIETY'S AGENTS:
NEW YORK: JOHN WILEY, 56 WALKER ST.;
LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO.; PARIS: BENJ. DUPRAT;
LEIPZIG: F. A. BROCKHAUS.

COMMITTEE OF PUBLICATION

OF THE

AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY,

FOR THE YEARS 1858–60.

EDWARD E. SALISBURY,	New Haven.
WILLIAM D. WHITNEY,	"
JAMES HADLEY,	"
EZRA ABBOT,	Cambridge.
WILLIAM W. TURNER,	Washington.

CONTENTS

OF

SIXTH VOLUME.

MISCELLANIES:

AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY:

CHAPTER IV.

OF ECLIPSES, AND ESPECIALLY OF LUNAR ECLIPSES.

Contents:—1, dimensions of the sun and moon; 2–3, measurement of their apparent dimensions; 4–5, measurement of the earth's shadow; 6, conditions of the occurrence of an eclipse; 7–8, ascertainment of longitude at the time of conjunction or of opposition; 9, causes of eclipses; 10–11, to determine whether there will be an eclipse, and the amount of obscuration; 12–15, to find half the time of duration of the eclipse, and half that of total obscuration; 16–17, to ascertain the times of contact and of separation, and, in a total eclipse, of immersion and emergence; 18–21, to determine the amount of obscuration at a given time; 22–23, to find the time corresponding to a given amount of obscuration; 24–25, measurement of the deflection of the ecliptic, at the point occupied by the eclipsed body, from an east and west line; 26, correction of the scale of projection for difference of altitude.

1. The diameter of the sun's disk is six thousand five hundred yojanas; of the moon's, four hundred and eighty.

We shall see, in connection with the next passage, that the diameters of the sun and moon, as thus stated, are subject to a curious modification, dependent upon and representing the greater or less distance of those bodies from the earth; so that, in a certain sense, we have here only their mean diameters. These represent, however, in the Hindu theory—which affects to reject the supposition of other orbits than such as are circular, and described at equal distances about the earth—the true absolute dimensions of the sun and moon.

Of the two, only that for the moon is obtained by a legitimate process, or presents any near approximation to the truth. The diameter of the earth being, as stated above (i. 59), 1600 yojanas, that of the moon, 480 yojanas, is .3 of it: while the true value of the moon's diameter in terms of the earth's is .2716, or only about a tenth less. An estimate so nearly correct supposes, of course, an equally correct determination of the moon's horizontal parallax, distance from the earth, and mean apparent diameter. The Hindu valuation of the parallax may be deduced from the value given just below (v. 3), of a minute on the moon's orbit, as 15 yojanas. Since the moon's horizontal parallax is equal to the angle subtended at her centre by the earth's radius, and since, at the moon's mean distance, 1′ of arc equals 15 yojanas, and the earth's radius, 800 yojanas, would accordingly subtend an angle of 53′ 20″—the latter angle, 53′ 20″, is, according to the system of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, the moon's parallax, when in the horizon and at her mean distance. This is considerably less than the actual value of the quantity, as determined by modern science, namely 57″ 1′; and it is practically, in the calculation of solar eclipses, still farther lessened by 3′ 51″, the excess of the value assigned to the sun's horizontal parallax, as we shall see farther on. Of the variation in the parallax, due to the varying distance of the moon, the Hindu system makes no account: the variation is actu-

ally nearly 8′, being from 53′ 48″, at the apogee, to 61′ 24″, at the perigee.

How the amount of the parallax was determined by the Hindus—if, indeed, they had the instruments and the skill in observation requisite for making themselves an independent determination of it—we are not informed. It is not to be supposed, however, that an actual estimate of the mean horizontal parallax as precisely 53′ 20″ lies at the foundation of the other elements which seem to rest upon it; for, in the making up of the artificial Hindu system, all these elements have been modified and adapted to one another in such a manner as to produce certain whole numbers as their results, and so to be of more convenient use.

From this parallax the moon's distance may be deduced by the proportion

$$\sin 53'\ 20'' : R :: \text{earth's rad.} : \text{moon's dist.}$$

or

$$53'\tfrac{1}{3} : 3438' :: 800^y : 51{,}570^y$$

The radius of the moon's orbit, then, is 51,570 yojanas, or, in terms of the earth's radius, 64.47. The true value of the moon's mean distance is 59.96 radii of the earth.

The farther proportion

$$3438' : 5400' :: 51{,}570^y : 81{,}000^y$$

would give, as the value of a quadrant of the moon's orbit, 81,000 yojanas, and, as the whole orbit, 324,000 yojanas. This is, in fact, the circumference of the orbit assumed by the system, and stated in another place (xii. 85). Since, however, the moon's distance is nowhere assumed as an element in any of the processes of the system, and is even directed (xii. 84) to be found from the circumference of the orbit by the false ratio of $1 : \sqrt{10}$, it is probable that it was also made no account of in constructing the system, and that the relations of the moon's parallax and orbit were fixed by some such proportion as

$$53'\ 20'' : 360^\circ :: 800^y : 324{,}000^y$$

The moon's orbit being 324,000 yojanas, the assignment of 480 yojanas as her diameter implies a determination of her apparent diameter at her mean distance as 32′; since

$$360^\circ : 32' :: 324{,}000^y : 480^y$$

The moon's mean apparent diameter is actually 31′ 7″.

In order to understand, farther, how the dimensions of the sun's orbit and of the sun himself are determined by the Hindus, we have to notice that, the moon's orbit being 324,000 yojanas, and her time of sidereal revolution $27^d.32167416$, the amount of her mean daily motion is $11{,}858^y.717$. The Hindu system now assumes that this is the precise amount of the actual mean daily motion, in space, of all the planets, and ascertains the dimensions of their several orbits by multiplying it by the periodic time of revolution of each (see below, xii. 80–90). The length of the sidereal year being $365^d.25875648$, the sun's orbit is, as stated elsewhere (xii. 86), 4,331,500 yojanas. From a quadrant of this, by the ratio 5400′ : 3438′, we derive the sun's distance from the earth, 689,430 yojanas, or 861.8 radii of the earth. This is vastly less than his true distance, which is about 24,000 radii. His horizontal parallax

is, of course, proportionally over-estimated, being made to be nearly 4′ (more exactly, 3′ 59″.4), instead of 8″.6, its true value, an amount so small that it should properly have been neglected as inappreciable.

It is an important property of the parallaxes of the sun and moon, resulting from the manner in which the relative distances of the latter from the earth are determined, that they are to one another as the mean daily motions of the planets respectively: that is to say,

$$53' \, 20'' : 3' \, 59'' :: 790' \, 35'' : 59' \, 8''$$

Each is likewise very nearly one fifteenth of the whole mean daily motion, or equivalent to the amount of arc traversed by each planet in 4 nâḍîs; the difference being, for the moon, about 38″, for the sun, about 3″. We shall see that, in the calculations of the next chapter, these differences are neglected, and the parallax taken as equal, in each case, to the mean motion during 4 nâḍîs.

The circumference of the sun's orbit being 4,331,500 yojanas, the assignment of 6500 yojanas as his diameter implies that his mean apparent diameter was considered to be 32′ 24″.8; for

$$360^{\circ} : 32' \, 24''.8 :: 4{,}331{,}500^{y} : 6500^{y}$$

The true value of the sun's apparent diameter at his mean distance is 32′ 3″.6.

The results arrived at by the Greek astronomers relative to the parallax, distance, and magnitude of the sun and moon are not greatly discordant with those here presented. Hipparchus found the moon's horizontal parallax to be 57′: Aristarchus had previously, by observation upon the angular distance of the sun and moon when the latter is half-illuminated, made their relative distances to be as 19 to 1; this gave Hipparchus 3′ as the sun's parallax. Ptolemy makes the mean distances of the sun and moon from the earth equal to 1210 and 59 radii of the earth, and their parallaxes 2′ 51″ and 58′ 14″ respectively: he also states the diameter of the moon, earth, and sun to be as 1,3⅖, 18⅘, while the Hindus make them as 1,3⅓, and 13$\frac{1}{2}\frac{3}{4}$, and their true values, as determined by modern science, are as 1,3⅔, and 412¾, nearly.

2. These diameters, each multiplied by the true motion, and divided by the mean motion, of its own planet, give the corrected (*sphuṭa*) diameters. If that of the sun be multiplied by the number of the sun's revolutions in an Age, and divided by that of the moon's,

3. Or if it be multiplied by the moon's orbit (*kakshâ*), and divided by the sun's orbit, the result will be its diameter upon the moon's orbit: all these, divided by fifteen, give the measures of the diameters in minutes.

The absolute values of the diameters of the sun and moon being stated in yojanas, it is required to find their apparent values, in minutes of arc. In order to this, they are projected upon the moon's orbit, or upon a circle described about the earth at the moon's mean distance, of which circle—since 324,000 ÷ 21,600 = 15—one minute is equivalent to fifteen yojanas.

The method of the process will be made clear by the annexed figure (Fig. 19). Let E be the earth's place, E M or E m the mean distance of

Fig. 19.

the moon, and E S the mean distance of the sun. Let T U equal the sun's diameter, 6500^y. But now let the sun be at the greater distance E S′: the part of his mean orbit which his disk will cover will no longer be T U, but a less quantity, $t\,u$, and $t\,u$ will be to T U, or T′ U′, as E S to E S′. But the text is not willing to acknowledge here, any more than in the second chapter, an actual inequality in the distance of the sun from the earth at different times, even though that inequality be most unequivocally implied in the processes it prescribes: so, instead of calculating E S′ as well as E S, which the method of epicycles affords full facilities for doing, it substitutes, for the ratio of E S to E S′, the inverse ratio of the daily motion at the mean distance E S to that at the true distance E S′. The ratios, however, are not precisely equal. The arc $a\,m$ (Fig. 4, p. 211) of the eccentric circle is supposed to be traversed by the sun or moon with a uniform velocity. If, then, the motion at any given point, as m, were perpendicular to E m, the apparent motion would be inversely as the distance. But the motion at m is perpendicular to $e\,m$ instead of E m. The resulting error, it is true, and especially in the case of the sun, is not very great. It may be added that the eccentric circle which best represents the apparent motions of the sun and moon in their elliptic orbits, gives much more imperfectly the distances and apparent diameters of those bodies. The value of $t\,u$, however, being thus at least approximately determined, $t'\,u'$, the arc of the moon's mean orbit subtended by it, is then found by the proportion ES : E m (or EM) : : $t\,u$: $t'\,u'$—excepting that here, again, for the ratio of the distances, E S and E M, is substituted either that of the whole circumferences of which they are respectively the radii, or the inverse ratio of the number of revolutions in a given time of the two planets, which, as shown in the note to the preceding passage, is the same thing. Having thus ascertained the value of $t'\,u'$ in yojanas, division by 15 gives us the number of minutes in the arc $t'\,u'$, or in the angle t' E u'.

In like manner, if the moon be at less than her mean distance from the earth, as E M′, she will subtend an arc of her mean orbit $n\,o$, greater than N O, her true diameter; the value of $n\,o$, in yojanas and in minutes, is found by a method precisely similar to that already described.

There is hardly in the whole treatise a more curious instance than this of the mingling together of true theory and false assumption in the same process, and of the concealment of the real character of a process by substituting other and equivalent data for its true elements.

We meet for the first time, in this passage, the term employed in the treatise to designate a planetary orbit, namely *kakshâ*, literally "border, girdle, periphery." The value finally obtained for the apparent diameter of the sun or moon, as later of the shadow, is styled its *mâna*, "measure."

In order to furnish a practical illustration of the processes taught in this chapter, we have calculated in full, by the methods and elements of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, the lunar eclipse of Feb. 6th, 1860. Rather, however, than present the calculation piecemeal, and with its different processes severed from their natural connection, and arranged under the passages to which they severally belong, we have preferred to give it entire in the Appendix, whither the reader is referred for it.

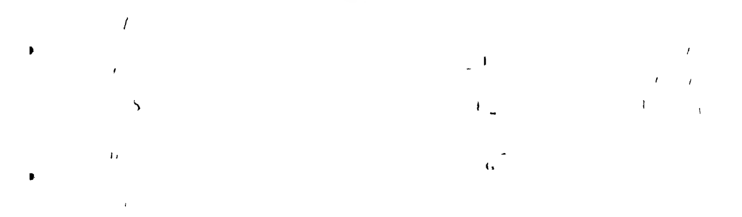
4. Multiply the earth's diameter by the true daily motion of the moon, and divide by her mean motion: the result is the earth's corrected diameter (*sûcî*). The difference between the earth's diameter and the corrected diameter of the sun

5. Is to be multiplied by the moon's mean diameter, and divided by the sun's mean diameter: subtract the result from the earth's corrected diameter (*sûcî*), and the remainder is the diameter of the shadow; which is reduced to minutes as before.

The method employed in this process for finding the diameter of the earth's shadow upon the moon's mean orbit may be explained by the aid of the following figure (Fig. 20).

As in the last figure, let E represent the earth's place, S and M points in the mean orbits of the sun and moon, and M′ the moon's actual place. Let $t\,u$ be the sun's corrected diameter, or the part of his mean orbit which his disk at its actual distance covers, ascertained as directed in the preceding passage, and let F G be the earth's diameter. Through

Fig. 20.



F and G draw $v\,F\,f$ and $w\,G\,g$ parallel to S M, and also $t\,F\,h$ and $u\,G\,k$: then $h\,k$ will be the diameter of the shadow where the moon actually enters it. The value of $h\,k$ evidently equals fg (or F G)$-(fh+gk)$; and the value of $fh+gk$ may be found by the proportion

$$Fv \text{ (or ES)} : tv+wu \text{ (or } tu-\text{FG)} :: Ff \text{ (or EM}') : fh+gk$$

But the Hindu system provides no method of measuring the angular value of quantities at the distance E M′, nor does it ascertain the value of E M′ itself: and as, in the last process, the diameter of the moon

was reduced, for measurement, to its value at the distance E M′, so, to be made commensurate with it, all the data of this process must be similarly modified. That is to say, the proportion

$$\mathrm{EM}' : \mathrm{EM} :: fg : f'g'$$

—substituting, as before, the ratio of the moon's mean to her true motion for that of E M′ to E M—gives $f'g'$, which the text calls the *sûci:* the word means literally "needle, pyramid; we do not see precisely how it comes to be employed to designate the quantity $f'g'$, and have translated it, for lack of a better term, and in analogy with the language of the text respecting the diameters of the sun and moon, "corrected diameter of the earth." It is also evident that

$$\mathrm{EM}' : fh+gk :: \mathrm{EM} : f'h'+g'k'$$

hence, substituting the latter of these ratios for the former in our first proportion, and inverting the middle terms, we have

$$\mathrm{ES} : \mathrm{EM} :: tu - \mathrm{FG} : f'h'+g'k'$$

Once more, now, we have a substitution of ratios, E S : E M being replaced by the ratio of the sun's mean diameter to that of the moon. In this there is a slight inaccuracy. The substitution proceeds upon the assumption that the mean apparent values of the diameters of the sun and moon are precisely equal, in which case, of course, their absolute diameters would be as their distances; but we have seen, in the note to the first verse of this chapter, that the moon's mean angular diameter is made a little less than the sun's, the former being 32′, the latter 32′ 24″.8. The error is evidently neglected as being too small to impair sensibly the correctness of the result obtained: it is not easy to see, however, why we do not have the ratio of the mean distances represented here, as in verses 2 and 3, by that of the orbits, or by that of the revolutions in an Age taken inversely. The substitution being made, we have the final proportion on which the rule in the text is based, viz., the sun's mean diameter is to the moon's mean diameter as the excess of the sun's corrected diameter over the actual diameter of the earth is to a quantity which, being subtracted from the *sûci*, or corrected diameter of the earth, leaves as a remainder the diameter of the shadow as projected upon the moon's mean orbit: it is expressed in yojanas, but is reduced to minutes, as before, by dividing by fifteen. The earth's penumbra is not taken into account in the Hindu process of calculation of an eclipse.

The lines fg, $f'g'$, etc., are treated here as if they were straight lines, instead of arcs of the moon's orbit: but the inaccuracy never comes to be of any account practically, since the value of these lines always falls inside of the limits within which the Hindu methods of calculation recognize no difference between an arc and its sine.

6. The earth's shadow is distant half the signs from the sun: when the longitude of the moon's node is the same with that of the shadow, or with that of the sun, or when it is a few degrees greater or less, there will be an eclipse.

To the specifications of this verse we need to add, of course, "at the time of conjunction or of opposition."

It will be noticed that no attempt is made here to define the lunar and solar ecliptic limits, or the distances from the moon's node within which eclipses are possible. Those limits are, for the moon, nearly 12°; for the sun, more than 17°.

The word used to designate "eclipse," *grahaṇa*, means literally "seizure": it, with other kindred terms, to be noticed later, exhibits the influence of the primitive theory of eclipses, as seizures of the heavenly bodies by the monster Râhu. In verses 17 and 19, below, instead of *grahaṇa* we have *graha*, another derivative from the same root *grah* or *grabh*, "grasp, seize." Elsewhere *graha* never occurs except as signifying "planet," and it is the only word which the Sûrya-Siddhânta employs with that signification: as so used, it is an active instead of a passive derivative, meaning "seizer," and its application to the planets is due to the astrological conception of them, as powers which "lay hold upon" the fates of men with their supernatural influences.

7. The longitudes of the sun and moon, at the moment of the end of the day of new moon (*amâvâsyâ*), are equal, in signs, etc.; at the end of the day of full moon (*paurṇamâsî*) they are equal in degrees, etc., at a distance of half the signs.

8. When diminished or increased by the proper equation of motion for the time, past or to come, of opposition or conjunction, they are made to agree, to minutes: the place of the node at the same time is treated in the contrary manner.

The very general directions and explanations contained in verses 6, 7, and 8 seem out of place here in the middle of the chapter, and would have more properly constituted its introduction. The process prescribed in verse 8, also, which has for its object the determination of the longitudes of the sun, moon, and moon's node, at the moment of opposition or conjunction, ought no less, it would appear, to precede the ascertainment of the true motions, and of the measures of the disks and shadow, already explained. Verse 8, indeed, by the lack of connection in which it stands, and by the obscurity of its language, furnishes a striking instance of the want of precision and intelligibility so often characteristic of the treatise. The subject of the verse, which requires to be supplied, is, "the longitudes of the sun and moon at the instant of midnight next preceding or following the given opposition or conjunction"; that being the time for which the true longitudes and motions are first calculated, in order to test the question of the probability of an eclipse. If there appears to be such a probability, the next step is to ascertain the interval between midnight and the moment of opposition or conjunction, past or to come: this is done by the method taught in ii. 66, or by some other analogous process: the instant of the occurrence of opposition or conjunction, in local time, counted from sunrise of the place of observation, must also be determined, by ascertaining the interval between mean and apparent midnight (ii. 46), the length of the complete day (ii. 59), and of its parts (ii. 60–63), etc.; the whole process is sufficiently illustrated by the two examples of the calculation of eclipses given in the Appendix. When we have thus found the interval between midnight

and the moment of opposition or conjunction, verse 8 teaches us how to ascertain the true longitudes for that moment: it is by calculating—in the manner taught in i. 67, but with the true daily motions—the amount of motion of the sun, moon, and node during the interval, and applying it as a corrective equation to the longitude of each at midnight, subtracting in the case of the sun and moon, and adding in the case of the node, if the moment was then already past; and the contrary, if it was still to come. Then, if the process has been correctly performed, the longitudes of the sun and moon will be found to correspond, in the manner required by verse 7.

For the days of new and full moon, and their appellations, see the note to ii. 66, above. The technical expression employed here, as in one or two other passages, to designate the "moment of opposition or conjunction" is *parvanâdyas*, "nâḍîs of the *parvan*," or "time of the *parvan* in nâḍîs, etc.:" *parvan* means literally "knob, joint," and is frequently applied, as in this term, to denote a conjuncture, the moment that distinguishes and separates two intervals, and especially one that is of prominence and importance.

9. The moon is the eclipser of the sun, coming to stand underneath it, like a cloud: the moon, moving eastward, enters the earth's shadow, and the latter becomes its eclipser.

The names given to the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies are either *châdya* and, as here, *châdaka*, "the body to be obscured" and "the obscurer," or *grâhya* and *grâhaka*, "the body to be seized" and "the seizer." The latter terms are akin with *grahaṇa* and *graha*, spoken of above (note to v. 6), and represent the ancient theory of the phenomena, while the others are derived from their modern and scientific explanation, as given in this verse.

10. Subtract the moon's latitude at the time of opposition or conjunction from half the sum of the measures of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies: whatever the remainder is, that is said to be the amount obscured.

11. When that remainder is greater than the eclipsed body, the eclipse is total; when the contrary, it is partial; when the latitude is greater than the half sum, there takes place no obscuration (*grâsa*).

It is sufficiently evident that when, at the moment of opposition, the moon's latitude—which is the distance of her centre from the ecliptic, where is the centre of the shadow—is equal to the sum of the radii of her disk and of the shadow, the disk and the shadow will just touch one another; and that, on the other hand, the moon will, at the moment of opposition, be so far immersed in the shadow as her latitude is less than the sum of the radii: and so in like manner for the sun, with due allowance for parallax. The Hindu mode of reckoning the amount eclipsed is not by digits, or twelfths of the diameter of the eclipsed body, which method we have inherited from the Greeks, but by minutes.

The word *grâsa*, used in verse 11 for obscuration or eclipse, means literally "eating, devouring," and so speaks more distinctly than any other term we have had of the old theory of the physical cause of eclipses.

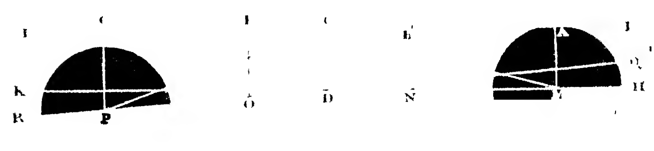
12. Divide by two the sum and difference respectively of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies: from the square of each of the resulting quantities subtract the square of the latitude, and take the square roots of the two remainders.

13. These, multiplied by sixty and divided by the difference of the daily motions of the sun and moon, give, in nâḍîs, etc., half the duration (*sthiti*) of the eclipse, and half the time of total obscuration.

These rules for finding the intervals of time between the moment of opposition or conjunction in longitude, which is regarded as the middle of the eclipse, and the moments of first and last contact, and, in a total eclipse, of the beginning and end of total obscuration, may be illustrated by help of the annexed figure (Fig. 21).

Let E C L represent the ecliptic, the point C being the centre of the shadow, and let C D be the moon's latitude at the moment of opposi-

Fig. 21.



tion; which, for the present, we will suppose to remain unchanged through the whole continuance of the eclipse. It is evident that the first contact of the moon with the shadow will take place when, in the triangle C A M, A C equals the moon's distance in longitude from the centre of the shadow, A M her latitude, and C M the sum of her radius and that of the shadow. In like manner, the moon will disappear entirely within the shadow when B C equals her distance in longitude from the centre of the shadow, B N her latitude, and C N the difference of the two radii. Upon subtracting, then, the square of A M or B N from those of C M and C N respectively, and taking the square roots of the remainders, we shall have the values of A C and B C in minutes. These may be reduced to time by the following proportion: as the excess at

the given time of the moon's true motion in a day over that of the sun is to a day, or sixty nâḍîs, so are A C and B C, the amounts which the moon has to gain in longitude upon the sun between the moments of contact and immersion respectively and the moment of opposition, to the corresponding intervals of time.

But the process, as thus conducted, involves a serious error: the moon's latitude, instead of remaining constant during the eclipse, is constantly and sensibly changing. Thus, in the figure above, of which the conditions are those found by the Hindu processes for the eclipse of Feb. 6th, 1860, the moon's path, instead of being upon the line H K, parallel to the ecliptic, is really upon Q R. The object of the process next taught is to get rid of this error.

14. Multiply the daily motions by the half-duration, in nâḍîs, and divide by sixty: the result, in minutes, subtract for the time of contact (*pragraha*), and add for that of separation (*moksha*), respectively;

15. By the latitudes thence derived, the half-duration, and likewise the half-time of total obscuration, are to be calculated anew, and the process repeated. In the case of the node, the proper correction, in minutes, etc., is to be applied in the contrary manner.

This method of eliminating the error involved in the supposition of a constant latitude, and of obtaining another and more accurate determination of the intervals between the moment of opposition and those of first and last contact, and of immersion and emergence, is by a series of successive approximations. For instance: A C, as already determined, being assumed as the interval between opposition and first contact, a new calculation of the moon's longitude is made for the moment A, and, with this and the sum of the radii, a new value is found for A C. But now, as the position of A is changed, the former determination of its latitude is vitiated, and must be made anew, and made to furnish anew a corrected value of A C; and so on, until the position of A is fixed with the degree of accuracy required. The process must be conducted separately, of course, for each of the four quantities affected; since, where latitude is increasing, as in the case illustrated, the true values of A C and B C will be greater than their mean values, while G C and F C, the true intervals in the after part of the eclipse, will be less than A C and B C: and the contrary when latitude is decreasing.

We have illustrated these processes by reference only to a lunar eclipse: their application to the conditions of a solar eclipse requires the introduction of another element, that of the parallax, and will be explained in the notes upon the next chapter.

The first contact of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies is styled in this passage *pragraha*, "seizing upon, laying hold of;" elsewhere it is also called *grâsa*, "devouring," and *sparça*, "touching:" the last contact, or separation, is named *moksha*, "release, letting go." The whole duration of the eclipse, from contact to separation, is the *sthiti*, "stay, continuance;" total obscuration is *vimarda*, "crushing out, entire destruction."

16. The middle of the eclipse is to be regarded as occurring at the true close of the lunar day: if from that time the time of half-duration be subtracted, the moment of contact (*grâsa*) is found; if the same be added, the moment of separation.

17. In like manner also, if from and to it there be subtracted and added, in the case of a total eclipse, the half-time of total obscuration, the results will be the moments called those of immersion and emergence.

The instant of true opposition, or of apparent conjunction (see below, under ch. v. 9), in longitude, of the sun and moon, is to be taken as the middle of the eclipse, even though, owing to the motion of the moon in latitude, and also, in a solar eclipse, to parallax, that instant is not midway between those of contact and separation, or of immersion and emergence. To ascertain the moment of local time of each of these phases of the eclipse, we subtract and add, from and to the local time of opposition or conjunction, the true intervals found by the processes described in verses 12 to 15.

The total disappearance of the eclipsed body within, or behind, the eclipsing body, is called *nimîlana*, literally the "closure of the eyelids, as in winking:" its first commencement of reappearance is styled *unmîlana*, "parting of the eyelids, peeping." We translate the terms by "immersion" and "emergence" respectively.

18. If from half the duration of the eclipse any given interval be subtracted, and the remainder multiplied by the difference of the daily motions of the sun and moon, and divided by sixty, the result will be the perpendicular (*koṭi*) in minutes.

19. In the case of an eclipse (*graha*) of the sun, the perpendicular in minutes is to be multiplied by the mean half-duration, and divided by the true (*sphuṭa*) half-duration, to give the true perpendicular in minutes.

20. The latitude is the base (*bhuja*): the square root of the sum of their squares is the hypothenuse (*çrava*): subtract this from half the sum of the measures, and the remainder is the amount of obscuration (*grâsa*) at the given time.

21. If that time be after the middle of the eclipse, subtract the interval from the half-duration on the side of separation, and treat the remainder as before: the result is the amount remaining obscured on the side of separation.

The object of the process taught in this passage is to determine the amount of obscuration of the eclipsed body at any given moment during the continuance of the eclipse. It, as well as that prescribed in the following passage, is a variation of that which forms the subject of verses 12 and 13 above, being founded, like the latter, upon a consideration of the right-angled triangle formed by the line joining the centres of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies as hypothenuse, the difference of their longitudes as perpendicular, and the moon's latitude as base. And whereas, in the former problem, we had the base and hypothenuse given

to find the perpendicular, here we have the base and perpendicular given to find the hypothenuse. The perpendicular is furnished us in time, and the rule supposes it to be stated in the form of the interval between the given moment and that of contact or of separation: a form to which, of course, it may readily be reduced from any other mode of statement. The interval of time is reduced to its equivalent as difference of longitude by a proportion the reverse of that given in verse 13, by which difference of longitude was converted into time; the moon's latitude is then calculated; from the two the hypothenuse is deduced; and the comparison of this with the sum of the radii gives the measure of the amount of obscuration.

Verse 21 seems altogether superfluous: it merely states the method of proceeding in case the time given falls anywhere between the middle and the end of the eclipse, as if the specifications of the preceding verses applied only to a time occurring before the middle: whereas they are general in their character, and include the former case no less than the latter.

When the eclipse is one of the sun, allowance needs to be made for the variation of parallax during its continuance; this is done by the process described in verse 19, of which the explanation will be given in the notes to the next chapter (vv. 14–17).

In verse 20, for the first and only time, we have latitude called *kshepa*, instead of *vikshepa*, as elsewhere. In the same verse, the term employed for "hypothenuse" is *çrava*, "hearing, organ of hearing;" this, as well as the kindred *çravaṇa*, which is also once or twice employed, is a synonym of the ordinary term *karṇa*, which means literally "ear." It is difficult to see upon what conception their employment in this signification is founded.

22. From half the sum of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies subtract any given amount of obscuration, in minutes: from the square of the remainder subtract the square of the latitude at the time, and take the square root of their difference.

23. The result is the perpendicular (*koṭi*) in minutes—which, in an eclipse of the sun, is to be multiplied by the true, and divided by the mean, half-duration—and this, converted into time by the same manner as when finding the duration of the eclipse, gives the time of the given amount of obscuration (*grâsa*).

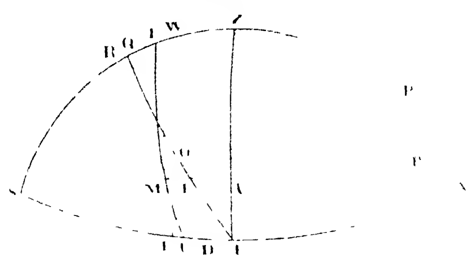
The conditions of this problem are precisely the same with those of the problem stated above, in verses 12–15, excepting that here, instead of requiring the instant of time when obscuration commences, or becomes total, we desire to know when it will be of a certain given amount. The solution must be, as before, by a succession of approximative steps, since, the time not being fixed, the corresponding latitude of the moon cannot be otherwise determined.

24. Multiply the sine of the hour-angle (*nata*) by the sine of the latitude (*aksha*), and divide by radius: the arc corresponding to the result is the degrees of deflection (*valanânçâs*), which are north and south in the eastern and western hemispheres (*kapâla*) respectively.

25. From the position of the eclipsed body increased by three signs calculate the degrees of declination: add them to the degrees of deflection, if of like direction; take their difference, if of different direction: the corresponding sine is the deflection (*valana*)—in digits, when divided by seventy.

This process requires to be performed only when it is desired to project an eclipse. In making a projection according to the Hindu method, as will be seen in connection with the sixth chapter, the eclipsed body is represented as fixed in the centre of the figure, with a north and south line, and an east and west line, drawn through it. The absolute position of these lines upon the disk of the eclipsed body is, of course, all the time changing: but the change is, in the case of the sun, not observable, and in the case of the moon it is disregarded: the Sûrya-Siddhânta takes no notice of the figure visible in the moon's face as determining any fixed and natural directions upon her disk. It is desired to represent to the eye, by the figure drawn, where, with reference to the north, south, east, and west points of the moment, the contact, immersion, emergence, separation, or other phases of the eclipse, will take place. In order to this, it is necessary to know what is, at each given moment, the direction of the ecliptic, in which the motions of both eclipsed and eclipsing bodies are made. The east and west direction is represented by a small circle drawn through the eclipsed body, parallel to the prime vertical; the north and south direction, by a great circle passing through the body and through the north and south points of the horizon: and the direction of the ecliptic is determined by ascertaining the angular amount of its deflection from the small east and west circle at the point occupied by the eclipsed body. Thus, in the annexed figure (Fig. 22), if M be the place of the eclipsed body upon the ecliptic, C L, and if E W be the small east and west circle drawn through M parallel with

Fig. 22.

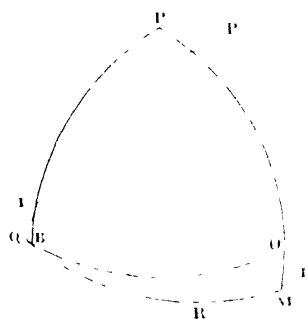


E′ Z, the prime vertical, then the deflection will be the angle made at M by C M and E M, which is equal to P′ M N, the angle made by perpendiculars to the two circles drawn from their respective poles. In order to find the value of this angle, a double process is adopted: first, the angle made at M by the two small circles E M and D M, which is equivalent to P M N, is approximately determined: as this depends for its amount upon the observer's latitude, being nothing in a right sphere, it is called by the commentary *âksha valana*, "the deflection due to latitude:" the text calls it simply *valanânçâs*, "degrees of deflection," since it does not, like the net result of the whole operation, require to be expressed in terms of its sine. Next, the angle made at M by the ecliptic,

C L, and the circle of daily revolution, D R, which angle is equal to P M P′, is also measured: this the commentary calls *âyana valana*, "the deflection due to the deviation of the ecliptic from the equator;" the text has no special name for it. The sum of these two results, or their difference, as the case may be, is the *valana*, or the deflection of the ecliptic from the small east and west circle at M, or the angle P′ M N.

In explaining the method and value of these processes, we will commence with the second one, or with that by which P M P′, the *âyana valana*, is found. In the following figure (Fig. 23), let O Q be the equator, and M L the ecliptic, P and P′ being their respective poles. Let M be the point at which the amount of deflection of M L from the circle of diurnal revolution, D R, is sought. Let M L equal a quadrant; draw P′ L, cutting the equator at Q; as also P L, cutting it at B; then draw P M and Q M. Now P′ M L is a triquadrantal triangle, and hence M Q is a quadrant; and therefore Q is a pole of the circle P O M, and Q O is also a quadrant, and Q M O is a right angle. But D R also makes right angles at M with P M; hence Q M and D R are tangents to one another at M, and the spherical angle Q M L is equal to that which the ecliptic makes at M with the circle of declination, or to P M P′: and Q M L is measured by Q L. The rule given in the text produces a result which is a near approach to this, although not entirely accordant with it excepting at the solstice and equinox, the points where the deflection is greatest and where it is nothing. We are directed to reckon forward a quadrant from the position of the eclipsed body—that is, from M to L, in the figure—and then to calculate the declination at that point, which will be the amount of deflection. But the declination at L is B L, and since L B Q is a right-angled triangle, having a right angle at B, and since L Q and L B are always less than quadrants, L B must be less than L Q. The difference between them, however, can never be of more than trifling amount; for, as the angle Q L B increases, Q L diminishes; and the contrary.

Fig. 23.



In order to show how the Hindus have arrived at a determination of this part of the deflection so nearly correct, and yet not quite correct, we will cite the commentator's explanation of the process. He says: "The 'east' (*prâcî*) of the equator [i.e., apparently, the point of the equator eastward toward which the small circle must be considered as pointing at M] is a point 90° distant from that where a circle drawn from the pole (*dhruva*) through the planet cuts the equator:" that is to say, it is the point Q (Fig. 23), a quadrant from O: "and the interval by which this is separated from the 'east' of the ecliptic at 90° from the planet, that is the *âyana valana*." This is entirely correct, and would give us Q L, the true measure of the deflection. But the commentator goes on farther to say that since this interval, when the planet is at the

solstice, is nothing, and when at the equinox is equal to the greatest declination, it is therefore always equal to the declination at a quadrant's distance from the planet. This is, as we have seen, a false conclusion, and leads to an erroneous result: whether they who made the rule were aware of this, but deemed the process a convenient one, and its result a sufficiently near approximation to the truth, we will not venture to say.

The other part of the operation, to determine the amount of deflection of the circle of declination from the east and west small circle, is considerably more difficult, and the Hindu process correspondingly defective. We will first present the explanation of it which the commentator gives. He states the problem thus: "by whatever interval the directions of the equator are deflected from directions corresponding to those of the prime vertical, northward or southward, that is the deflection due to latitude (*âksha valana*). Now then: if a movable circle be drawn through the pole of the prime vertical (*sama*) and the point occupied by the planet [i. e., the circle N M S, Fig. 22], then the interval of the 'easts,' at the distance of a quadrant upon each of the two circles, the equator and the prime vertical, from the points where they are respectively cut by that circle [i. e., from T and V] will be the deflection. . . . Now when the planet is at the horizon [as at D, referred to E′], then that interval is equal to the latitude [Z Q]; when the planet is upon the meridian (*yâmyottaravṛtta*, "south and north circle") [i. e., when it is at R, referred to Q and Z], there is no interval [as at E′]. Hence, by the following proportion—with a sine of the hour-angle which is equal to radius the sine of deflection for latitude is equal to the sine of latitude; then with any given sine of the hour-angle what is it?—a sine of latitude is found, of which the arc is the required deflection for latitude." This is, in the Hindu form of statement, the proportion represented by the rule in verse 24, viz. R : sin lat. : : sin hour-angle : sin deflection.

It seems to us very questionable, at least, whether the Hindus had any more rigorous demonstration than this of the process they adopted, or knew wherein lay the inaccuracies of the latter. These we will now proceed to point out. In the first place, instead of measuring the angle made at the point in question, M, by the two small circles, the east and west circle and that of daily revolution—which would be the angle P M N—they refer the body to the equator by a circle passing through the north and south points of the horizon, and measure the deflection of the equator from a small east and west circle at its intersection with that circle—which is the angle P T N. Or, if we suppose that, in the process formerly explained, no regard was had to the circle of daily revolution, D R, the intention being to measure the difference in direction of the ecliptic at M and the equator at O, then the two parts of the process are inconsistent in this, that the one takes as its equatorial point of measurement O, and the other T, at which two points the direction of the equator is different. But neither is the value of P T N correctly found. For, in the spherical triangle P N T, to find the angle at T, we should make the proportion

sin P T (or R) : sin P N : : sin P N T : sin P T N

But, as the third term in this proportion, the Hindus introduce the sine

of the hour-angle, Z P M or M P N, although with a certain modification which the commentary prescribes, and which makes of it something very near the angle T P N. The text says simply *natajyâ*, "the sine of the hour-angle" (for *nata*, see notes to iii. 34–36, and 14–16), but the commentary specifies that, to find the desired angle in degrees, we must multiply the hour-angle in time by 90, and divide by the half-day of the planet. This is equivalent to making a quadrant of that part of the circle of diurnal revolution which is between the horizon and the meridian, or to measuring distances upon D R as if they were proportional parts of E′ Q. To make the Hindu process correct, the product of this modification should be the angle P N T, with which, however, it only coincides at the horizon, where both T P N and T N P become right-angles, and at the meridian, where both are reduced to nullity. The error is closely analogous to that involved in the former process, and is of slight account when latitude is small, as is also the error in substituting T for O or M when neither the latitude nor the declination is great.

The direction of the ecliptic deflection (*âyana valana*) is the same, evidently, with that of the declination a quadrant eastward from the point in question; thus, in the case illustrated by the figure, it is south. The direction of the equatorial deflection (*âksha valana*) depends upon the position of the point considered with reference to the meridian, being—in northern latitudes, which alone the Hindu system contemplates—north when that point is east of the meridian, and south when west of it, as specified in verse 24: since, for instance, E′ being the east point of the horizon, the equator at any point between E′ and Q points, eastward, toward a point north of the prime vertical. In the case for which the figure is drawn, then, the difference of the two would be the finally resulting deflection. Since, in making the projection of the eclipse, it is laid off as a straight line (see the illustration given in connection with chapter vi), it must be reduced to its value as a sine; and moreover, since it is laid down in a circle of which the radius is 49 digits (see below, vi. 2), or in which one digit equals 70′—for 3438′ ÷ 49 = 70′, nearly—that sine is reduced to its value in digits by dividing it by 70.

The general subject of this passage, the determination of directions during an eclipse, for the purpose of establishing the positions, upon the disk of the eclipsed body, of the points of contact, immersion, emergence, and separation, also engaged the attention of the Greeks; Ptolemy devotes to it the eleventh and twelfth chapters of the sixth book of his Syntaxis: his representation of directions, however, and consequently his method of calculation also, are different from those here exposed.

26. To the altitude in time (*unnata*) add a day and a half, and divide by a half-day; by the quotient divide the latitudes and the disks; the results are the measures of those quantities in digits (*angula*).

By this process due account is taken, in the projection of an eclipse, of the apparent increase in magnitude of the heavenly bodies when near the horizon. The theory lying at the foundation of the rule is this:

that three minutes of arc at the horizon, and four at the zenith, are equal to a digit, the difference between the two, or the excess above three minutes of the equivalent of a digit at the zenith, being one minute. To ascertain, then, what will be, at any given altitude, the excess above three minutes of the equivalent of a digit, we ought properly, according to the commentary, to make the proportion

$$R : 1' : : \text{sin altitude} : \text{corresp. excess}$$

Since, however, it would be a long and tedious process to find the altitude and its sine, another and approximative proportion is substituted for this "by the blessed Sun," as the commentary phrases it, "through compassion for mankind, and out of regard to the very slight difference between the two." It is assumed that the scale of four minutes to the digit will be always the true one at the noon of the planet in question, or whenever it crosses the meridian, although not at the zenith; and so likewise, that the relation of the altitude to 90° may be measured by that of the time since rising or until setting (*unnata*—see above, iii. 37–39) to a half-day. Hence the proportion becomes

$$\text{half-day} : 1' : : \text{altitude in time} : \text{corresp. excess}$$

and the excess of the digital equivalent above 3′ equals $\frac{\text{alt. in time}}{\text{half day}}$.
Adding, now, the three minutes, and bringing them into the fractional expression, we have

$$\text{equiv. of digit in minutes at given time} = \frac{\text{alt. in time} + 3 \text{ half days}}{\text{half day}}$$

The title of the fourth chapter is *candragrahaṇâdhikâra*, "chapter of lunar eclipses," as that of the fifth is *sûryagrahaṇâdhikâra*, "chapter of solar eclipses." In truth, however, the processes and explanations of this chapter apply not less to solar than to lunar eclipses, while the next treats only of parallax, as entering into the calculation of a solar eclipse. We have taken the liberty, therefore, of modifying accordingly the headings which we have prefixed to the chapters.

CHAPTER V.

OF PARALLAX IN A SOLAR ECLIPSE.

CONTENTS:—1, when there is no parallax in longitude, or no parallax in latitude; 2, causes of parallax; 3, to find the orient sine; 4–5, the meridian-sine; 5–7, and the sines of ecliptic zenith-distance and altitude; 7–8, to find the amount, in time, of the parallax in longitude; 9, its application in determining the moment of apparent conjunction; 10–11, to find the amount, in arc, of the parallax in latitude; 12–13, its application in calculating an eclipse; 14–17, application of the parallax in longitude in determining the moments of contact, of separation, etc.

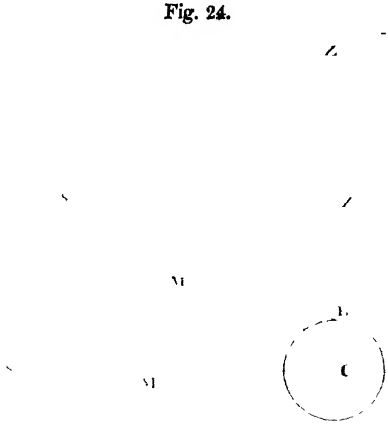
1. When the sun's place is coincident with the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*), there takes place no parallax in

longitude (*harija*): farther, when terrestrial latitude (*aksha*) and north declination of the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyabha*) are the same, there takes place no parallax in latitude (*avanati*).

The latter of these specifications is entirely accurate: when the north declination of that point of the ecliptic which is at the moment upon the meridian (*madhyalagna*; see iii. 49) is equal to the observer's latitude—regarded by the Hindus as always north—the ecliptic itself passes through the zenith, and becomes a vertical circle; of course, then, the effect of parallax would be only to depress the body in that circle, not to throw it out of it. The other is less exact: when the sun is upon the meridian, there is, indeed, no parallax in right ascension, but there is parallax in longitude, unless the ecliptic is also bisected by the meridian. Here, as below, in verses 8 and 9, the text commits the inaccuracy of substituting the meridian ecliptic-point (L in Fig. 26) for the central or highest point of the ecliptic (B in the same figure). The latter point, although we are taught below (vv. 5–7) to calculate the sine and cosine of its zenith-distance, is not once distinctly mentioned in the text; the commentary calls it *tribhonalagna*, "the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*—see above, iii. 46–48: it is the point C in Fig. 26) less three signs." The commentary points out this inaccuracy on the part of the text.

In order to illustrate the Hindu method of looking at the subject of parallax, we make the following citation from the general exposition of it given by the commentator under this verse: "At the end of the day of new moon (*amâvâsyâ*) the sun and moon have the same longitude; if, now, the moon has no latitude, then a line drawn from the earth's centre [C in the accompanying figure] to the sun's place [S] just touches the moon [M]: hence, at the centre, the moon becomes an eclipsing, and the sun an eclipsed, body. Since, however, men are not at the earth's centre, (*garbha*, "womb") but upon the earth's surface (*pṛshṭha*, "back"), a line drawn from the earth's surface [B] up to the sun does not just touch the moon; but it cuts the moon's sphere above the point occupied by the moon [at *m*], and when the moon arrives at this point, then is she at the earth's surface the eclipser of the sun. But when the sun is at the zenith (*khamadhya*, "mid-heaven"), then the lines drawn up to the sun from the earth's centre and surface, being one and the same, touch the moon, and so the moon becomes an eclipsing body at the end of the day of new moon. Hence, too, the interval [M *m*] of the lines from the earth's centre and surface is the parallax (*lambana*)."

Fig. 24.

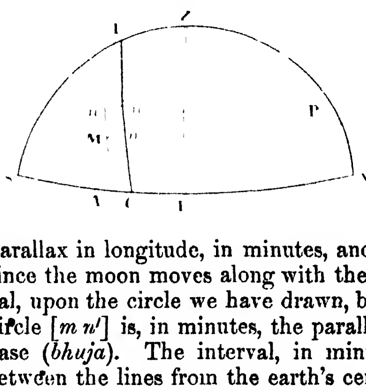


It is evident from this explication how far the Hindu view of parallax is coincident with our own. The principle is the same, but its application is somewhat different. Instead of taking the parallax absolutely, determining that for the sun, which is B S C, and that for the moon, which is B M C, the Hindus look at the subject practically, as it must be taken account of in the calculation of an eclipse, and calculate only the difference of the two parallaxes, which is m B M, or, what is virtually the same thing, M C m. The Sûrya-Siddhânta, however, as we shall see hereafter more plainly, takes no account of any case in which the line C S would not pass through M, that is to say, the moon's latitude is neglected, and her parallax calculated as if she were in the ecliptic.

We cite farther from the commentary, in illustration of the resolution of the parallax into parallax in longitude and parallax in latitude.

"Now by how many degrees, measured on the moon's sphere (*gola*), the line drawn from the earth's surface up to the sun cuts the moon's vertical circle (*dṛgvṛtta*) above the point occupied by the moon—this is, when the vertical circle and the ecliptic coincide, the moon's parallax in longitude (*lambana*). But when the ecliptic deviates from a vertical circle, then, to the point where the line from the earth's surface cuts the moon's sphere on the moon's vertical circle above the moon [i. e., to m, Fig. 25], draw through the pole of the ecliptic (*kadamba*) a circle [P′ m n'] north and south to the ecliptic on the moon's sphere [M n']: and then the east and west interval [M n'] on the ecliptic between the point occupied by the moon [M] and the point where the circle as drawn cuts the ecliptic on the moon's sphere [n'] is the moon's true (*sphuṭa*) parallax in longitude, in minutes, and is the perpendicular (*koṭi*). And since the moon moves along with the ecliptic, the north and south interval, upon the circle we have drawn, between the ecliptic and the vertical circle [m n'] is, in minutes, the parallax in latitude (*nati*); which is the base (*bhuja*). The interval, in minutes, on the vertical circle [Z A], between the lines from the earth's centre and surface [m M], is the vertical parallax (*dṛglambana*), and the hypothenuse."

Fig. 25.



The conception here presented, it will be noticed, is that the moon's path, or the "ecliptic on the moon's sphere," is depressed away from C L, which might be called the "ecliptic on the sun's sphere," to an amount measured as latitude by m n', and as longitude by n' M. To our apprehension, m n M, rather than m n' M, would be the triangle of resolution: the two are virtually equal.

The commentary then goes on farther to explain that when the vertical circle and the secondary to the ecliptic coincide, the parallax in longitude disappears, the whole vertical parallax becoming parallax in latitude: and again, when the vertical circle and the ecliptic coincide, the parallax in latitude disappears, the whole vertical parallax becoming parallax in longitude.

The term uniformly employed by the commentary, and more usually by the text, to express parallax in longitude, namely *lambana*, is from the same root which we have already more than once had occasion to notice (see above, under i. 25, 60), and means literally "hanging downward." In this verse, as once or twice later (vv. 14, 16), the text uses *harija*, which the commentary explains as equivalent to *kshitija*, "produced by the earth:" this does not seem very plausible, but we have nothing better to suggest. For parallax in latitude the text presents only the term *avanati*, "bending downward, depression:" the commentary always substitutes for it *nati*, which has nearly the same sense, and is the customary modern term.

2. How parallax in latitude arises by reason of the difference of place (*deça*) and time (*kâla*), and also parallax in longitude (*lambana*) from direction (*diç*) eastward or the contrary—that is now to be explained.

This distribution of the three elements of direction, place, and time, as causes respectively of parallax in longitude and in latitude, is somewhat arbitrary. The verse is to be taken, however, rather as a general introduction to the subject of the chapter, than as a systematic statement of the causes of parallax.

3. Calculate, by the equivalents in oblique ascension (*udayâsavas*) of the observer's place, the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*) for the moment of conjunction (*parvavinâḍyas*): multiply the sine of its longitude by the sine of greatest declination, and divide by the sine of co-latitude (*lamba*): the result is the quantity known as the orient-sine (*udaya*).

The object of this first step in the rather tedious operation of calculating the parallax is to find for a given moment—here the moment of true conjunction—the sine of amplitude of that point of the ecliptic which is then upon the eastern horizon. In the first place the longitude of that point (*lagna*) is determined, by the data and methods taught above, in iii. 46–48, and which are sufficiently explained in the note to that passage: then its sine of amplitude is found, by a process which is a combination of that for finding the declination from the longitude, and that for finding the amplitude from the declination. Thus, by ii. 28,

R : sin gr. decl. : : sin long. : sin decl.

and, by iii. 22–23,

sin co-lat. : R : : sin decl. : sin ampl.

Hence, by combining terms, we have

sin co-lat. : sin gr. decl. : : sin long. : sin ampl.

This sine of amplitude receives the technical name of *udaya*, or *udayajyâ*: the literal meaning of *udaya* is simply "rising."

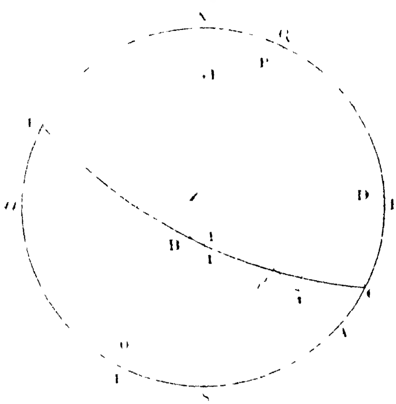
4. Then, by means of the equivalents in right ascension (*lankodayâsavas*), find the ecliptic point (*lagna*) called that of the meridian (*madhya*): of the declination of that point and the lati-

tude of the observer take the sum, when their direction is the same; otherwise, take their difference.

5. The result is the meridian zenith-distance, in degrees (*natânças*): its sine is denominated the meridian-sine (*madhyajyâ*). . . .

The accompanying figure (Fig. 26) will assist the comprehension of this and the following processes. Let N E S W be a horizontal plane, N S the projection upon it of the meridian, and E W that of the prime vertical, Z being the zenith. Let C L T be the ecliptic. Then C is the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*), and C D the sine of its amplitude (*udayajyâ*), found by the last process. The meridian ecliptic point (*madhyalagna*) is L: it is ascertained by the method prescribed in iii. 49, above. Its distance from the zenith is found from its declination and the latitude of the place of observation, as taught in iii. 20–22; and the sine of that distance, by which, in the figure, it is seen projected, is Z L: it is called by the technical name *madhyajyâ*, which we have translated "meridian-sine."

Fig. 26.



5. . . . Multiply the meridian-sine by the orient-sine, and divide by radius: square the result,

6. And subtract it from the square of the meridian-sine: the square root of the remainder is the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*drkkshepa*); the square root of the difference of the squares of that and radius is the sine of ecliptic-altitude (*drggati*).

Here we are taught how to find the sines of the zenith-distance and altitude respectively of that point of the ecliptic which has greatest altitude, or is nearest to the zenith, and which is also the central point of the portion of the ecliptic above the horizon: it is called by the commentary, as already noticed (see note to v. 1), *tribhonalagna*. Thus, in the last figure, if Q R be the vertical circle passing through the pole of the ecliptic, P′, and cutting the ecliptic, C T, in B, B is the central ecliptic-point (*tribhonalagna*), and the arcs seen projected in Z B and B R are its zenith-distance and altitude respectively. In order, now, to find the sine of Z B, we first find that of B L, and by the following process. C D is the orient-sine, already found. But since C Z and C P′ are quadrants, C is a pole of the vertical circle Q R, and C R is a quadrant. E S is also a quadrant: take away their common part C S, and C E remains equal to S R, and the sine of the latter, S O, is equal to that of the former, C D, the "orient-sine." Now, then, Z B L is treated

as if it were a plane horizontal triangle, and similar to Z O S, *and the* proportion is made

$$ZS : SO : ZL : BL$$

or

$$R : \text{or.-sine} :: \text{mer.-sine} : BL$$

This is so far a correct process, that it gives the true sine of the arc BL: for, by spherical trigonometry, in the spherical triangle ZBL, right-angled at B,

$$\sin ZBL : \sin BZL :: \sin \text{arc } ZL : \sin \text{arc } BL$$

or

$$R : SO :: ZL : \sin BL$$

But the third side of a plane right-angled triangle of which the sines of the arcs ZB and ZL are hypothenuse and perpendicular, is not the sine of BL. If we conceive the two former sines to be drawn from Z, meeting in b and l respectively the lines drawn from B and L to the centre, then the line joining $b\,l$ will be the third side, being plainly less than sin BL. Hence, on subtracting $\sin^2 BL$ from $\sin^2 ZL$, and taking the square root of the remainder, we obtain, not sin ZB, but a less quantity, which may readily be shown, by spherical trigonometry, to be sin ZB cos BL. The value, then, of the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*) as determined by this process, is always less than the truth, and as the corresponding cosine (*dṛggati*) is found by subtracting the square of the sine from that of radius, and taking the square root of the remainder, its value is always proportionally greater than the truth. This inaccuracy is noticed by the commentator, who points out correctly its reason and nature: probably it was also known to those who framed the rule, but disregarded, as not sufficient to vitiate the general character of the process: and it may, indeed, well enough pass unnoticed among all the other inaccuracies involved in the Hindu calculations of the parallax.

As regards the terms employed to express the sines of ecliptic zenith-distance and altitude, we have already met with the first member of each compound, *dṛç*, literally "sight," in other connected uses: as in *dṛgjyâ*, "sine of zenith-distance" (see above, iii. 33), *dṛgvṛtta*, "vertical-circle" (commentary to the first verse of this chapter): here it is combined with words which seem to be rather arbitrarily chosen, to form technical appellations for quantities used only in this process: the literal meaning of *kshepa* is "throwing, hurling;" of *gati*, "gait, motion."

7. The sine and cosine of meridian zenith-distance (*natânçâs*) are the approximate (*asphuṭa*) sines of ecliptic zenith-distance and altitude (*dṛkkshepa*, *dṛggati*). . . .

This is intended as an allowable simplification of the above process for finding the sines of ecliptic zenith-distance and altitude, by substituting for them other quantities to which they are nearly equivalent, and which are easier of calculation. These are the sines of zenith-distance and altitude of the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*—L in Fig. 26) the former of which has already been made an element in the other process, under the name of "meridian-sine" (*madhyajyâ*). It might, indeed, from the terms of the text, be doubtful of what point the altitude and zenith-distance were to be taken; a passage cited by the

commentator from Bhâskara's Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi (found on page 221 of the published edition of the Gaṇitâdhyâya) directs the sines of zenith-distance and altitude of B (*tribhonalagna*) when upon the meridian—that is to say, the sine and cosine of the arc ZF—to be substituted for those of ZB in a hasty process: but the value of the sine would in this case be too small, as in the other it was too great: and as the text nowhere directly recognizes the point B, and as directions have been given in verse 5 for finding the meridian zenith-distance of L, it seems hardly to admit of a doubt that the latter is the point to which the text here intends to refer.

Probably the permission to make this substitution is only meant to apply to cases where ZL is of small amount, or where C has but little amplitude.

7. . . . Divide the square of the sine of one sign by the sine called that of ecliptic-altitude (*dṛggatijîvâ*); the quotient is the "divisor" (*cheda*).

8. By this "divisor" divide the sine of the interval between the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*) and the sun's place: the quotient is to be regarded as the parallax in longitude (*lambana*) of the sun and moon, eastward or westward, in nâḍîs, etc.

The true nature of the process by which this final rule for finding the parallax in longitude is obtained is altogether hidden from sight under the form in which the rule is stated. Its method is as follows:

We have seen, in connection with the first verse of the preceding chapter, that the greatest parallaxes of the sun and moon are quite nearly equivalent to the mean motion of each during 4 nâḍîs. Hence, were both bodies in the horizon, and the ecliptic a vertical circle, the moon would be depressed in her orbit below the sun to an amount equal to her excess in motion during 4 nâḍîs. This, then, is the moon's greatest horizontal parallax in longitude. To find what it would be at any other point in the ecliptic, still considered as a vertical circle, we make the proportion

R : 4 (hor. par.) : : sin zen.-dist. : vert. parallax

This proportion is entirely correct, and in accordance with our modern rule that, with a given distance, the parallax of a body varies as the sine of its zenith-distance: whether the Hindus had made a rigorous demonstration of its truth, or whether, as in so many other cases, seeing that the parallax was greatest when the sine of zenith-distance was greatest, and nothing when this was nothing, they assumed it to vary in the interval as the sine of zenith-distance, saying "if, with a sine of zenith-distance which is equal to radius, the parallax is four nâḍîs, with a given sine of zenith-distance what is it?"—this we will not venture to determine.

But now is to be considered the farther case in which the ecliptic is not a vertical circle, but is depressed below the zenith a certain distance, measured by the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*), already found. Here again, noting that the parallax is all to be reckoned as parallax in longitude when the ecliptic is a vertical circle, or when the

sine of ecliptic-altitude is greatest, and that it would be only parallax in latitude when the ecliptic should be a horizontal circle, or when the sine of ecliptic-altitude should be reduced to nothing, the Hindus assume it to vary in the interval as that sine, and accordingly make the proportion: "if, with a sine of ecliptic-altitude that is equal to radius, the parallax in longitude is equal to the vertical parallax, with any given sine of ecliptic-altitude what is it?"—or, inverting the middle terms,

$$\mathrm{R} : \text{sin ecl.-alt.} :: \text{vert. parallax} : \text{parallax in long.}$$

But we had before

$$\mathrm{R} : \quad 4 \quad :: \text{sin zen.-dist.} : \text{vert. parallax}$$

hence, by combining terms,

$$\mathrm{R}^2 : 4 \,\text{sin ecl.-alt.} :: \text{sin zen.-dist.} : \text{parallax in long.}$$

For the third term of this proportion, now, is substituted the sine of the distance of the given point from the central ecliptic-point: that is to say, B *m* (Fig. 26) is substituted for Z *m*; the two are in fact of equal value only when they coincide, or else at the horizon, when each becomes a quadrant; but the error involved in the substitution is greatly lessened by the circumstance that, as it increases in proportional amount, the parallax in longitude itself decreases, until at B the latter is reduced to nullity, as is the vertical parallax at Z. The text, indeed, as in verses 1 and 9, puts *madhyalagna*, L, for *tribhonalagna*, B, in reckoning this distance: but the commentary, without ceremony or apology, reads the latter for the former. These substitutions being made, and the proportion being reduced to the form of an equation, we have

$$\text{par. in long.} = \frac{\text{sin dist.} \times 4 \text{ sin ecl.-alt.}}{\mathrm{R}^2}$$

which reduces to

$$\frac{\text{sin dist.}}{\mathrm{R}^2 \div 4 \text{ sin ecl. alt.}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\text{sin dist.}}{\frac{1}{4}\mathrm{R}^2 \div \text{sin ecl.-alt.}}$$

and since $\frac{1}{4}\mathrm{R}^2 = (\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{R})^2$, and $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{R} = \sin 30°$, we have finally

$$\text{par. in long.} = \frac{\text{sin dist.}}{\sin^2 30° \div \text{sin ecl.-alt.}}$$

which is the rule given in the text. To the denominator of the fraction, in its final form, is given the technical name of *cheda*, "divisor," which word we have had before similarly used, to designate one of the factors in a complicated operation (see above, iii. 35, 38).

We will now examine the correctness of the second principal proportion from which the rule is deduced. It is, in terms of the last figure (Fig. 26),

$$\mathrm{R} : \sin \mathrm{Z\,P'} \,(= \mathrm{B\,R}) :: m\,\mathrm{M} : m\,n$$

Assuming the equality of the little triangles M *m n* and M *m n'*, and accordingly that of the angles *m* M *n* and M *m n'*, which latter equals Z *m* P', we have, by spherical trigonometry, as a true proportion,

$$\sin m\,n'\,\mathrm{M} : \sin \mathrm{M}\,m\,n' :: m\,\mathrm{M} : m\,n'$$

or

$$\mathrm{R} : \sin \mathrm{Z}\,m\,\mathrm{P'} :: m\,\mathrm{M} : m\,n$$

Hence the former proportion is correct only when sin Z P' and sin Z *m* P' are equal; that is to say, when Z P' measures the angle Z *m* P';

and this can be the case only when Z *m*, as well as P′ *m*, is a quadrant, or when *m* is on the horizon. Here again, however, precisely as in the case last noticed, the importance of the error is kept within very narrow limits by the fact that, as its relative consequence increases, the amount of the parallax in longitude affected by it diminishes.

9. When the sun's longitude is greater than that of the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*), subtract the parallax in longitude from the end of the lunar day; when less, add the same: repeat the process until all is fixed.

The text so pertinaciously reads "meridian ecliptic-point" (*madhyalagna*) where we should expect, and ought to have, "central ecliptic-point" (*tribhonalagna*), that we are almost ready to suspect it of meaning to designate the latter point by the former name. It is sufficiently clear that, whenever the sun and moon are to the eastward of the central ecliptic-point, the effect of the parallax in longitude will be to throw the moon forward on her orbit beyond the sun, and so to cause the time of apparent to precede that of real conjunction; and the contrary. Hence, in the eastern hemisphere, the parallax, in time, is subtractive, while in the western it is additive. But a single calculation and application of the correction for parallax is not enough; the moment of apparent conjunction must be found by a series of successive approximations: since if, for instance, the moment of true conjunction is $25^n\,2^v$, and the calculated parallax in longitude for that moment is $2^n\,21^v$, the apparent end of the lunar day will not be at $27^n\,23^v$, because at the latter time the parallax will be greater than $2^n\,21^v$, deferring accordingly still farther the time of conjunction; and so on. The commentary explains the method of procedure more fully, as follows: for the moment of true conjunction in longitude calculate the parallax in longitude, and apply it to that moment: for the time thus found calculate the parallax anew, and apply it to the moment of true conjunction: again, for the time found as the result of this process, calculate the parallax, and apply it as before; and so proceed, until a moment is arrived at, at which the difference in actual longitude, according to the motions of the two planets, will just equal and counterbalance the parallax in longitude.

The accuracy of this approximative process cannot but be somewhat impaired by the circumstance that, while the parallax is reckoned in difference of mean motions, the corrections of longitude must be made in true motions. Indeed, the reckoning of the horizontal parallax in time as 4 nâḍis, whatever be the rate of motion of the sun and moon, is one of the most palpable among the many errors which the Hindu process involves.

To ascertain the moment of apparent conjunction in longitude, only the parallax in longitude requires to be known; but to determine the time of occurrence of the other phases of the eclipse, it is necessary to take into account the parallax in latitude, the ascertainment of which is accordingly made the subject of the next rule.

10. If the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*) be multiplied by the difference of the mean motions of the sun and

moon, and divided by fifteen times radius, the result will be the parallax in latitude (*avanati*).

As the sun's greatest parallax is equal to the fifteenth part of his mean daily motion, and that of the moon to the fifteenth part of hers (see note to iv. 1, above), the excess of the moon's parallax over that of the sun is equal, when greatest, to one fifteenth of the difference of their respective mean daily motions. This will be the value of the parallax in latitude when the ecliptic coincides with the horizon, or when the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance becomes equal to radius. On the other hand, the parallax in latitude disappears when this same sine is reduced to nullity. Hence it is to be regarded as varying with the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance, and, in order to find its value at any given point, we say "if, with a sine of ecliptic zenith-distance which is equal to radius, the parallax in latitude is one fifteenth of the difference of mean daily motions, with a given sine of ecliptic zenith-distance what is it?" or

$$\text{R} : \text{diff. of mean m.} \div 15 :: \text{sin ecl. zen.-dist.} : \text{parallax in lat.}$$

This proportion, it is evident, would give with entire correctness the parallax at the central ecliptic-point (B in Fig. 26), where the whole vertical parallax is to be reckoned as parallax in latitude. But the rule given in the text also assumes that, with a given position of the ecliptic, the parallax in latitude is the same at any point in the ecliptic. Of this the commentary offers no demonstration, but it is essentially true. For, regarding the little triangle M *m n* as a plane triangle, right-angled at *n*, and with its angle *n m* M equal to the angle Z *m* B, we have

$$\text{R} : \sin \text{Z}m\text{B} :: \text{M}m : \text{M}n$$

But, in the spherical triangle Z *m* B, right-angled at B,

$$\text{R} : \sin \text{Z}m\text{B} :: \sin \text{Z}m : \sin \text{ZB}$$

Hence, by equality of ratios,

$$\sin \text{Z}m : \sin \text{ZB} :: \text{M}m : \text{M}n$$

But, as before shown,

$$\text{R} : \sin \text{Z}m :: \text{gr. parallax} : \text{M}m$$

Hence, by combining terms,

$$\text{R} : \sin \text{ZB} :: \text{gr. parallax} : \text{M}n$$

That is to say, whatever be the position of *m*, the point for which the parallax in latitude is sought, this will be equal to the product of the greatest parallax into the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance, divided by radius: or, as the greatest parallax equals the difference of mean motions divided by fifteen,

$$\text{par. in lat.} = \frac{\text{sin ecl. zen.-dist} \times \text{diff of m. m} \div 15}{\text{R}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\text{sin ecl. zen.-dist.} \times \text{diff. of m. m.}}{\text{R} \times 15}$$

The next verse teaches more summary methods of arriving at the same quantity.

11. Or, the parallax in latitude is the quotient arising from dividing the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*) by sev-

enty, or, from multiplying it by forty-nine, and dividing it by radius.

In the expression given above for the value of the parallax in latitude, all the terms are constant excepting the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance. The difference of the mean daily motions is 731′ 27″, and fifteen times radius is 51,570′. Now 731′ 27″÷51,570′ equals $\frac{1}{70.50}$ or 48.77÷R; to which the expressions given in the text are sufficiently near approximations.

12. The parallax in latitude is to be regarded as south or north according to the direction of the meridian-sine (*madhyajyâ*). When it and the moon's latitude are of like direction, take their sum; otherwise, their difference:

13. With this calculate the half-duration (*sthiti*), half total obscuration (*vimarda*), amount of obscuration (*grâsa*), etc., in the manner already taught; likewise the scale of projection (*pramâṇa*), the deflection (*valana*), the required amount of obscuration, etc., as in the case of a lunar eclipse.

In ascertaining the true time of occurrence of the various phases of a solar eclipse, as determined by the parallax of the given point of observation, we are taught first to make the whole correction for parallax in latitude, and then afterward to apply that for parallax in longitude. The former part of the process is succinctly taught in verses 12 and 13: the rules for the other follow in the next passage. The language of the text, as usual, is by no means so clear and explicit as could be wished. Thus, in the case before us, we are not taught whether, as the first step in this process of correction, we are to calculate the moon's parallax in latitude for the time of true conjunction (*tithyanta*, "end of the lunar day"), or for that of apparent conjunction (*madhyagrahaṇa*, "middle of the eclipse"). It might be supposed that, as we have thus far only had in the text directions for finding the sine and cosine of ecliptic zenith-distance at the moment of true conjunction, the former of them was to be used in the calculations of verses 10 and 11, and the result from it, which would be the parallax at the moment of true conjunction, applied here as the correction needed. Nor, so far as we have been able to discover, does the commentator expound what is the true meaning of the text upon this point. It is sufficiently evident, however, that the moment of apparent conjunction is the time required. We have found, by a process of successive approximation, at what time (see Fig. 25), the moon (her latitude being neglected) being at m and the sun at n, the parallax in longitude and the difference of true longitude will both be the same quantity, $m\,n$, and so when apparent conjunction will take place. Now, to know the distance of the two centres at that moment, we require to ascertain the parallax in latitude, n M, for the moon at m, and to apply it to the moon's latitude when in the same position, taking their sum when their direction is the same, and their difference when their direction is different, as prescribed by the text; the net result will be the distance required. The commentary, it may be remarked, expressly states that the moon's latitude is to be calculated in this opera-

tion for the time of apparent conjunction (*madhyagrahaṇa*). The distance thus found will determine the amount of greatest obscuration, and the character of the eclipse, as taught in verse 10 of the preceding chapter. It is then farther to be taken as the foundation of precisely such a process as that described in verses 12–15 of the same chapter, in order to ascertain the half-time of duration, or of total obscuration: that is to say, the distance in latitude of the two centres being first assumed as invariable through the whole duration of the eclipse, the half-time of duration, and the resulting moments of contact and separation are to be ascertained: for these moments the latitude and parallax in latitude are to be calculated anew, and by them a new determination of the times of contact and separation is to be made, and so on, until these are fixed with the degree of accuracy required. If the eclipse be total, a similar operation must be gone through with to ascertain the moments of immersion and emergence. No account is made, it will be noticed, of the possible occurrence of an annular eclipse.

The intervals thus found, after correction for parallax in latitude only, between the middle of the eclipse and the moments of contact and separation respectively, are those which are called in the last chapter (vv. 19, 23), the "mean half-duration" (*madhyasthityardha*).

In this process for finding the net result, as apparent latitude, of the actual latitude and the parallax in latitude, is brought out with distinctness the inaccuracy already alluded to; that, whatever be the moon's actual latitude, her parallax is always calculated as if she were in the ecliptic. In an eclipse, however, to which case alone the Hindu processes are intended to be applied, the moon's latitude can never be of any considerable amount.

The propriety of determining the direction of the parallax in latitude by means of that of the meridian-sine (Z L in Fig. 26), of which the direction is established as south or north by the process of its calculation, is too evident to call for remark.

In verse 13 is given a somewhat confused specification of matters which are, indeed, affected by the parallax in latitude, but in different modes and degrees. The amount of greatest obscuration, and the (mean) half-times of duration and total obscuration, are the quantities directly dependent upon the calculation of that parallax, as here presented: to find the amount of obscuration at a given moment—as also the time corresponding to a given amount of obscuration—we require to know also the true half-duration, as found by the rules stated in the following passage: while the scale of projection and the deflection are affected by parallax only so far as this alters the time of occurrence of the phases of the eclipse.

14. For the end of the lunar day, diminished and increased by the half-duration, as formerly, calculate again the parallax in longitude for the times of contact (*grâsa*) and of separation (*moksha*), and find the difference between these and the parallax in longitude (*harija*) for the middle of the eclipse.

15. If, in the eastern hemisphere, the parallax in longitude for the contact is greater than that for the middle, and that for

the separation less; and if, in the western hemisphere, the contrary is the case—

16. Then the difference of parallax in longitude is to be added to the half-duration on the side of separation, and likewise on that of contact (*pragrahaṇa*); when the contrary is true, it is to be subtracted.

17. These rules are given for cases where the two parallaxes are in the same hemisphere: where they are in different hemispheres, the sum of the parallaxes in longitude is to be added to the corresponding half-duration. The principles here stated apply also to the half-time of total obscuration.

We are supposed to have ascertained, by the preceding process, the true amount of apparent latitude at the moments of first and last contact of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies, and consequently to have determined the dimensions of the triangle—corresponding, in a solar eclipse, to C G P, Fig. 21, in a lunar—made up of the latitude, the distance in longitude, and the sum of the two radii. The question now is how the duration of the eclipse will be affected by the parallax in longitude. If this parallax remained constant during the continuance of the eclipse, its effect would be nothing; and, having once determined by it the time of apparent conjunction, we should not need to take it farther into account. But it varies from moment to moment, and the effect of its variation is to prolong the duration of every part of a visible eclipse. For, to the east of the central ecliptic-point, it throws the moon's disk forward upon that of the sun, thus hastening the occurrence of all the phases of the eclipse, but by an amount which is all the time decreasing, so that it hastens the beginning of the eclipse more than the middle, and the middle more than the close: to the west of that same point, on the other hand, it depresses the moon's disk away from the sun's, but by an amount constantly increasing, so that it retards the end of the eclipse more than its middle, and its middle more than its beginning. The effect of the parallax in longitude, then, upon each half-duration of the eclipse, will be measured by the difference between its retarding and accelerating effects upon contact and conjunction, and upon conjunction and separation, respectively: and the amount of this difference will always be additive to the time of half-duration as otherwise determined. If, however, contact and conjunction, or conjunction and separation, take place upon opposite sides of the point of no parallax in longitude, then the sum of the two parallactic effects, instead of their difference, will be to be added to the corresponding half-duration: since the one, on the east, will hasten the occurrence of the former phase, while the other, on the west, will defer the occurrence of the latter phase. The amount of the parallax in longitude for the middle of the eclipse has already been found; if, now, we farther determine its amount—reckoned, it will be remembered, always in time—for the moments of contact and separation, and add the difference or the sum of each of these and the parallax for the moment of conjunction to the corresponding half-duration as previously determined, we shall have the true times of half-duration. In order to find the parallax for contact and separation, we

repeat the same process (see above, v. 9) by which that for conjunction was found: as we then started from the moment of true conjunction, and, by a series of successive approximations, ascertained the time when the difference of longitude would equal the parallax in longitude, so now we start from two moments removed from that of true conjunction by the equivalents in time of the two distances in longitude obtained by the last process, and, by a similar series of successive approximations, ascertain the times when the differences of longitude, together with the parallax, will equal those distances in longitude.

In the process, as thus conducted, there is an evident inaccuracy. It is not enough to apply the whole correction for parallax in latitude, and then that for parallax in longitude, since, by reason of the change effected by the latter in the times of contact and separation, a new calculation of the former becomes necessary, and then again a new calculation of the latter, and so on, until, by a series of doubly compounded approximations, the true value of each is determined. This was doubtless known to the framers of the system, but passed over by them, on account of the excessively laborious character of the complete calculation, and because the accuracy of such results as they could obtain was not sensibly affected by its neglect.

The question naturally arises, why the specifications of verse 15 are made hypothetical instead of positive, and why, in the latter half of verse 16, a case is supposed which never arises. The commentator anticipates this objection, and takes much pains to remove it: it is not worth while to follow his different pleas, which amount to no real explanation, saving to notice his last suggestion, that, in case an eclipse begins before sunrise, the parallax for its earlier phase or phases, as calculated according to the distance in time from the lower meridian, may be less than for its later phases—and the contrary, when the eclipse ends after sunset. This may possibly be the true explanation, although we are justly surprised at finding a case of so little practical consequence, and to which no allusion has been made in the previous processes, here taken into account.

The text, it may be remarked, by its use of the terms "eastern and western hemispheres" (*kapâla*, literally "cup, vessel"), repeats once more its substitution of the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*) for the central ecliptic-point (*tribhonalagna*), as that of no parallax in longitude; the meridian forming the only proper and recognized division of the heavens into an eastern and a western hemisphere.

We are now prepared to see the reason of the special directions given in verses 19 and 23 of the last chapter, respecting the reduction, in a solar eclipse, of distance in time from the middle of the eclipse to distance in longitude of the two centres. The "mean half-duration" (*madhyasthityardha*) of the eclipse is the time during which the true distance of the centres at the moments of contact or separation, as found by the process prescribed in verses 12 and 13 of this chapter, would be gained by the moon with her actual excess of motion, leaving out of account the variation of parallax in longitude: the "true half-duration" (*sphuṭasthityardha*) is the increased time in which, owing to that variation, the same distance in longitude is actually gained by the moon;

the effect of the parallax being equivalent either to a diminution of the moon's excess of motion, or to a protraction of the distance of the two centers—both of them in the ratio of the true to the mean half-duration. If then, for instance, it be required to know what will be the amount of obscuration of the sun half an hour after the first contact, we shall first subtract this interval from the true half-duration before conjunction; the remainder will be the actual interval to the middle of the eclipse: this interval, then, we shall reduce to its value as distance in longitude by diminishing it, either before or after its reduction to minutes of arc, in the ratio of the true to the mean half-duration. The rest of the process will be performed precisely as in the case of an eclipse of the moon.

Notwithstanding the ingenuity and approximate correctness of many of the rules and methods of calculation taught in this chapter, the whole process for the ascertainment of parallax contains so many elements of error that it hardly deserves to be called otherwise than cumbrous and bungling. The false estimate of the difference between the sun's and moon's horizontal parallax—the neglect, in determining it, of the variation of the moon's distance—the estimation of its value in time made always according to mean motions, whatever be the true motions of the planets at the moment—the neglect, in calculating the amount of parallax, of the moon's latitude—these, with all the other inaccuracies of the processes of calculation which have been pointed out in the notes, render it impossible that the results obtained should ever be more than a rude approximation to the truth.

In farther illustration of the subject of solar eclipses, as exposed in this and the preceding chapters, we present, in the Appendix, a full calculation of the eclipse of May 26th, 1854, mainly as made for the translator, during his residence in India, by a native astronomer.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PROJECTION OF ECLIPSES.

CONTENTS:—1, value of a projection; 2–4, general directions; 5–6, how to lay off the deflection and latitude for the beginning and end of the eclipse; 7, to exhibit the points of contact and separation; 8–10, how to lay off the deflection and latitude for the middle of the eclipse; 11, to show the amount of greatest obscuration; 12, reversal of directions in the western hemisphere; 13, least amount of obscuration observable; 14–16, to draw the path of the eclipsing body; 17–19, to show the amount of obscuration at a given time; 20–22, to exhibit the points of immersion and emergence in a total eclipse; 23, color of the part of the moon obscured; 24, caution as to communicating a knowledge of these matters.

1. Since, without a projection (*chedyaka*), the precise (*sphuṭa*) differences of the two eclipses are not understood, I shall proceed to explain the exalted doctrine of the projection.

The term *chedyaka* is from the root *chid*, "split, divide, sunder," and indicates, as here applied, the instrumentality by which distinctive differences are rendered evident. The name of the chapter, *parilekhâdhikâra*, is not taken from this word, but from *parilekha*, "delineation, figure," which occurs once below, in the eighth verse.

2. Having fixed, upon a well prepared surface, a point, describe from it, in the first place, with a radius of forty-nine digits (*angula*), a circle for the deflection (*valana*):

3. Then a second circle, with a radius equal to half the sum of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies; this is called the aggregate-circle (*samâsa*); then a third, with a radius equal to half the eclipsed body.

4. The determination of the directions, north, south, east, and west, is as formerly. In a lunar eclipse, contact (*grahaṇa*) takes place on the east, and separation (*moksha*) on the west; in a solar eclipse, the contrary.

The larger circle, drawn with a radius of about three feet, is used solely in laying off the deflection (*valana*) of the ecliptic from an east and west circle. We have seen above (iv. 24, 25) that the sine of this deflection was reduced to its value in a circle of forty-nine digits' radius, by dividing by seventy its value in minutes. The second circle is employed (see below, vv. 6, 7) in determining the points of contact and separation. The third represents the eclipsed body itself, always maintaining a fixed position in the centre of the figure, even though, in a lunar eclipse, it is the body which itself moves, relatively to the eclipsing shadow. For the scale by which the measures of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies, the latitudes, etc., are determined, see above, iv. 26.

The method of laying down the cardinal directions is the same with that used in constructing a dial; it is described in the first passage of the third chapter (iii. 1–4).

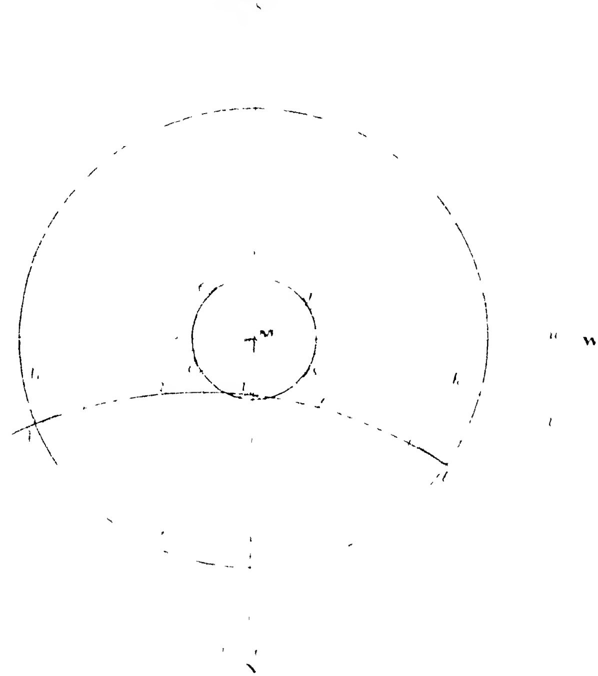
The specifications of the latter half of verse 4 apply to the eclipsed body, designating upon which side of it obscuration will commence and terminate.

5. In a lunar eclipse, the deflection (*valana*) for the contact is to be laid off in its own proper direction, but that for the separation in reverse; in an eclipse of the sun, the contrary is the case.

The accompanying figure (Fig. 27) will illustrate the Hindu method of exhibiting, by a projection, the various phases of an eclipse. Its conditions are those of the lunar eclipse of Feb. 6th, 1860, as determined by the data and methods of this treatise: for the calculation see the Appendix. Let M be the centre of the figure and the place of the moon, and let N S and E W be the circles of direction drawn through the moon's centre; the former representing (see above, under iv. 24, 25) a great circle drawn through the north and south points of the horizon, the latter a small circle parallel to the prime vertical. In explanation of the manner in which these directions are presented by the figure, we would remark that we have adapted it to a supposed position of the

observer on the north side of his projection, as at N, and looking southward—a position which, in our latitude, he would naturally assume, for

Fig. 27.



the purpose of comparing the actual phases of the eclipse, as they occurred, with his delineation of them. The heavier circle, *l l'*, is that drawn with the sum of the semi-diameters, or the "aggregate-circle;" while the outer one, N E S W, is that for the deflection. This, in order to reduce the size of the whole figure, we have drawn upon a scale very much smaller than that prescribed; its relative dimensions being a matter of no consequence whatever, provided the sine of the deflection be made commensurate with its radius. In our own, or the Greek, method of laying off an arc, by its angular value, the radius of the circle of deflection would also be a matter of indifference: the Hindus, ignoring angular measurements, adopt the more awkward and bungling method of laying off the arc by means of its sine. Let *v w* equal the deflection, calculated for the moment of contact, expressed as a sine, and in terms of a circle in which E M is radius. Now, as the moon's contact with the shadow takes place upon her eastern limb, the deflection for the contact must be laid off from the east point of the circle; and, as the calculated direction of the deflection indicates in what way the ecliptic is pointing eastwardly, it must be laid off from E in its own proper di-

rection. In the case illustrated, the deflection for the contact is north: hence we lay it off northward from E, and then the line drawn from M to *v*, its extremity—which line represents the direction of the ecliptic at the moment—points northward. Again, upon the side of separation —which, for the moon, is the western side—we lay off the deflection for the moment of separation: but we lay it off from W in the reverse of its true direction, in order that the line from its extremity to the centre may truly represent the direction of the ecliptic. Thus, in the eclipse figured, the deflection for separation is south; we lay it off northward from W, and then the line *v'* M points, toward M, southward. In a solar eclipse, in which, since the sun's western limb is the first eclipsed, the deflection for contact must be laid off from W, and that for separation from E, the direction of the former requires to be reversed, and that of the latter to be maintained as calculated.

6. From the extremity of either deflection draw a line to the centre: from the point where that cuts the aggregate-circle (*samâsa*) are to be laid off the latitudes of contact and of separation.

7. From the extremity of the latitude, again, draw a line to the central point: where that, in either case, touches the eclipsed body, there point out the contact and separation.

8. Always, in a solar eclipse, the latitudes are to be drawn in the figure (*parilekha*) in their proper direction; in a lunar eclipse, in the opposite direction. . . .

The lines *v* M and *v'* M, drawn from *v* and *v'*, the extremities of the sines or arcs which measure the deflection, to the centre of the figure, represent, as already noticed, the direction of the ecliptic with reference to an east and west line at the moments of contact and separation. From them, accordingly, and at right angles to them, are to be laid off the values of the moon's latitude at those moments. Owing, however, to the principle adopted in the projection, of regarding the eclipsed body as fixed in the centre of the figure, and the eclipsing body as passing over it, the lines *v* M and *v'* M do not, in the case of a lunar eclipse, represent the ecliptic itself, in which is the centre of the shadow, but the small circle of latitude, in which is the moon's centre: hence, in laying off the moon's latitude to determine the centre of the shadow, we reverse its direction. Thus, in the case illustrated, the moon's latitude is always south: we lay off, then, the lines *k l* and *k' l'*, representing its value at the moments of contact and separation, northward: they are, like the deflection, drawn as sines, and in such manner that their extremities, *l* and *l'*, are in the aggregate-circle: then, since *l* M and *l'* M are each equal to the sum of the two semi-diameters, and *l k* and *l' k'* to the latitudes, *k* M and *k'* M will represent the distances of the centres in longitude, and *l* and *l'* the places of the centre of the shadow, at contact and separation: and upon describing circles from *l* and *l'*, with radii equal to the semi-diameter of the shadow, the points *c* and *s*, where these touch the disk of the moon, will be the points of first and last contact: *c* and *s* being also, as stated in the text, the points where *l* M and *l'* M meet the circumference of the disk of the eclipsed body.

8.... In accordance with this, then, for the middle of the eclipse,

9. The deflection is to be laid off—eastward, when it and the latitude are of the same direction; when they are of different directions, it is to be laid off westward: this is for a lunar eclipse; in a solar, the contrary is the case.

10. From the end of the deflection, again, draw a line to the central point, and upon this line of the middle lay off the latitude, in the direction of the deflection.

11. From the extremity of the latitude describe a circle with radius equal to half the measure of the eclipsing body: whatever of the disk of the eclipsed body is enclosed within that circle, so much is swallowed up by the darkness (*tamas*).

The phraseology of the text in this passage is somewhat intricate and obscure; it is fully explained by the commentary, as, indeed, its meaning is also deducible with sufficient clearness from the conditions of the problem sought to be solved. It is required to represent the deflection of the ecliptic from an east and west line at the moment of greatest obscuration, and to fix the position of the centre of the eclipsing body at that moment. The deflection is this time to be determined by a secondary to the ecliptic, drawn from near the north or south point of the figure. The first question is, from which of these two points shall the deflection be laid off, and the line to the centre drawn. Now since, according to verse 10, the latitude itself is to be measured upon the line of deflection, the latter must be drawn southward or northward according to the direction in which the latitude is to be laid off. And this is the meaning of the last part of verse 8; "in accordance," namely, with the direction in which, according to the previous part of the verse, the latitude is to be drawn. But again, in which direction from the north or south point, as thus determined, shall the deflection be measured? This must, of course, be determined by the direction of the deflection itself: if south, it must obviously be measured east from the north point and west from the south point; if north, the contrary. The rules of the text are in accordance with this, although the determining circumstance is made to be the agreement or non-agreement, in respect to direction, of the deflection with the moon's latitude—the latter being this time reckoned in its own proper direction, and not, in a lunar eclipse, reversed. Thus, in the case for which the figure is drawn, as the moon's latitude is south, and must be laid off northward from M, the deflection, $v'' w''$, is measured from the north point; as deflection and latitude are both south, it is measured east from N. In an eclipse of the sun, on the other hand, the moon's latitude would, if north, be laid off northward, as in the figure, and hence also, the deflection would be measured from the north point: but it would be measured eastward, if its own direction were south, or disagreed with that of the latitude.

The line of deflection, which is M v'' in the figure, being drawn, and having the direction of a perpendicular to the ecliptic at the moment of opposition, the moon's latitude for that moment, M l'', is laid off directly

upon it. The point l'' is, accordingly, the position of the centre of the shadow at the middle of the eclipse, and if from that centre, with a radius equal to the semi-diameter of the eclipsing body, a circle be drawn, it will include so much of the disk of the eclipsed body as is covered when the obscuration is greatest. In the figure the eclipse is shown as total, the Hindu calculations making it so, although, in fact, it is only a partial eclipse.

12. By the wise man who draws the projection (*chedyaka*), upon the ground or upon a board, a reversal of directions is to be made in the eastern and western hemispheres.

This verse is inserted here in order to remove the objection that, in the eastern hemisphere, indeed, all takes place as stated, but, if the eclipse occurs west of the meridian, the stated directions require to be all of them reversed. In order to understand this objection, we must take notice of the origin and literal meaning of the Sanskrit words which designate the cardinal directions. The face of the observer is supposed always to be eastward: then "east" is *prâñc*, "forward, toward the front"; "west" is *paçcât*, "backward, toward the rear": "south" is *dakshiṇa*, "on the right"; "north" is *uttara*, "upward" (i. e., probably, toward the mountains, or up the course of the rivers in north-western India). These words apply, then, in etymological strictness, only when one is looking castward—and so, in the present case, only when the eclipse is taking place in the eastern hemisphere, and the projector is watching it from the west side of his projection, with the latter before him: if, on the other hand, he removes to E, turning his face westward, and comparing the phenomena as they occur in the western hemisphere with his delineation of them, then "forward" (*prâñc*) is no longer east, but west; "right" (*dakshina*) is no longer south, but north, etc.

It is unnecessary to point out that this objection is one of the most frivolous and hair-splitting character, and its removal by the text a waste of trouble: the terms in question have fully acquired in the language an absolute meaning, as indicating directions in space, without regard to the position of the observer.

13. Owing to her clearness, even the twelfth part of the moon, when eclipsed (*grasta*), is observable; but, owing to his piercing brilliancy, even three minutes of the sun, when eclipsed, are not observable.

The commentator regards the negative which is expressed in the latter half of this verse as also implied in the former, the meaning being that an obscuration of the moon's disk extending over only the twelfth part of it does not make itself apparent. We have preferred the interpretation given above, as being better accordant both with the plain and simple construction of the text and with fact.

14. At the extremities of the latitudes make three points, of corresponding names; then, between that of the contact and

that of the middle, and likewise between that of the separation and that of the middle,

15. Describe two fish-figures (*matsya*): from the middle of these having drawn out two lines projecting through the mouth and tail, wherever their intersection takes place,

16. There, with a line touching the three points, describe an arc: that is called the path of the eclipsing body, upon which the latter will move forward.

The deflection and the latitude of three points in the continuance of the eclipse having been determined and laid down upon the projection, it is deemed unnecessary to take the same trouble with regard to any other points, these three being sufficient to determine the path of the eclipsing body: accordingly, an arc of a circle is drawn through them, and is regarded as representing that path. The method of describing the arc is the same with that which has already been more than once employed (see above, iii. 1–4, 41–42): it is explained here with somewhat more fullness than before. Thus, in the figure, l, l'', and l' are the three extremities of the moon's latitude, at the moments of contact, opposition, and separation, respectively: we join $l\,l''$, $l''\,l'$, and upon these lines describe fish-figures (see note to iii. 1–5); their two extremities ("mouth" and "tail") are indicated by the intersecting dotted lines in the figure: then, at the point, not included in the figure, where the lines drawn through them meet one another, is the centre of a circle passing through l, l'', and l'.

17. From half the sum of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies subtract the amount of obscuration, as calculated for any given time: take a little stick equal to the remainder, in digits, and, from the central point,

18. Lay it off toward the path upon either side—when the time is before that of greatest obscuration, toward the side of contact; when the obscuration is decreasing, in the direction of separation—and where the stick and the path of the eclipsing body

19. Meet one another, from that point describe a circle with a radius equal to half the eclipsing body: whatever of the eclipsed body is included within it, that point out as swallowed up by the darkness (*tamas*).

20. Take a little stick equal to half the difference of the measures (*mâna*), and lay it off in the direction of contact, calling it the stick of immersion (*nimîlana*): where it touches the path,

21. From that point, with a radius equal to half the eclipsing body, draw a circle, as in the former case: where this meets the circle of the eclipsed body, there immersion takes place.

22. So also for the emergence (*unmîlana*), lay it off in the direction of separation, and describe a circle, as before: it will show the point of emergence in the manner explained.

The method of these processes is so clear as to call for no detailed explanation. The centre of the eclipsing body being supposed to be always in the arc $l\,l''\,l'$, drawn as directed in the last passage, we have only to fix a point in this arc which shall be at a distance from M corresponding to the calculated distance of the centres at the given time, and from that point to describe a circle of the dimensions of the eclipsed body, and the result will be a representation of the then phase of the eclipse. If the point thus fixed be distant from M by the difference of the two semi-diameters, as M i', M e', the circles described will touch the disk of the eclipsed body at the points of immersion and emergence, i and e.

23. The part obscured, when less than half, will be dusky (*sadhûmra*); when more than half, it will be black; when emerging, it is dark copper-color (*kṛshṇatâmra*); when the obscuration is total, it is tawny (*kapila*).

The commentary adds the important circumstance, omitted in the text, that the moon alone is here spoken of; no specification being added with reference to the sun, because, in a solar eclipse, the part obscured is always black.

A more suitable place might have been found for this verse in the fourth chapter, as it has nothing to do with the projection of an eclipse.

24. This mystery of the gods is not to be imparted indiscriminately: it is to be made known to the well-tried pupil, who remains a year under instruction.

The commentary understands by this mystery, which is to be kept with so jealous care, the knowledge of the subject of this chapter, the delineation of an eclipse, and not the general subject of eclipses, as treated in the past three chapters. It seems a little curious to find a matter of so subordinate consequence heralded so pompously in the first verse of the chapter, and guarded so cautiously at its close.

CHAPTER VII.

OF PLANETARY CONJUNCTIONS.

CONTENTS:—1, general classification of planetary conjunctions; 2–6, method of determining at what point on the ecliptic, and at what time, two planets will come to have the same longitude; 7–10, how to find the point on the ecliptic to which a planet, having latitude, will be referred by a circle passing through the north and south points of the horizon; 11, when a planet must be so referred; 12, how to ascertain the interval between two planets when in conjunction upon such a north and south line; 13–14, dimensions of the lesser planets; 15–18, modes of exhibiting the coincidence between the calculated and actual places of the planets; 18–20, definition of different kinds of conjunction; 20–21, when a planet, in con-

junction, is vanquished or victor; 22, farther definition of different kinds of conjunction; 23, usual prevalence of Venus in a conjunction; 23, planetary conjunctions with the moon; 24, conjunctions apparent only; why calculated.

1. Of the star-planets there take place, with one another, encounter (*yuddha*) and conjunction (*samâgama*); with the moon, conjunction (*samâgama*); with the sun, heliacal setting (*astamana*).

The "star-planets" (*târâgraha*) are, of course, the five lesser planets, exclusive of the sun and moon. Their conjunctions with one another and with the moon, with the asterisms (*nakshatra*), and with the sun, are the subjects of this and the two following chapters.

For the general idea of "conjunction" various terms are indifferently employed in this chapter, as *samâgama*, "coming together", *samyoga*, "conjunction," *yoga*, "junction" (in viii. 14, also, *melaka*, "meeting"): the word *yuti*, "union," which is constantly used in the same sense by the commentary, and which enters into the title of the chapter, *graha-yutyadhikâra*, does not occur anywhere in the text. The word which we translate "encounter," *yuddha*, means literally "war, conflict." Verses 18–20, and verse 22, below, give distinctive definitions of some of the different kinds of encounter and conjunction.

2. When the longitude of the swift-moving planet is greater than that of the slow one, the conjunction (*samyoga*) is past; otherwise, it is to come: this is the case when the two are moving eastward; if, however, they are retrograding (*vakrin*), the contrary is true.

3. When the longitude of the one moving eastward is greater, the conjunction (*samâgama*) is past; but when that of the one that is retrograding is greater, it is to come. Multiply the distance in longitude of the planets, in minutes, by the minutes of daily motion of each,

4. And divide the products by the difference of daily motions, if both are moving with direct, or both with retrograde, motion: if one is retrograding, divide by the sum of daily motions.

5. The quotient, in minutes, etc., is to be subtracted when the conjunction is past, and added when it is to come: if the two are retrograding, the contrary: if one is retrograding, the quotients are additive and subtractive respectively.

6. Thus the two planets, situated in the zodiac, are made to be of equal longitude, to minutes. Divide in like manner the distance in longitude, and a quotient is obtained which is the time, in days, etc.

The object of this process is to determine where and when the two planets of which it is desired to calculate the conjunction will have the same longitude. The directions given in the text are in the main so clear as hardly to require explication. The longitude and the rate of motion of the two planets in question is supposed to have been found for some time not far removed from that of their conjunction. Then, in

determining whether the conjunction is past or to come, and at what distance, in arc and in time, three separate cases require to be taken into account—when both are advancing, when both are retrograding, and when one is advancing and the other retrograding. In the two former cases, the planets are approaching or receding from one another by the difference of their daily motions; in the latter, by the sum of their daily motions. The point of conjunction will be found by the following proportion: as the daily rate at which the two are approaching or receding from each other is to their distance in longitude, so is the daily motion of each one to the distance which it will have to move before, or which it has moved since, the conjunction in longitude. The time, again, elapsed or to elapse between the given moment and that of the conjunction, will be found by dividing the distance in longitude by the same divisor as was used in the other part of the process, namely the daily rate of approach or separation of the two planets.

The only other matter which seems to call for more special explanation than is to be found in the text is, at what moment the process of calculation, as thus conducted, shall commence. If a time be fixed upon which is too far removed—as, for instance, by an interval of several days—from the moment of actual conjunction, the rate of motion of the two planets will be liable to change in the mean time so much as altogether to vitiate the correctness of the calculation. It is probable that, as in the calculation of an eclipse (see above, note to iv. 7–8), we are supposed, before entering upon the particular process which is the subject of this passage, to have ascertained, by previous tentative calculations, the midnight next preceding or following the conjunction, and to have determined for that time the longitudes and rates of motion of the two planets. If so, the operation will give, without farther repetition, results having the desired degree of accuracy. The commentary, it may be remarked, gives us no light upon this point, as it gave us none in the case of the eclipse.

We have not, however, thus ascertained the time and place of the conjunction. This, to the Hindu apprehension, takes place, not when the two planets are upon the same secondary to the ecliptic, but when they are upon the same secondary to the prime vertical, or upon the same circle passing through the north and south points of the horizon. Upon such a circle two stars rise and set simultaneously; upon such a one they together pass the meridian: such a line, then, determines approximately their relative height above the horizon, each upon its own circle of daily revolution. We have also seen above, when considering the deflection (*valana*—see iv. 24–25), that a secondary to the prime vertical is regarded as determining the north and south directions upon the starry concave. To ascertain what will be the place of each planet upon the ecliptic when referred to it by such a circle is the object of the following processes.

7. Having calculated the measure of the day and night, and likewise the latitude (*vikshepa*), in minutes; having determined the meridian-distance (*nata*) and altitude (*unnata*), in time, according to the corresponding orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*)—

8. Multiply the latitude by the equinoctial shadow, and divide by twelve; the quotient multiply by the meridian-distance in nâḍîs, and divide by the corresponding half-day:

9. The result, when latitude is north, is subtractive in the eastern hemisphere, and additive in the western; when latitude is south, on the other hand, it is additive in the eastern hemisphere, and likewise subtractive in the western.

10. Multiply the minutes of latitude by the degrees of declination of the position of the planet increased by three signs: the result, in seconds (*vikalâ*), is additive or subtractive, according as declination and latitude are of unlike or like direction.

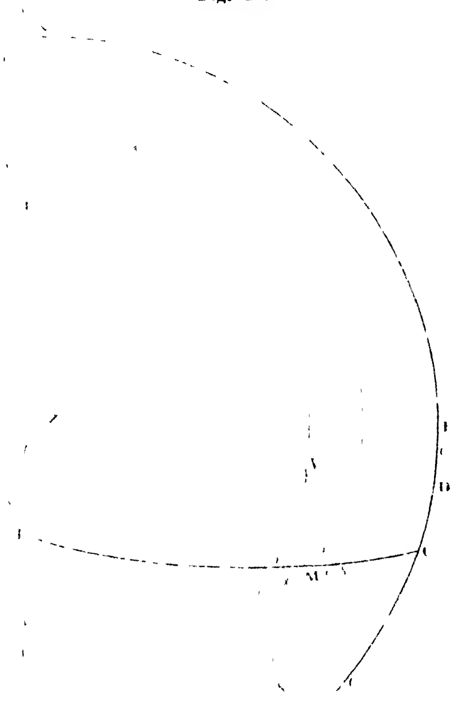
11. In calculating the conjunction (*yoga*) of a planet and an asterism (*nakshatra*), in determining the setting and rising of a planet, and in finding the elevation of the moon's cusps, this operation for apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*) is first prescribed.

12. Calculate again the longitudes of the two planets for the determined time, and from these their latitudes: when the latter are of the same direction, take their difference; otherwise, their sum: the result is the interval of the planets.

The whole operation for determining the point on the ecliptic to which a planet, having a given latitude, will be referred by a secondary to the prime vertical, is called its *dṛkkarman.* Both parts of this compound we have had before—the latter, signifying "operation, process of calculation," in ii. 37, 42, etc.—for the former, see the notes to iii. 28–34, and v. 5–6: here we are to understand it as signifying the "apparent longitude" of a planet, when referred to the ecliptic in the manner stated, as distinguished from its true or actual longitude, reckoned in the usual way: we accordingly translate the whole term, as in verse 11, "operation for apparent longitude." The operation, like the somewhat analogous one by which the ecliptic-deflection (*valana*) is determined (see above, iv. 24–25), consists of two separate processes, which receive in the commentary distinct names, corresponding with those applied to the two parts of the process for calculating the deflection. The whole subject may be illustrated by reference to the next figure (Fig. 28). This represents the projection of a part of the sphere upon a horizontal plane, N and E being the north and east points of the horizon, and Z the zenith. Let C L be the position of the ecliptic at the moment of conjunction in longitude, C being the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*); and let M be the point at which the conjunction in longitude of the two planets S and V, each upon its parallel of celestial latitude, $c\,l$ and $c'\,l'$, and having latitude equal to S M and V M respectively, will take place. Through V and S draw secondaries to the prime vertical, N V and N S, meeting the ecliptic in v and s: these latter are the points of apparent longitude of the two planets, which are still removed from a true conjunction by the distance $v\,s$: in order to the ascertainment of the time of that true conjunction, it is desired to know the positions of v and s, or their respective distances from M. From P, the pole of the equator, draw also circles through the two planets, meeting the ecliptic in s' and v': then,

in order to find M *s*, we ascertain the values of *s s′* and M *s′*; and, in like manner, to find M *v*, we ascertain the values of *v v′* and M *v′*. Now at the equator, or in a right sphere, the circles N S and P S would coincide, and the distance *s s′* disappear: hence, the amount of *s s′* being dependent upon the latitude (*aksha*) of the observer, N P, the process by which it is calculated is called the "operation for latitude" (*akshadṛkkarman*, or else *âksha dṛkkarman*). Again, if P and P′ were the same point, or if the ecliptic and equator coincided, P S and P′ S would coincide, and M *s′* would disappear: hence the process of calculation of M *s′* is called the "operation for ecliptic-deviation" (*ayanadṛkkarman*, or *âyana dṛkkarman*). The latter of the two processes, although stated after the other in the text, is the one first explained by the commentary: we will also, as in the case of the deflection (note to iv. 24–25), give to it our first attention.

Fig. 28.



The point *s′*, to which the planet is referred by a circle passing through the pole P, is styled by the commentary *ayanagraha*, "the planet's longitude as corrected for ecliptic-deviation," and the distance M *s′*, which it is desired to ascertain, is called *ayanakalâs*, "the correction, in minutes, for ecliptic-deviation." Instead, however, of finding M *s′*, the process taught in the text finds M *t*, the corresponding distance on the circle of daily revolution, D R, of the point M—which is then assumed equal to M *s′*. The proportion upon which the rule, as stated in verse 10, is ultimately founded, is

$$R : \sin M S t :: M S : M t$$

the triangle M S *t*, which is always very small, being treated as if it were a plane triangle, right-angled at *t*. But now also, as the latitude M S is always a small quantity, the angle P S P′ may be treated as if equal to P M P′ (not drawn in the figure); and this angle is, as was shown in connection with iv. 24–25, the deflection of the ecliptic from the equator (*âyana valana*) at M, which is regarded as equal to the declination of the point 90° in advance of M: this point, for convenience's sake, we will call M′. Our proportion becomes, then

R : sin decl. M′ : : M S : M *t*

all the quantities which it contains being in terms of minutes. To bring this proportion, now, to the form in which it appears in the text, it is made to undergo a most fantastic and unscientific series of alterations. The greatest declination (ii. 28) being 24°, and its sine 1397′, which is nearly fifty-eight times twenty-four—since 58×24=1392—it is assumed that fifty-eight times the number of degrees in any given arc of declination will be equal to the number of minutes in the sine of that arc. Again, the value of radius, 3438′, admits of being roughly divided into the two factors fifty-eight and sixty—since 58×60=3480. Substituting, then, these values in the proportion as stated, we have

58×60 : 58×decl. M′ in degr. : : latitude in min. : M *t*

Cancelling, again, the common factor in the first two terms, and transferring the factor 60 to the fourth term, we obtain finally

1 : decl. M′ in degr. : : latitude in min. : M *t*×60

that is to say, if the latitude of the planet, in minutes, be multiplied by the declination, in degrees, of a point 90° in advance of the planet, the result will be a quantity which, after being divided by sixty, or reduced from seconds to minutes, is to be accepted as the required interval on the ecliptic between the real place of the planet and the point to which it is referred by a secondary to the equator.

This explanation of the rule is the one given by the commentator, nor are we able to see that it admits of any other. The reduction of the original proportion to its final form is a process to which we have heretofore found no parallel, and which appears equally absurd and uncalled for. That M *t* is taken as equivalent to M *s*′ has, as will appear from a consideration of the next process, a certain propriety.

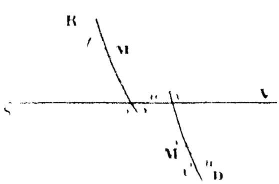
The value of the arc M *s*′ being thus found, the question arises, in which direction it shall be measured from M. This depends upon the position of M with reference to the solstitial colure. At the colure, the lines P S and P′S coincide, so that, whatever be the latitude of a planet, it will, by a secondary to the equator, be referred to the ecliptic at its true point of longitude. From the winter solstice onward to the summer solstice, or when the point M is upon the sun's northward path (*uttarâyana*), a planet having north latitude will be referred backward on the ecliptic by a circle from the pole, and a planet having south latitude will be referred forward. If M, on the other hand, be upon the sun's southward path (*dakshiṇâyana*), a planet having north latitude at that point will be referred forward, and one having south latitude backward: this is the case illustrated by the figure. The statement of the text virtually agrees with this, it being evident that, when M is on the northward path, the declination of the point 90° in advance of it will be north; and the contrary.

We come now to consider the other part of the operation, or the *âksha dṛkkarman*, which forms the subject of verses 7–9. As the first step, we are directed to ascertain the day and the night respectively of the point of the ecliptic at which the two planets are in conjunction in longitude, for the purpose of determining also its distance in time from the horizon and from the meridian. This is accomplished as follows.

Having the longitude of the point in question (M in the last figure), we calculate (by ii. 28) its declination, which gives us (by ii. 60) the radius of its diurnal circle, and (by ii. 61) its ascensional difference; whence, again, is derived (by ii. 62–63) the length of its day and night. Again, having the time of conjunction at M, we easily calculate the sun's longitude at the moment, and this and the time together give us (by iii. 46–48) the longitude of C, the orient ecliptic-point: then (by iii. 50) we ascertain directly the difference between the time when M rose and that when C rises, which is the altitude in time (*unnata*) of M: the difference between this and the half-day is the meridian-distance in time (*nata*) of the same point. If the conjunction takes place when M is below the horizon, or during its night, its distance from the horizon and from the inferior meridian is determined in like manner.

The direct object of this part of the general process being to find the value of *s s'*, we note first that that distance is evidently greatest at the horizon; farther, that it disappears at the meridian, where the lines P S and N S coincide. If, then, it is argued, its value at the horizon can be ascertained, we may assume it to vary as the distance from the meridian. The accompanying figure (Fig. 29) will illustrate the method by which it is attempted to calculate *s s'* at the horizon. Suppose the planet S, being removed in latitude to the distance M S from M, the point of the ecliptic which determines its longitude, to be upon the horizon, and let *s'*, as before, be the point to which it is referred by a circle from the north pole: it is desired to determine the value of *s s'*. Let D R be the circle of diurnal revolution of the point M, meeting S *s'* in *t*, and the horizon in *w*: S *t w* may be regarded as a plane right-angled triangle, having its angles at S and *w* respectively equal to the observer's latitude and co-latitude. In that triangle, to find the value of *t w*, we should make the proportion

Fig. 29.



cos *t* S *w* : sin *t* S *w* : : *t* S : *t w*

Now the first of these ratios, that of the cosine to the sine of latitude, is (see above, iii. 17) the same with that of the gnomon to the equinoctial shadow: again, as the difference of M *t* and M *s'* was in the preceding process neglected, so here the difference of S M, and S *t*; and finally, *t w*, the true result of the process, is accepted as the equivalent of *s' s*, the distance sought. The proportion then becomes

gnom. : eq. shad. : : latitude : required dist. at horizon

The value of the required distance at the horizon having been thus ascertained, its value at any given altitude is, as pointed out above, determined by a proportion, as follows: as the planet's distance in time from the meridian when upon the horizon is to the value of this correction at the horizon, so is any given distance from the meridian (*nata*) to the value at that distance; or

half-day : mer.-dist. in time : : result of last proportion : required distance

The direction in which the distance thus found is to be reckoned, starting in each case from the *âyana graha*, or place of the planet on the

ecliptic as determined by a secondary to the equator, which was ascertained by the preceding process, is evidently as the text states it in verse 9. In the eastern hemisphere, which is the case illustrated by the figure, *s′ s* is additive to the longitude of *s′*, while *v′ v* is subtractive from the longitude of *v′*: in the western hemisphere, the contrary would be the case. The final result thus arrived at is the longitude of the two points *s* and *v*, to which S and V are referred by the circles N S and N V, drawn through them from the north and south points of the horizon.

The many inaccuracies involved in these calculations are too palpable to require pointing out in detail. The whole operation is a roughly approximative one, of which the errors are kept within limits, and the result rendered sufficiently correct, only by the general minuteness of the quantity entering into it as its main element—namely, the latitude of a planet—and by the absence of any severe practical test of its accuracy. It may be remarked that the commentary is well aware of, and points out, most of the errors of the processes, excusing them by its stereotyped plea of their insignificance, and the merciful disposition of the divine author of the treatise.

Having thus obtained *s* and *v*, the apparent longitudes of the two planets at the time when their true longitude is M, the question arises, how we shall determine the time of apparent conjunction. Upon this point the text gives us no light at all: according to the commentary, we are to repeat the process prescribed in verses 2–6 above, determining, from a consideration of the rate and direction of motion of the planets in connection with their new places, whether the conjunction sought for is past or to come, and then ascertaining, by dividing the distance *v s* by their daily rate of approach or recession, the time of the conjunction. It is evident, however, that one of the elements of the process of correction for latitude (*akshadṛkkarman*), namely the meridian-distance, is changing so rapidly, as compared with the slow motion of the planets in their orbits, that such a process could not yield results at all approaching to accuracy: it also appears that two slow-moving planets might have more than one, and even several apparent conjunctions on successive days, at different times in the day, being found to stand together upon the same secondary to the prime vertical at different altitudes. We do not see how this difficulty is met by anything in the text or in the commentary. The text, assuming the moment of apparent conjunction to have been, by whatever method, already determined, goes on to direct us, in verse 12, to calculate anew, for that moment, the latitudes of the two planets, in order to obtain their distance from one another. Here, again, is a slight inaccuracy: the interval between the two, measured upon a secondary to the prime vertical, is not precisely equal to the sum or difference of their latitudes, which are measured upon secondaries to the ecliptic. The ascertainment of this interval is necessary, in order to determine the name and character of the conjunction, as will appear farther on (vv. 18–20, 22).

The cases mentioned in verse 11, in which, as well as in calculating the conjunctions of two planets with one another, this operation for apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*) needs to be performed, are the subjects of the three following chapters.

13. The diameters upon the moon's orbit of Mars, Saturn, Mercury, and Jupiter, are declared to be thirty, increased successively by half the half; that of Venus is sixty.

14. These, divided by the sum of radius and the fourth hypothenuse, multiplied by two, and again multiplied by radius, are the respective corrected (*sphuṭa*) diameters: divided by fifteen, they are the measures (*mâna*) in minutes.

We have seen above, in connection with the calculation of eclipses (iv. 2–5), that the diameters of the sun, moon, and shadow had to be reduced, for measurement in minutes, to the moon's mean distance, at which fifteen yojanas make a minute of arc. Here we find the dimensions of the five lesser planets, when at their mean distances from the earth, stated only in the form of the portion of the moon's mean orbit covered by them, their absolute size being left undetermined. We add them below, in a tabular form, both in yojanas and as reduced to minutes, appending also the corresponding estimates of Tycho Brahe (which we take from Delambre), and the true apparent diameters of the planets, as seen from the earth at their greatest and least distances.

Apparent Diameters of the Planets, according to the Sûrya-Siddhânta, to Tycho Brahe, and to Modern Science.

Planet.	Sûrya-Siddhânta:		Tycho	Moderns:	
	in yojanas	in arc.	Brahe.	least	greatest.
Mars,	30	2′	1′ 40″	4″	27″
Saturn,	37½	2′ 30″	1′ 50″	15″	21″
Mercury,	45	3′	2′ 10″	4″	12″
Jupiter,	52½	3′ 30″	2′ 45″	30″	49″
Venus,	60	4′	3′ 15″	9″	1′ 14″

This table shows how greatly exaggerated are wont to be any determinations of the magnitude of the planetary orbs made by the unassisted eye alone. This effect is due to the well-known phenomenon of the irradiation, which increases the apparent size of a brilliant body when seen at some distance. It will be noticed that the Hindu estimates do not greatly exceed those of Tycho, the most noted and accurate of astronomical observers prior to the invention of the telescope. In respect to order of magnitude they entirely agree, and both accord with the relative apparent size of the planets, except that to Mercury and Venus, whose proportional brilliancy, from their nearness to the sun, is greater, is assigned too high a rank. Tycho also established a scale of apparent diameters for the fixed stars, varying from 2′, for the first magnitude, down to 20″, for the sixth. We do not find that Ptolemy made any similar estimates, either for planets or for fixed stars.

The Hindus, however, push their empiricism one step farther, gravely laying down a rule by which, from these mean values, the true values of the apparent diameters at any given time may be found. The fundamental proportion is, of course,

true dist. : mean dist. : : mean app. diam. : true app. diam.

The second term of this proportion is represented by radius: for the first we have, according to the translation given, one half the sum of radius and the fourth hypothenuse, by which is meant the "variable hypothenuse" (*cala karṇa*) found in the course of the fourth, or last, process for finding the true place of the planet (see above, ii. 43–45). The term, however (*tricatuḥkarṇa*), which is translated "radius and the fourth hypothenuse" is much more naturally rendered "third and fourth hypothenuses"; and the latter interpretation is also mentioned by the commentator as one handed down by tradition (*sâmpradâyika*): but, he adds, owing to the fact that the length of the hypothenuse is not calculated in the third process, that for finding finally the equation of the centre (*mandakarman*), and that that hypothenuse cannot therefore be referred to here as known, modern interpreters understand the first member of the compound (*tri*) as an abbreviation for "radius" (*trijyâ*), and translate it accordingly. We must confess that the other interpretation seems to us to be powerfully supported by both the letter of the text and the reason of the matter. The substitution of *tri* for *trijyâ* in such a connection is quite too violent to be borne, nor do we see why half the sum of radius and the fourth hypothenuse should be taken as representing the planet's true distance, rather than the fourth hypothenuse alone, which was employed (see above, ii. 56–58) in calculating the latitude of the planets. On the other hand, there is reason for adopting, as the relative value of a planet's true distance, the average, or half the sum, of the third hypothenuse, or the planet's distance as affected by the eccentricity of its orbit, and the fourth, or its distance as affected by the motion of the earth in her orbit. There seems to us good reason, therefore, to suspect that verse 14—and with it, probably, also verse 13—is an intrusion into the Sûrya-Siddhânta from some other system, which did not make the grossly erroneous assumption, pointed out under ii. 39, of the equality of the sine of anomaly in the epicycle (*bhujajyâphala*) with the sine of the equation, but in which the hypothenuse and the sine of the equation were duly calculated in the process for finding the equation of the apsis (*mandakarman*), as well as in that for finding the equation of the conjunction (*çîghrakarman*).

15. Exhibit, upon the shadow-ground, the planet at the extremity of its shadow reversed: it is viewed at the apex of the gnomon in its mirror.

As a practical test of the accuracy of his calculations, or as a convincing proof to the pupil or other person of his knowledge and skill, the teacher is here directed to set up a gnomon upon ground properly prepared for exhibiting the shadow, and to calculate and lay off from the base of the gnomon, but in the opposite to the true direction, the shadow which a planet would cast at a given time; upon placing, then, a horizontal mirror at the extremity of the shadow, the reflected image of the planet's disk will be seen in it at the given time by an eye placed at the apex of the gnomon. The principle of the experiment is clearly correct, and the rules and processes taught in the second and third chapters afford the means of carrying it out, since from them the shadow which any star would cast, had it light enough, may be as readily deter-

mined as that which the sun actually casts. As no case of precisely this character has hitherto been presented, we will briefly indicate the course of the calculation. The day and night of the planet, and its distance from the meridian, or its hour-angle, are found in the same manner as in the process previously explained (p. 312, above), excepting that here the planet's latitude, and its declination as affected by latitude, must be calculated, by ii. 56–58; and then the hour-angle and the ascensional difference, by iii. 34–36, give the length of the shadow at the given time, together with that of its hypothenuse. The question would next be in what direction to lay off the shadow from the base of the gnomon. This is accomplished by means of the base (*bhuja*) of the shadow, or its value when projected on a north and south line. From the declination is found, by iii. 20–22, the length of the noon-shadow and its hypothenuse, and from the latter, with the declination, comes, by iii. 22–23, the measure of amplitude (*agrâ*) of the given shadow; whence, by iii. 23–25, is derived its base. Having thus both its length and the distance of its extremity from an east and west line running through the base of the gnomon, we lay it off without difficulty.

16. Take two gnomons, five cubits (*hasta*) in height, stationed according to the variation of direction, separated by the interval of the two planets, and buried at the base one cubit.

17. Then fix the two hypothenuses of the shadow, passing from the extremity of the shadow through the apex of each gnomon: and, to a person situated at the point of union of the extremities of the shadow and hypothenuse, exhibit

18. The two planets in the sky, situated at the apex each of its own gnomon, and arrived at a coincidence of observed place (*dṛç*). . . .

This is a proceeding of much the same character with that which forms the subject of the preceding passage. In order to make apprehensible, by observation, the conjunction of two planets, as calculated by the methods of this chapter, two gnomons, of about the height of a man, are set up. At what distance and direction from one another they are to be fixed is not clearly shown. The commentator interprets the expression "interval of the two planets" (v. 16), to mean their distance in minutes on the secondary to the prime vertical, as ascertained according to verse 12, above, reduced to digits by the method taught in iv. 26; while, by "according to the variation of direction," he would understand merely, in the direction from the observer of the hemisphere in which the planets at the moment of conjunction are situated. The latter phrase, however, as thus explained, seems utterly nugatory; nor do we see of what use it would be to make the north and south interval of the bases of the gnomons, in digits, correspond with that of the planets in minutes. We do not think it would be difficult to understand the directions given in the text as meaning, in effect, that the two gnomons should be so stationed as to cast their shadows to the same point: it would be easy to do this, since, at the time in question, the extremities of two shadows cast from one gnomon by the two stars would be in the same north and

south line, and it would only be necessary to set the second gnomon as far south of the first as the end of the shadow cast by the southern star was north of that cast by the other. Then, if a hole were sunk in the ground at the point of intersection of the two shadows, and a person enabled to place his eye there, he would, at the proper moment, see both the planets with the same glance, and each at the apex of its own gnomon.

In the eighteenth verse also we have ventured to disregard the authority of the commentator: he translates the words *dṛktulyatâm itâs* "come within the sphere of sight," while we understand by *dṛktulyatâ*, as in other cases (ii. 14, iii. 11), the coincidence between observed and computed position.

Such passages as this and the preceding are not without interest and value, as exhibiting the rudeness of the Hindu methods of observation, and also as showing the unimportant and merely illustrative part which observation was meant to play in their developed system of astronomy.

18. . . . When there is contact of the stars, it is styled "depiction" (*ullekha*); when there is separation, "division" (*bheda*);

19. An encounter (*yuddha*) is called "ray-obliteration" (*ançuvimarda*) when there is mutual mingling of rays: when the interval is less than a degree, the encounter is named "dexter" (*apasavya*)—if, in this case, one be faint (*aṇu*).

20. If the interval be more than a degree, it is "conjunction" (*samâgama*), if both are endued with power (*bala*). One that is vanquished (*jita*) in a dexter encounter (*apasavya yuddha*), one that is covered, faint (*aṇu*), destitute of brilliancy,

21. One that is rough, colorless, struck down (*vidhvasta*), situated to the south, is utterly vanquished (*vijita*). One situated to the north, having brilliancy, large, is victor (*jayin*)—and even in the south, if powerful (*balin*).

22. Even when closely approached, if both are brilliant, it is "conjunction" (*samâgama*): if the two are very small, and struck down, it is "front" (*kûṭa*) and "conflict" (*vigraha*), respectively.

23. Venus is generally victor, whether situated to the north or to the south. . . .

In this passage, as later in a whole chapter (chap. xi), we quit the proper domain of astronomy, and trench upon that of astrology. However intimately connected the two sciences may be in practice, they are, in general, kept distinct in treatment—the Siddhântas, or astronomical text-books, furnishing, as in the present instance, only the scientific basis, the data and methods of calculation of the positions of the heavenly bodies, their eclipses, conjunctions, risings and settings, and the like, while the Sanhitâs, Jâtakas, Tâjikas, etc., the astrological treatises, make the superstitious applications of the science to the explanation of the planetary influences, and their determination of human fates. Thus the celebrated astronomer, Varâha-mihira, besides his astronomies, composed separate astrological works, which are still extant, while the former have become lost. It is by no means impossible that these verses may be an interpolation into the original text of the Sûrya-Siddhânta. They form only a disconnected fragment: it is not to be supposed that

they contain a complete statement and definition of all the different kinds of conjunction recognized and distinguished by technical appellations; nor do they fully set forth the circumstances which determine the result of a hostile "encounter" between two planets: while a detailed explanation of some of the distinctions indicated—as, for instance, when a planet is "powerful" or the contrary—could not be given without entering quite deeply into the subject of the Hindu astrology. This we do not regard ourselves as called upon to do here: indeed, it would not be possible to accomplish it satisfactorily without aid from original sources which are not accessible to us. We shall content ourselves with following the example of the commentator, who explains simply the sense and connection of the verses, as given in our translation, citing one or two parallel passages from works of kindred subject. We would only point out farther that it has been shown in the most satisfactory manner (as by Whish, in Trans. Lit. Soc. Madras, 1827; Weber, in his Indische Studien, ii. 236 etc.) that the older Hindu science of astrology, as represented by Varâha-mihira and others, reposes entirely upon the Greek, as its later forms depend also, in part, upon the Arab; the latter connection being indicated even in the common title of the more modern treatises, *tâjika*, which comes from the Persian *tâzî*, "Arab." Weber gives (Ind. Stud. ii. 277 etc.) a translation of a passage from Varâha-mihira's lesser treatise, which states in part the circumstances determining the "power" of a planet in different situations, absolute or relative: partial explanations upon the same subject furnished to the translator in India by his native assistant, agree with these, and both accord closely with the teachings of the Tetrabiblos, the astrological work attributed to Ptolemy.

23. . . . Perform in like manner the calculation of the conjunction (*samyoga*) of the planets with the moon.

This is all that the treatise says respecting the conjunction of the moon with the lesser planets: of the phenomenon, sometimes so striking, of the occultation of the latter by the former, it takes no especial notice. The commentator cites an additional half-verse as sometimes included in the chapter, to the effect that, in calculating a conjunction, the moon's latitude is to be reckoned as corrected by her parallax in latitude (*avanati*), but rejects it, as making the chapter over-full, and as being superfluous, since the nature of the case determines the application here of the general rules for parallax presented in the fifth chapter. Of any parallax of the planets themselves nothing is said: of course, to calculate the moon's parallax by the methods as already given is, in effect, to attribute to them all a horizontal parallax of the same value with that assigned to the sun, or about 4′.

The final verse of the chapter is a caveat against the supposition that, when a "conjunction" of two planets is spoken of, anything more is meant than that they appear to approach one another; while nevertheless, this apparent approach requires to be treated of, on account of its influence upon human fates.

24. Unto the good and evil fortune of men is this system set forth: the planets move on upon their own paths, approaching one another at a distance.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE ASTERISMS.

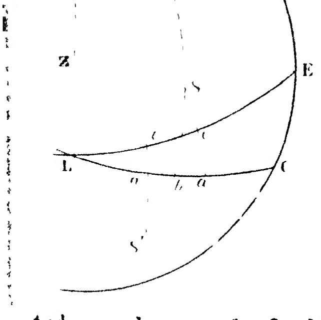
CONTENTS:—1-9, positions of the asterisms; 10-12, of certain fixed stars; 12, direction to test by observation the accuracy of these positions; 13, splitting of Rohinî's wain; 14-15, how to determine the conjunction of a planet with an asterism; 16-19, which is the junction-star in each asterism; 20-21, positions of other fixed stars.

1. Now are set forth the positions of the asterisms (*bha*), in minutes. If the share of each one, then, be multiplied by ten, and increased by the minutes in the portions (*bhoga*) of the past asterisms (*dhishṇya*), the result will be the polar longitudes (*dhruva*).

The proper title of this chapter is *nakshatragrahayutyadhikâra*, "chapter of the conjunction of asterisms and planets," but the subject of conjunction occupies but a small space in it, being limited to a direction (vv. 14-15) to apply, with the necessary modifications, the methods taught in the preceding chapter. The chapter is mainly occupied with such a definition of the positions of the asterisms—to which are added also those of a few of the more prominent among the fixed stars—as is necessary in order to render their conjunctions capable of being calculated.

Before proceeding to give the passage which states the positions of the asterisms, we will explain the manner in which these are defined. In the accompanying figure (Fig. 30), let E L represent the equator, and C L the ecliptic, P and P′ being their respective poles. Let S be the position of any given star, and through it draw the circle of declination P S *a*. Then *a* is the point on the ecliptic of which the distance from the first of Aries and from the star respectively are here given as its longitude and latitude. So far as the latitude is concerned, this is not unaccordant with the usage of the treatise hitherto. Latitude (*vikshepa*, "disjection") is the amount by which any body is removed from the declination which it ought to have—that is, from the point of the ecliptic which it ought to occupy—declination (*krânti*, *apakrama*) being always, according to the Hindu understanding of the term, in the ecliptic itself. In the case of a planet, whose proper path is in the ecliptic, the point of that circle which it ought to occupy is determined by its calculated longitude: in the case of a fixed star, whose only motion is about the pole of the heavens, its point of declination is that to which it is referred by a

Fig. 30



circle through that pole. Thus, in the figure, the declination (*krânti*) of S would be *c a*, or the distance of *a* from the equator at *c* : its latitude (*vikshepa*) is *a* S, or its distance from *a*. We have, accordingly, the same term used here as before. To designate the position in longitude of *a*, on the other hand, we have a new term, *dhruva*, or, as below, (vv. 12, 15), *dhruvaka*. This comes from the adjective *dhruva*, "fixed, immovable," by which the poles of the heaven (see below, xii. 43) are designated; and, if we do not mistake its application, it indicates, as here employed, the longitude of a star as referred to the ecliptic by a circle from the pole. We venture, then, to translate it by "polar longitude," as we also render *vikshepa*, in this connection, by "polar latitude," it being desirable to have for these quantities distinctive names, akin with one another. Colebrooke employs "apparent longitude and latitude," which are objectionable, as being more properly applied to the results of the process taught in the last chapter (vv. 7–10).

The mode of statement of the polar longitudes is highly artificial and arbitrary : a number is mentioned which, when multiplied by ten, will give the position of each asterism, in minutes, in its own "portion" (*bhoga*), or arc of 13° 20′ in the ecliptic (see ii. 64).

This passage presents a name for the asterisms, *dhishṇya*, which has not occurred before ; it is found once more below, in xi. 21.

2. Forty-eight, forty, sixty-five, fifty-seven, fifty-eight, four, seventy-eight, seventy-six, fourteen,

3. Fifty-four, sixty-four, fifty, sixty, forty, seventy-four, seventy-eight, sixty-four.

4. Fourteen, six, four: Uttara-Ashâḍhâ, (*vâiçva*) is at the middle of the portion (*bhoga*) of Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ (*âpya*); Abhijit, likewise, is at the end of Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ; the position of Çravana is at the end of Uttara-Ashâḍhâ;

5. Çravishthâ, on the other hand, is at the point of connection of the third and fourth quarters (*pada*) of Çravaṇa: then, in their own portions, eighty, thirty-six, twenty-two,

6. Seventy-nine. Now their respective latitudes, reckoned from the point of declination (*apakrama*) of each: ten, twelve, five, north; south, five, ten, nine;

7. North, six; nothing; south, seven; north, nothing, twelve, thirteen; south, eleven, two; then thirty-seven, north;

8. South, one and a half, three, four, nine, five and a half, five; north, also, sixty, thirty, and also thirty-six;

9. South, half a degree; twenty-four, north, twenty-six degrees; nothing—for Açvinî (*dasra*), etc., in succession.

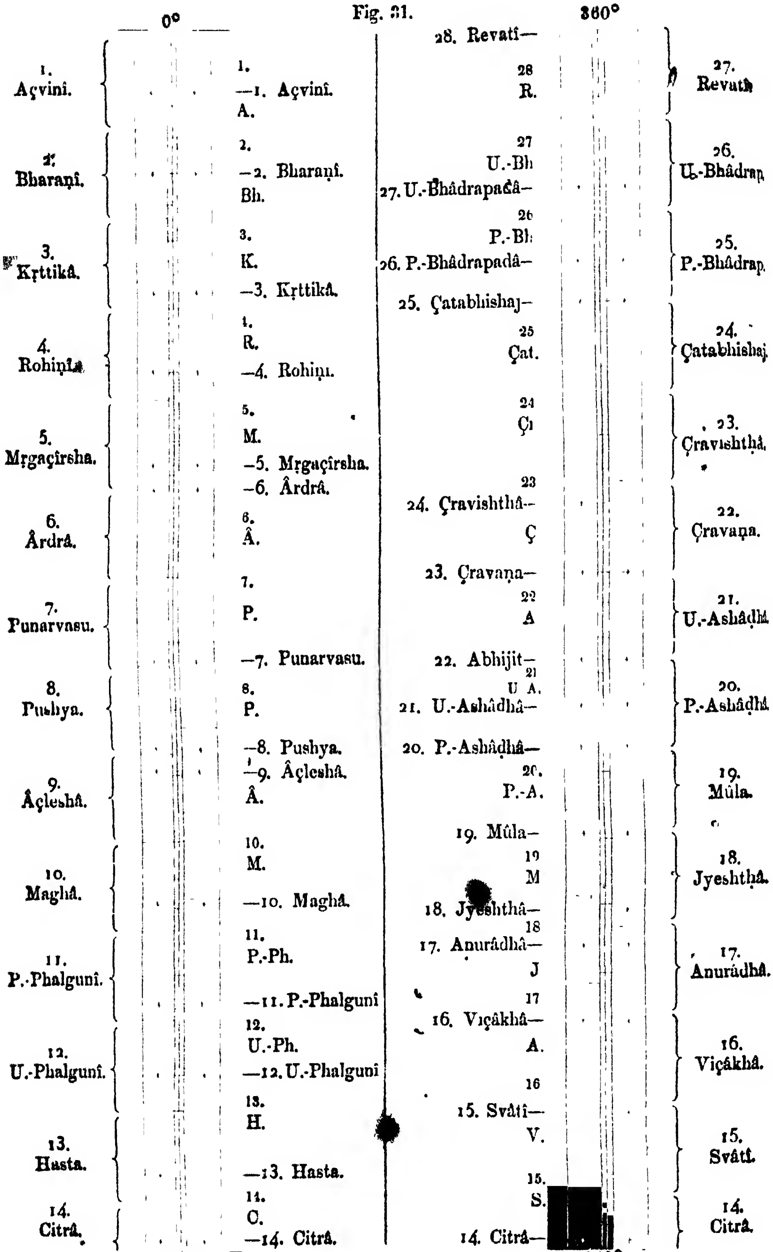
The text here assumes that the names of the asterisms, and the order of their succession, are so familiarly known as to render it unnecessary to rehearse them. It has been already noticed (see above, i. 48–51, 55, 56–58, etc.) that a similar assumption was made as regards the names and succession of the months, signs of the zodiac, years of Jupiter's cycle, and the like. Many of the asterisms have more than one appellation : we present in the annexed table those by which they are more

generally and familiarly known; the others will be stated farther on. Nearly all these titles are to be found in our text, occurring here and there; a few of the asterisms, however, (the 5th, 6th, 9th, and 17th), are mentioned only by appellations derived from the names of the deities to whom they are regarded as belonging, and one (the 25th) chances not to be once distinctively spoken of. We append to the names, in a tabular form, the data presented in this passage; namely, the position of each asterism (*nakshatra*) in the arc of the ecliptic to which it gives name, and which is styled its "portion" (*bhoga*), the resulting polar longitudes, and the polar latitudes. And since it is probable (see note to the latter half of v. 12, below) that the latter were actually derived by calculation from true declinations and right ascensions, ascertained by observation, we have endeavored to restore those more original data by calculating them back again, according to the data and methods of this Siddhânta—the declinations by ii. 28, the right ascensions by iii. 44–48—and we insert our results in the table, rejecting odd minutes less than ten.

Positions of the Junction-Stars of the Asterisms.

No.	Name.	Position in its Portion.	Polar Longitude.	Polar Latitude.	Right Ascension.	True Declination.	Interval in Longitude.	Interval in R. A.
		° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′
1	Açvinî,	8 0	8 0	10 0 N	7 30	13 20 N.	12 0	11 0
2	Bharanî,	6 40	20 0	12 0 "	18 30	20 0 "	17 30	16 50
3	Krttikâ,	10 50	37 30	5 0 "	35 20	19 20 "	12 0	12 0
4	Rohinî,	9 30	49 30	5 0 S	47 20	13 0 "	13 30	13 40
5	Mrgaçirsha,	9 40	63 0	10 0 "	61 0	11 20 "	4 20	4 40
6	Ârdrâ,	0 40	67 20	9 0 "	65 40	13 0 "	25 40	27 30
7	Punarvasu,	13 0	93 0	6 0 N.	93 10	30 0 "	13 0	14 0
8	Pushya,	12 40	106 0	0 0	107 10	23 0 "	3 0	3 20
9	Âçleshâ,	2 20	109 0	7 0 S.	110 30	15 40 "	20 0	20 40
10	Maghâ,	9 0	129 0	0 0	131 10	18 20 "	15 0	15 0
11	P.-Phalgunî,	10 40	144 0	12 0 N	146 10	25 50 "	11 0	10 40
12	U.-Phalgunî,	8 20	155 0	13 0 "	156 50	22 50 "	15 0	13 50
13	Hasta,	10 0	170 0	11 0 S	170 40	7 0 S.	10 0	9 20
14	Citrâ,	6 40	180 0	2 0 "	180 0	2 0 "	19 0	17 40
15	Svâtî,	12 20	199 0	37 0 N	197 40	29 20 N	14 0	13 10
16	Viçâkhâ,	13 0	[illegible] 0	1 30 S.	210 50	14 20 S.	11 0	11 0
17	Anurâdhâ,	10 40	224 0	3 0 "	221 50	19 20 "	5 0	5 0
18	Jyeshthâ,	2 20	229 0	4 0 "	226 50	21 50 "	12 0	12 0
19	Mûla,	1 0	241 0	9 0 "	238 50	29 50 "	13 0	14 0
20	P.-Ashâdhâ,	0 40	254 0	5 30 "	252 50	28 30 "	6 0	6 30
21	U.-Ashâdhâ,	....	260 0	5 0 "	259 20	28 40 "	6 40	7 0
22	Abhijit,	....	266 40	60 0 N.	266 20	36 0 N	13 20	14 30
23	Çravana,	....	280 0	30 0 "	280 50	6 20 "	10 0	10 40
24	Çravishthâ,	....	290 0	36 0 "	291 30	13 30 "	30 0	30 40
25	Çatabhishaj,	13 20	320 0	0 [illegible] S.	322 10	15 40 S.	6 0	6 0
26	P.-Bhâdrapadâ,	6 0	326 0	24 [illegible] N.	328 10	10 50 N.	11 0	10 30
27	U.-Bhâdrapadâ,	3 40	337 0	26 0 "	338 40	16 50 "	22 50	21 10
28	Revatî,	13 10	359 50	0 0	359 50	0 0	8 10	7 40

Fig. 31.


0°
360°
1. Açvinî.
2. Bharaṇî.
3. Kṛttikâ.
4. Rohiṇî.
5. Mṛgaçîrsha.
6. Ârdrâ.
7. Punarvasu.
8. Pushya.
9. Âçleshâ.
10. Maghâ.
11. P.-Phalgunî.
12. U.-Phalgunî.
13. Hasta.
14. Citrâ.
180°
1. —1. Açvinî. A.
2. —2. Bharaṇî. Bh.
3. K. —3. Kṛttikâ.
4. R. —4. Rohiṇî.
5. M. —5. Mṛgaçîrsha. —6. Ârdrâ.
6. Â.
7. P. —7. Punarvasu.
8. P. —8. Pushya. —9. Âçleshâ.
9. Â.
10. M. —10. Maghâ.
11. P.-Ph. —11. P.-Phalgunî
12. U.-Ph. —12. U.-Phalgunî
13. H. —13. Hasta.
14. C. —14. Citrâ.
28. Revatî—
28 R.
27 U.-Bh
27. U.-Bhâdrapadâ—
26 P.-Bh
26. P.-Bhâdrapadâ—
25. Çatabhishaj—
25 Çat.
24 Çr
23
24. Çravishṭhâ—
Ç
23. Çravaṇa—
22 A
22. Abhijit—
21 U A.
21. U.-Ashâḍhâ—
20. P.-Ashâḍhâ—
20. P.-A.
19. Mûla—
19 M
18. Jyeshṭhâ—
18
17. Anurâdhâ—
J
17
16. Viçâkhâ—
A.
16
15. Svâtî—
V.
15. S.
14. Citrâ—
180°
27. Revatî.
26. U.-Bhâdrap.
25. P.-Bhâdrap.
24. Çatabhishaj.
23. Çravishṭhâ.
22. Çravaṇa.
21. U.-Ashâḍhâ.
20. P.-Ashâḍhâ.
19. Mûla.
18. Jyeshṭhâ.
17. Anurâdhâ.
16. Viçâkhâ.
15. Svâtî.
14. Citrâ.

Our calculations, it should be remarked, are founded upon the assumption that, at the time when the observations were made of which our text records the results, the vernal equinox coincided with the initial point of the Hindu sidereal sphere, or with the beginning of the portion of the asterism Açvinî, a point 10′ eastward on the ecliptic from the star ζ Piscium: this was actually the case (see above, under i. 27) about A. D. 560. The question how far this assumption is supported by evidence contained in the data themselves will be considered later. To fill out the table, we have also added the intervals in right ascension and in polar longitude.

The stars of which the text thus accurately defines the positions do not, in most cases, by themselves alone, constitute the asterisms (*nakshatra*); they are only the principal members of the several groups of stars—each, in the calculation of conjunctions (*yoga*) between the planets and the asterisms (see below, vv. 14–15), representing its group, and therefore called (see below, vv. 16–19) the "junction-star" (*yogatârâ*) of the asterism.

It will be at once noticed that while, in a former passage (ii. 64), the ecliptic was divided into twenty-seven equal arcs, as portions for the asterisms, we have here presented to us twenty-eight asterisms, very unequally distributed along the ecliptic, and at greatly varying distances from it. And it is a point of so much consequence, in order to the right understanding of the character and history of the whole system, to apprehend clearly the relation of the groups of stars to the arcs allotted to them, that we have prepared the accompanying diagram (Fig. 31) in illustration of that relation. The figure represents, in two parts, the circle of the ecliptic: along the central lines is marked its division into arcs of ten and five degrees: upon the outside of these lines it is farther divided into equal twenty-sevenths, or arcs of 13° 20′, and upon the inside into equal twenty-eighths, or arcs of 12° 51$\frac{3}{7}$′; these being the portions (*bhoga*) of two systems of asterisms, twenty-seven and twenty-eight in number respectively. The starred lines which run across all the divisions mark the polar longitudes, as stated in the text, of the junction-stars of the asterisms. The names of the latter are set over against them, in the inner columns: the names of the portions in the system of twenty-seven are given in full in the outer columns, and those in the system of twenty-eight are also placed opposite the portions, upon the inside, in an abbreviated form.

The text nowhere expressly states which one of the twenty-eight asterisms which it recognizes is, in its division of the ecliptic into only twenty-seven portions, left without a portion. That Abhijit, the twenty-second of the series, is the one thus omitted, however, is clearly implied in the statements of the fourth and fifth verses. Those statements, which have caused difficulty to more than one expounder of the passage, and have been variously misinterpreted, are made entirely clear by supplying the words "asterism" and "portion" throughout, where they are to be understood, thus: "the asterism Uttara-Ashâḍhâ is at the middle of the portion styled Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ; the asterism Abhijit, likewise, is at the end of the portion Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ; the position of the asterism Çravaṇa is at the end of the portion receiving its name from Uttara-Ashâḍhâ; while

the asterism Çravishṭhâ is between the third and fourth quarters of the portion named for Çravaṇa." After this interruption to the regularity of correspondence of the two systems—the asterism Abhijit being left without a portion, and the portion Çravishṭhâ containing no asterism—they go on again harmoniously together to the close. The figure illustrates clearly this condition of things, and shows that, if Abhijit be left out of account, the two systems agree so far as this—that twenty-six asterisms fall within the limits of portions bearing the same name, while all the discordances are confined to one portion of the ecliptic, that comprising the 20th to the 23d portions. If, on the other hand, the ecliptic be divided into twenty-eighths, and if these be assigned as portions to the twenty-eight asterisms, it is seen from the figure that the discordances between the two systems will be very great; that only in twelve instances will a portion be occupied by the asterism bearing its own name, and by that alone; that in sixteen cases asterisms will be found to fall within the limits of portions of different name; that four portions will be left without any asterism at all, while four others will contain two each.

These discordances are enough of themselves to set the whole subject of the asterisms in a new light. Whereas it might have seemed, from what we have seen of it heretofore, that the system was founded upon a division of the ecliptic into twenty-seven equal portions, and the selection of a star or a constellation to mark each portion, and to be, as it were, its ruler, it now appears that the series of twenty-eight asterisms may be something independent of, and anterior to, any division of the ecliptic into equal arcs, and that the one may have been only artificially brought into connection with the other, complete harmony between them being altogether impossible. And this view is fully sustained by evidence derivable from outside the Hindu science of astronomy, and beyond the borders of India. The Pârsis, the Arabs, and the Chinese, are found also to be in possession of a similar system of division of the heavens into twenty-eight portions, marked or separated by as many single stars or constellations. Of the Pârsî system little or nothing is known excepting the number and names of the divisions, which are given in the second chapter of the Bundehesh (see Anquetil du Perron's Zendavesta, etc., ii. 349). The Arab divisions are styled *manâzil al-ḳamar*, "lunar mansions, stations of the moon," being brought into special connection with the moon's revolution; they are marked, like the Hindu "portions," by groups of stars. The first extended comparison of the Hindu asterisms and the Arab mansions was made by Sir William Jones, in the second volume of the Asiatic Researches, for 1790: it was, however, only a rude and imperfect sketch, and led its author to no valuable or trustworthy conclusions. The same comparison was taken up later, with vastly more learning and acuteness, by Colebrooke, whose valuable article, published also in the Asiatic Researches, for 1807 (ix. 323, etc.; Essays ii. 321, etc.), has ever since remained the chief source of knowledge respecting the Hindu asterisms and their relation to the lunar mansions of the Arabs. To Anquetil (as above) is due the credit of the first suggestion of a coincidence between the Pârsî, Hindu, and Chinese systems: but he did nothing more than suggest it: the origin, character, and use of the Chinese divisions were first established, and

their primitive identity with the Hindu asterisms demonstrated, by Biot, in a series of articles published in the Journal des Savants for 1840: and he has more recently, in the volume of the same Journal for 1859, reviewed and restated his former exposition and conclusions. These we shall present more fully hereafter: at present it will be enough to say that the Chinese divisions are equatorial, not zodiacal; that they are named *sieu*, "mansions"; and that they are the intervals in right ascension between certain single stars, which are also called *sieu*, and have the same title with the divisions which they introduce. We propose to present here a summary comparison of the Hindu, Arab, and Chinese systems, in connection with an identification of the stars and groups of stars forming the Hindu asterisms, and with the statement of such information respecting the latter, beyond that given in our text, as will best contribute to a full understanding of their character.

The identification of the asterisms is founded upon the positions of their principal or junction-stars, as stated in the astronomical text-books, upon the relative places of these stars in the groups of which they form a part, and upon the number of stars composing each group, and the figure by which their arrangement is represented: in a few cases, too, the names themselves of the asterisms are distinctive, and assist the identification. The number and configuration of the stars forming the groups are not stated in our text; we derive them mainly from Colebrooke, although ourselves also having had access to, and compared, most of his authorities, namely the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, the Muhûrta-Cintâmaṇi, and the Ratnamâlâ (as cited by Jones, As. Res., ii. 294). Sir William Jones, it may be remarked, furnishes (As. Res., ii. 293, plate) an engraved copy of drawings made by a native artist of the figures assigned to the asterisms. For the number of stars in each group we have an additional authority in al-Birûnî, the Arab savant of the eleventh century, who travelled in India, and studied with especial care the Hindu astronomy. The information furnished by him with regard to the asterisms we derive from Biot, in the Journal des Savants for 1845 (pp. 39–54); it professes to be founded upon the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka* of Brahmagupta. Al-Birûnî also gives an identification of the asterisms, so far as the Hindu astronomers of his day were able to furnish it to him, which was only in part: he is obliged to mark seven or eight of the series as unknown or doubtful. He speaks very slightingly of the practical acquaintance with the heavens possessed by the Hindus of his time, and they certainly have not since improved in this respect; the modern investigators of the same subject, as Jones and Colebrooke, also complain of the impossibility of obtaining from the native astronomers of India satisfactory identifications of the asterisms and their junction-stars. The translator, in like manner, spent much time and effort in the attempt to derive such information from his native assistant, but was able to arrive at no results which could constitute any valuable addition to those of Colebrooke. It is evident that for centuries past, as at present, the native

* The true form of the name is not altogether certain, it being known only through its Arabic transcription: it seems to designate rather a chapter in a treatise than a complete work of its author.

tradition has been of no decisive authority as regards the position and composition of the groups of stars constituting the asterisms: these must be determined upon the evidence of the more ancient data handed down in the astronomical treatises.

In order to an exact comparison of the positions of the junction-stars as defined by the Hindus with those of stars contained in our catalogues, we have reduced the polar longitudes and latitudes to true longitudes and latitudes, by the following formulas (see Fig. 30):

$$(1 \div \cos Aa) \cot ELC = \tan Sab$$
$$\sin Sab \sin Sa = \sin Sb$$
$$\tan Sb \cot Sab = \sin ab$$

A a being the polar longitude as stated in the text ($= La + 180°$), *S a the polar latitude, E L C the inclination of the ecliptic, S b the true latitude,* and *a b* a quantity to be added to or subtracted from the polar longitude to give the true longitude. The true positions of the stars compared we take from Flamsteed's Catalogus Brittanicus, subtracting in each case 15° 42′ from the longitudes there given, in order to reduce them to distances from the vernal equinox of A. D. 560, assumed to coincide with the initial point of the Hindu sphere. There is some discordance among the different Hindu authorities, as regards the stated positions of the junction-stars of the asterisms. The Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, indeed, agrees in every point precisely with the Sûrya-Siddhânta. But the Siddhânta-Çiromani often gives a somewhat different value to the polar longitude or latitude, or both. With it, so far as the longitude is concerned, exactly accord the Brahma-Siddhânta, as reported by Colebrooke, and the Khanda-Kataka, as reported by al-Bîrûnî. The latitudes of the Brahma-Siddhânta also are virtually the same with those of the Siddhânta-Çiromani, their differences never amounting, save in a single instance, to more than 3′: but the latitudes of the Khanda-Kataka often vary considerably from both. The Graha-Lâghava, the only other authority accessible to us, presents a series of variations of its own, independent of those of either of the other treatises. All these differences are reported by us below, in treating of each separate asterism. The presiding divinities of the asterisms we give upon the authority of the Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ (iv. 4. 10. 1–3), the Tâittirîya-Brâhmana (iii. 1. 1, 2, as cited by Weber, Zeitsch. f. d. K. d. Morg., vii. 266 etc., and Ind. Stud., i. 90 etc.), the Muhûrta-Cintâmani, and Colebrooke: those of about half the asterisms are also indirectly given in our text, in the form of appellations for the asterisms derived from them.

The names and situations of the Arab lunar stations are taken from Ideler's Untersuchungen über die Sternnamen: for the Chinese mansions and their determining stars we rely solely upon the articles of Biot, to which we have already referred.

It has seemed to us advisable, notwithstanding the prior treatment by Colebrooke of the same subject, to enter into a careful re-examination and identification of the Hindu asterisms, because we could not accept in the bulk, and without modification, the conclusions at which he arrived. The identifications by Ideler of the Arab mansions, more thorough and correct than any which had been previously made, and Biot's comparison of the Chinese *sieu*, have placed new and valuable materials in our

hands: and these—together with a more exact comparison than was attempted by Colebrooke of the positions given by the Hindus to their junction-stars with the data of the modern catalogues, and a new and independent combination of the various materials which he himself furnishes—while they have led us to accept the greater number of his identifications, often establishing them more confidently than he was able to do, have also enabled us in many cases to alter and amend his results. Such a re-examination was necessary, in order to furnish safe ground for a more detailed comparison of the three systems, which, as will be seen hereafter, leads to important conclusions respecting their historical relations to one another.

1. *Açvinî; this treatise exhibits the form açvini; in the older lists*, as also often elsewhere, we have the dual *açvinâu*, *açvayujâu*, "the two horsemen, or Açvins." The Açvins are personages in the ancient Hindu mythology somewhat nearly corresponding to the Castor and Pollux of the Greeks. They are the divinities of the asterism, which is named from them. The group is figured as a horse's head, doubtless in allusion to its presiding deities, and not from any imagined resemblance. The dual name leads us to expect to find it composed of two stars, and that is the number allotted to the asterism by the Çâkalya and Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka. The Sûrya-Siddhânta (below, v. 16) designates the northern member of the group as its junction-star: that this is the star β Arietis (magn. 3.2), and not α Arietis (magn. 2), as assumed by Colebrooke, is shown by the following comparison of positions:

Açvinî	long., A. D. 560,	11° 59′	lat.	9° 11′ N.
β Arietis . . .	do.	13° 56′	do.	8° 28′ N.
α Arietis . . .	do.	17° 37′	do.	9° 57′ N.

Colebrooke was misled in this instance by adopting, for the number of stars in the asterism, three, as stated by the later authorities, and then applying to the group as thus composed the designation given by our text of the relative position of the junction-star as the northern, and he accordingly overlooked the very serious error in the determination of the longitude thence resulting. Indeed, throughout his comparison, he gives too great weight to the determination of latitude, and too little to that of longitude: we shall see farther on that the accuracy of the latter is, upon the whole, much more to be depended upon than that of the former.

Considered as a group of two stars, Açvinî is composed of β and γ Arietis (magn. 4.3); as a group of three, it comprises also α in the same constellation.

There is no discordance among the different authorities examined by us as regards the position of the junction-star of Açvinî, either in latitude or in longitude. The case is the same with the 8th, 10th, 12th, and 13th asterisms, and with them alone.

The first Arab *manzil* is likewise composed of β and γ Arietis, to which some add α: it is called ash-Sharaṭân, "the two tokens"—that is to say, of the opening year.

The Chinese series of *sieu* commences, as did anciently the Hindu system of asterisms, with that which is later the third asterism. The

twenty-seventh *sieu*, named Leu (M. Biot has omitted to give us the signification of these titles), is β Arietis, the Hindu junction-star.

2. *Bharaṇî;* also, as plural, *bharaṇyas;* from the root *bhar*, "carry": in the Tâittirîya lists the form *apabharaṇî*, "bearer away," in singular and plural, is also found. Its divinity is Yama, the ruler of the world of departed spirits; it is figured as the *yoni*, or pudendum muliebre. All authorities agree in assigning it three stars, and the southernmost is pointed out below (v. 18) as its junction-star. The group is unquestionably to be identified with the triangle of faint stars lying north of the back of the Ram, or 35, 39, and 41 Arietis: they are figured by some as a distinct constellation, under the name of Musca Borealis. The designation of the southern as the junction-star is not altogether unambiguous, as 35 and 41 were, in A. D. 560, very nearly equidistant from the equator; the latter would seem more likely to be the one intended, since it is nearer the ecliptic, and the brightest of the group—being of the third magnitude, while the other two are of the fourth: the defined position, however, agrees better with 35, and the error in longitude, as compared with 41, is greater than that of any other star in the series:

Bharaṇî	24° 35′	11° 6′ N.
35 Arietis (*a* Muscæ) . .	26° 54′	11° 17′ N.
41 Arietis (*c* Muscæ) . .	28° 10′	10° 26′ N.

The Graha-Lâghava gives Bharaṇî 1° more of polar longitude: this would reduce by the same amount the error in the determination of its longitude by the other authorities.

The second Arab *manzil*, al-Buṭain, "the little belly"—i. e., of the Ram—is by most authorities defined as comprising the three stars in the haunch of the Ram, or ε, δ, and ϱ^3 (or else ζ) Arietis. Some, however, have regarded it as the same with Musca; and we cannot but think that al-Bîrûnî, in identifying, as he does, Bharaṇî with al-Buṭain, meant to indicate by the latter name the group of which the Hindu asterism is actually composed.

The last Chinese *sieu*, Oei, is the star 35 Arietis, or *a* Muscæ.

3. *Kṛttikâ;* or, as plural, *kṛttikâs:* the appellative meaning of the word is doubtful. The regent of the asterism is Agni, the god of fire. The group, composed of six stars, is that known to us as the Pleiades. It is figured by some as a flame, doubtless in allusion to its presiding divinity: the more usual representation of it is a razor, and in the choice of this symbol is to be recognized the influence of the etymology of the name, which may be derived from the root *kart*, "cut;" in the configuration of the group, too, may be seen, by a sufficiently prosaic eye, a broad-bladed knife, with a short handle. If the designation given below (v. 18) of the southern member of the group as its junction-star, be strictly true, this is not Alcyone, or η Tauri (magn. 3), the brightest of the six, but either Atlas (27 Tauri: magn. 4) or Merope (23 Tauri: magn. 5): the two latter were very nearly equally distant from the equator of A. D. 560, but Atlas is a little nearer to the ecliptic. The defined position agrees best with Alcyone, nor can we hesitate to regard this as actually the junction-star of the asterism. We compare the positions below:

Kṛttikâ	39° 8′	4° 44′ N.
Alcyone	39° 58′	4° 1′ N.
27 Tauri	40° 20′	3° 53′ N.
23 Tauri	39° 41′	3° 55′ N.

The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. give Kṛttikâ 2′ less of polar longitude than the Sûrya-Siddhânta, and the Graha-Lâghava, on the other hand, 30′ more: the latter, with the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, agree with our text as regards the polar latitude, which the others reckon at 4° 30′, instead of 5°.

The Pleiades constitute the third *manzil* of the Arabs, which is denominated ath-Thuraiyâ, "the little thick-set group," or an-Najm, "the constellation." Alcyone is likewise the first Chinese *sieu*, which is styled Mao.

4. *Rohiṇî*, "ruddy"; so named from the hue of its principal star. Prajâpati, "the lord of created beings," is the divinity of the asterism. It contains five stars, in the grouping of which Hindu fancy has seen the figure of a wain (compare v. 13, below); some, however, figure it as a temple. The constellation is the well-known one in the face of Taurus to which we give the name of the Hyades, containing ϵ, δ, γ, ϑ, α Tauri; the latter, the most easterly (v. 19) and the brightest of the group—being the brilliant star of the first magnitude known as Aldebaran—is the junction-star, as is shown by the annexed comparison of positions:

Rohiṇî	48° 9′	4° 49′ S.
Aldebaran	49° 45′	5° 30′ S.

The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. here again present the insignificant variation from the polar longitude of our text, of 2′ less: the former also makes its polar latitude 4° 30′: the Graha-Lâghava reads, for the polar longitude, 49°. All these variations add to the error of defined position.

The fourth Arab *manzil* is composed of the Hyades: its name is ad-Dabarân, "the follower"—i. e., of the Pleiades. We would suggest the inquiry whether this name may not be taken as an indication that the Arab system of mansions once began, like the Chinese, and like the Hindu system originally, with the Pleiades. There is, certainly, no very obvious propriety in naming any but the second of a series the "following" (*sequens* or *secundus*). Modern astronomy has retained the title as that of the principal star in the group, to which alone it was often also applied by the Arabs.

The second Chinese *sieu*, Pi, is the northernmost member of the same group, or ϵ Tauri, a star of the third to fourth magnitude.

5. *Mṛgaçîrsha*, or *mṛgaçiras*, "antelope's head": with this name the figure assigned to the asterism corresponds: the reason for the designation we have not been able to discover. Its divinity is Soma, or the moon. It contains three stars, of which the northern (v. 16) is the determinative. These three can be no other than the faint cluster in the head of Orion, or λ, φ^1, φ^2 Orionis, although the Hindu measurement of the position of the junction-star, λ (magn. 4), is far from accurate, especially as regards its latitude:

Mṛgaçîrsha	61° 3′	9° 49′ S.
λ Orionis	63° 40′	13° 25′ S.

In this erroneous determination of the latitude all authorities agree: the Graha-Lâghava adds 1° to the error in polar longitude, reading 62° instead of 63°.

Here again there is an entire harmony among the three systems compared. The Arab *manzil*, al-Hak'ah, is composed of the same stars which make up the Hindu asterism: the third *sieu*, named Tse, is the Hindu junction-star, λ Orionis.

6. *Ârdrâ*, "moist:" the appellation very probably has some meteorological ground, which we have not traced out: this is indicated also by the choice of Rudra, the storm-god, as regent of the asterism. It comprises a single star only, and is figured as a gem. It is impossible not to regard the bright star of the first magnitude in Orion's right shoulder, or α Orionis, as the one here meant to be designated, notwithstanding the very grave errors in the definition of its position given by our text: the only visible star of which the situation at all nearly answers to that definition is 135 Tauri, of the sixth magnitude; we add its position below, with that of α Orionis:

Ârdrâ	65° 50′	8° 53′ S.
α Orionis	68° 43′	16° 4′ S.
135 Tauri	67° 38′	9° 10′ S.

The distance from the sun at which the heliacal rising and setting of Ârdrâ is stated below (ix. 14) to take place would indicate a star of about the third magnitude; this adds to the difficulty of its identification with either of the two stars compared. We confess ourselves unable to account for the confusion existing with regard to this asterism, of which al-Bîrûnî also could obtain no intelligible account from his Indian teachers. But it is to be observed that all the authorities, excepting our text and the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, give Ârdrâ 11° of polar latitude instead of 9°, which would reduce the error of latitude, as compared with α Orionis, to an amount very little greater than will be met with in one or two other cases below, where the star is situated south of the ecliptic; and it is contrary to all the analogies of the system that a faint star should have been selected to form by itself an asterism. The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. make the polar longitude of the asterism 20′ less than that given by the Sûrya-Siddhânta, and the Graha-Lâghava 1° 20′ less: these would add so much to the error of longitude.

Here, for the first time, the three systems which we are comparing disagree with one another entirely. The Chinese have adopted for the determinative of their fourth *sieu*, which is styled Tsan, the upper star in Orion's belt, or δ Orionis (2)—a strange and arbitrary selection, for which M. Biot is unable to find any explanation. The Arabs have established their sixth station close to the ecliptic, in the feet of Pollux, naming it al-Han'ah, "the pile": it comprises the two stars γ (2.3) and ξ (4.3) Geminorum: some authorities, however, extend the limits of the mansion so far as to include also the stars in the foot of the other twin, or η, ν, μ Geminorum; of which the latter is the next Chinese *sieu*.

7. *Punarvasu;* in all the more ancient lists the name appears as a dual, *punarvasû*: it is derived from *punar*, "again," and *vasu*, "good, brilliant": the reason of the designation is not apparent. The regent

of the asterism is Aditi, the mother of the Âdityas. Its dual title indicates that it is composed of two stars, of nearly equal brilliancy, and two is the number allotted to it by the Çâkalya and Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, the eastern being pointed out below (v. 19) as the junction-star. The pair are the two bright stars in the heads of the Twins, or α and β Geminorum, and the latter (1.2) is the junction-star. The comparison of positions is as follows:

Punarvasu	92° 52′	6° 0′ N.
β Geminorum	93° 14′	6° 39′ N.

The Graha-Lâghava adds 1° to the polar longitude of Punarvasu as stated by the other authorities.

Four stars are by some assigned to this asterism, and with that number corresponds the representation of its arrangement by the figure of a house: it is quite uncertain which of the neighboring stars of the same constellation are to be added to those above mentioned to form the group of four, but we think ι (magn. 4) and υ (5) those most likely to have been chosen: Colebrooke suggests ϑ (3.4) and τ (5.4).

The determinative of the fifth *sieu*, Tsing, is μ Geminorum (3), which, as we have seen, is reckoned among the stars composing the sixth *manzil:* the seventh *manzil* includes, like the Hindu asterism, α and β Geminorum: it is named adh-Dhirâ', "the paw"—i. e., of the Lion; the figure of Leo (see Ideler, p. 152 etc.) being by the Arabs so stretched out as to cover parts of Gemini, Cancer, Canis Minor, and other neighboring constellations.

8. *Pushya;* from the root *push*, "nourish, thrive"; another frequent name, which is the one employed by our treatise, is *tishya*, which is translated "auspicious"; Amara gives also *sidhya*, "prosperous." Its divinity is Bṛhaspati, the priest and teacher of the gods. It comprises three stars—the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka alone seems to give it but one—of which the middle one is the junction-star of the asterism. This is shown by the position assigned to it to be δ Cancri (4):

Pushya	106° 0′	0° 0′
δ Cancri	108° 42′	0° 4′ N.

The other two are doubtless γ (4.5) and ϑ (6) of the same constellation: the asterism is figured as a crescent and as an arrow, and the arrangement of the group admits of being regarded as representing a crescent, or the barbed head of an arrow. Were the arrow the only figure given, it might be possible to regard the group as composed of γ, ϑ, and β (4), the latter representing the head of the arrow, and the nebulous cluster, Præsepe, between γ and ϑ, the feathering of its shaft: ϑ (105° 43′—0° 48′ S.) would then be the junction-star.

The Arab *manzil*, an-Nathrah, "the nose-gap"—i. e., of the Lion—comprises γ and δ Cancri, together with Præsepe; or, according to some authorities, Præsepe alone. The sixth *sieu*, Kuei, is ϑ Cancri, a star which is, at present, only with difficulty distinguished by the naked eye. Ptolemy rates it as of the fourth magnitude, like γ and δ: perhaps it is one of the stars of which the brilliancy has sensibly diminished during the past two or three thousand years, or else a variable star of very long period. The possibility of such changes requires to be taken into account, in comparing our heavens with those of so remote a past.

9. *Âçleshâ ;* or, as plural, *âçleshâs;* the word is also written *âçreshâ:* its appellative meaning is "entwiner, embracer." With the name accord the divinities to whom the regency of the asterism is assigned, which are *sarpâs*, the serpents. The number of stars in the group is stated as five by all the authorities excepting the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, which reads six: their configuration is represented by a wheel. The star α Cancri (4) is pointed out by Colebrooke as the junction-star of Âçleshâ, apparently from the near correspondence of its latitude with that assigned to the latter, for he says nothing in connection with it of his native helpers: but α Cancri is not the eastern (v. 19) member of any group of five stars; nor, indeed, is it a member of any distinct group at all. Now the name, figure, and divinity of Âçleshâ are all distinctive, and point to a constellation of a bent or circular form: and if we go a little farther southward from the ecliptic, we find precisely such a constellation, and one containing, moreover, the corresponding Chinese determinative. The group is that in the head of Hydra, or η, σ, δ, ε, ρ Hydræ, σ and ρ being of the fifth magnitude, and the rest of the fourth: their arrangement is conspicuously circular. There can be no doubt, therefore, that the situation of the asterism is in the head of Hydra, and ε Hydræ, its brightest star (being rated in the Greenw. Cat. as of magnitude 3.4, while δ is 4.5), is the junction-star:

Âçleshâ	109° 59′	6° 56′ S.
ε Hydræ	112° 20′	11° 8′ S.
α Cancri	113° 5′	5° 31′ S.

The error of the Hindu determination of the latitude is, indeed, very considerable, yet not greater than we are compelled to accept in one or two other cases. The Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka increases it 1°, giving the asterism 6° instead of 7° of polar latitude. The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. deduct 1° from the polar longitude of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, and the Graha-Lâghava deducts 2°: both variations would add to the error in longitude.

The Arab *manzil* is, in this instance, far removed from the Hindu asterism, being composed of ξ Cancri (5) and λ Leonis (5.4), and called aṭ-Ṭarf, "the look"—i. e., of the Lion. The seventh Chinese *sieu*, Lieu, is, as already noticed, included in the Hindu group, being δ Hydræ.

10. *Maghâ ;* or, as plural, *maghâs ;* "mighty." The *pitaras*, Fathers, or *manes* of the departed, are the regents of the asterism, which is figured as a house. It is, according to most authorities, composed of five stars, of which the southern (v. 18) is the junction-star. Four of these must be the bright stars in the neck and side of the Lion, or ζ, γ, η, and α Leonis, of magnitudes 4.5, 2, 3.4, and 1.2 respectively; but which should be the fifth is not easy to determine, for there is no other single star which seems to form naturally a member of the same group with these: ν (5), π (5), or ρ (4) might be forced into a connection with them. This difficulty would be removed by adopting, with the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, six as the number of stars included in the asterism: it would then be composed of all the stars forming the conspicuous constellation familiarly known as "the Sickle." The star α Leonis, or Regulus, the most brilliant of the group, is the junction-star, and its position is defined with unusual precision:

Maghâ	129° 0′	0° 0′
Regulus	129° 49′	0° 27′ N.

The tenth *manzil*, aj-Jabhah, "the forehead"—i. e., of the Lion—is also composed of ζ, γ, η, α Leonis.

The eighth, ninth, and tenth *sieu* of the Chinese system altogether disagree in position with the groups marking the Hindu and Arab mansions, being situated far to the southward of the ecliptic, in proximity, according to Biot, to the equator of the period when they were established. The eighth, Sing, is α Hydræ (2), having longitude (A. D. 560) 127° 16′, latitude 22° 25′ S.

11, 12. *Phalgunî*; or, as plural, *phalgunyas*; the dual, *phalgunyâu*, is also found: this treatise presents the derivative form *phâlgunî*, which is not infrequently employed elsewhere. The word is likewise used to designate a species of fig-tree: its derivation, and its meaning, as applied to the asterisms, is unknown to us. Here, as in two other instances, later (the 20th and 21st, and the 26th and 27th asterisms), we have two groups called by the same name, and distinguished from one another as *pûrva* and *uttara*, "former" and "latter"—that is to say, coming earlier and later to their meridian-transit. The true original character and composition of these three double asterisms has been, if we are not mistaken, not a little altered and obscured in the description of them furnished to us; owing, apparently, to the ignorance or carelessness of the describers, and especially to their not having clearly distinguished the characteristics of the combined constellation from those of its separate parts. In each case, a couch or bedstead (*çayyâ*, *mañca*, *paryanka*) is given as the figure of one or both of the parts, and we recognize in them all the common characteristic of a constellation of four stars, forming together a regular oblong figure, which admits of being represented—not unsuitably, if rather prosaically—by a bed. This figure, in the case of the Phalgunîs, is composed of δ, ϑ, β, and 93 Leonis, a very distinct and well-marked constellation, containing two stars, δ and β, of the second to third magnitude, one, ϑ, of the third, and one, 93, of the fourth. The symbol of a bed, properly belonging to the whole constellation, is given by all the authorities to both the two parts into which it is divided. Each of these latter has two stars assigned to it, and the junction-stars are said (v. 18) to be the northern. The first group is, then, clearly identifiable as δ and ϑ Leonis, the former and brighter being the distinctive star:

Pûrva-Phalgunî	139° 58′	11° 19′ N.
δ Leonis	141° 15′	14° 19′ N.
ϑ Leonis	143° 24′	9° 40′ N.

The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc., and the Graha-Lâghava, give Pûrva-Phalgunî respectively 3° and 4° more of polar longitude than the Sûrya-Siddhânta. These are more notable variations than are found in any other case, and they appear to us to indicate that these treatises intend to designate ϑ, the southern member of the group, as its junction-star: we have accordingly added its position also above.

In the latter group, the junction-star is evidently β Leonis:

Uttara-Phalgunî	150° 10′	12° 5′ N.
β Leonis	151° 37′	12° 17′ N.

This star, however, is not the northern, but the southern, of the two composing the asterism: its description as the southern we cannot but regard as simply an error, founded on a misapprehension of the composition of the double group. To al-Bîrûnî, β Leonis and another star to the northward, in the Arab constellation Coma Berenices, were pointed out as forming the asterism Uttara-Phalgunî. The Çâkalya gives it five stars, probably adding to β Leonis the four small stars in the head of the Virgin, ξ^1, ν, π, and o, of magnitudes four to five and five.

The regents of Pûrva and Uttara-Phalgunî are Bhaga and Aryaman, or Aryaman and Bhaga, two of the Âdityas.

The two corresponding Arab mansions are called az-Zubrah, "the mane"—i. e., of the Lion—and as-Sarfah, "the turn": they agree as nearly as possible with the Hindu asterisms, the former being composed of δ and ϑ Leonis, the latter of β Leonis alone. The Chinese *sieu*, named respectively Chang and Y, are υ^1 Hydræ (5)* and α Crateris (4).

13. *Hasta*, "hand." Savitar, the sun, is regent of the asterism, which, in accordance with its name, is figured as a hand, and contains five stars, corresponding to the five fingers. These are the five principal stars in the constellation Corvus, a well-marked group, which bears, however, no very conspicuous resemblance to a hand. The stars are named—counting from the thumb around to the little finger, according to our apprehension of the figure—β, α, ε, γ, and δ Corvi. The text gives below (v. 17) a very special description of the situation of the junction-star in the group, but one which is unfortunately quite hard to understand and apply: we regard it as most probable, however (see note to v. 17), that γ (3) is the star intended: the defined position, in which all the authorities agree, would point rather to δ (3):

Hasta	174° 22′	10° 6′ S.
γ Corvi	170° 44′	14° 29′ S.
δ Corvi	173° 27′	12° 10′ S.

The Hindu and Chinese systems return, in this asterism, to an accordance with one another: the eleventh *sieu*, Chin, is the star γ Corvi. The Arab system holds its own independent course one point farther: its thirteenth mansion comprises the five bright stars β, η, γ, δ, ε Virginis, which form two sides, measuring about 15° each, of a great triangle: the mansion is named al-Auwâ', "the barking dog."

14. *Citrâ*, "brilliant." This is the beautiful star of the first magnitude α Virginis, or Spica, constituting an asterism by itself, and figured as a pearl or as a lamp. Its divinity is Tvashtar, "the shaper, artificer." Its longitude is very erroneously defined by the Sûrya-Siddhânta:

Citrâ	180° 48′	1° 50′ S.
Spica	183° 49′	2° 2′ S.

All the other authorities, however, saving the Çâkalya, remove this error, by giving Citrâ 183° of polar longitude, instead of 180°. The only variation from the definition of latitude made by our text is offered by the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi, which, varying for once from the Brahma-Siddhânta, reads 1° 45′ instead of 2°.

* It is, apparently, by an original error of the press, that M. Biot, in all his tables, calls this star ν^1.

Spica is likewise the fourteenth *manzil* of the Arabs, styled by them as-Simâk, and the twelfth *sieu* of the Chinese, who call it Kio.

15. *Svâti*, or *svâti*; the word is said to mean "sword." The Tâittirîya-Brâhmaṇa calls the asterism *nishṭyâ*, "outcast," possibly from its remote northern situation. It is, like the last, an asterism comprising but a single brilliant star, which is figured as a coral bead, gem, or pearl. In the definition of its latitude all authorities agree; the Graha-Lâghava makes its polar longitude 198° only, instead of 199°. The star intended is plainly α Bootis, or Arcturus:

Svâtî	183° 2′	33° 50′ N.
Arcturus	184° 12′	30° 57′ N.

In this instance, the Hindus have gone far beyond the limits of the zodiac, in order to bring into their series of asterisms a brilliant star from the northern heavens: the other two systems agree in remaining near the ecliptic. The fourteenth Chinese *sieu*, Kang, is κ Virginis (4.5): the Arab *manzil*, al-Ghafr, "the covering," includes the same star, together with ι, and either λ or φ Virginis.

16. *Viçâkhâ*, "having spreading branches": in all the earlier lists the name appears as a dual, *viçâkhe*. The asterism is also placed under the regency of a dual divinity, *indrâgnî*, Indra and Agni. We should expect, then, to find it composed, like the other two dual asterisms, the 1st and 7th, of two stars, nearly equal in brilliancy, and two is actually the number assigned to the group by the Çâkalya and the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka. Now the only two stars in this region of the zodiac forming a conspicuous pair are α and β Libræ, both of the second magnitude, and as these two compose the corresponding Arab mansion, while the former of them is the Chinese *sieu*, we have the strongest reasons for supposing them to constitute the Hindu asterism also. There are, however, difficulties in the way of this assumption. The later authorities give Viçâkhâ four stars, and the defined position of the junction-star identifies it neither with α nor β, but with the faint star ι (4.3) in the the same constellation. Colebrooke, overlooking this star, suggests α or κ Libræ (5): the following comparison of positions will show that neither of them can be the one meant to be pointed out:

Viçâkhâ	213° 31′	1° 25′ S.
ι Libræ	211° 0′	1° 48′ S.
α Libræ	205° 5′	0° 23′ N.
κ Libræ	217° 45′	0° 2′ N.

The group is figured as a *torana:* this word Jones and Colebrooke translate "festoon," but its more proper meaning is "an outer door or gate, a decorated gateway." And if we change the designation of situation of the junction-star in its group, given below (v. 16), from "northern" to "southern," we find without difficulty a quadrangle of stars, viz. ι, α, β, γ (4.5) Libræ, which admits very well of being figured as a gateway. Nor is it, in our opinion, taking an unwarrantable liberty to make such an alteration. The whole scheme of designations we regard as of inferior authenticity, and as partaking of the confusion and uncertainty of the later knowledge of the Hindus respecting their system of asterisms. That they were long ago doubtful of the position of Viçâkhâ

is shown by the fact that al-Bîrûnî was obliged to mark it in his list as "unknown." Very probably the Sûrya-Siddhânta, in calling ι the northern member of the group, intended to include with it only the star 20 Libræ (3.4), situated about 6° to the south of it. Upon the whole, then, while we regard the identification of Viçâkhâ as in some respects more doubtful than that of any other asterism in the series, we yet believe that it was originally composed of the two stars α and β Libræ, and that later the group was extended to include also ι and γ, and, as so extended, was figured as a gateway. The selection, contrary to general usage, of the faintest star in the group as its junction-star, may have been made in order to insure against the reversion of the asterism to its original dual form.

The variations of the other authorities from the position as stated in our text are of small importance: the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. give Viçâkhâ 55′ less of polar longitude, and the Graha-Lâghava 1° less; of polar latitude, the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi gives it 10′, the Graha-Lâghava 30′ less; the Khaṇḍa-Kataka agrees here, as also in the two following asterisms, with the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

The sixteenth Arab *manzil*, comprising, as already noticed, α and β *Libræ*, is styled *az-Zubânân*, "the two claws"—i. e., of the Scorpion: the name of the corresponding Chinese mansion, having for its determinative α Libræ, is Ti.

17. *Anurâdhâ;* or, as plural, *anurâdhâs:* the word means "success." The divinity is Mitra, "friend," one of the Âdityas. According to the Çâkalya, the asterism is composed of three stars, and with this our text plainly agrees, by designating (v. 18) the middle as the junction-star: all the other authorities give it four stars. As a group of three, it comprises β, δ, π Scorpionis, δ (2.3) being the junction-star; as the fourth member we are doubtless to add ϱ Scorpionis (5.4). It is figured as a *bali* or *vali;* this Colebrooke translates "a row of oblations"; we do not find, however, that the word, although it means both "oblation, offering," and "a row, fold, ridge," is used to designate the two combined: perhaps it may better be taken as simply "a row;" the stars of the asterism, whether considered as three or four, being disposed in nearly a straight line. The comparison of positions is as follows:

Anurâdhâ	224° 44′	2° 52′ S.
δ Scorpionis . . .	222° 34′	1° 57′ S.

The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi and Graha-Lâghava estimate the latitude of Anurâdhâ somewhat more accurately, deducting from the polar latitude, as given by our text, 1° 15′ and 1° respectively: the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. also add the insignificant amount of 5′ to the polar longitude of the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

The corresponding Arab *manzil*, named al-Iklîl, "the crown," contains also the three stars β, δ, π Scorpionis, some authorities adding ϱ to the group. The Chinese *sieu*, Fang, is π (3), the southernmost and the faintest of the three.

18. *Jyeshṭhâ*, "oldest." The Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ, in its list of asterisms, repeats here the name *rohinî*, "ruddy," which we have had above as that of the 4th asterism: the appellation has the same ground in this

as in the other case, the junction-star of Jyeshṭhâ being also one of those which shine with a reddish light. The regent is Indra, the god of the clear sky. The group contains, according to all the authorities, three stars, and the central one (v. 18) is the junction-star. This is the brilliant star of the first magnitude α Scorpionis, or Antares; its two companions are σ (3.4) and τ (3.4) in the same constellation:

Jyeshthâ	230° 7′	3° 50′ S.
Antares	229° 44′	4° 31′ S.

The constellation is figured as a ring, or ear-ring; by this may be understood, perhaps, a pendent ear-jewel, as the three stars of Jyeshṭhâ form nearly a straight line, with the brightest in the middle.

The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi and Graha-Lâghava add to the polar longitude of the junction-star of the asterism, as stated in our text, 5′ and 1° respectively, and they deduct from its polar latitude 30′ and 1° respectively, making the definition of its position in both respects less accurate.

Antares forms the eighteenth *manzil,* and is styled al-Ḳalb, "the heart"—i. e., of the Scorpion: σ and τ are called an-Niyât, "the *præcordia.*" The Chinese *sieu*, Sin, is the westernmost of the three, or σ.

19. *Mûla*, "root." The presiding divinity of the asterism is *nirṛti*, "calamity," who is also regent of the south-western quarter. It comprises, according to the Çâkalya, nine stars; their configuration is represented by a lion's tail. The stars intended are those in the tail of the Scorpion, or ϵ, μ, ζ, η, ϑ, ι, $\varkappa$, υ, λ Scorpionis, all of them of the third, or third to fourth, magnitude. Other authorities count eleven stars in the group, probably reckoning μ and ζ as four stars; each being, in fact, a group of two closely approximate stars, named in our catalogues μ^1 (3), μ^2 (4), ζ^1 (4.5), ζ^2 (3). The Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka alone gives Mûla only two stars, which are identified by al-Bîrûnî with the Arab *manzil* ash-Shaulah, or λ and υ Scorpionis. The Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ, too, gives the name of the asterism as *vicṛtâu*, "the two releasers": the Vicṛtâu are several times spoken of in the Atharva-Veda as two stars of which the rising promotes relief from lingering disease (*kshetriya*): it is accordingly probable that these are the two stars in the sting of the Scorpion, and that they alone have been regarded by some as composing the asterism: their healing virtue would doubtless be connected with the meteorological conditions of the time at which their heliacal rising takes place. Our text (v. 19) designates the eastern member of the group as its junction-star: it is uncertain whether the direction is meant to apply to the group of two, or to that of nine stars: if, as seems probable, λ is the star pointed out by the definition of position, it is strictly true only of the pair λ and υ, since ι, $\varkappa$, and ϑ are all farther eastward than λ:

Mûla	242° 52′	8° 48′ S.
λ Scorpionis . . .	244° 53′	13° 44′ S.

The Graha-Lâghava gives a more accurate statement of the longitude, adding 1° to the polar longitude as defined by all the other authorities: but it increases the error in latitude, by deducting 1° from that presented by our text: the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi, in like manner, deducts 30′, while the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka adds the same amount.

The Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ makes *pitaras*, the Fathers, the presiding divinities of this asterism, as well as of the tenth.

Bentley states (Hind. Astr., p. 5) that Mûla was originally reckoned as the first of the asterisms, and was therefore so named, as being their root or origin; also that, at another time, or in a different system, the series was made to begin with Jyeshṭhâ, which thence received its title of "eldest." These statements are put forth with characteristic recklessness, and apparently, like a great many others in his pretended history of Hindu astronomy, upon the unsupported authority of his own conjecture. It is, in many cases, by no means easy to discover reasons for the particular appellations by which the asterisms are designated: but we would suggest that Mûla may perhaps have been so named from its being considerably the lowest, or farthest to the southward, of the whole series of asterisms, and hence capable of being looked upon as the root out of which they had grown up the heavens. It would even be possible to trace the same conception farther, and to regard Jyeshṭhâ as so styled because it was the first, or "oldest," outgrowth from this root, while the Viçâkhe, "the two diverging branches," were the stars in which the series broke into two lines, the one proceeding northward, to Svâtî or Arcturus, the other westward, to Citrâ or Spica. We throw out the conjecture for what it may be worth, not being ourselves at all confident of its accordance with the truth.

The nineteenth Arab *manzil* is styled ash-Shaulah, "the sting"—i. e., of the Scorpion—and comprises, as already noticed, υ and λ Scorpionis. The determinative of the seventeenth *sieu*, Uei, is included in the Hindu asterism, being μ^2 Scorpionis.

20, 21. *Ashâḍhâ*; or, as plural, *ashâḍhâs*; this treatise presents the derivative form *âshâḍhâ*, which is not infrequent elsewhere: the word means "unsubdued." Here, again, we have a double group, divided into two asterisms, which are distinguished as *pûrva* and *uttara*, "former and latter." Their respective divinities are *âpas*, "the waters," and *viçve devâs*, "the collective gods." Two stars are ordinarily allotted to each asterism, and in each case the northern is designated (v. 16) as the junction-star. By some authorities each group is figured as a bed or couch; by others, the one as a bed and the other as an elephant's tusk; and here, again, there is a difference of opinion as to which is the bed and which the tusk. The true solution of this confusion is, as we conceive, that the two asterisms taken together are figured as a bed, while either of them alone is represented by an elephant's tusk. The former group must comprise δ (3.4) and ϵ (3.2) Sagittarii, the former being the junction-star; this is shown by the following comparison of positions:

Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ	254° 39′	5° 28′ S.
δ Sagittarii	254° 32′	6° 25′ S.

The Graha-Lâghava gives Pûrva-Ashâḍhâ 1° more of polar longitude, and 30′ less of polar latitude, than the Sûrya-Siddhânta: the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. give it 10′ less of the latter.

The latter of the two groups contains, as its southern star, ζ Sagittarii (3.4), and its northern and junction-star can be no other than σ (2.3) in the same constellation, notwithstanding the error in the Hindu determi-

nation of its latitude, which led Colebrooke to regard τ (4.3) as the star intended: we subjoin the positions:

Uttara-Ashâdhâ	260° 23′	4° 59′ S.
σ Sagittarii	262° 21′	3° 24′ S.
τ Sagittarii	264° 48′	5° 1′ S.

The only variation from the position of the junction-star of this asterism as stated in our text is presented by the Graha-Lâghava, which makes its polar longitude 261° instead of 260°.

The Çâkalya (according to Colebrooke: our MS. is defective at this point) and the Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka assign four stars to each of the Ashâḍhâs, and the former represents each as a bed. It would not be difficult to establish two four-sided figures in this region of the constellation Sagittarius, each including the stars above mentioned, with two others: the one would be composed of γ^2 (4.3), δ, ε, η (4—the star is also called β Telescopii), the other of φ (4.3), σ, τ, and ζ: such is unquestionably the constitution of the two asterisms, considered as groups of four stars; they are thus identified also, it may be remarked, by al-Bîrûnî. The junction-stars would still be δ and σ, which are the northernmost in their respective constellations; nor is there any question as to which four among the eight are selected to make up the double asterism, since δ, ε, ζ, and σ both form the most regular quadrangular figure, and are the brightest stars.

The determinatives of the eighteenth and nineteenth mansions of the Chinese, Ki and Teu, are γ^2 and φ Sagittarii, which are included in the two quadruple groups as stated above. The twentieth *manzil* comprehends all the eight stars which we have mentioned, and is styled an-Na'âim, "the pasturing cattle": some also understand each group of four as representing an ostrich, na'âm. The twenty-first *manzil*, on the other hand, al-Baldah, "the town," is described as a vacant space above the head of Sagittarius, bounded by faint stars, among which the most conspicuous is π Sagittarii (4.5).

22. *Abhijit*, "conquering." The regent of the asterism is Brahma. The position assigned to its junction-star, which is described as the brightest (v. 19) in a group of three, identifies it with α Lyræ, or Vega, a star which is exceeded in brilliancy by only one or two others in the heavens:

Abhijit	264° 10′	59° 58′ N.
Vega	265° 15′	61° 46′ N.

The other authorities compared (excepting the Çâkalya) define the position in latitude of Abhijit more accurately, adding 2° to the polar latitude given by the Sûrya-Siddhânta: the Graha-Lâghava also improves the position in longitude by adding 1° 20′, while the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. increase the error by deducting 1° 40′.

The Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ (iv. 4. 10) omits Abhijit from its list of the asterisms: the probable reason of its omission in some authorities, or in certain connections, and its retention in others, we shall discuss farther on.

Abhijit is figured as a triangle, or as the triangular nut of the *çṛngâṭa*, an aquatic plant; this very distinctly represents the grouping of α Lyræ

with the two other fainter stars of the same constellation, ϵ and ζ, both of the fifth magnitude.

In this and the two following asterisms—as once before, in the fifteenth of the series—the Hindus have gone far from the zodiac, in order to bring into their system brilliant stars from the northern heavens, while the Chinese and the Arab systems agree in remaining in the immediate neighborhood of the ecliptic. The twentieth *sieu* is named Nieu, and is the star β Capricorni (3), situated in the head of the Goat: the twenty-second *manzil*, Sa'd adh-Dhâbih, "felicity of the sacrificer," contains the same star, the group being α (composed of two stars, each of magnitude 3.4) and β Capricorni.

23. *Çravaṇa*, "hearing, ear"; from the root *çru*, "hear": another name for the asterism, *çroṇâ*, found occurring in the Tâittirîya lists, is perhaps from the same root, but the word means also "lame." Çravaṇa comprises three stars, of which the middle one (v. 18) is the junction-star: they are to be found in the back and neck of the Eagle, namely as γ, α, and β Aquilæ; α, the determinative, is a star of the first to second magnitude, while γ and β are of the third and fourth respectively:

Çravaṇa	282° 29′	29° 54′ N.
α Aquilæ . . .	281° 41′	29° 11′ N.

All the authorities agree as to the polar latitude of Çravana: the Siddhânta-Çiromani etc. give it 2° less of polar longitude than our treatise, and the Graha-Lâghava even as much as 5° less.

The regent of the asterism is Vishṇu, and its figure or symbol corresponds therewith, being three footsteps, representatives of the three steps by which Vishṇu is said, in the early Hindu mythology, to have strode through heaven. The Çâkalya, however, gives a trident as the figure belonging to Çravaṇa. Possibly the name is to be regarded as indicating that it was originally figured as an ear.

The Chinese *sieu* corresponding in rank with Çravaṇa is called Nü, and is the faint star ϵ Aquarii (4.3). The Arab *manzil* Sa'd Bula', "felicity of a devourer," or al-Bula', "the devourer," etc., includes the same star, being composed of ϵ, μ (4.5), ν (5) Aquarii, or, according to others, of ϵ and 7 (6) Aquarii, or of μ and ν.

24. *Çravishṭhâ*; the word is a superlative formation from the same root from which came the name of the preceding asterism, and means, probably, "most famous." Another and hardly less frequent appellation is *dhanishṭhâ*, an irregular superlative from *dhanin*, "wealthy." The class of deities known as the *vasus*, "bright, good," are the regents of the asterism. It comprises four stars, or, according to the Çâkalya and Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, five: the former, which is given by so early a list as that of the Tâittirîya-Brâhmaṇa, is doubtless the original number. The group is the conspicuous one in the head of the Dolphin, composed of β, α, γ, δ Delphini, all of them stars of the third, or third to fourth, magnitude, and closely disposed in diamond or lozenge-form: they are figured by the Hindus as a drum or tabor. The junction-star, which is the western (v. 17), is β:

Çravishṭhâ	296° 5′	35° 33′ S.
β Delphini	296° 19′	31° 57′ S.

The only variation from the position assigned in our text to the junction-star of Çravishṭhâ is presented by the Graha-Lâghava, which gives it 286°, instead of 290°, of polar longitude. Perhaps its intention is to point out ζ (5) as the junction-star: this is doubtless the one added to the other four, on account of its close proximity to them, to make up the group of five; it lies only about half a degree westward from β.

The name of the twenty-fourth *manzil*, Sa'd as-Su'ûd, "felicity of felicities"—i. e., "most felicitous"—exhibits an accordance with that of the Hindu asterism which possibly is not accidental. The two are, however, as already noticed, far removed in position from one another, the Arab mansion being composed of the two stars β (3) and ξ (5.4), in the left shoulder of Aquarius, to which some add also 46, or c^1, Capricorni (6). The corresponding *sieu*, Hiu, is the first of them, or β Aquarii.

25. *Çatabhishaj*, "having a hundred physicians": the form *çatabhishâ*, which seems to be merely a corruption of the other, also occurs in later writings. It is, as we should expect from the title, said to be composed of a hundred stars, of which the brightest (v. 19) is the junction-star. This, from its defined position, can only be λ Aquarii (4):

Çatabhishaj	319° 51′	0° 29′ S.
λ Aquarii	321° 33′	0° 23′ S.

The rest of the asterism is to be sought among the yet fainter stars in the knee of Aquarius, and the stream from his jar: of course, the number one hundred is not to be taken as an exact one, nor are we to suppose it possible to trace out with any distinctness the figure assigned to the group, which is a circle. The Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, according to al-Bîrûnî, gives Çatabhishaj only a single star, but this is probably an error of the Arab traveller: he is unable to point out which of the stars in Aquarius is to be regarded as constituting the asterism.

The regent of the 25th asterism, according to nearly all the authorities, is Varuna, the chief of the Âdityas, but later the god of the waters: the Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ alone gives to it and to the 14th asterism, as well as to the 18th, Indra as presiding divinity: this is perhaps mere blundering.

The Graha-Lâghava places the junction-star of Çatabhishaj precisely on the ecliptic: the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. give it 20′, instead of 30′, of polar latitude south.

The corresponding lunar mansion of the Arabs, Sa'd al-Akhbiyah, "the felicity of tents," comprises the three stars in the right wrist and hand of the Water-bearer, or γ (3), ζ (4), η (4) Aquarii, together with a fourth, which Ideler supposes to be π (5). Since, however, the twenty-third Chinese determinative, Goei, is α Aquarii (3), a star so near as readily to be brought into the same group with the other three, we are inclined to regard it as altogether probable that the mansion was, at least originally, composed of α, γ, ζ, and η.

26, 27. *Bhâdrapadâ*; as plural, *bhâdrapadâs*: also *bhadrapadâ*; from *bhadra*, "beautiful, happy," and *pada*, "foot." Another frequent appellation is *proshṭhapadâ*: *proshṭha* is said to mean "carp" and "ox"; the latter signification might perhaps apply here. We have here, once more, a double asterism, divided into two parts, which are distinguished from

one another as *pûrva* and *uttara*, "former" and "latter." All authorities agree in assigning two stars to each of the two groups; but there is not the same accordance as regards the figures by which they are represented: by some the one, by others the other, is called a couch or bed, the alternate one, in either case, being pronounced a bi-faced figure: the Muhûrta-Cintâmaṇi calls the first a bed, and the second twins. It admits, we apprehend, of little or no question that the Bhâdrapadâs are properly the four bright stars β, α, γ Pegasi, and α Andromedæ—all of them commonly reckoned as of the second magnitude—which form together a nearly perfect square, with sides measuring about 15°: the constellation, a very conspicuous one, is familiarly known as the "Square of Pegasus." The figure of a couch or bed, then, belongs, as in the case of the other two double asterisms, already explained, to the whole constellation, and not to either of the two separate asterisms into which it is divided, while, on the other hand, either of these latter is properly enough symbolized by a pair of twins, or by a figure with a double face. The appropriateness of the designation "feet," found as a part of both the names of the whole constellation, is also sufficiently evident, if we regard the group as thus composed. The junction-star of the former half-asterism is, by its defined position, clearly shown to be α Pegasi:

Pûrva-Bhâdrapadâ	334° 25′	22° 30′ N.
α Pegasi	333° 27′	19° 25′ N.

The Graha-Lâghava gives the junction-star 1° less of polar longitude, which would bring its position to a yet closer accordance, in respect to longitude, with α Pegasi: the error in latitude, which is common to all the authorities, is not greater than we have met with several times elsewhere. But we are told below (v. 16) that the principal star of each of these asterisms is the northern, and this would exclude β Pegasi altogether, bringing in as the other member of the first pair some more southern star, perhaps ζ Pegasi (3.4). The confusion is not less marked, although of another character, in the case of the second asterism; in the definition of position of its junction-star we find a longitude given which is that of one member of the group, and a latitude which is that of the other, as is shown by the following comparison:

Uttara-Bhâdrapadâ	347° 16′	24° 1′ N.
γ Pegasi	349° 8′	12° 35′ N.
α Andromedæ	354° 17′	25° 41′ N.

If we accept either of these two stars as the one of which the position is meant to be defined, we shall be obliged to admit an error in the determination either of its longitude or of its latitude considerably greater than we have met with elsewhere. Nor is the matter mended by any of the other authorities: the only variation from the data of our text is presented by the Graha-Lâghava, which reads, as the polar latitude of Uttara-Bhâdrapadâ, 27° instead of 26°. There can be no doubt that the two stars recognized as composing the asterism are γ Pegasi and α Andromedæ, but there has evidently been a blundering confusion of the two in making out the definition of position of the junction-star. We would suggest the following as a possible explanation of

this confusion: that originally α and γ Pegasi were designated and described as junction-stars of the two half-groups, of which they were respectively the southern members; that afterward, for some reason—perhaps owing to the astrological theory (see above, vii. 21) of the superiority of a northern star—the rank of junction-star was sought to be transferred from the southern to the northern stars of both asterisms: that, in making the transfer, the original constitution of the former group was neglected, while in the latter the attempt was made to define the real position of the northern star, but by simply adding to the polar latitude already stated for γ Pegasi, without altering its polar longitude also. Al-Bîrûnî, it should be remarked, was unable to obtain from his Hindu informants any satisfactory identification of either of these asterisms, and marks both in his catalogue as "unknown."

The view we have taken of the true character of the two Bhâdrapadâs is powerfully supported by their comparison with the corresponding members of the other two systems. The twenty-sixth and twenty-seventh *manzils*, al-Fargh al-Mukdim and al-Fargh al-Mukhir, "the fore and hind spouts of the water-jar," comprise respectively α and β Pegasi, and γ Pegasi and α Andromedæ; the determinatives of the twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth *sieu*, Che and Pi, are α and γ Pegasi.

The regents of these two asterisms are *aja ekapât* and *ahi budhnya*, the "one-footed goat" and the "bottom-snake," two mythical figures, of obscure significance, from the Vedic pantheon.

28. *Revatî*, "wealthy, abundant." Its presiding divinity is Pûshan, "the prosperer," one of the Âdityas. It is said to contain thirty-two stars, which are figured, like those of Çravishṭhâ, by a drum or tabor; but it would be in vain to attempt to point out precisely the thirty-two which are intended, or to discover in their arrangement any resemblance to the figure chosen to represent it. The junction-star of the group is said (v. 18) to be its southernmost member: all authorities agree in placing it upon the ecliptic, and all excepting our treatise and the Çâkalya make its position exactly mark the initial point of the fixed sidereal sphere. The star intended is, as we have already often had occasion to notice, the faint star ζ Piscium, of about the fifth magnitude, situated in the band which connects the two Fishes It is indeed very near to the ecliptic, having only 13′ of south latitude. It coincided in longitude with the vernal equinox in the year 572 of our era.

At the time of al-Bîrûnî's visit to India, the Hindus seem to have been already unable to point out distinctly and with confidence the situation in the heavens of that most important point from which they held that the motions of the planets commenced at the creation, and at which, at successive intervals, their universal conjunction would again take place; for he is obliged to mark the asterism as not certainly identifiable. He also assigns to it, as to Çatabhishaj, only a single star.

The twenty-sixth Chinese *sieu*, Koei, is marked by ζ Andromedæ (4), which is situated only 35′ east in longitude from ζ Piscium, but which has 17° 36′ of north latitude. The last *manzil*, Baṭn al-Ḥût, "the fish's belly," or ar-Rishâ, "the band," seems intended to include the stars composing the northern Fish, and with them probably the Chinese determinative also: but it is extended so far northward as to take in the bright

star β Andromedæ (2), and to this star alone the name of the mansion is sometimes applied, although its situation, so far from the ecliptic (in lat. 25° 56′ N.), renders it by no means suited to become the distinctive star of one of the series of lunar stations.

We present, in the annexed table, a general conspectus of the correspondences of the three systems; and, in order to bring out those correspondences in the fullest manner possible, we have made the comparison in three different ways: noting, in the first place, the cases in which the three agree with one another; then those in which each agrees with one of the others; and finally, those in which each agrees with either the one or the other of the remaining two.

Correspondences of the Hindu, Arab, and Chinese Systems of Asterisms.

No	Hindu Name	Hindu with Arab and Chinese.	Hindu with Arab	Hindu with Chinese.	Arab with Chinese.	Hindu with Arab or Chinese	Arab with Hindu or Chinese	Chinese with Hindu or Arab.
1	Açvinî,	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	Bharaṇî,	2*	2*	2	2*	2	2*	2
3	Kṛttikâ,	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4	Rohiṇî,	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
5	Mṛgaçîrsha,	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
6	Ârdrâ,	..	..	..	†	..	..	..
7	Punarvasu,	..	6	..	†	6	6	†
8	Pushya,	6‡	7	6	..	7	7	6
9	Âçleshâ,	..	..	7	..	8	..	7
10	Maghâ,	..	8	..	..	9	8	..
11	P.-Phalgunî,	..	9	..	..	10	9	..
12	U.-Phalgunî,	..	10	..	..	11	10	..
13	Hasta,	..	..	8	..	12	..	8
14	Citrâ,	7	11	9	6	13	11	9
15	Svâtî,	..	..	..	7	..	12	10
16	Viçâkhâ,	8	12	10	8	14	13	11
17	Anurâdhâ,	9	13	11	9	15	14	12
18	Jyeshthâ,	10	14	12	10	16	15	13
19	Mûla,	11‡	15	13	..	17	16	14
20	P.-Ashâḍhâ,	12	16	14	11	18	17	15
21	U.-Ashâḍhâ,	..	..	15	..	19	..	16
22	Abhijit,	..	..	..	12	..	18	17
23	Çravaṇa,	..	..	..	13	.	19	18
24	Çravishthâ,	..	..	..	14	..	20	19
25	Çatabhishaj,	..	..	..	15	..	21	20
26	P.-Bhâdrapadâ,	13	17	16	16	20	22	21
27	U.-Bhâdrapadâ,	14	18	17	17	21	23	22
28	Revatî,	..	..	..	18§	..	24§	23§

* This supposes the second *manzil* to be composed of the stars in Musca, as defined by some authorities. † The sixth *manzil* includes, according to many authorities, the fifth *sieu*, but as there is, at any rate, a discordance in the order of succession, we have not reckoned this among the correspondences. ‡ We reckon these two as cases of general coincidence, because, although the Chinese *sieu* is not contained in the Arab mansion, the Hindu asterism includes them both, and the virtual correspondence of the three systems is beyond dispute. § Here we assume the Chinese *sieu* to be comprised among the stars forming the last *manzil*, which is altogether probable, although nowhere distinctly stated.

Owing to the different constitution of the systems, their correspondences are somewhat diverse in character: we account the Hindu asterisms and the Arab mansions to agree, when the groups which mark the two are composed, in whole or in part, of the same stars: we account the Chinese system to agree with the others, when the determinative of a *sieu* is to be found among the stars composing their groups. We have prefixed to the whole the numbers and titles of the Hindu asterisms, for the sake of easy reference back to the preceding detailed identifications and comparisons.

After this exhibition of the concordances existing among the three systems, it can, we apprehend, enter into the mind of no one to doubt that all have a common origin, and are but different forms of one and the same system. The questions next arise—is either of the three the original from which the others have been derived? and if so, which of them is entitled to the honor of being so regarded? and are the other two independent and direct derivatives from it, or does either of them come from the other, or must both acknowledge an intermediate source? In endeavoring to answer these questions, we will first exhibit the views of M. Biot respecting the origin and character of the Chinese *sieu*, as stated in the volumes for 1840 and 1859 of the Journal des Savants.

According to Biot, the *sieu* form an organic and integral part of that system by which the Chinese, from an almost immemorial antiquity, have been accustomed to make their careful and industrious observations of celestial phenomena. Their instruments, and their methods of observation, have been closely analogous with those in use among modern astronomers in the West: they have employed a meridian-circle and a measure of time, the clepsydra, and have observed meridian-transits, obtaining right ascensions and declinations of the bodies observed. To reduce the errors of their imperfect time-keepers, they long ago selected certain stars near the equator, of which they determined with great care the intervals in time, and to these they referred the positions of stars or planets coming to the meridian between them. The stars thus chosen are the *sieu*. Twenty-four of them were fixed upon more than two thousand years before our era (M. Biot says, about B. C. 2357: but it is obviously impossible to fix the date, by internal evidence, within a century or two, nor is the external evidence of a more definite character); the considerations which governed their selection were three: proximity to the equator of that period, distinct visibility—conspicuous brilliancy not being demanded for them—and near agreement in respect to time of transit with the upper and lower meridian-passages of the bright stars near the pole, within the circle of perpetual apparition: M. Biot finds reason to believe that these circumpolar stars had been earlier observed with special care, and made standards of comparison, and that, when it was afterward seen to be desirable to have stations near the equator, such stars were adopted as most nearly agreed with them in right ascension. The other four, being the 8th, 14th, 21st, and 28th, the accession of which completed the system of twenty-eight, were added in the time of Cheu-Kong, about B.C. 1100, because they marked very nearly the positions of the equinoxes and solstices at that epoch: the bright star of the Pleiades, however, which had originally been made the first of the

series, from its near approach to the vernal equinox of that remoter era, still maintained, as it has ever since maintained, its rank as the first. Since the time of Cheu-Kong the system has undergone no farther modification, but has been preserved unaltered and unimproved, with the obstinate persistency so characteristic of the Chinese, although many of the determinative stars have, under the influence of the precession, become far removed from the equator, one of them even having retrograded into the preceding mansion.

If the history of the Chinese *sieu*, as thus drawn out, is well-founded and true, the question of origin is already solved: the system of twenty-eight celestial mansions is proved to be of native Chinese institution—just as the system of representation of the planetary movements by epicycles is proved to be Greek by the fact that we can trace in the history of Greek science the successive steps of its gradual elaboration. That history rests, at present, upon the authority of M. Biot alone: we are not aware, at least, that any other investigator has gone independently over the same ground; and he has not himself laid before us, in their original form, the passages from Chinese texts which furnish the basis of his conclusions. But we regard them as entitled to be received, upon his authority, with no slight measure of confidence: his own distinguished eminence as a physicist and astronomer, his familiarity with researches into the history and archæology of science, his access to the abundant material for the history of Chinese astronomy collected and worked up by the French missionaries at Pekin, and the zealous assistance of his son, M. Édouard Biot, the eminent Sinologist, whose premature death, in 1850, has been so deeply deplored as a severe loss to Chinese studies—all these advantages, rarely united in such fullness in the person of any one student of such a subject, give very great weight to views arrived at by him as the results of laborious and long-continued investigation. Nor do we see that any general considerations of importance can be brought forward in opposition to those views. It is, in the first place, by no means inconsistent with what we know in other respects of the age and character of the culture of the Chinese, that they should have devised such a system at so early a date. They have, from the beginning, been as much distinguished by a tendency to observe and record as the Hindus by the lack of such a tendency: they have always attached extreme importance to astronomical labors, and to the construction and rectification of the calendar; and the industry and accuracy of their observations is attested by the use made of them by modern astronomers—thus, to take a single instance, of the cometary orbits which have been calculated, the first twenty-five rest upon Chinese observations alone: and once more, it is altogether in accordance with the clever empiricism and practical shrewdness of the Chinese character that they should have originated at the very start a system of observation exceedingly well adapted to its purpose, stopping with that, working industriously on thenceforth in the same beaten track, and never developing out of so promising a commencement anything deserving the name of a science, never devising a theory of the planetary motions, never even recognizing and defining the true character of the cardinal phenomenon of the precession.

Again, although it might seem beforehand highly improbable that a system of Chinese invention should have found its way into the West, and have been extensively accepted there, many centuries before the Christian era, there are no so insuperable difficulties in the way as should destroy the force of strong presumptive evidence of the truth of such a communication. It is well known that in very ancient times the products of the soil and industry of China were sought as objects of luxury in the West, and mercantile intercourse opened and maintained across the deserts of Central Asia; it even appears that, as early as about B. C. 600 (Isaiah xlix. 12), some knowledge of the Sinim, as a far-off eastern nation, had penetrated to Babylon and Judea. On the other hand, we do not know how much, if at all, earlier than this it may be necessary to acknowledge the system of asterisms to have made its appearance in India. The literary memorials of the earliest period, the Vedic period proper, present no evidence of the existence of the system: indeed, it is remarkable how little notice is taken of the stars by the Vedic poets; even the recognition of some of them as planets does not appear to have taken place until considerably later. In the more recent portions of the Vedic texts—as in the nineteenth book of the Atharva-Veda, a modern appendage to that modern collection, and in parts of the Yajur-Veda, of which there is reason to believe that the canon was not closed until a comparatively late period—full lists of the asterisms are found. The most unequivocal evidence of the early date of the system in India is furnished by the character of the divinities under whose regency the several asterisms are placed: these are all from the Vedic pantheon; the popular divinities of later times are not to be found among them; but, on the other hand, more than one whose consequence is lost, and whose names almost are forgotten, even in the epic period of Hindu history, appear in the list. Neither this, however, nor any other evidence known to us, is sufficient to prove, or even to render strongly probable, the existence of the asterisms in India at so remote a period that the system might not be believed to have been introduced, in its fully developed form, from China.

If, now, we make the attempt to determine, upon internal evidence, which of the three systems is the primitive one, a detailed examination of their correspondences and differences will lead us first to the important negative conclusion that no one among them can be regarded as the immediate source from which either of the other two has been derived. It is evident that the Hindu asterisms and the Arab *manâzil* constitute, in many respects, one and the same system: both present to us constellations or groups of stars, in place of the single determinatives of the Chinese *sieu;* and not only are those groups composed in general of the same stars, but in several cases—as the 7th, 10th, 11th, and 12th members of the series—where they differ widely in situation from the Chinese determinatives, they exhibit an accordance with one another which is too close to be plausibly looked upon as accidental. But if it is thus made to appear that neither can have come independently of the other from a Chinese original, it is no less certain that neither can have come through the other from such an original; for each has its own points of agreement with the *sieu*, which the other does not share—the Hindu in

the 9th, 13th, and 21st asterisms, the Arab in the 15th, 22nd, 23rd, 24th, and 25th mansions. The same considerations show, inversely, that the Chinese system cannot be traced to either of the others as its source, since it agrees in several points with each one of them where that one differs from the third. It becomes necessary, then, to introduce an additional term into the comparison; to assume the existence of a fourth system, differing in some particulars from each of the others, in which all shall find their common point of union. Such an assumption is not to be looked upon as either gratuitous or arbitrary. Not only do the mutual relations of the three systems point distinctly toward it, but it is also supported by general considerations, and will, we think, be found to remove many of the difficulties which have embarrassed the history of the general system. It has been urged as a powerful objection to the Chinese origin of the twenty-eight-fold division of the heavens, that we find traces of its existence in so many of the countries of the West, geographically remote from China and in which Chinese influence can hardly be supposed to have been directly felt. And it is undoubtedly true that neither India nor Arabia has stood in ancient times in such relations to China as should fit it to become the immediate recipient of Chinese learning, and the means of its communication to surrounding peoples. The great route of intercourse between China and the West led over the table-land of Central Asia, and into the north-eastern territory of Iran, the seat of the Zoroastrian religion and culture: thence the roads diverged, the one leading westward, the other south-eastward into India, through the valley of the Cabul, the true gate of the Indian peninsula. Within or upon the limits of this central land of Iran we conceive the system of mansions to have received that form of which the Hindu *nakshatras* and the Arab *manâzil* are the somewhat altered representatives: precisely where, and whether in the hands of Semitic or of Aryan races, we would not at present attempt to say. There are, as has been noticed above, traces of an Iranian system to be found in the Bundehesh; but this is a work which, although probably not later than the times of Persia's independence under her Sassanian rulers, can pretend to no high antiquity, and no like traces have as yet been pointed out in the earliest Iranian memorial, the Zendavesta: Weber (Ind. Literaturgeschichte, p. 221), on the other hand, sees in the *mazzaloth* and *mazzaroth* of the Scriptures (Job xxxviii. 32; II. Kings xxiii. 5)—words radically akin with the Arabic *manzil*—indications of the early existence of the system in question among the western Semites, and suspects for it a Chaldaic origin: but the allusions appear to us too obscure and equivocal to be relied upon as proof of this, nor is it easy to believe that such a method of division of the heavens should have prevailed so far to the west, and from so ancient a time, without our hearing of it from the Greeks; and especially, if it formed a part of the Chaldaic astronomy. This point, however, may fairly be passed over, as one to be determined, perhaps, by future investigations, and not of essential importance to the present inquiry. The question of originality is at least definitely settled adversely to the claims of both the Hindu and the Arab systems, and can only lie between the Chinese and that fourth system from which the other two have together descended. And

as concerns these, we are willing to accept the solution which is furnished us by the researches of M. Biot, supported as we conceive it to be by the general probabilities of the case. Any one who will trace out, by the help of a celestial globe or map,* the positions of the Chinese determinatives, cannot fail to perceive their general approach to a great circle of the sphere which is independent of the ecliptic, and which accords more nearly with the equator of B. C. 2350 than with any other later one. The full explanations and tables of positions given by Biot (Journ. d. Sav., 1840, pp. 243–254) also furnish evidence, of a kind appreciable by all, that the system may have had the origin which he attributes to it, and that, allowing for the limitations imposed upon it by its history, it is consistent with itself, and well enough adapted to the purposes for which it was designed. With the positions of its determinative stars seem to have agreed those of the constellations adopted by the common parent of the Hindu and Arab systems, excepting in five or six points: those points being where the Chinese make their one unaccountable leap from the head to the belt of Orion, and again, where the *sieu* are drawn off far to the southward, in the constellations Hydra and Crater: and this, in our view, looks much more as if the series of the *sieu* were the original, whose guidance had been closely followed excepting in a few cases, than as if the asterisms composing the other systems had been independently selected from the groups of stars situated along the zodiac, with the intention of forming a zodiacal series. It is easy to see, farther, how the single determinatives of the *sieu* should have become the nuclei for constellations such as are presented by the other systems; but if, on the contrary, the *sieu* had been selected by the Chinese, in each case, from groups previously constituted, there appears no reason why their brightest stars should not have been chosen, as they were chosen later by the Hindus, in the establishment of junction-stars for the asterisms.

We would suggest, then, as the theory best supported by all the evidence thus far elicited, that a knowledge of the Chinese astronomy, and with it the Chinese system of division of the heavens into twenty-eight mansions, was carried into Western Asia at a period not much later than B. C. 1100, and was there adopted by some western people, either Semitic or Iranian. That in their hands it received a new form, such as adapted it to a ruder and less scientific method of observation, the limiting stars of the mansions being converted into zodiacal groups or constellations, and in some instances altered in position, so as to be brought nearer to the general planetary path of the ecliptic. That in this changed form, having become a means of roughly determining and describing the places and movements of the planets, it passed into the keeping of the Hindus—very probably along with the first knowledge of the planets themselves—and entered upon an independent career of history in India. That it still maintained itself in its old seat, leaving its traces later in the Bundehesh; and that it made its way so far westward as finally to become known to, and adopted by, the Arabs. The farther

* We propose to furnish at the close of this publication, in connection with the additional notes, such a map of the zodiacal zone of the heavens as will sufficiently illustrate the character and mutual relations of the three systems compared.

modifications introduced into it by the latter people all have in view a single purpose, that of establishing its stations in the immediate neighborhood of the ecliptic: to this purpose the whole Arab system is not less constantly faithful than is the Chinese to its own guiding principle. The Hindu sustains in this respect but an unfavorable comparison with the others: the arbitrary introduction, in the 15th, 22nd, 23rd, and 24th asterisms, of remote northern stars, greatly impairs its unity, and also furnishes an additional argument of no slight force against its originality; for, on the one hand, the derivation of the others from it becomes thereby vastly more difficult, and, on the other, we can hardly believe that a system of organic Indian growth could have become disfigured in India by such inconsistencies; they wear the aspect, rather, of arbitrary alterations made, at the time of its adoption, in an institution imported from abroad.

It might, at first sight, appear that the adoption by the Arabs of the *manzil* corresponding to Açvinî as the first of their series indicated that they had derived it from India posterior to the transfer by the Hindus of the first rank from Kṛttikâ, the first of the *sieu*, to Açvinî: but the circumstance seems readily to admit of another interpretation. The names of many of the Arab mansions show the influence of the Greek astronomy, being derived from the Greek constellations: the same influence would fully explain an arrangement which made the series begin with the group coinciding most nearly with the beginning of the Greek zodiac. The transfer on the part of the Hindus, likewise, was unquestionably made at the time of the general reconstruction of their astronomical system under the influence of western science. The two series are thus to be regarded as having been brought into accordance in this respect by the separate and independent working of the same cause.

M. Biot insists strongly, as a proof of the non-originality of the system of asterisms among the Hindus, upon its gross and palpable lack of adaptedness to the purpose for which they used it; he compares it to a gimlet out of which they have tried to make a saw. In this view we can by no means agree with him: we would rather liken it to a hatchet, which, with its edge dulled and broken, has been turned and made to do duty as a hammer, and which is not ill suited to its new and coarser office. Indeed, taking the Hindu system in its more perfect and consistent form, as applied by the Arabs, and comparing it with the Chinese *sieu* at any time within the past two thousand years, we are by no means sure that the advantage in respect to adaptation would not be generally pronounced to be upon the side of the former. The distance of many of the *sieu* during that period from the equator, the faintness of some among them, the great irregularity of their intervals, render them anything but a model system for measuring distances in right ascension. On the other hand, to adopt a series of conspicuous constellations along the zodiac, by their proximity to which the movements of the planets shall be marked, is no unmotived proceeding: just such a division of the ecliptic among twelve constellations preceded and led the way to the Greek method of measuring by signs, having exact limits, and independent of the groups of stars which originally gave name to them. M. Biot's error lies in his misapprehension, in two important

respects, of the character of the Hindu asterisms: in the first place, he constantly treats them as if they were, like the *sieu*, single stars, the intervals between whose circles of declination constituted the accepted divisions of the zodiac; and in the second place, he assumes them to have been established for the purpose of marking the moon's daily progress from point to point along the ecliptic. Now, as regards the first of these points, we have already shown above that the conversion of the Chinese determinatives into constellations took place, in all probability, before their introduction to the knowledge of the Hindus: there is, indeed, an entire unanimity of evidence to the effect that the Hindu system is from its inception one of groups of stars: this is conclusively shown by the original dual and plural names of the asterisms, or by their otherwise significant titles—compare especially those of the 13th and 25th of the series. The selection of a "junction-star" to represent the asterism appears to be something comparatively modern: we regard it as posterior to the reconstruction of the Hindu astronomy upon a truly scientific basis, and the determination, by calculation, of the precise places of the planets: this would naturally awaken a desire for, and lead to, a similarly exact determination of the position of some star representing each asterism, which might be employed in the calculation of conjunctions, for astrological purposes; the astronomical uses of the system being no longer of much account after the division of the ecliptic into signs. And the choice of the junction-star has fallen, in the majority of cases, not upon the Chinese determinative itself, but upon some other and more conspicuous member of the group originally formed about the latter. Again, there is an entire absence of evidence that the "portions" of the asterisms, or the arcs of the ecliptic named from them, were ever measured from junction-star to junction-star: whatever may be the discordance among the different authorities respecting their extent and limits, they are always freely, and often arbitrarily, taken from parts of the ecliptic adjacent to, or not far removed from, the successive constellations.

As regards the other point noticed, it is, indeed, not at all to be wondered at that M. Biot should treat the Hindu *nakshatras* as a system bearing special relations to the moon, since, by those who have treated of them, they have always been styled "houses of the moon," "moon-stations," "lunar asterisms," and the like. Nevertheless, these designations seem to be founded only in carelessness, or in misapprehension. In the Sûrya-Siddhânta, certainly, there is no hint to be discovered of any particular connection between them and the moon, and for this reason we have been careful never to translate the term *nakshatra* by any other word than simply "asterism." Nor does the case appear to have been otherwise from the beginning. No one of the general names for the asterisms (*nakshatra*, *bha*, *dhishnya*) means literally anything more than "star" or "constellation": their most ancient and usual appellation, *nakshatra*, is a word of doubtful etymology (it may be radically akin with *nakta*, nox, νύξ, "night"), but it is not infrequently met with in the Vedic writings, with the general signification of "star," or "group of stars": the moon is several times designated as "sovereign of the *nakshatras*," but evidently in no other sense than that in which

we style her "queen of night"; for the same title is in other passages given to the sun, and even also to the Milky Way. When the name came to be especially applied to the system of zodiacal asterisms, we have seen above that a single one of the series, the 5th, was placed under the regency of the moon, as another, the 13th, under that of the sun: this, too, by no means looks as if the whole design of the system was to mark the moon's daily motions. Naturally enough, since the moon is the most conspicuous of the nightly luminaries, and her revolutions more rapid and far more important than those of the others, the asterisms would practically be brought into much more frequent use in connection with her movements: their number, likewise, being nearly accordant with the number of days of her sidereal revolution, could not but tempt those who thus employed them to set up an artificial relation between the two. Hence the Arabs distinctly call their divisions of the zodiac, and the constellations which mark them, "houses of the moon," and, until the researches of M. Biot, no one, so far as we are aware, had ever questioned that the number of the asterisms or mansions, wherever found, was derived from and dependent on that of the days in the moon's revolution. It was most natural, then, that Western scholars, having first made acquaintance with the Arab system, should, on finding the same in India, call it by the same name: nor is it very strange, even, that Ideler should have gone a step farther, and applied the familiar title of "lunar stations" to the Chinese *sieu* also; an error for which he is sharply criticised by M. Biot (Journ. d. Sav., 1859, p. 480). The latter cites from al-Bîrûnî (Journ. d. Sav. 1845, p. 49; 1859, pp. 487–8) two passages derived by him from Varâha-mihira and Brahmagupta respectively, in which are recorded attempts to establish a systematic relation between the asterisms and the moon's true and mean daily motions. One of these passages is exceedingly obscure, and both are irreconcilable with one another, and with what we know of the system of asterisms from other sources: two conclusions, however, bearing upon the present matter, are clearly derivable from them: first, that, as the "portions" assigned to the asterisms had no natural and fixed limits, it was possible for any Hindu system-maker so to define them as to bring them into a connection with the moon's daily motions: and secondly, that such a connection was never deemed an essential feature of the system, and hence no one form of it was generally recognized and accepted. The considerations adduced by us above are, we think, fully sufficient to account for any such isolated attempts at the establishment of a connection as al-Bîrûnî, who naturally sought to find in the Hindu *nakshatras* the correlatives of his own *manâzil al-kamar*, was able to discover among the works of Hindu astronomers: there is no good reason why we should deprive the former of their true character, which is that of zodiacal constellations, rudely marking out divisions of the ecliptic, and employable for all the purposes for which such a division is demanded.

The reason of the variation in the number of the asterisms, which are reckoned now as twenty-eight and now as twenty-seven, is a point of no small difficulty in the history of the system. M. Biot makes the acute suggestion that the omission of Abhijit from the series took place because the mansion belonging to that asterism was on the point of becom-

ing extinguished, the circle of declination of its junction-star being brought by the precession to a coincidence with that of the junction-star of the preceding asterism about A. D. 972. But it has been shown above that M. Biot's view of the nature of a *nakshatra*—that it is, namely, the arc of the ecliptic intercepted between the circles of declination of two successive junction-stars—is altogether erroneous: however nearly those circles might approach one another, there would still be no difficulty in assigning to each asterism its "portion" from the neighboring region of the ecliptic. Again, this explanation would not account for the early date of the omission of Abhijit, which, as already noticed, is found wanting in one of the most ancient lists, that of the Tâittirîya-Sanhitâ. It is to be observed, moreover, that M. Biot, in calculating the period of Abhijit's disappearance, has adopted τ Sagittarii as the junction-star of Uttara-Ashâdhâ, while we have shown above that σ, and not τ, is to be so regarded: and this substitution would defer until several centuries later the date of coincidence of the two circles of declination. According to the Hindu measurements, indeed (see the table of positions of the junction-stars, near the beginning of this note), Abhijit is farther removed from the preceding asterism, both in polar longitude and in right ascension, than are five of the other asterisms from their respective predecessors: nor does the Hindu astronomical system acknowledge or make allowance for the alteration of position of the circles of declination under the influence of the precession: their places, as data for the calculation of conjunctions, are ostensibly laid down for all future time. For these various reasons, M. Biot's explanation is to be rejected as insufficient. A more satisfactory one, in our opinion, may be found in the fact, illustrated above (see Fig. 31, beginning of this note), that the asterisms are in general so distributed as to accord quite well with a division of the ecliptic into twenty-seven equal portions, but not with a division into twenty-eight equal portions; that the region where they are too much crowded together is that from the 20th to the 23rd asterism, and that, among those situated in this crowded quarter, Abhijit is farthest removed from the ecliptic, and so is more easily left out than any of the others, in dividing the ecliptic into portions. We cannot consider it at all doubtful that Abhijit is as originally and truly a part of the system of asterisms as any other constellation in the series, which is properly composed of twenty-eight members, and not of twenty-seven: the analogy of the other systems, and the fact that treatises like this Siddhânta, which reckon only twenty-seven divisions of the ecliptic, are yet obliged, in treating of the asterisms as constellations, to regard them as twenty-eight, are conclusive upon this point. The whole difficulty and source of discordance seems to lie in this—how shall there, in any systematic method of division of the ecliptic, be found a place and a portion for a twenty-eighth asterism? The Khaṇḍa-Kaṭaka, as cited by al-Bîrûnî—in making out, by a method which is altogether irrespective of the actual positions of the asterisms with reference to the zodiac, the accordance already referred to between their portions and the moon's daily motions—allots to Abhijit so much of the ecliptic as is equivalent to the mean motion of the moon during the part of a day by which her revolution exceeds twenty-seven days.

Others allow it a share in the proper portions of the two neighboring asterisms: thus the Muhûrta-Mâlâ, a late work, of date unknown to us, says: "the last quarter of Uttara-Ashâḍhâ and the first fifteenth of Çravaṇa together constitute Abhijit: it is so to be accounted when twenty-eight asterisms are reckoned; not otherwise." Ordinarily, however, the division of the ecliptic into twenty-seven equal "portions" is made, and Abhijit is simply passed by in their distribution. After the introduction of the modern method of dividing the circle into degrees and minutes, this last way of settling the difficulty would obviously receive a powerful support, and an increased currency, from the fact that a division by twenty-seven gave each portion an even number of minutes, 800, while a division by twenty-eight yielded the awkward and unmanageable quotient $771\frac{3}{7}$.

Much yet remains to be done, before the history and use of the system of asterisms, as a part of the ancient Hindu astronomy and astrology, shall be fully understood. There is in existence an abundant literature, ancient and modern, upon the subject, which will doubtless at some time provoke laborious investigation, and repay it with interesting results. To us hardly any of that literature is accessible, and only the final results of wide-extended and long-continued studies upon it could be in place here. We have already allotted to the *nakshatras* more space than to some may seem advisable: our excuse must be the interest of the history of the system, as part of the ancient history of the rise and spread of astronomical science; the importance attaching to the researches of M. Biot, the inadequate attention hitherto paid them, and the recent renewal of their discussion in the Journal des Savants; and finally and especially, the fact that in and with the asterisms is bound up the whole history of Hindu astronomy, prior to its transformation under the overpowering influence of western science. In the modern astronomy of India, the *nakshatras* are of subordinate consequence only, and appear as hardly more than reminiscences of a former order of things: from the Sûrya-Siddhânta might be struck out every line referring to them, without serious alteration of the character of the treatise.

Before bringing this note to a close, we present, in the annexed table, a comparison of the true longitudes and latitudes of the junction-stars of the twenty-eight asterisms, as derived by calculation from the positions stated in our text, with the actual longitudes and latitudes of the stars with which they are probably to be identified. In a single case, (the 27th asterism), we compare the longitude of one star and the latitude of another; the reason of this is explained above, in connection with the identification of the asterism. We add columns giving the errors of the Hindu determinations of position: in that for the latitude north direction is regarded as positive, and south direction as negative.

Upon examining the column of errors of latitude presented in this table, it will be seen that they are too considerable, and too irregular, both in amount and in direction, to be plausibly accounted for otherwise than as direct errors of observation and calculation. The grossest of them, as has already been pointed out, are committed in the measurement of southern latitudes, when of considerable amount, and they are

Positions, and Errors of Position, of the Junction-Stars of the Asterisms.

No.	Name.	Longitude, A. D. 560. Hindu.	True.	Hindu error	Latitude. Hindu	True.	Hindu error.	Star compared.
		° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	
1	Açvinî,	11 59	13 56	− 1 57	9 11 N	8 28 N.	+ 0 43	β Arietis.
2	Bharaṇî,	24 35	26 54	− 2 19	11 6 "	11 17 "	− 0 11	35 Arietis, *a* Muscæ.
3	Kṛttikâ,	39 8	39 58	− 0 50	4 44 "	4 1 "	+ 0 43	η Tauri, Alcyone.
4	Rohiṇî,	48 9	49 45	− 1 36	4 49 S.	5 30 S.	+ 0 41	α Tauri, Aldebaran.
5	Mṛgaçîrsha,	61 3	63 40	− 2 37	9 49 "	13 25 "	+ 3 36	λ Orionis.
6	Ârdrâ,	65 50	68 43	− 2 53	8 53 "	16 4 "	+ 7 11	α Orionis.
7	Punarvasu,	92 52	93 14	− 0 22	6 0 N.	6 39 N.	− 0 39	β Gemin., Pollux.
8	Pushya,	106 0	108 42	− 2 42	0 0	0 4 "	− 0 4	δ Cancri.
9	Âçleshâ,	109 59	112 20	− 2 21	6 56 S.	11 8 S.	+ 4 12	ε Hydræ.
10	Maghâ,	129 0	129 49	− 0 49	0 0	0 27 N.	− 0 27	α Leonis, Regulus.
11	P.-Phalgunî,	139 58	141 15	− 1 17	11 19 N	14 19 "	− 3 0	δ Leonis.
12	U.-Phalgunî,	150 10	151 37	− 1 27	12 5 "	12 17 "	− 0 12	β Leonis.
13	Hasta,	174 22	173 27	+ 0 55	10 6 S.	12 10 S.	+ 2 4	δ Corvi.
14	Citrâ,	180 48	183 49	− 3 1	1 50 "	2 2 "	+ 0 12	α Virginis, Spica.
15	Svâtî,	183 2	184 12	− 1 10	33 50 N	30 57 N.	+ 2 53	α Bootis, Arcturus.
16	Viçâkhâ,	213 31	211 0	+ 2 31	1 25 S	1 48 S.	+ 0 23	ι Libræ.
17	Anurâdhâ,	224 44	222 34	+ 2 10	2 52 "	1 57 "	− 0 55	δ Scorpionis.
18	Jyeshthâ,	230 7	229 44	+ 0 23	3 50 "	4 31 "	+ 0 41	α Scorp., Antares.
19	Mûla,	242 52	244 33	− 1 41	8 48 "	13 44 "	+ 4 56	λ Scorpionis.
20	P.-Ashâdhâ,	254 39	254 32	+ 0 7	5 28 "	6 25 "	+ 0 57	δ Sagittarii.
21	U.-Ashâdhâ,	260 23	262 21	− 1 58	4 59 "	3 24 "	− 1 25	σ Sagittarii.
22	Abhijit,	264 10	265 15	− 1 5	59 58 N.	61 46 N.	− 1 48	α Lyræ, Vega.
23	Çravaṇa,	282 29	281 41	+ 0 48	29 54 "	29 19 "	+ 0 35	α Aquilæ, Atair.
24	Çravishthâ,	296 5	296 19	− 0 14	35 33 "	31 57 "	+ 3 36	β Delphini.
25	Çatabhishaj,	319 50	321 33	− 1 43	0 28 S	0 23 S	− 0 5	λ Aquarii.
26	P.-Bhâdrapadâ,	334 25	333 27	+ 0 58	22 30 N.	19 25 N.	+ 3 5	α Pegasi.
27	U.-Bhâdrapadâ,	347 16	349 8	− 1 52	24 1 "	25 41 "	− 1 40	γ Peg. & α Androm.
28	Revatî,	359 50	359 50	0 0	0 0	0 13 S	+ 0 13	ζ Piscium.

all in the same direction, giving the star a place too far to the north. The column of errors in longitude, on the other hand, shows a very marked preponderance of *minus* errors, their sum being 33° 54′, while the sum of *plus* errors is only 7° 52′. Upon taking the difference of these sums, and dividing it by twenty-eight, we find the average error of longitude to be − 56′, the greatest deviation from it in either direction being − 2° 4′ and + 3° 27′.* So far as this goes, it would indicate that the Hindu measurements of position were made from a vernal equinox situated about 1° to the eastward of that of A. D. 560, and so at a time seventy years previous to the date we have assumed for them, or about A. D. 490. In our present ignorance of the methods of observation

* In a comparison in which a high degree of exactness was desired, and was not, in the nature of the case, unattainable, it would of course be necessary to take into account the proper motions of the stars compared. This we have not thought it worth while, in the present instance, to do. We may remark, however, that the junction-star of the 15th asterism, Arcturus, has a much greater proper motion than any other in the series; and that, if this were allowed for, according to its value as determined by Main (Mem. Roy. Astr. Soc., vol. xix, 4to, 1851), the Hindu error of longitude would be diminished about 22′, but that of latitude increased about 35′.

employed by the Hindus for this purpose, such a determination of date cannot, indeed, be relied upon as exact or conclusive, yet it is the best and surest that we can attain. The general conclusion, at any rate, stands fast, that the positions of the junction-stars of the asterisms were fixed not far from the time when the vernal equinox coincided with the initial point of the Hindu sidereal sphere, or during the sixth century of our era.

Since, according to the Hindu theory, the initial point of the sidereal sphere is also, for all time, the mean place of the vernal equinox, which always reverts to it after a libration of 27° in either direction (see above, iii. 9–12), we are not surprised to find the positions of the asterisms primarily defined upon the supposition of their coincidence. But it is not a little strange that the effect of the precession in altering the direction of the circles of declination drawn through the junction-stars, and so the polar longitudes and latitudes of the latter, should be made no account of (see, however, the latter half of v. 12, below, and the note upon it), and that directions for calculating the conjunctions of the planets with the asterisms according to their positions as thus stated should be given (vv. 14–15), unaccompanied by any hint that a modification of the data of the process would ever be found necessary. This carelessness is perhaps to be regarded as an additional evidence of the small importance attached, after the reconstruction of the Hindu astronomy, to calculations in which the asterisms were concerned; although it also tends strongly to prove what we have suggested above (note to iii. 9–12), that in the construction of the Hindu astronomical system the precession was ignored altogether. It is to be noticed that the two systems of *yogas* (see above, ii. 65, and additional note upon that passage), originally founded upon actual conjunctions with the asterisms, have been divorced from any real connection with them. A like consideration might restrain us from accepting the determinations of position here presented as the best results which Hindu observers and instruments were capable of attaining; yet, in the absence of other tests of their powers, we cannot well help drawing the conclusion that the accuracy of a Hindu observation is not to be relied on within a degree or two.

10. Agastya is at the end of Gemini, and eighty degrees south; and Mrgavyâdha is situated in the twentieth degree of Gemini;

11. His latitude (*vikshepa*), reckoned from his point of declination (*apakrama*), is forty degrees south: Agni (*hutabhuj*) and Brahmahrdaya are in Taurus, the twenty-second degree;

12. And they are removed in latitude (*vikshipta*), northward, eight and thirty degrees respectively. . . .

In connection with the more proper subject of this chapter we also have laid before us, here and in a subsequent passage (vv. 20–21), the defined positions of a few fixed stars which are not included in the system of zodiacal asterisms. The definition is made in the same manner as before, by polar longitudes and latitudes. It is not at all difficult to identify the stars referred to in these verses; they were correctly pointed out by Colebrooke, in his article already cited (As. Res., vol. ix). Agastya is α Navis, or Canopus, a star of the first magnitude, and one of the

most brilliant in the southern heavens. Its remote southern position, only 37° from the pole, renders it invisible to an observer stationed much to the northward of the Tropic of Cancer. Its Hindu name is that of one of the old Vedic *ṛshis*, or inspired sages. The comparison of its true position with that assigned it by our text—which, in this instance, does not require to be reduced to true longitude and latitude—is as follows:

Agastya	90° 0′	80° 0′ S.
Canopus	85° 4′	75° 50′ S.

The error of position is here very considerable, and the variations of the other authorities from the data of our text are correspondingly great. The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi and (according to Colebrooke) the Brahma-Siddhânta give Agastya 87° of polar longitude, and 77° of latitude, which is a fair approximation to the truth: the Graha-Lâghava also places it correctly in lat. 76° S., but makes its longitude only 80°, which is as gross an error as that of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, but in the opposite direction. The Çâkalya-Sanhitâ agrees precisely with our treatise as respects the positions of these four stars, as it does generally in the numerical data of its astronomical system.

Mṛgavyâdha, "deer-hunter"—it is also called Lubdhaka, "hunter"—is *α* Canis Majoris, or Sirius, the brightest of the fixed stars:

Mṛgavyâdha	76° 23′	39° 52′ S.
Sirius	84° 7′	39° 32′ S.

Here, while all authorities agree with the correct determination of the latitude of Sirius presented by our text, the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi etc. greatly reduce its error of longitude, by giving the star 86°, instead of 80°, of polar longitude: the Graha-Lâghava reads 81°.

The star named after the god of fire, Agni, and called in the text by one of his frequent epithets, *hutabhuj*, "devourer of the sacrifice," is the one which is situated at the extremity of the northern horn of the Bull, or *β* Tauri: it alone of the four is of the second magnitude only:

Agni	54° 5′	7° 44′ N.
β Tauri	62° 32′	5° 22′ N.

The very gross error in the determination of the longitude of this star is but slightly reduced by the Graha-Lâghava, which gives it 53°, instead of 52°, of polar longitude. The Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi and Brahma-Siddhânta omit all notice of any of the fixed stars excepting Canopus and Sirius.

Brahmahṛdaya, "Brahma's heart," is *α* Aurigæ, or Capella:

Brahmahrdaya	6[illegible]° 29′	28° 53′ N.
Capella	61° 50′	22° 52′ N.

The Graha-Lâghava, leaving this erroneous determination of latitude unamended, adds a greater error of longitude, in the opposite direction to that of our text, by giving the star 4° more of polar longitude.

We shall present these comparisons in a tabular form at the end of the chapter, in connection with the other passage of similar import.

12. . . . Having constructed a sphere, one may examine the corrected (*sphuṭa*) latitude and polar longitude (*dhruvaka*).

What is the true meaning and scope of this passage, is a question with regard to which there may be some difference of opinion. The commentator explains it as intended to satisfy the inquiry whether the polar longitudes and latitudes, as stated in the text, are constant, or whether they are subject to variation. Now although, he says, owing to the precession, the values of these quantities are not unalterably fixed, yet they are given by the text as they were at its period, and as if they were constant, while the astronomer is directed to determine them for his own time by actual observation. For this purpose he is to take such a sphere as is described below (chap. xiii)—of which the principal parts, and the only ones which would be brought into use in this process, are hoops or circles representing the colures, the equator, and the ecliptic—and is to suspend upon its poles an additional movable circle, graduated to degrees: this would be, of course, a revolving circle of declination. The sphere is next to be adjusted in such manner that its axis shall point to the pole, and that its horizon shall be water-level. Then, in the night, the junction-star of Revatî (ζ Piscium) is to be looked at through a hole in the centre of the instrument, and the corresponding point of the ecliptic, which is 10′ east of the end of the constellation Pisces, is to be brought over it; after that, it will be necessary only to bring the revolving circle of declination, as observed through the hole in the centre of the instrument, over any other star of which it is desired to determine the position, and its polar longitude and latitude may be read off directly upon the ecliptic and the movable circle respectively.

Colebrooke (As. Res., ix. 326; Essays, ii. 324) found this passage similarly explained in other commentaries upon the Sûrya-Siddhânta to which he had access, and also met with like directions in the commentaries on the Siddhânta-Çiromani.

There are, however, very serious objections to such an interpretation of the brief direction contained in the text. It is altogether inconsistent with the whole plan and method of a Hindu astronomical treatise to leave, and even to order, matters of this character to be determined by observation. Observation has no such important place assigned to it in the astronomical system: with the exception of terrestrial longitude and latitude, which, in the nature of things, are beyond the reach of a treatise, it is intended that the astronomer should find in his text-book everything which he needs for the determination of celestial phenomena, and should resort to instruments and observation only by way of illustration. The sphere of which the construction is prescribed in the thirteenth chapter is not an instrument for observation: it is expressly stated to be "for the instruction of the pupil," and it is encumbered with such a number and variety of different circles, including parallels of declination for all the asterisms and for the observed fixed stars, that it could not be used for any other purpose: it will be noticed, too, that the commentary is itself obliged to order here the addition of the only appliances—the revolving circle of declination and the hole through the centre—which make of it an instrument for observation. The simple and original meaning of the passage seems to be that, having constructed a sphere in the manner to be hereafter described, one may examine the places of the asterisms as marked upon it, and note their coincidence

with the actual positions of the stars in the heavens. And we would regard the other interpretation as forced upon the passage by the commentators, in order to avoid the difficulty pointed out by us above (near the end of the note on the last passage but one) and to free the Siddhânta from the imputation of having neglected the precessional variation of the circles of declination. M. Biot pronounces the method of observation explained by the commentators "almost impracticable," and it can, accordingly, hardly be that by which the positions of the asterisms were at first laid down, or by which they could be made to undergo the necessary corrections. Another method, more in accordance with the rules and processes of the third chapter, and which appears to us to be more authentic and of higher value, is described by Colebrooke (as above) from the Siddhânta-Sarvabhâuma, being there cited from the Siddhânta-Sundara; it is as follows:

"A tube, adapted to the summit of the gnomon, is directed toward the star on the meridian: and the line of the tube, pointed to the star, is prolonged by a thread to the ground. The line from the summit of the gnomon to the base is the hypothenuse; the height of the gnomon is the perpendicular; and its distance from the extremity of the thread is the base of the triangle. Therefore, as the hypothenuse is to its base, so is the radius to a base, from which the sine of the angle, and consequently the angle itself, are known. If it exceed the latitude [of the place of observation], the declination is south; or, if the contrary, it is north. The right ascension of the star is calculated from the hour of night, and from the right ascension of the sun for that time. The declination of the corresponding point of the ecliptic being found, the sum or difference of the declinations, according as they are of the same or of different denominations, is the distance of the star from the ecliptic. The longitude of the same point is computed; and from these elements, with the actual precession of the equinox, may be calculated the true longitude of the star; as also its latitude on a circle passing through the poles of the ecliptic."

The Siddhânta-Sarvabhâuma also gives the true longitudes and latitudes of the asterisms, professedly as thus obtained by observation and calculation, and they are reported by Colebrooke in his general table of data respecting the asterisms.

If we are not mistaken, the amount and character of the errors in the stated latitudes of the asterisms tend to prove that this, or some kindred process, was that by which their positions were actually determined.

13. In Taurus, the seventeenth degree, a planet of which the latitude is a little more than two degrees, south, will split the wain of Rohiṇî.

The asterism Rohiṇî, as has been seen above, is composed of the five principal stars in the head of Taurus, in the constellation of which is seen the figure of a wain. The divinity is Prajâpati. The distances of its stars in longitude from the initial point of the sphere vary from 45° 46′ (γ) to 49° 45′ (α): hence the seventeenth degree of the second sign—the reckoning commencing at the initial point of the sphere, taken as coinciding also with the vernal equinox—is very nearly the middle of

the wain. The latitude of its stars, again, varies from 2° 36′ (ε) to 5° 47′ (ϑ) S.; hence, to come into collision with, or to enter, the wain, a planet must have more than two degrees of south latitude. The Siddhânta does not inform us what would be the consequences of such an occurrence; that belongs rather to the domain of astrology than of astronomy. We cite from the Pañcatantra (vv. 238–241) the following description of these consequences, derived from the astrological writings of Varâha-mihira:*

"When Saturn splits the wain of Rohiṇî here in the world, then Mâdhava rains not upon the earth for twelve years.

"When the wain of Prajâpati's asterism is split, the earth, having as it were committed a sin, performs, in a manner, her surface being strewn with ashes and bones, the *kâpâlika* penance.

"If Saturn, Mars, or the descending node splits the wain of Rohiṇî, why need I say that, in a sea of misfortune, destruction befalls the world?

"When the moon is stationed in the midst of Rohiṇî's wain, then men wander recklessly about, deprived of shelter, eating the cooked flesh of children, drinking water from vessels burnt by the sun."

Upon what conception this curious feature of the ancient Hindu astrology is founded, we are entirely ignorant.

14. Calculate, as in the case of the planets, the day and night of the asterisms, and perform the operation for apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*), as before: the rest is by the rules for the conjunction (*melaka*) of planets, using the daily motion of the planet as a divisor: the same is the case as regards the time.

15. When the longitude of the planet is less than the polar longitude (*dhruvaka*) of the asterism, the conjunction (*yoga*) is to come; when greater, it is past: when the planet is retrograding (*vakragati*), the contrary is to be recognized as true of the conjunction (*samâgama*).

The rules given in the preceding chapter for calculating the conjunction of two planets with one another apply, of course, with certain modifications, to the calculation of the conjunctions of the planets with the asterisms. The text, however, omits to specify the most important of these modifications—that, namely, in determining the apparent longitude of an asterism, one part of the process prescribed in the case of a planet, the *ayanadṛkkarman*, or correction for ecliptic deviation, is to be omitted altogether; since the polar longitude of the asterism, which is given, corresponds in character with the *âyana graha*, or longitude of the planet as affected by ecliptic deviation, which must be ascertained by the *ayanadṛkkarman*. The commentary notices the omission, but offers neither explanation nor excuse for it. The other essential modification—that, the asterism being fixed, the motion of the planet alone is

* Our translation represents the verses as amended in their readings by Benfey (Pantschatantra etc., 2r Theil, nn. 234–237). In the third of the verses, however, the reading of the published text, *çaçi*, "moon," would seem decidedly preferable to *çikhi*, "descending node"; since the node, being always necessarily in the ecliptic, can never come into collision with Rohiṇî's wain.

to be used as divisor in determining the place and time of the conjunction—is duly noticed.

The inaccuracies in the Hindu process for determining apparent longitudes, which, as above noticed, are kept within bounds, where the planets alone are concerned, by the small amount of their latitudes, would be liable in the case of many of the asterisms to lead to grave errors of result.

16. Of the two Phalgunîs, the two Bhâdrapadâs, and likewise the two Ashâḍhâs, of Viçâkhâ, Açvinî, and Mṛgaçîrsha (*sâumya*), the junction-star (*yogatârâ*) is stated to be the northern (*uttara*):

17. That which is the western northern star, being the second situated westward, that is the junction-star of Hasta; of Çravishṭhâ it is the western:

18. Of Jyeshṭhâ, Çravaṇa, Anurâdhâ (*maitra*), and Pushya (*bârhaspatya*), it is the middle star: of Bharaṇî, Kṛttikâ (*âgneya*), and Maghâ (*pitrya*), and likewise of Revatî, it is the southern:

19. Of Rohiṇî, Punarvasu (*âditya*), and Mûla, it is the eastern, and so also of Âçleshâ (*sârpa*): in the case of each of the others, the junction-star (*yogatârakâ*) is the great (*sthûla*) one.

We have had occasion above, in treating of the identification of the asterisms, to question the accuracy of some of these designations of the relative position of the junction-stars in the groups containing them. We do not regard the passage as having the same authenticity and authority with that in which the determinations of the polar longitudes and latitudes are given; and indeed, we are inclined to suspect that all which follows the fifteenth verse in the chapter may be a later addition to its original content. It is difficult to see otherwise why the statements given in verses 20 and 21 of the positions of certain stars should be separated from those presented above, in verses 10–12. A designation of the relative position of the junction-star in each group ought also properly to be connected with a definition of the number of stars composing each, and a description of its configuration—such as are presented along with it by other treatises, as the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ. The first is even in some points ambiguous unless accompanied by the others, since there are cases in which the same star has a different position in its asterism according as the latter is to be regarded as including a less or a greater number of stars. In this respect also, then, the passage looks like a disconnected fragment. Nor is the method of designation so clear and systematic as to inspire us with confidence in its accuracy. Upon a consideration of the whole series of asterisms, it is obvious that the brightest member of each group is generally selected as its junction-star. Hence we should expect to find a general rule to that effect laid down, and then the exceptions to it specially noted, together with the cases in which such a designation would be equivocal. Instead of this, we have the junction-stars of only two asterisms containing more than one star, namely Abhijit and Çatabhishaj, described by their superior brilliancy, while that of the former is not less capable of being pointed out by its position than are any of the others in the series. Again, there are cases

in which it is questionable which star is meant to be pointed out in a group of which the constitution is not doubtful, owing to the very near correspondence of more than one star with the position as defined. And once more, where, in a single instance, a special effort has apparently been made to fix the position of the junction-star beyond all doubt or cavil, the result is a failure; for it still remains a matter of dispute how the description is to be understood, and which member of the group is intended. The case referred to is that of Hasta, which occupies nearly all of verse 17. That Colebrooke was not satisfied as to the meaning of the description is clear from the fact that he specifies, as the star referred to, "γ or δ Corvi." His translation of the verse, "2nd W. of 1st N. W.", conveys to us no intelligible meaning whatever, as applied to the actual group. He evidently understood *paçcimottaratârâyâ* as a single word, standing by euphony for *-târâyâs*, ablative of *-târâ*. Our own rendering supposes it divided into the two independent words *paçcimottaratârâ yâ*, or the three *paçcimâ uttaratârâ yâ*. This interpretation is, in the first place, supported by the corresponding passage in the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, which reads, "of Hasta, the north-western (*vâyavî*): it is also the second western." Again, it applies without difficulty to one of the stars in the group, namely to γ, which we think most likely to be the one pointed out—and mainly, because either of the others would admit of being more simply and briefly designated, δ as the northern, β as the eastern, α as the southern, and ϵ as the western star. We should, then, regard the description as unambiguous, were it not for what is farther added, "being the second situated westward;" for γ is the first or most westerly of the five in longitude, and the third in right ascension, while the second in longitude and in right ascension respectively are the two faint stars ϵ and α. We confess that we do not see how the difficulty is to be solved without some emendation of the text.

We conceive ourselves to be justified, then, in regarding this passage as of doubtful authenticity and inferior authority: as already partaking, in short, of that ignorance and carelessness which has rendered the Hindu astronomers unable, at any time during the past thousand years, to point out in the heavens the complete series of the groups of stars composing their system of asterisms. None of the other authorities accessible to us gives a description of the relative places of the junction-stars, excepting the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, and our manuscript of its text is so defective and corrupt at this point that we are able to derive from it with confidence the positions of only about a third of the stars. So far, it accords with the Sûrya-Siddhânta, save that it points out as the junction-star of Pûrva-Ashâdhâ the brightest, instead of the northernmost, member of the group; and here there is a difference in the mode of designation only, and not a disagreement as regards the star designated.

20. Situated five degrees eastward from Brahmahrdaya is Prajâpati: it is at the end of Taurus, and thirty-eight degrees north.

21. Apâmvatsa is five degrees north from Citrâ: somewhat greater than it, as also six degrees to the north of it, is Âpas.

The three stars whose positions are defined in this passage are not mentioned in the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ, nor in the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi and

(according to Colebrooke) the Brahma-Siddhânta; only the latter of them, Âpas, is omitted by the Graha-Lâghava, being noticed in the Sûrya-Siddhânta alone. It may fairly be questioned, for the reason remarked above, whether the original text of our treatise itself contained the last two verses of this chapter: moreover, at the end of the next chapter (ix. 18), where those stars are spoken of which never set heliacally, on account of their high northern situation, Prajâpati is not mentioned among them, as it ought to be, if its position had been previously stated in the treatise. Still farther on (xiii. 9), in the description of the armillary sphere, it is referred to by the name of Brahma, which, according to the commentary on this passage, and to Colebrooke, it also customarily bears. Perhaps another evidence of the unauthenticity of the passage is to be seen in the fact that the two definitions of the polar longitude of Prajâpati do not, if taken in connection with verse 11, appear to agree with one another: a star which is 5° east from the position of Brahmahrdaya, as there stated, is not "at the end of Taurus," but at its twenty-seventh degree: this may, however, be merely an inaccurate expression, intended to mean that the star is in the latter part, or near the end, of Taurus. The Graha-Lâghava, which defines the positions of all these stars directly, by degrees of polar longitude and latitude, and not by reference either to the signs or to other stars, gives Prajâpati 61° of polar longitude, or 5° more than it assigned to Brahmahrdaya: it also adds 1° to the polar latitude as stated in our text. The star referred to can hardly be any other than that in the head of the Wagoner, or δ Aurigæ (4):

Prajâpati . .	. 67° 11′	36° 49′ N.
δ Aurigæ	69° 54′	30° 49′ N.

The error of latitude is about the same with that which was committed with reference to Brahmahrdaya, or Capella. Why so faint and inconspicuous a star should be found among the few of which the Hindu astronomers have taken particular notice is not easy to discover.

The position of the star named Apâmvatsa, "Waters' Child," is described in our text by reference to Citrâ, or Spica Virginis: it is said to be in the same longitude, 180°, and 5° farther north; and this, since Citrâ itself is in lat. 2° S., would make the latitude of Apâmvatsa 3° N. The Graha-Lâghava gives it this latitude directly, and also makes its longitude agree with that of Spica, which, as already noticed, it places at the distance of 183° from the origin of the sphere. Âpas, "Waters" (the commentary, however, treats the word as a singular masculine, Âpa), is put 6° north of Apâmvatsa, or in lat. 9° N. It is identified by Colebrooke with δ Virginis (3), and doubtless correctly:

Âpas	176° 23′	8° 15′ N.
δ Virginis	171° 28′	8° 38′ N.

Colebrooke pronounces Apâmvatsa to comprise "the nebulous stars marked b 1, 2, 3" in Virgo. We can find, however, no such stars upon any map, or in any catalogue, accessible to us, and hence presume that Colebrooke must have been misled here by some error of the authority on which he relied. There is, on the other hand, a star, ϑ Virginis (4),

situated directly between Spica and δ, and at such a distance from each as shows almost beyond question that it is the star intended:

Apâmvatsa	178° 48′	2° 45′ N.
ϑ Virginis	178° 12′	1° 45′ N.

It is not less difficult in this than in the former case to account for the selection of these stars, among the hundreds equalling or excelling them in brilliancy, as objects of special attention to the astronomical observers of ancient India. Perhaps we have here only the scattered and disconnected fragments of a more complete and shapely system of stellar astronomy, which flourished in India before the scientific reconstruction of the Hindu astronomy transferred the field of labor of the astronomer from the skies to his text-books and his tables of calculation.

The annexed table gives a comparative view of the positions of the seven stars spoken of in this and a preceding passage (vv. 10–12) as defined by our text and as determined by modern observers:

Positions of certain Fixed Stars.

Name.	Hindu position: pol long	pol lat	long.	lat.	True position: long.	lat.	Star compared.
	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′	
Agastya,	90 0	80 0 S	90 0	80 0 S	85 4	75 50 S	α Argûs, Canopus.
Mrgavyâdha,	80 0	40 0 S	76 23	39 52 S	84 7	39 32 S	α Canis Maj., Sirius.
Agni,	52 0	8 0 N.	54 5	7 44 N	62 32	5 22 N	β Tauri.
Brahmahrdaya,	52 0	30 0 N	60 29	28 53 N.	61 50	22 52 N.	α Aurigæ, Capella.
Prajâpati,	57 0	38 0 N	67 11	36 49 N	69 54	30 49 N	δ Aurigæ.
Apâmvatsa,	180 0	3 0 N	178 48	2 45 N.	178 12	1 45 N	ϑ Virginis.
Âpas,	180 0	9 0 N	176 23	8 15 N	171 28	8 38 N	δ Virginis.

The gross errors in the determinations of position of these stars give us a yet lower idea of the character of Hindu observations than we derived from our examination of the junction-stars of the asterisms.

The essay of Colebrooke in the ninth volume of the Asiatic Researches, to which we have already so often referred, gives farther information of much interest respecting such matters connected with the Hindu astronomy of the fixed stars as are passed without notice in our treatise. He states the rules laid down by different authorities for calculating the time of heliacal rising of Agastya, or Canopus, upon which depends the performance of certain religious ceremonies. He also presents a view of the Hindu doctrine of the Seven Sages, or *rshis*, by which name are known the bright stars in Ursa Major forming the well-known constellation of the Wain, or Dipper. To these stars the ancient astronomers of India, and many of the modern upon their authority, have attributed an independent motion about the pole of the heavens, at the rate of 8′ yearly, or of a complete revolution in 2700 years. The Sûrya-Siddhânta alludes in a later passage (xiii. 9) to the Seven Sages, but it evidently is to be understood as rejecting the theory of their proper motion, which is also ignored by the Siddhânta-Çiromani. That so absurd a dogma should have originated and gained a general currency in India, and that it should still maintain itself in many of the astronomical text-books, is, however, too striking and significant a circumstance to be left out of sight in estimating the character of the ancient and native Hindu astronomy.

CHAPTER IX.

OF HELIACAL RISINGS AND SETTINGS.

CONTENTS:—1, subject of the chapter; 2-3, under what circumstances, and at which horizon, the planets rise and set heliacally; 4-5, method of calculating their distances in oblique ascension from the sun; 6-9, distances from the sun at which they disappear and reappear, 10-11, how to find the time of heliacal setting or rising, past or to come; 12-15, distances from the sun at which the asterisms and fixed stars disappear and re appear, 16-17, mode of determining their times of rising and setting, 18, what asterisms and stars never set heliacally.

1. Now is set forth the knowledge of the risings (*udaya*) and settings (*astamaya*) of the heavenly bodies of inferior brilliancy, whose orbs are overwhelmed by the rays of the sun.

The terms used for the heliacal settings and risings of the heavenly bodies, or their disappearance in the sun's neighborhood and their return to visibility, are precisely the same with those employed to denote their rising (*udaya*) and setting (*asta, astamaya, astamana*) above and below the horizon. The title of the chapter, *udayâstâdhikâra*, is literally translated in our heading.

2. Jupiter, Mars, and Saturn, when their longitude is greater than that of the sun, go to their setting in the west; when it is less, to their rising in the east: so likewise Venus and Mercury, when retrograding.

3. The moon, Mercury, and Venus, having a swifter motion, go to their setting in the east when of less longitude than the sun; when of greater, to their rising in the west.

These specifications are of obvious meaning and evident correctness. The planets which have a slower motion than the sun, and so are overtaken by him, make their last appearance in the west, after sunset, and emerge again into visibility in the east, before sunrise: of those which move more rapidly than the sun, the contrary is true: Venus and Mercury belong to either class, according as their apparent motion is retrograde or direct.

4. Calculate the longitudes of the sun and of the planet—in the west, for the time of sunset; in the east, for that of sunrise—and then make also the calculation of apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*) of the planet.

5. Then the ascensional equivalent, in respirations, of the interval between the two (*lagnântaraprâṇâs*) will give, when divided by sixty, the degrees of time (*kâlânçâs*); or, in the west, the ascensional equivalent, in respirations, of the interval between the two when increased each by six signs.

Whether a planet will or will not be visible in the west after sunset, or in the east before sunrise, is in this treatise made to depend solely

upon the interval of time by which its setting follows, or its rising precedes, that of the sun, or upon its distance from the sun in oblique ascension; to the neglect of those other circumstances—as the declination of the two bodies, and the distance and direction of the planet from the ecliptic—which variously modify the limit of visibility as thus defined. The ascertainment of the distance in oblique ascension, then, is the object of the rules given in these verses. In explaining the method of the process, we will consider first the case of a calculation made for the eastern horizon. The time of sunrise having been determined, the true longitudes and rates of motion of the sun and the planet in question are found for that moment, as also the latitude of the planet. Owing to the latter's removal in latitude from the ecliptic, it will not pass the horizon at the same moment with the point of the ecliptic which determines its longitude, and the point with which it does actually rise must be found by a separate process. This is accomplished by calculating the apparent longitude of the planet, according to the method taught in the seventh chapter. There is nothing in the language of the text which indicates that the calculation is not to be made in full, as there prescribed, and for the given moment of sunrise: as so conducted, however, it would evidently yield an erroneous result; for, the planet being above the horizon, the point of the ecliptic to which it is then referred by a circle through the north and south points of the horizon is not the one to which it was referred by the horizon itself at the moment of its own rising. The commentary removes this difficulty, by specifying that the *akshadṛkkarman*, or that part of the process which gives the correction for latitude, is to be performed "only as taught in the first half-verse"—that is, according to the former part of vii. 8, which contains the rule for determining the amount of the correction at the horizon—omitting the after process, by which its value is made to correspond to the altitude of the planet at the given time. Having thus ascertained the points of the ecliptic which rise with the sun and with the planet respectively, the corresponding equatorial interval, or the distance of the planets in oblique ascension, is found by a rule already given (iii. 50). The result is expressed in respirations of sidereal time, which are equivalent to minutes of the equator (see above, i. 11–12); they are reduced to degrees by dividing by sixty: and the degrees thus found receive the technical name of "time-degrees" (*kâlânçâs, kâlabhâgâs*); they are also called below "degrees of setting" (*astânçâs*), and "degrees of visibility" (*dṛçyânçâs*).

If the planet for which the calculation is made has greater longitude than the sun, the process, being adapted to the time of sunset, and to the western horizon, requires a slight modification, owing to the fact that the equivalents of the signs in oblique ascension (iii. 42–45) are given only as measured at the eastern horizon. Since 180 degrees of the ecliptic are always above the horizon, any given point of the ecliptic will set at the same moment that another 180° distant from it rises; by adding, then, six signs to the calculated positions of the sun and the planet, and ascertaining, by iii. 50, the ascensional difference of the two points so found, the interval between the setting of the sun and that of the planet will be determined.

Before going on to explain how, from the result thus obtained, the time of the planet's disappearance or re-appearance may be derived, the text defines the distances from the sun, in oblique ascension or "degrees of time," at which each planet is visible.

6. The degrees of setting (*astânçâs*) are, for Jupiter, eleven; for Saturn, fifteen; for Mars, moreover, they are seventeen:

7. Of Venus, the setting in the west and the rising in the east take place, by reason of her greatness, at eight degrees; the setting in the east and the rising in the west occur, owing to her inferior size, at ten degrees:

8. So also Mercury makes his setting and rising at a distance from the sun of twelve or fourteen degrees, according as he is retrograding or rapidly advancing.

9. At distances, in degrees of time (*kâlabhâgâs*), greater than these, the planets become visible to men; at less distances they become invisible, their forms being swallowed up (*grasta*) by the brightness of the sun.

The moon, it will be noticed, is omitted here; her heliacal rising and setting are treated of at the beginning of the next following chapter.

In the case of Mercury and Venus, the limit of visibility is at a greater or less distance from the sun according as the planet is approaching its inferior or superior conjunction, the diminution of the illuminated portion of the disk being more than compensated by the enlargement of the disk itself when seen so much nearer to the earth.

Ptolemy treats, in the last three chapters (xiii. 7–9) of his work, of the disappearance and reappearance of the planets in the neighborhood of the sun, and defines the limits of visibility of each planet when in the sign Cancer, or where the equator and ecliptic are nearly parallel. His limits are considerably different from those defined in our text, being, for Saturn, 14°; for Jupiter, 12° 45′; for Mars, 14° 30′; for Venus and Mercury, in the west, 5° 40′ and 11° 30′ respectively.

10. The difference, in minutes, between the numbers thus stated and the planet's degrees of time (*kâlânçâs*), when divided by the difference of daily motions—or, if the planet be retrograding, by the sum of daily motions—gives a result which is the time, in days etc.

11. The daily motions, multiplied by the corresponding ascensional equivalents (*tallagnâsavas*), and divided by eighteen hundred, give the daily motions in time (*kâlagati*); by means of these is found the distance, in days etc., of the time past or to come.

Of these two verses, the second prescribes so essential a modification of the process taught in the first, that their arrangement might have been more properly reversed. If we have ascertained, by the previous rules, the distance of a planet in oblique ascension from the sun, and if we know the distance in oblique ascension at which it will disappear or re-appear, the interval between the given moment and that at which disappearance or re-appearance will take place may be readily found by

dividing by the rate of approach or separation of the two bodies the difference between their actual distance and that of apparition and disparition: but the divisor must, of course, be the rate of approach in oblique ascension, and not in longitude. The former is derived from the latter by the following proportion: as a sign of the ecliptic, or 1800′, is to its equivalent in oblique ascension, as found by iii. 42–45, so is the arc of the ecliptic traversed by each planet in a day to the equatorial equivalent of that arc. The daily rates of motion in oblique ascension thus ascertained are styled the "time-motions" (*kâlagati*), as being commensurate with the "time-degrees" (*kâlânçâs*).

12. Svâtî, Agastya, Mṛgavyâdha, Citrâ, Jyeshṭhâ, Punarvasu, Abhijit, and Brahmahṛdaya rise and set at thirteen degrees.

13. Hasta, Çravana, the Phalgunîs, Çravishṭhâ, Rohiṇî, and Maghâ become visible at fourteen degrees; also Viçâkhâ and Açvinî.

14. Kṛttikâ, Anurâdhâ (*mâitra*), and Mûla, and likewise Âçleshâ and Ârdrâ (*râudrarksha*), are seen at fifteen degrees; so, too, the pair of Ashâḍhâs.

15. Bharaṇî, Pushya, and Mṛgaçîrsha, owing to their faintness, are seen at twenty-one degrees; the rest of the asterisms become visible and invisible at seventeen degrees.

These are specifications of the distances from the sun in oblique ascension (*kâlânçâs*) at which the asterisms, and those other of the fixed stars whose positions were defined in the preceding chapter, make their heliacal risings and settings. The asterisms we are doubtless to regard as represented by their junction-stars (*yogatârâ*). The classification here made of the stars in question, according to their comparative magnitude and brilliancy, is in many points a very strange and unaccountable one, and by no means calculated to give us a high idea of the intelligence and care of those by whom it was drawn up. The first class, comprising such as are visible at a distance of 13° from the sun, is, indeed, almost wholly composed of stars of the first magnitude; one only, Punarvasu (β Geminorum), being of the first to second, and having for its fellow one of the first (α Geminorum). But the second class, that of the stars visible at 14°, also contains four which are of the first magnitude, or the first to second; namely, Aldebaran (Rohiṇî), Regulus (Maghâ), Deneb or β Leonis (Uttara-Phalgunî), and Atair or α Aquilæ (Çravana); and, along with these, one of the second to third magnitude, δ Leonis (Pûrva-Phalgunî), three of the third, and one, ι Libræ (Viçâkhâ), of the fourth. In this last case, however, it might be possible to regard α Libræ, of the second magnitude, as the star which is made to determine the visibility of the asterism. Among the stars of the third class, again, which are visible at 15°, is one, α Orionis (Ârdrâ), which, though a variable star, does not fall below the first to second magnitude; while with it are found ranked six stars of the third magnitude, or of the third to fourth. The class of those which are visible at 17°, and which are left unspecified, contains two stars of the fourth magnitude, but also two of the second, one of which,

α Andromedæ or γ Pegasi (Uttara-Bhâdrapadâ), is mentioned below (v. 18) among those which are never obscured by the too near approach of the sun. The stars forming the class which are not to be seen within 21° of the sun are all of the fourth magnitude, but they are no less distinctly visible than two of those in the preceding class; and indeed, Bharaṇî is palpably more so, since it contains a star of the third magnitude, which is perhaps (see above) to be regarded as its junction-star. Since Agni, Brahma, Apâṁvatsa, and Âpas are not specially mentioned, it is to be assumed that they all belong in the class of those visible at 17°, and they are so treated by the commentator: the first of them (β Tauri) is a star of the second magnitude; for the rest, see the last note to the preceding chapter.

Some of the apparent anomalies of this classification are mitigated or removed by making due allowance for the various circumstances by which, apart from its absolute brilliancy, the visibility of a star in the sun's neighborhood is favored or the contrary—such as its distance and direction from the equator and ecliptic, and the part of the ecliptic in which the sun is situated during its disappearance. Many of them, however, do not admit of such explanation, and we cannot avoid regarding the whole scheme of classification as one not founded on careful and long-continued observation, but hastily and roughly drawn up in the beginning, and perhaps corrupted later by unintelligent imitators and copyists.

16. The degrees of visibility (*dṛçyânçâs*), if multiplied by eighteen hundred and divided by the corresponding ascensional equivalent (*udayâsavas*), give, as a result, the corresponding degrees on the ecliptic (*kshetrânçâs*); by means of them, likewise, the time of visibility and of invisibility may be ascertained.

This verse belongs, in the natural order of sequence, not after the passage next preceding, with which it has no special connection, but after verse 11. Instead of reducing, as taught in that verse, the motions upon the ecliptic to motions in oblique ascension, the "degrees of time" (*kâlânçâs*) may themselves be reduced to their equivalent upon the corresponding part of the ecliptic, and then the time of disappearance or of re-appearance calculated as before, using as a divisor the sum or difference of daily motions along the ecliptic. The proportion by which the reduction is made is the converse of that before given; namely, as the ascensional equivalent of the sign in which are the sun and the planet is to that sign itself, or 1800′, so are the "degrees of visibility" (*dṛçyânçâs*, or *kâlânçâs*) of the planet to the equivalent distance upon that part of the ecliptic in which it is then situated. The technical name given to the result of the proportion is *kshetrânçâs*: *kshetra* is literally "field, territory," and the meaning of the compound may be thus paraphrased: "the limit of visibility, in degrees, measured upon that part of the ecliptic which is, at the time, the territory occupied by the planets in question, or their proper sphere."

17. Their rising takes place in the east, and their setting in the west; the calculation of their apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*)

is to be made according to previous rules; the ascertainment of the time, in days etc., is always by the daily motion of the sun alone.

This verse should follow immediately after verse 15, to which it attaches itself in the closest manner. The dislocation of arrangement in the latter part of this chapter is quite striking, and is calculated to suggest a suspicion of interpolations.

The directions given in the verse require no explanation: they are just such an adaptation of the processes already prescribed to the case of the fixed stars as that made in verse 14 of the last chapter. The commentary points out again that the calculation of the correction for latitude (*akshadṛkkarman*) is to be made only for the horizon, or as stated in the first half-verse of the rule.

18. Abhijit, Brahmahṛdaya, Svâtî, Çravaṇa (*vâishṇava*), Çravishṭhâ (*vâsava*), and Uttara-Bhâdrapadâ (*ahirbudhnya*), owing to their northern situation, are not extinguished by the sun's rays.

It may seem that it would have been a more orderly proceeding to omit the stars here mentioned from the specifications of verses 12–15 above; but there is, at least, no inconsistency or inaccuracy in the double statement of the text, since some of the stars may never attain that distance in oblique ascension from the sun which is there pointed out as their limit of visibility. We have not thought it worth the trouble to go through with the calculations, and ascertain whether, according to the data and methods of this treatise, these six stars, and these alone, of those which the treatise notices, would never become invisible at Ujjayini. It is evident, however, as has already been noticed above (viii. 20–21), that the star called Brahma or Prajâpati (δ Aurigæ) is not here taken into account, since it is 8° north of Brahmahṛdaya, and consequently can not become invisible where the latter does not.

CHAPTER X.

OF THE MOON'S RISING AND SETTING, AND OF THE ELEVATION OF HER CUSPS.

CONTENTS:—1, of the heliacal rising and setting of the moon; 2–5, how to find the interval from sunset to the setting or rising of the moon; 6–8, method of determining the moon's relative altitude and distance from the sun at sunset; 9, to ascertain the measure of the illuminated part of her disk; 10–14, method of delineating the moon's appearance at sunset; 15, how to make the same calculation and delineation for sunrise.

1. The calculation of the heliacal rising (*udaya*) and setting (*asta*) of the moon, too, is to be made by the rules already given. At twelve degrees' distance from the sun she becomes visible in the west, or invisible in the east.

In determining the time of the moon's disappearance in the neighborhood of the sun, or of her emergence into visibility again beyond the sphere of his rays, no new rules are required; the same methods being employed as were made use of in ascertaining the time of heliacal setting and rising of the other planets: they were stated in the preceding chapter. The definition of the moon's limit of visibility would have been equally in order in the other chapter, but is deferred to this in order that the several processes in which the moon is concerned may be brought together. The title of the chapter, *çṛngonnatyadhikâra*, "chapter of the elevation of the moon's cusps" (*çṛnga*, literally "horn"), properly applies only to that part of it which follows the fifth verse.

The degrees spoken of in this verse are, of course, "degrees of time" (*kâlânçâs*), or in oblique ascension.

2. Add six signs to the longitudes of the sun and moon respectively, and find, as in former processes, the ascensional equivalent, in respirations, of their interval (*lagnântarâsavas*): if the sun and moon be in the same sign, ascertain their interval in minutes.

3. Multiply the daily motions of the sun and moon by the result, in nâḍîs, and divide by sixty; add to the longitude of each the correction for its motion, thus found, and find anew their interval, in respirations;

4. And so on, until the interval, in respirations, of the sun and moon is fixed: by so many respirations does the moon, in the light half-month (*çukla*), go to her setting after the sun.

5. Add half a revolution to the sun's longitude, and calculate the corresponding interval, in respirations: by so many respirations does the moon, in the dark half-month (*kṛshṇapaksha*), come to her rising after sunset.

The question here sought to be solved is, how long after sunset upon any given day will take place the setting of the moon in the crescent half-month, or from new to full moon, and the rising of the moon in the waning half-month, or from full to new moon. The general process is the same with that taught in the last chapter, for obtaining a like result as regards the other planets or fixed stars: we ascertain, by the rules of the seventh chapter—applying the correction for the latitude according to its value at the horizon, as determined by the first part of vii. 8—the point of the ecliptic which sets with the moon; and then the distance in oblique ascension between this and the point at which the sun set will measure the required interval of time. An additional correction, however, needs to be applied to the result of this process in the case of the moon, owing to her rapid motion, and her consequent perceptible change of place between the time of sunset and that of her own setting or rising: this is done by calculating the amount of her motion during the interval as first determined, and adding its equivalent in oblique ascension to that interval; then calculating her motion anew for the increased interval and adding its ascensional equivalent—and so on, until the desired degree of accuracy is attained.

The process thus explained, however, is not precisely that which is prescribed in the text. We are there directed to calculate the amount of motion both of the sun and moon during the interval between the setting of the sun and that of the moon, and, having applied them to the longitudes of the two bodies, to take the ascensional equivalent of the distance between them in longitude, as thus doubly corrected, for the precise time of the setting of the moon after sunset. In one point of view this is false and absurd; for when the sun has once passed the horizon, the interval to the setting of the moon will be affected only by her motion, and not at all by his. In another light, the process does not lack reason: the allowance for the sun's motion is equivalent to a reduction of the interval from sidereal (*nâkshatra*) time to civil, or true solar (*sâvana*) time, or from respirations which are thirty-six-hundreths of the earth's revolution on its axis to such as are like parts of the time from actual sunrise to actual sunrise. But such a mode of measuring time is unknown elsewhere in this treatise, which defines (i. 11–12) and employs sidereal time alone, adding (ii. 59) to the sixty nâḍîs which constitute a sidereal day so much sidereal time as is needed to make out the length of a day that is reckoned by any other method. It seems necessary, then, either to suppose a notable blunder in this passage, or to recognize in it such a departure from the usual methods of the treatise as would show it to be an interpolation. Probably the latter is the alternative to be chosen: it is, at any rate, that which the commentator prefers: he pronounces the two verses beginning with the second half of verse 2, and ending at the middle of verse 4, to be spurious, and the true text of the Siddhânta to comprise only the first half of verse 2 and the second of verse 4; these would form together a verse closely analogous in its method and expression with verse 5, which teaches the like process for moon-rise, in the waning half-month. Fortified by the authority of the commentator, we are justified in assuming that the Sûrya-Siddhânta originally neglected, in its process for calculating the time of the moon's setting, her motion during the interval between that time and sunset, and that the omission was later supplied by another hand, from some other treatise, which reckoned by solar time instead of sidereal. This does not, however, explain and account for the second half of the second verse; which, if it has any meaning at all, different from that conveyed in the former part of the same verse, seems to signify that when the sun and moon are so near one another as to be in the same sign, the discordance between distances on the ecliptic and their equivalents upon the equator may be neglected, and the difference of longitude in minutes taken for the interval of time in respirations.

If the time is between new and full moon, the object of the process is to obtain the interval from sunset to the setting of the moon; as both take place at the western horizon, the two planets are transferred to the eastern horizon, in order to the measurement of their distance in ascension: if, on the other hand, the moon has passed her full, the time of moonrise is sought; here the sun alone is transferred, by the addition of 180° to his longitude, to the eastern horizon, as taught in verse 5. The equation to be applied to the longitude of both planets is found by the familiar proportion—as sixty nâḍîs are to the given interval in nâḍîs, so

is the true daily motion of the planet to its actual motion during that interval.

6. Of the declinations of the sun and moon, if their direction be the same, take the difference; in the contrary case, take the sum: the corresponding sine is to be regarded as south or north, according to the direction of the moon from the sun.

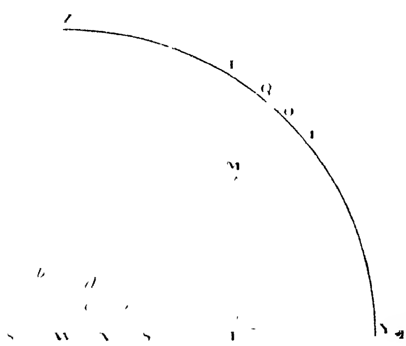
7. Multiply this by the hypothenuse of the moon's mid-day shadow, and, when it is north, subtract it from the sine of latitude (*aksha*) multiplied by twelve; when it is south, add it to the same.

8. The result, divided by the sine of co-latitude (*lamba*), gives the base (*bhuja*), in its own direction; the gnomon is the perpendicular (*koṭi*); the square root of the sum of their squares is the hypothenuse.

In explaining the method of this process, we shall follow the guidance of the commentator, pointing out afterwards wherein he varies from the strict letter of the text: for illustration we refer to the accompanying figure (Fig. 32).

The figure represents the south-western quarter of the visible sphere, seen as projected upon the plane of the meridian; Z being the zenith, Y the south point, W Y the intersection of the horizontal and meridian planes, and W the projection of the west point. Let Z Q equal the latitude of the place of observation, and let Q T and Q O be the declinations of the sun and moon respectively, at the given time: then W Q, S T, and N O will be the projections of the equator and of the diurnal circles of the sun and moon. Suppose, now, the sun to be upon the horizon, at S, and the moon to have a certain altitude, being at M: draw from M the perpendicular to the plane of the horizon M L, and join M S: it is required to know the relation to one another of the three sides of the triangle S L M, in order to the delineation of the moon's appearance when at M, or at the moment of sunset.

Fig. 32



Now M L is evidently the sine of the moon's altitude at the given time, which may be found by methods already more than once described and illustrated. And S L is composed of the two parts S N and N L, of which the former depends upon the distance of the moon in declination from the sun, and the latter upon the moon's altitude. But S N is one of the sides of a right-angled triangle, in which the angle N S *b* is equal to the observer's co-latitude, and N *b* to the sum of the sine of declination of the sun, *c b* or W *a*, and that of the moon, N *c*. Hence

sin b S N : b N :: R : S N

or sin co-lat. : sum of sines of decl. :: R : S N

and S N = (R × sum of sines of decl.) ÷ sin co-lat.

In like manner, since, in the triangle M N L, the angles at M and N are respectively equal to the observer's latitude and co-latitude,

sin M N L : sin L M N :: M L : N L

or sin co-lat. : sin. lat. :: sin alt. : N L

and N L = (sin alt. × sin lat.) ÷ sin co-lat.

We have thus found the values of M L and the two parts of S L in terms of the general sphere, or of a circle whose radius is tabular radius: it is desired farther to reduce them to terms of a circle in which M L shall equal the gnomon, or twelve digits. And since the gnomon is equal to the sine of altitude in a circle of which the hypothenuse of the corresponding shadow is radius (compare above, iii. 25–27 etc.), this reduction may be effected by multiplying the quantities in question by the hypothenuse of the shadow and dividing by radius. That is to say, representing the reduced values of S N and N L by *s n* and *n l* respectively,

R : hyp. shad. : M L : gnom.
R : hyp. shad. :: S N : *s n*
R : hyp. shad. :: N L : *n l*

Substituting, now, in the second and third of these proportions the values of S N and N L found for them above, and substituting also in the third the value of the hypothenuse of the shadow derived from the first, we have

$$\text{R : hyp. shad.} :: \frac{\text{R} \times \text{sum sin decl.}}{\text{sin co-lat.}} : sn, \text{ and R} : \frac{\text{R} \times \text{gnom.}}{\text{sin alt.}} :: \frac{\text{sin alt.} \times \text{sin lat.}}{\text{sin co-lat.}} : nl$$

which reduce to

$$sn = \frac{\text{hyp. shad.} \times \text{sum sin decl.}}{\text{sin co-lat.}}, \text{ and } nl = \frac{\text{sin lat.} \times \text{gnom.}}{\text{sin co-lat.}}$$

Hence, if the perpendicular M L be assumed of the constant value of the gnomon, or twelve digits, we have

$$\text{SL} = \frac{(\text{hyp shad} \times \text{sum sin decl.}) + (\text{sin lat.} \times \text{gnom.})}{\text{sin co-lat.}}$$

In the case thus far considered the sun and moon have been supposed upon opposite sides of the equator. If they are upon the same side, the sun setting at S′, or if their sines of declination, S′*d* and N *c*, are of the same direction, the value of S′ N, the corresponding part of the base S′ L, will be found by treating in the same manner as before the difference of the sines, S′*e*, instead of their sum. In this case, too, the value of S′*e* being north, S′ N will have to be subtracted from N L to give the base S′ L. Other positions of the two luminaries with respect to one another are supposable, but those which we have taken are sufficient to illustrate all the conditions of the problem, and the method of its solution.

It is evident that, in two points, the process as thus explained by the commentator is discordant with that which the text prescribes. The latter, in the first place, tells us to take, not the sum or difference of the

sines of declination, but the sine of the sum or difference of declinations, as the side b N of the triangle S N b. This seems to be a mere inaccuracy on the part of the text, the difference between the two quantities, which could never be of any great amount, being neglected: it is, however, very hard to see why the less accurate of the two valuations of the quantity in question should have been selected by the text; for it is, if anything, rather less easy of determination than the other. The other discordance is one of much more magnitude and importance: the text speaks of the "hypothenuse of the moon's mid-day shadow" (*madhyâhnenduprabhâkarṇa*), for which the commentary substitutes that of the shadow cast by the moon at the given moment of sunset. The commentator attempts to reconcile the discrepancy by saying that the text means here the moon's shadow as calculated after the method of a noon-shadow; or again, that the time of sunset is, in effect, the middle of the day, since the civil day is reckoned from sunrise to sunrise: but neither of these explanations can be regarded as satisfactory. The commentator farther urges in support of his understanding of the term, that we are expressly taught above (vii. 11) that the calculation of apparent longitude (*dṛkkarman*) is to be made in the process for finding the elevation of the moon's cusps; while, if the hypothenuse of the moon's meridian-shadow be the one found, there arises no occasion for making that calculation. It seems clear that, unless the commentator's understanding of the true scope and method of the whole process be erroneous, the substitution which he makes must necessarily be admitted. This is a point to which we shall recur later.

9. The number of minutes in the longitude of the moon diminished by that of the sun gives, when divided by nine hundred, her illuminated part (*çukla*): this, multiplied by the number of digits (*angula*) of the moon's disk, and divided by twelve, gives the same corrected (*sphuṭa*).

The rule laid down in this verse, for determining the measure of the illuminated part of the moon, applies only to the time between new moon and full moon, when the moon is less than 180° from the sun: when her excess of longitude is more than 180°, the rule is to be applied as stated below, in verse 15. As the whole diameter of the moon is illuminated when she is half a revolution from the sun, one half her diameter at a quarter of a revolution's distance, and no part of it at the time of conjunction, it is assumed that the illuminated portion of her diameter will vary as the part of 180° by which she is distant from the sun; and hence that, assuming the measure of the diameter of her disk to be twelve digits, the number of digits illuminated may be found by the following proportion: as half a revolution, or 10,800′, is to twelve digits, so is the moon's distance from the sun in minutes to the corresponding part of the diameter illuminated: the substitution, in the first ratio, of 900 : 1 for 10,800 : 12, gives the rule as stated in the text. Here, it will be noticed, we have for the first and only time the Greek method of measuring the moon's diameter, by equal twelfths, or digits: from this scale a farther reduction is made to the proper Hindu scale, as determined by the methods of the fourth chapter (see above, iv. 2–3, 26),

by another proportion: as twelve is to the true diameter in digits, so is the result already found to the true measure of the part of the diameter illuminated.

It is not to be wondered at that the Hindus did not recognize the ellipticity of the line forming the inner boundary of the moon's illuminated part: it is more strange that they ignored the obvious fact that, while the illuminated portion of the moon's spherical surface visible from the earth varies very nearly as her distance from the sun, the apparent breadth of the bright part of her disk, in which that surface is seen projected, must vary rather as the versed sine of her distance.

10. Fix a point, calling it the sun: from that lay off the base, in its own proper direction; then the perpendicular, toward the west; and also the hypothenuse, passing through the extremity of the perpendicular and the central point.

11. From the point of intersection of the perpendicular and the hypothenuse describe the moon's disk, according to its dimensions at the given time. Then, by means of the hypothenuse, first make a determination of directions;

12. And lay off upon the hypothenuse, from the point of its intersection with the disk, in an inward direction, the measure of the illuminated part: between the limit of the illuminated part and the north and south points draw two fish-figures (*matsya*);

13. From the point of intersection of the lines passing through their midst describe an arc touching the three points: as the disk already drawn appears, such is the moon upon that day.

14. After making a determination of directions by means of the perpendicular, point out the elevated (*unnata*) cusp at the extremity of the cross-line: having made the perpendicular (*koṭi*) to be erect (*unnata*), that is the appearance of the moon.

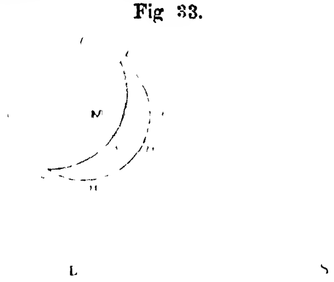
15. In the dark half-month subtract the longitude of the sun increased by six signs from that of the moon, and calculate, in the same manner as before, her dark part. In this case lay off the base in a reverse direction, and the circle of the moon on the west.

Having made the calculations prescribed in the preceding passages, we are now to project their results, and to exhibit a representation of the moon as she will appear at the given time. The annexed figure (Fig. 33) will illustrate the method of the projection.

We first fix upon a point, as S, which shall represent the position of the sun's centre upon the western horizon at the moment of sunset, and we determine, in the manner taught at the beginning of the third chapter, the lines of cardinal direction of which it is the centre. From this point we then lay off the base (*bhuja*) S L, according to its value in digits as ascertained by the previous process, and northward or southward, according to its true direction as determined by the same process. From L, its extremity, is laid off the perpendicular (*koṭi*), which has the fixed value of twelve digits. This, being a line perpendicular to the plane of the horizon, may be regarded as having no proper direction of its own

upon the surface of projection: but the text directs us to lay it off westward from L, apparently in order that the observer, standing upon the eastern side of his base S L, and looking westward toward the setting sun, may have his figure duly before him. The western extremity of the perpendicular, M, represents the moon's place, and from that as a centre, and with a radius equal to the semi-diameter of the moon in digits, as ascertained by calculation for the given moment, a circle is described, representing the moon's disk. Next we

Fig 33.



are to prolong the hypothenuse, S M, to *e*, and to draw, by the usual means, the line *s n* at right angles to it: the directions upon the disk thus determined by the hypothenuse, as the text phrases it, are called by the commentary "moon-directions" (*candradiças*). The sun being at S, the illuminated half of the moon's circumference will be *s w n*, the cusps will be at *s* and *n*, and *w* will be the extremity of the diameter of greatest illumination. From *w*, then, lay off upon the hypothenuse an amount, *w x*, equal to the measure in digits of the illuminated part of the diameter, and through *s*, *x*, and *n* describe an arc of a circle, in the manner already more than once explained (see above, vi. 14–16); the crescent *s w n x* will represent the amount and direction of the moon's illuminated part at the given time. Now we once more make a determination of directions upon the disk according to the perpendicular L M; that is to say, we prolong L M to *e'*, and draw *s' n'* at right angles to it: the directions thus established are styled in the commentary "sun-directions" (*sûryadiças*), although without obvious propriety: they might rather be called "apparent directions," or "directions on the sphere," since *s' n'* should represent a line parallel with the horizon, and *w' e'* one perpendicular to it. The line *s' n'* is called in the text the "cross-line" (*tiryaksûtra*), and whichever of the moon's cusps is found upon that line is, we are told, to be regarded as the elevated (*unnata*) cusp, the other being the depressed one (*nata*). Whenever there is any base (*bhuja*), as S L, or whenever the moon and sun are not upon the same vertical line M L, there will take place, of course, a tilting of the moon's disk, by which one of her cusps will be raised higher above the horizon than the other; the relative value of the base to the perpendicular will determine the amount of the tilting, and of the deflection of the points of direction *n e s w* from *n' e' s' w'*; and the elevated cusp will always be that upon the same side of the perpendicular on which the base lies. What is meant by the latter half of verse 14 is not altogether clear. The commentator explains it in quite a different manner from that in which we have translated it: he understands *koṭi* as meaning in this instance "cusp," which signification it is by derivation well adapted to bear, and does actually receive, although not in any other passage of this treatise: and he explains the verb *kṛtvâ*, "having made," by *dṛshṭvâ*, "having seen": the phrase would then read "beholding the elevated cusp." We cannot accept

explanation as a plausible one: to us the meaning seems rather to that whereas, in the projection, the perpendicular (*koṭi*) L M is drawn on a horizontal surface, we are, in judging of the projection as an actual representation of the moon's position, to conceive of that line as erected, set up perpendicularly.

We have thus far only supposed a case in which the calculations are made for the moment of sunset, the situation of the moon being in the western hemisphere of the heavens. In the text, however, there is nothing whatever to limit or determine the time of calculation, and it is evident that the process of finding the base and perpendicular will be precisely the same, if S (Fig. 32) be taken upon the eastern horizon, and the triangle S L M in the eastern hemisphere. The last verse supposes these to be the conditions of the problem, and lays down rules for determining in such a case the amount of illumination, and for drawing the projection. As regards the measure of the illuminated part, we are to follow the same general method as before, only substituting for the moon's distance in longitude from the sun her distance from the point of opposition, and regarding the result obtained as the measure of that part of the diameter which is obscured (*asita*, "black"); since, during the waning half-month, darkness grows gradually over the moon's face in the same manner as illumination had done during the crescent half-month. But why the base (*bhuja*) is now to be laid off in the opposite to its calculated direction, we find it very hard to see. The commentator says it is because all the conditions of the problem are reversed by our having to calculate and lay off the obscured, instead of the illuminated, part of the moon's disk: but the force of this reason is not apparent. The establishment in the projection of a point representing the position of the sun is, in effect, the one condition which sufficiently determines all the rest: if we are to make a projection corresponding to that drawn in illustration of the other case, we ought, it should seem, to draw the base in its true direction, and, stationing the observer upon the western side of it, looking eastward, to lay off the perpendicular away from him, toward the east; and then to proceed as before, only measuring the obscured part of the diameter from its remoter extremity, instead of from that next the sun. This latter direction is regarded by the commentator as actually conveyed in the final clause of verse 15: he interprets "the circle (*mandala*) of the moon" to mean the dark part of the moon's disk, or that which is to be pointed out as increasing during the waning half-month, and "on the west" to mean on the western side of the complete disk, which is the side now turned away from the sun. It seems to us exceedingly questionable whether the passage fairly admits of this interpretation, but we have no other explanation of it to offer—unless, indeed, it is to be looked upon as a virtual repetition of the former direction to lay off the perpendicular, which determines the position of the moon's disk, towards the west.

We must confess that we feel less satisfied with our comprehension of the scope and methods of this chapter than of any that precedes it. We are disappointed at finding the result arrived at one of so indefinite a character, and of so little significance. The whole laborious calculation seems to be made simply for the sake of delineating the appearance of

the moon at a given moment, and pointing out which of her two horns has the greater altitude. No determination is made of the amount of angular deflection, upon which any consequences, meteorological, astrological, or of any other character, could be founded; nor is any hint given of the way in which the results of the process are to be turned to account. Moreover, while the object aimed at seems thus to be merely a projection, a time is selected at which the moon is not ordinarily visible, so that she can not be seen to exhibit an accordance with her delineated appearance! Once more, the whole process is an extremely faulty one: it is, in fact, only when the moon is herself at the horizon that her visible disk can be regarded as in the same plane with lines parallel with and perpendicular to the horizon, or that $e' w'$ and $n' s'$ (Fig. 33) represent actual directions upon her face: anywhere else, the relations of the moon's disk at M in the first figure (Fig. 32) and at M in the other figure (Fig. 33) are so different that the latter cannot fairly represent the former. It would seem, indeed, as if the moment of the moon's own setting or rising were the one for which such a calculation and projection as this would have most significance: at that time, the disappearance or appearance of one of her horns before the other would be such a phenomenon as might seem to a Hindu astronomer worth the trouble of delineating, as a decisive proof of the accuracy of his scientific knowledge. We have not found it possible, however, to make the rules of the text apply to such a case, and the commentary is explicit in its definition of the time of the calculation, as sunset or sunrise alone, to the exclusion of any other moment. But the discordance existing at more than one point in the chapter between the text and the commentary suggests the conjecture that the original design of the one and the traditional interpretation of it represented by the other may be at variance, and we are not without suspicions that the text may have been altered, so as not now fairly and accurately to represent any one consistent process. A better understanding of the general object of the calculation and the use made of its results, and an acquaintance with the solutions of the problem presented by other astronomical treatises, might throw additional light upon these points; but we are not able at present fully to avail ourselves of such assistance, nor is the importance of the subject such as to render incumbent upon us its fuller elucidation.

CHAPTER XI.

OF CERTAIN MALIGNANT ASPECTS OF THE SUN AND MOON.

CONTENTS:—1–5, definition and description of the malignant aspects of the sun and moon, when of equal declination; 6–11, to find the longitude of the sun and moon when their declinations are equal; 12–13, to ascertain the corresponding time; 14–15, to determine the duration of the aspect, and the moment of its beginning and end; 16–18, its continuance and its influences; 19, when such an aspect may occur more than once, or not at all; 20, occurrence of the yoga of like name and character; 21, of unlucky points in the circle of asterisms; 22, caution as to these unlucky aspects and points; 23, introductory to the following chapters.

1. When the sun and moon are upon the same side of either solstice, and when, the sum of their longitudes being a circle, they are of equal declination, it is styled *vâidhṛta.*

2. When the moon and sun are upon opposite sides of either solstice, and their minutes of declination are the same, it is *vyatîpâta*, the sum of their longitudes being a half-circle.

3. Owing to the mingling of the nets of their equal rays, the fire arising from the wrathfulness of their gaze, being driven on by the provector (*pravaha*), is originated unto the calamity of mortals.

4. Since a fault (*pâta*) at this time often causes the destruction of mortals, it is known as *vyatîpâta*, or, by a difference of title, *vâidhṛti.*

5. Being black, of frightful shape, bloody-eyed, big-bellied, the source of misfortune to all, it is produced again and again.

Of all the chapters in the treatise, this is the one which has least interest and value. It is styled *pâtâdhikâra*, "chapter of the *pâtas*," and concerns itself with giving a description of the malignant character of the times when the sun and moon have equal declination, upon the same or opposite sides of the equator, and with laying down rules by which the time of occurrence of those malignant aspects may be calculated. The latter part alone properly falls within the province of an astronomical treatise like the present: the other would better have been left to works of a professedly astrological character. The term *pâta*, applied to the aspects in question, means literally "fall," and hence also either "fault, transgression," or "calamity." We have often met with it above, in the sense of "node of a planet's orbit"; as so used, it was probably first applied to the moon's nodes, because they were the points of danger in her revolution, near which the sun or herself was liable to fall into the jaws of Râhu (see above, iv. 6); and it was then transferred also, though without the same reason, to the nodes of the other planets. As it is employed in this chapter, we translate it simply "aspect." Why the time when the sun and moon are equally distant from the equator should be looked upon as so especially unfortunate is not easy to discover, notwithstanding the lucid explanation furnished in the third verse. For the "provector" (*pravaha*), the wind which carries the planets forward in their orbits, see above, ii. 3. When the equal declinations are of opposite direction, the aspect is denominated *vâidhṛta*, or *vâidhṛti*. This word is a secondary derivative from *vidhṛti*, "holding apart, withholding," or from *vidhṛta*: it has been noted above (under ii. 65) as the name of the last *yoga*; and its use here is not discordant with that, since the twenty-seventh yoga also occurs when the sum of the longitudes of the sun and moon is 360°. The title of the other aspect (*pâta*), which occurs when the sun and moon are equally removed from the equator upon the same side of it, is *vyatîpâta*, which may be rendered "very excessive sin or calamity." This, too, is the name of one of the yogas, but not of that one which occurs when the sum of longitudes of the sun and moon is 180°: the discordance gives occasion for the ex-

planation contained in verse 20, below. The specification of the text, that the aspects take place when the sum of longitudes equals a circle or a half-circle respectively, or when the two luminaries are equally distant from either solstice, or either equinox, is not to be understood as exact: this would be the case if the moon had no motion in latitude; but owing to that motion, the equality of declinations, which is the main thing, occurs at a time somewhat removed from that of equality of distance from the equinoxes: the latter is called in the commentary *madhyapâta*, "the mean occurrence of the aspect." The terms translated by us "upon the same and upon the opposite sides of either solstice" are *ekâyanagata* and *viparîtâyanagata*, literally "situated in the same and in contrary *ayanas*"; *ayana* being, as already pointed out (end of note to iii. 9–12), the name of the halves into which the ecliptic is divided by the solstices.

6. When the longitudes of the sun and moon, being increased by the degrees etc. found for the coincidence of the solstice with its observed place, are together nearly a circle or nearly a half-circle, calculate the corresponding declinations.

7. Then, if the declination of the moon, she being in an odd quadrant, is, when corrected by her latitude (*vikshepa*), greater than the declination of the sun, the aspect (*pâta*) is already past;

8. If less, it is still to come: in an even quadrant, the contrary is the case. If the moon's declination is to be subtracted from her latitude, the rules as to the quadrant are to be reversed.

As in other processes of a similar character (see above, iv. 7–8; vii. 2–6), we are supposed to have found by trial, for the starting-point of the present calculation, the midnight next preceding or following the occurrence of the aspect in question, and to have determined for that moment the longitudes and rates of motion of both bodies, and the moon's latitude. In finding the longitudes, we are to apply the correction for precession; this is the meaning of the expression in verse 6, *dṛktulyasâdhitânçâdi*, which may be literally translated "degrees etc. calculated for accordance with observed place"; the reference is to the similar expression for the precession contained in iii. 11. Next the declinations are to be found, and that of the moon as corrected for her latitude. And since, in the odd quadrants—that is to say, the first and third, counting from the actual vernal equinox—declination is increasing, while in the others it is decreasing, if the declination in an odd quadrant of the moon, the swifter moving body, is already greater than that of the sun, the time of equality of declination is evidently already past, and the converse. But if, on the other hand, the moon's declination (using that term in its Hindu sense) is so small, and her latitude so great, being of opposite directions, that her actual distance from the equator is measured by the excess of the latter above the former, and so is of direction contrary to that of her declination, then, as declination increases, distance from the equator diminishes, or the contrary, and the conditions as formerly stated are reversed throughout.

9. Multiply the sines of the two declinations by radius, and divide by the sine of greatest declination: the difference of the arcs corresponding to the results, or half that difference, is to be added to the moon's longitude when the aspect (*pâta*) is to come;

10. And is to be subtracted from the moon's longitude when the aspect is past. If the same quantity be multiplied by the sun's motion and divided by the moon's motion, the result is an equation, in minutes, which is to be applied to the sun's place, in the same direction as the other to the moon's.

11. So also is to be applied, in the contrary direction, a like equation to the place of the moon's node. This operation is to be repeated, until the declinations of the two bodies come to be the same.

By this process are ascertained the longitudes of the sun and moon at the time when their declinations are equal. Its method may be briefly explained as follows. At the midnight assumed as the starting-point of the whole calculation there is found to be a certain difference in the two declinations: we desire to determine how far the paths of the two luminaries must be traced forward or backward, in order that that difference may be removed; and this must be effected by means of a series of approximations. We commence our calculation with the moon, as being the body of more rapid motion. By a proportion the inverse of that upon which the rule for deriving the declination from the longitude (ii. 28) is founded, we ascertain at what longitude the moon would have the sun's actual declination, and at what longitude she would have her own actual declination, as corrected by her latitude: the difference between the two results is a measure of the amount of motion in longitude, forward or backward, by which she would gain or lose the difference of declination, if the sun remained stationary and her own latitude unchanged. Since, however, that is not the case, we are compelled to calculate the corresponding motion of the sun, and also the moon's latitude in her new position; and in order to the latter, we must correct the place of the node also for its retrograde motion during the interval. The motions of the sun and node are found by the following proportion: as the moon's daily motion is to that of the sun, or to that of the node, so is the correction applied to the moon's place to that which must be applied to the place of the sun, or to that of the node. A new set of positions in longitude having thus been found, the declinations are again to be calculated, and the same approximative process repeated—and so on, until the desired degree of accuracy is attained.

The text permits us to apply, as the correction for the place of the moon, either the whole or the half of the difference of longitude found as the result of the first proportion: it is unessential, of course, in a process of this tentative character, what amount we assume as that of the first correction, provided those which we apply to the places of the sun and node be made to correspond with it: and there may be cases in which we should be conducted more directly to the final result of the process by taking only half of the difference.

12. The aspect (*pâta*) is at the time of equality of declinations; if, then, the moon's longitude, as thus increased or diminished, be less than her longitude at midnight, the aspect is past; if greater, it is to come.

13. The minutes of interval between the moon's longitude as finally established and that at midnight give, when multiplied by sixty and divided by the moon's daily motion, the time of the aspect, in nâdîs.

We had thus far found only the longitudes of the sun and moon at the time of equality of declination, and not that time itself: the latter is now derived from the former by this proportion: as the moon's daily motion is to a day, or sixty nâḍis, so is the difference between the moon's longitude at midnight and at the time of the aspect to the interval between the latter time and midnight.

14. Multiply the half-sum of the dimensions (*mâna*) of the sun and moon by sixty, and divide by the difference of their daily motions: the result is half the duration (*sthiti*), in nâḍîs etc.

15. The corrected (*sphuṭa*) time of the aspect (*pâta*) is the middle: if that be diminished by the half-duration, the result is the time of the commencement; if increased by the same, it is the time of the end.

16. The time intervening between the moments of the beginning and end is to be looked upon as exceedingly terrible, having the likeness of a consuming fire, forbidden for all works.

The continuance of the centres of the sun and moon at the point of equality of declination is, of course, only momentary; but the aspect and its malignant influences are to be regarded as lasting as long as there is virtual contact of the two disks at that point, or as long as a central eclipse of the sun would last if it took place there. Its half-duration, then, or the interval from its middle to its beginning or end respectively, is found by a proportion, as follows: if in a day, or sixty nâḍîs, the two centres of the sun and moon become separated by a distance which is equal to the difference of their daily motions, in how many nâḍîs will they become separated by a distance which is equal to the sum of their semi-diameters? or

diff. d. motions : 60 ∷ sum semi-diam. : half-duration

And if this amount be subtracted from and added to the time of equality of declination, the results will be the moments at which the aspect will begin and end respectively.

Such is the plain and obvious meaning of the text in this passage. The commentator, however, in accordance with his interpretation of the next following verse (see below), declares that the aspect actually lasts as long as any portion of the moon's disk has the same declination with any portion of that of the sun; and that, accordingly, it commences—the moon's declination being supposed to be increasing—whenever her remoter limb comes to have the same declination with the nearer limb of the sun, and ends when her nearer limb comes to have the same de-

clination with the remoter limb of the sun—the contrary being the case when her declination is decreasing. He acknowledges that the text does not seem to teach this, but puts in the plea which is usual with him when excusing a palpable inaccuracy in the statements or processes of the treatise; namely, that the blessed author of the work, moved by pity for mankind, permitted here the substitution of difference of longitude for difference of declination, in view of the greater ease of its calculation, and the insignificance of the error involved. That error, however, is quite the reverse of insignificant; it is, indeed, so very gross and palpable that we cannot possibly suppose it to have been committed intentionally by the text; we regard it as the easier assumption that the conditions of the continuance of the aspect are differently estimated in the text and in the commentary, being by the former taken to be as we have stated them above, in our explanation of the process. The view of the matter taken by the commentator, it is true, is decidedly the more natural and plausible one: there seems no good reason why an aspect which depends upon equality of declination should be determined as to continuance by motion in longitude, or why the aspect should only occur at all when the two centres are equally distant from the equator; why, in short, there should not be partial aspects, like partial eclipses of the sun. If the doctrine of the commentary is a later development, or an independent form, of that which the text appears to represent, it is a naturally suggested one, and such as might have been expected to arise.

17. While any parts of the disks of the sun and moon have the same declination, so long is there a continuance of this aspect, causing the destruction of all works.

18. So, from a knowledge of the time of its occurrence, very great advantage is obtained, by means of bathing, giving, prayer, ancestral offerings, vows, oblations, and other like acts.

We have translated verse 17 in strict accordance with the interpretation of it presented in the commentary, although we must acknowledge that we do not see how that interpretation is to be reconciled with the actual form of the text. The term *ekâyanagata,* which the commentator renders "having equal declination," is the same with that which in the first verse signified "situated in the same *ayana*"; *mandala,* although it is sometimes used with the meaning "disk," here attributed to it by him, is the word employed in that same verse for a "circle," or "360°"; and *antara,* which he explains by *ekadeça,* "any part," never, so far as we know, is properly used in that sense, while it is of frequent occurrence elsewhere in this treatise with the meaning "interval." The natural rendering of the line would seem to be "when there is between the sun and moon the interval of a circle, situated in the same *ayana.*" This, however, yields no useful meaning, since such a description could only apply to an actual conjunction of the sun and moon. We do not see how the difficulty is to be solved, unless it be allowed us, in view of the discordance already pointed out as existing between the plain meaning of the previous passage and that attributed to it by the commentator, to assume that the text has been tampered with in this verse, and made to furnish a different sense from that it originally had, partly by a

forced interpretation, but partly also by such an alteration of its readings as disables it from yielding any other intelligible meaning.

19. When the equality of declinations of the sun and moon takes place in the neighborhood of the equator, the aspect may then again occur a second time: in the contrary case, it may fail to occur.

Near the equinox, where declination changes rapidly, the moon, as the swifter moving body, may come to have twice, in rapid succession, the same declination with the sun, and upon the opposite sides of the equator. Near the solstice, on the other hand, where the ecliptic and equator are nearly parallel, the moon—if she happens to be nearer the equator than the sun is, owing to her latitude—may pass the region in which the aspect would otherwise be liable to occur, without having had a declination equal in amount to that of the sun.

20. If the sum of the longitudes of the sun and moon, in minutes, on being divided by the portion (*bhoga*) of an asterism (*bha*), yields a quotient between sixteen and seventeen, there is another, a third, *vyatîpâta.*

This is simply a special application of the rule formerly given (ii. 65), for finding, for any given time, the current period named *yoga.* The seventeenth of the series, as is shown by the list there given, has the same name, *vyatîpâta*, with one of the aspects treated of in this chapter: judging from verse 22, below, it is also regarded as possessing a like portentous and malignant character.

21. Of the asterisms (*dhishṇya*) Âçleshâ (*sârpa*), Jyeshṭhâ (*âindra*), and Revatî (*paushṇya*), the last quarters are junctions of the asterisms (*bhasandhi*); the first quarter in the asterisms following these respectively is styled *gaṇḍânta.*

22. In all works, one must avoid the terrible trio of *vyatîpâtas*, as also the trio of *gaṇḍântas*, and this trio of junctions of asterisms.

The division of the ecliptic into twenty-sevenths, or asterisms, coincides with its division into twelfths, or signs, at the ends of the ninth, eighteenth, and twenty-seventh asterisms, which are also those of the fourth, eighth, and twelfth signs respectively. To this innocent circumstance it seems to be owing that those points, and the quarters of portions, or arcs of 200′, on either side of them, are regarded and stigmatized as unlucky and ominous. Hence the title *bhasandhi; sandhi* is literally "putting together, joint," and *bha* is, as has been noticed elsewhere (note to iii. 9–12), a name both of the asterisms and of the signs. In which of its various senses the word *gaṇḍa* is used in the compound *gaṇḍânta*, we do not know.

23. Thus hath been related that supreme, pure, excellent, mysterious, and grand system of the heavenly bodies: what else dost thou desire to know?

In this verse re-appears the personality of the revealer of the treatise, the incarnation of a portion of the sun, which has been lost sight of since near the beginning of the work (i. 7). The questions addressed to him, in answer to this appeal, by Maya, the recipient of the revelation, introduce the next chapter, which, with the two that follow it, contains the additional explanations and instructions vouchsafed in reply. The last three chapters confessedly constitute a separate portion of the work, which is here divided into a *pûrva khanḍa* and an *uttara khanḍa*, or a "former Part" and a "latter Part." It is by no means impossible that the whole second Part is an appendix to the text of the Siddhânta as originally constituted.

The title of the next following chapter is *bhûgolâdhyâya*, "chapter of the earth-globe": in the second part of the treatise the chapters are styled *adhyâya*, "lection," instead of, as hitherto, *adhikâra*, "heading."

CHAPTER XII.

COSMOGONY, GEOGRAPHY, DIMENSIONS OF THE CREATION.

Contents:—1-9, inquiries; 10-28, development of the creative agencies, of the elements, and of the existing creation; 29-31, form and disposition of the stellar and planetary systems; 32-44, situation, form, structure, and divisions of the earth; 45-72, varying phenomena of night and day in different latitudes and zones; 73-77, revolutions of the stars and planets; 78-79, regents of the different divisions of time; 80-90, dimensions of the planetary, stellar, and ethereal orbits.

1. Then the demon Maya, prostrating himself with hands suppliantly joined before him who derived his being from the part of the Sun, and revering him with exceeding devotion, inquired as follows:

2. O blessed one! of what measure is the earth? of what form? how supported? how divided? and how are there in it seven interterranean (*pâtâla*) earths?

3. And how does the sun cause the varying distinction of day and night? how does he revolve about the earth, enlightening all creatures?

4. For what reason are the day and night of the gods and of the demons opposed to one another? or how does that take place by means of the sun's completion of his revolution?

5. Why does the day of the Fathers consist of a month, but that of mortals of sixty nâḍîs? for what reason is not this latter everywhere the case?

6. Whence is it that the regents of the days, years, months, and hours (*horâ*) are not the same? How does the circle of asterisms (*bhagaṇa*) revolve? what is the support of it with the planets?

7. The orbits of the planets and stars, uplifted from the earth one above another—what are their heights? what their intervals? what their dimensions? and what the order in which they are fixed?

8. Why are the rays of the sun hot in the summer, and not so in the winter? how far do his rays penetrate? How many modes of measuring time (*mâna*) are there? and how are they employed?

9. Resolve these my difficulties, O blessed one, creator of creatures! for there is not found besides thee another resolver, who beholdeth all things.

The proper answers to these inquiries commence at about the twenty-seventh verse of the chapter, the preceding philosophical history of the development of the existing creation being apparently volunteered by the revelator. All the questions then find their answers in this chapter, excepting that as to the methods of measuring time, which is disposed of in the fourteenth and concluding chapter. The subject of the thirteenth chapter also seems not to be contemplated in the laying out, in this passage, of the scheme of subjects to be treated of in the remainder of the treatise.

10. Having heard the words thus uttered with devotion by Maya, he then again promulgated this mysterious and supreme Book (*adhyâya*):

11. Listen with concentrated attention: I will proclaim the secret doctrine called the transcendental (*adhyâtma*): there is nothing which may not be bestowed on those who are exceedingly devoted to me.

12. Vâsudeva, the supreme principle of divinity (*brahman*), whose form is all that is (*tat*), the supreme Person (*purusha*), unmanifested, free from qualities, superior to the twenty-five principles, imperishable,

13. Contained within matter (*prakṛti*), divine, pervading everything, without and within, the attractor—he, having in the first place created the waters, deposited in them energy.

14. That became a golden egg, on all sides enveloped in darkness: in it first became manifested the unrestrained, the everlasting one.

15. He in the scripture (*chandas*) is denominated the golden-wombed (*hiraṇyagarbha*), the blessed; as being the first (*âdi*) existence, he is called Âditya; as being generator, the sun.

16. This sun, likewise named Savitar, the supreme source of light (*jyotis*) upon the border of darkness—he revolves, bringing beings into being, the creator of creatures.

17. He is extolled as natural illuminator, destroyer of darkness, great. The Hymns (*ṛcas*) are his disk, the Songs (*sâmâni*) his beams, the Liturgy (*yajûnshi*) his form.

18. He, the blessed one, is composed of the trio of sacred scriptures, the soul of time, the producer of time, mighty, the soul of the universe; all-penetrating, subtle: in him is the universe established.

19. Having made for his chariot, which is composed of the universe, a wheel consisting of the year, and having yoked the seven metres as his steeds, he revolves continually.

20. Three quarters are immortal, secret; this one quarter hath become manifest. In order to the production of the animated creation, he, the mighty one, produced Brahma, the principle of consciousness (*ahânkara*).

21. Bestowing upon him the Scriptures (*veda*) as gifts, and establishing him within the egg as grandfather of all worlds, he himself then revolves, causing existence.

22. Then Brahma, wearing the form of the principle of consciousness (*ahankâra*), produced mind in the creation: from mind was born the moon; from the eyes, the sun, the repository of light;

23. From mind, the ether; thence, in succession, wind, fire, waters, earth—these five elements (*mahâbhûta*) were produced by the successive addition of one quality.

24. Agni and Soma, the sun and moon: then Mars etc. were produced, in succession, from light, earth, ether, water, wind.

25. Again, dividing himself twelve-fold, he, the mighty one, produced what is known as the signs; and yet farther, what has the form of the asterisms (*nakshatra*), twenty-seven-fold.

26. Then he wrought out the whole animate and inanimate creation, from the gods downward, producing forms of matter (*prakṛti*) from the upper, middle, and lower currents (*srotas*).

27. Having produced them in succession, as stated, by a difference of quality and function, he fashioned the distinctive character of each, according to the showing of the Scripture (*veda*)—

28. That is, of the planets, asterisms, and stars, of the earth, and of the universe, he the mighty one; of gods, demons, and mortals, and of the Perfected (*siddha*), in their order.

We do not regard ourselves as called upon to enter into any detailed examination of this metaphysical scheme of development of the creation, or to compare it critically with the similar schemes presented in other Hindu works, as Manu (chap. i), the Purâṇas (see Wilson's Vishṇu Purâṇa, Book I), etc. We will merely explain a few of its expressions, and of the allusions it contains. Vâsudeva is an ordinary epithet of Vishṇu, and its use in the signification here given it seems indicative of Vaishṇava tendencies on the part of the author of the scheme. The twenty-five principles referred to in verse 12 are those established by the Sânkhya philosophy. The reference in verse 15, first half, is to Ṛig-Veda x. 121. In the second half of the same verse we have a couple of false etymologies: *âditya* comes, not from *âdi*, "first," but from *aditi*,

"eternity"; and to derive *sûrya*, "sun," from the root *sû*, "generate" (from which *savitar* actually comes), is beyond the usual measure of Hindu theologico-philosophical etymologizing. The Hymns, Songs, and Liturgy are the three bodies of scripture commonly known as the Rig-Veda, Sâma-Veda, and Yajur-Veda. The "seven metres" (v. 19) are those which are most often employed in the construction of the Vedic hymns: in parts of the Veda itself they are personified, and marvellous qualities and powers are ascribed to them. The obscure statement contained in the first half of verse 20 comes from verses 3 and 4 of the *purusha*-hymn (Rig-Veda x. 90: the hymn is also found in others of the Vedic texts). The second half of verse 22 also nearly coincides with a passage (v. 13) in the same hymn. Of the five elements assumed by the Hindu philosophers, the first, ether, is said to be endowed only with the quality of audibleness; the second, air, has that of tangibility also; the third, fire, has both, along with color; to these qualities the fourth element, water, adds that of savor; the last, earth, possesses audibility, tangibility, color, savor, and odor: this is according to the doctrines of the Sânkhya philosophy. In verses 24 and 25 we have specifications introduced out of consideration for the general character and object of this treatise: as also, in the part assigned to the sun in the history of development, we may perhaps recognize homage paid to its asserted author. For the beings called in verse 28 the "perfected" (*siddha*), see below, verses 31 and 40.

29. This Brahma-egg is hollow; within it is the universe, consisting of earth, sky, etc.; it has the form of a sphere, like a receptacle made of a pair of caldrons.

30. A circle within the Brahma-egg is styled the orbit of the ether (*vyoman*): within that is the revolution of the asterisms (*bha*); and likewise, in order, one below the other,

31. Revolve Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, the sun, Venus, Mercury, and the moon; below, in succession, the Perfected (*siddha*), the Possessors of Knowledge (*vidyâdhara*), and the clouds.

The order of proximity to the earth in which the seven planets are here arranged is, as noticed above (i. 51–52), that upon which depends the succession of their regency over the days of the week, and so also the names of the latter. So far as the first three and the last are concerned, it is a naturally suggested arrangement, which could hardly fail to be hit upon by any nation having sufficient skill to form an order of succession at all: the order in which the sun, Mercury, and Venus are made to follow one another is, on the other hand, a matter of more arbitrary determination, and might have been with equal propriety, for aught we can see, reversed or otherwise varied. Of the supernatural beings called the "possessors of knowledge" (*vidyâdhara*) we read only in this verse: the "perfected" we find again below, in verse 40, as inhabitants of a city on the earth's surface.

32. Quite in the middle of the egg, the earth-globe (*bhûgola*) stands in the ether, bearing the supreme might of Brahma, which is of the nature of self-supporting force.

33. Seven cavities within it, the abodes of serpents (*nâga*) and demons (*asura*), endowed with the savor of heavenly plants, delightful, are the interterranean (*pâtâla*) earths.

34. A collection of manifold jewels, a mountain of gold, is Meru, passing through the middle of the earth-globe, and protruding on either side.

35. At its upper end are stationed, along with Indra, the gods, and the Great Sages (*maharshi*); at its lower end, in like manner, the demons (*asura*) have their place—each the enemy of the other.

36. Surrounding it on every side is fixed next this great ocean, like a girdle about the earth, dividing the two hemispheres of the gods and of the demons.

37. And on all sides of the midst of Meru, in equal divisions of the ocean, upon islands (*dvîpa*), in the different directions, are the eastern and other cities, fashioned by the gods.

38. At a quadrant of the earth's circumference eastward, in the clime (*varsha*) Bhadrâçva, is the city famed as Yamakoṭi, having walls and gateways of gold.

39. To the southward, in the clime Bhârata, is in like manner the great city Lankâ: to the west, in the clime called Ketumâla, is declared to be the city named Romaka.

40. Northward, in the clime Kuru, is declared to be the city called that of the Perfected (*siddha*); in it dwell the magnanimous Perfected, free from trouble.

41. These are situated also at a distance from one another of a quadrant of the earth's circumference; to the north of them, at the same distance, is Meru, the abode of the gods (*sura*).

42. Above them goes the sun when situated at the equinoxes; they have neither equinoctial shadow nor elevation of the pole (*akshonnati*).

43. In both directions from Meru are two pole-stars (*dhruvatârâ*), fixed in the midst of the sky: to those who are situated in places of no latitude (*niraksha*), both these have their place in the horizon.

44. Hence there is in those cities no elevation of the pole, the two pole-stars being situated in their horizon; but their degrees of co-latitude (*lambaka*) are ninety: at Meru the degrees of latitude (*aksha*) are of the same number.

In these verses we have so much of geography as the author of the chapter has seen fit to connect with his astronomical explanations. For a Hindu account of the earth, it is wonderfully moderate, and free from falsehood. The absurd fictions which the Purâṇas put forth as geography are here for the most part ignored, only two or three of the features of their descriptions being retained, and those in an altered form. To the Purâṇas (see especially Wilson's Vishnu Purâṇa, Book II., chap. ii–vi), the earth is a plain, of immense dimensions. Precisely in the

middle of it rises Mount Meru, itself of a size compared with which the earth, as measured by the astronomers, is as nothing: it is said to be 84,000 yojanas high, and buried at the base 16,000 yojanas; it has the shape of an inverted cone, being 32,000 yojanas in diameter at its upper extremity, and only 16,000 at the earth's surface. Out of this mountain the astronomical system makes the axis of the earth, protruding at either extremity, indeed, but of dimensions wholly undefined. As the Purâṇas declare the summit of Meru, and the mountains immediately supporting it, to be the site of the cities inhabited by the different divinities, so also we have here the gods placed upon the northern extremity of the earth's axis, while their foes, the spirits of darkness, have their seat at the southern. The central circular continent, more than 100,000 yojanas in diameter, in the midst of which Meru lies, is named Jambûdvîpa, "the island of the rose-apple tree": it is intersected by six parallel ranges of mountains, running east and west, and connected together by short cross-ranges: the countries lying between these ranges are styled *varshas,* "climes," and are all fully named and described in the Purâṇas, as are the mountain-ranges themselves. The half-moon-shaped strips lying at the bases of the mountains on the eastern, southern, western, and northern edges of the continent, are called by the same names that are given by our text to the four insular climes which it sets up. Bhârata is a real historical name, appearing variously in the early Hindu traditions; Kuru, or Uttara-Kuru, is a title applied in Hindu geography of a less fictitious character to the country or people situated beyond the range of the Himâlaya; the other two names appear to be altogether imaginary. The Purâṇas say nothing of cities in these four climes. Lankâ, as noticed above (i. 62), is properly an appellation of the island Ceylon; and Romaka undoubtedly comes from the name of the great city which was the mistress of the western world at the period of lively commercial intercourse between India and the Mediterranean: the other two cities are pure figments of the imagination. Our treatise, it will be observed, ignores the system of continents, or *dvîpas,* and simply surrounds the earth with an ocean in the midst, like a girdle: the Purâṇas encompass Jambûdvîpa about with six other *dvîpas,* or insular ring-shaped continents, each twice as vast as that which it encloses, and each separated from the next by an ocean of the same extent with itself. Of these seven oceans, the first, which washes the shores of Jambûdvîpa, is naturally enough acknowledged to be composed of salt water: but the second is of syrup, the third of wine, the fourth of clarified butter, the fifth of whey, the sixth of milk, and the last of sweet water. Outside the latter is an uninhabited land of gold, and on its border, as the outmost verge of creation, is the monstrous wall of the Lokâloka mountains, beyond which is only nothingness and darkness.

The author of the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi, more submissive than the writer of our chapter to the authority of tradition, accepts (Golâdhy., chap. ii) the series of concentric continents and oceans, but gives them a place in the unknown southern hemisphere, while he regards Jambûdvîpa as occupying the whole of the northern.

The *pâtâlas,* or interterranean cavities, spoken of in verse 33, are also an important feature of the Puranic geography. If our author has not

had the good sense to reject them, along with the insular continents, he at least passes them by with the briefest possible notice. In the Purâṇas they are declared to be each of them 10,000 yojanas in depth, and their divisions, inhabitants, and productions are described with the same ridiculous detail as those of the continents on the earth's surface.

It will be observed that the text, although exhibiting in verse 41 a distinct apprehension of the fact that the pole is situated to the northward of all points of the equator alike, yet, in describing the position of the four great cities, speaks as if there were a north direction from Meru, in the continuation of the line drawn to the latter from Lankâ, and an east and west direction at right angles with this.

For the terrestrial equator, considered as a line or circle upon the earth's surface, there is no distinctive name; it is referred to simply as the place "of no latitude" (*niraksha*, *vyaksha*).

45. In the half-revolution beginning with Aries, the sun, being in the hemisphere of the gods, is visible to the gods: but while in that beginning with Libra, he is visible to the demons, moving in their hemisphere.

46. Hence, owing to his exceeding nearness, the rays of the sun are hot in the hemisphere of the gods in summer, but in that of the demons in winter: in the contrary season, they are sluggish.

47. At the equinox, both gods and demons see the sun in the horizon; their day and night are mutually opposed to each other.

48. The sun, rising at the first of Aries, while moving on northward for three signs, completes the former half-day of the dwellers upon Meru;

49. In like manner, while moving through the three signs beginning with Cancer, he completes the latter half of their day: he accomplishes the same for the enemies of the gods while moving through the three signs beginning with Libra and the three beginning with Capricorn, respectively.

50. Hence are their night and day mutually opposed to one another; and the measure of the day and night is by the completion of the sun's revolution.

51. Their mid-day and midnight, which are opposed to one another, are at the end of each half-revolution from solstice to solstice (*ayana*). The gods and demons each suppose themselves to be uppermost.

52. Others, too, who are situated upon the same diameter (*samasûtrastha*), think one another underneath—as the dwellers in Bhadrâçva and in Ketumâla, and the inhabitants of Lankâ and of the city of the Perfected, respectively.

53. And everywhere upon the globe of the earth, men think their own place to be uppermost: but since it is a globe in the ether, where should there be an upper, or where an under side of it?

54. Owing to the littleness of their own bodies, men, looking in every direction from the position they occupy, behold this earth, although it is globular, as having the form of a wheel.

55. To the gods, this sphere of asterisms revolves toward the right; to the enemies of the gods, toward the left; in a situation of no latitude, directly overhead—always in a westerly direction.

55. Hence, in the latter situation, the day is of thirty nâḍîs, and the night likewise: in the two hemispheres of the gods and demons there take place a deficiency and an excess, always opposed to one another.

57. During the half-revolution beginning with Aries, there is always an excess of the day to the north, in the hemisphere of the gods—greater according to distance north—and a corresponding deficiency of the night; in the hemisphere of the demons, the reverse.

58. In the half-revolution beginning with Libra, both the deficiency and excess of day and night in the two hemispheres are the opposite of this: the method of determining them, which is always dependent upon situation (*deça*) and declination, has been before explained.

59. Multiply the earth's circumference by the sun's declination in degrees, and divide by the number of degrees in a circle: the result, in yojanas, is the distance from the place of no latitude where the sun is passing overhead.

60. Subtract from a quarter of the earth's circumference the number of yojanas thus derived from the greatest declination: at the distance of the remaining number of yojanas

61. There occurs once, at the end of the sun's half-revolution from solstice to solstice, a day of sixty nâḍîs, and a night of the same length, mutually opposed to one another, in the two hemispheres of the gods and of the demons.

62. In the intermediate region, the deficiency and excess of day and night are within the limit of sixty nâḍîs; beyond, this spherê of asterisms (*bha*) revolves perversely.

63. Subtract from a quarter of the earth's circumference the number of yojanas derived from the declination found by the sine of two signs: at that distance from the equator the sun is not seen, in the hemisphere of the gods, when in Sagittarius and Capricorn;

64. So also, in the hemisphere of the demons, when in Gemini and Cancer: in the quarter of the earth's circumference where her shadow is lost, the sun may be shown to be visible.

65. Subtract from the fourth part of the earth's periphery (*kakshâ*) the number of yojanas derived from the declination found by the sine of one sign: at the distance from the place of no latitude of the remaining number of yojanas,

66. The sun, when situated in Sagittarius, Capricorn, Scorpio, and Aquarius, is not seen in the hemisphere of the gods; in that of the demons, on the other hand, when in the four signs commencing with Taurus.

67. At Meru, the gods behold the sun, after but a single rising, during the half of his revolution beginning with Aries; the demons, in like manner, during that beginning with Libra.

68. The sun, during his northern and southern progresses (*ayana*) revolves directly over a fifteenth part of the earth's circumference, on the side both of the gods and of the demons.

69. Between those limits, the shadow is cast both southward and northward; beyond them, it falls toward the Meru of either hemisphere respectively.

70. When passing overhead at Bhadrâçva, the sun is rising in Bhârata; it is, moreover, at that time, midnight in Ketumâla, and sunset in Kuru.

71. In like manner also he produces, by his revolution, in Bhârata and the other climes, noon, sunrise, midnight, and sunset, reckoning from east to west.

72. To one going toward Meru, there take place an elevation of the pole (*dhruva*) and a depression of the circle of asterisms; to one going toward the place of no latitude, on the contrary, a depression of the former and an elevation of the latter.

This detailed exposition of the varying relations of day and night in different parts of the globe is quite creditable to the ingenuity, and the distinctness of apprehension, of those by whom it was drawn out. It is for the most part so clearly expressed as to need no additional explanations: we shall append to it only a few brief remarks.

How far, in verse 46, a true statement is given of the cause of the heat of summer and the cold of winter, may be made a matter of some question: the word which we have translated "nearness" (*âsannatâ*) has no right to mean "directness, perpendicularity," and yet, when taken in connection with the preceding verse, it may perhaps admit that signification. The second chapter shows that the Hindus knew very well that the sun is actually nearer to the whole earth in winter, or when near his perigee, than in summer.

The expression *ayanânta*, "at the end of an *ayana*," employed in verses 51 and 61, and which we have rendered by a paraphrase, might perhaps have been as well translated, briefly and simply, "at either solstice." Probably *ayana*, as used in the sense of "solstice" (see above, end of note to iii. 9–12), is an abbreviated form of *ayanânta*, like *jyâ* for *jyârdha* (ii. 15–27), and *aksha* for *akshonnati* (i. 60).

In verse 55, we have translated by "toward the right" and "toward the left" the adverbs *savyam* and *apasavyam*, which mean literally "left-wise" and "right-wise"; that is to say, in such a manner that the left side or the right side respectively of the thing making the revolution is turned toward that about which the revolution is made, this being the Hindu mode of describing the passing of one person about another per-

son or thing, especially in respectful salutation and in religious ceremonial.

The natural measure of the day and of the night is assumed in verse 56 etc. to be the half of a whole day, or thirty nâḍîs, and any deviation from that norm is regarded as an excess (*dhana*, *vṛddhi*) or a deficiency (*ṛṇa*, *hâni*, *kshaya*). The former processes referred to at the end of verse 58 are those taught in ii. 60–62.

We have already above (note to i. 63–65) called attention to the fact that all the Hindu measurements of longitude and latitude upon the earth's surface are made in yojanas, and not in degrees.

The expression "perversely" (*viparîta*) in verse 62 is explained by the commentator to mean "in such manner that the rules as already given cannot be applied"; since the sine of the ascensional difference (*cara*—see ii. 61) as found by them would be greater than radius.

The latter half of verse 64 is obscure: its meaning seems to be, as explained by the commentator, that over a corresponding portion of the earth's surface in the contrary hemisphere the sun is continuously visible during the same period, the shadow of the earth, which is the cause of night, not covering that portion.

73. The circle of asterisms, bound at the two poles, impelled by the provector (*pravaha*) winds, revolves eternally: attached to that are the orbits of the planets, in their order.

74. The gods and demons behold the sun, after it is once risen, for half a year; the Fathers (*pitaras*), who have their station in the moon, for a half-month (*paksha*); and men upon the earth, during their own day.

75. The orbit (*kakshâ*) of one that is situated higher up is large; that of one situated lower down is small. Upon a great orbit the degrees are great; so also, upon a small one, they are small.

76. A planet situated upon a small circuit (*bhramaṇa*) traverses the circle of constellations (*bhagaṇa*) in a little time; one revolving on a large circle (*maṇḍala*), in a long time.

77. The moon, upon a very small orbit, makes many revolutions: Saturn, moving upon a great orbit, makes, as compared with her, a much less number of revolutions.

The connection and orderly succession of subjects is by no means strictly maintained in this part of the chapter. The seventy-fourth verse is palpably out of place, and is, moreover, in great part superfluous; for the statement contained in its first half has already twice been made, in verses 45 and 67, and in the latter passage in nearly the same terms as here: its last specification, too, is of a matter too obvious to call for notice. Nevertheless, the verse cannot well be spared from the chapter, since it contains the only answer which is vouchsafed to the question of verse 5, above, respecting the day and night of the Fathers. In the assignment of the different divisions of time, as single days, to different orders of beings, the month has been given to the *pitaras*, "Fathers," or manes of the departed, and they are accordingly located in the moon,

each portion of whose surface enjoys a recurrence of day and night once in each lunar month. The next following verses, 75 to 77, are a rather unnecessary amplification of the idea already expressed in i. 26–27; but they answer well enough here as special introduction to the detailed exhibition of the measurements of the planetary orbits which is to follow. Before that is brought in, however, we have the connection again broken, by the intrusion of the two following verses, respecting the regents of years, months, days, and hours.

78. Counting downward from Saturn, the fourth successively is regent of the day; and the third, in like manner, is declared to be the regent of the year;

79. Reckoning upward from the moon are found, in succession, the regents of the months; the regents of the hours (*horâ*), also, occur in downward order from Saturn.

This passage appears to be introduced here as answer to the inquiry propounded in verse 6, above. Instead, however, of explaining why the different divisions of time are placed under the superintendence and protection of different planets, the text contents itself with reiterating, in a different form, what had already been said before (i. 51–52) respecting the order of succession of the regents of the successive periods; but adding also the important and significant specification respecting the hours, or twenty-fourths of the day. We have sufficiently illustrated the subject, in connection with the other passage; we will only repeat here that, the planets being regarded as standing in the order in which they are mentioned in verse 31, above, their successive regency over the hours is the one fundamental fact upon which all the rest depend, each planet being constituted lord also of the day whose first hour is placed under his charge, and so likewise of the month and of the year over whose first hour and day he is regent—neither the month nor the year, any more than the hour itself, being divisions of time which are known to the Hindus in any other uses, and the name of the hour, *horâ*, which is the Greek ὥρα, betraying the source whence the whole system was introduced into India.

80. The orbit (*kakshâ*) of the asterisms (*bha*) is the circuit (*bhramaṇa*) of the sun multiplied by sixty: by so many yojanas does the circle of the asterisms revolve above all.

81. If the stated number of revolutions of the moon in an Æon (*kalpa*) be multiplied by the moon's orbit, the result is to be known as the orbit of the ether: so far do the rays of the sun penetrate.

82. If this be divided by the number of revolutions of any planet in an Æon (*kalpa*), the result will be the orbit of that planet: divide this by the number of terrestrial days, and the result is the daily eastward motion of them all.

83. Multiply this number of yojanas of daily motion by the orbit of the moon, and divide by a planet's own orbit; the result is, when divided by fifteen, its daily motion in minutes.

84. Any orbit, multiplied by the earth's diameter and divided by the earth's circumference, gives the diameter of that orbit; and this, being diminished by the earth's diameter and halved, gives the distance of the planet.

85. The orbit of the moon is three hundred and twenty-four thousand yojanas: that of Mercury's conjunction (*çîghra*) is one million and forty-three thousand, two hundred and nine:

86. That of Venus's conjunction (*çîghra*) is two million, six hundred and sixty-four thousand, six hundred and thirty-seven: next, that of the sun, Mercury, and Venus is four million, three hundred and thirty-one thousand, five hundred:

87. That of Mars, too, is eight million, one hundred and forty-six thousand, nine hundred and nine; that of the moon's apsis (*ucca*) is thirty-eight million, three hundred and twenty-eight thousand, four hundred and eighty-four:

88 That of Jupiter, fifty-one million, three hundred and seventy-five thousand, seven hundred and sixty-four: of the moon's node, eighty million, five hundred and seventy-two thousand, eight hundred and sixty-four:

89 Next, of Saturn, one hundred and twenty-seven million, six hundred and sixty-eight thousand, two hundred and fifty-five: of the asterisms, two hundred and fifty-nine million, eight hundred and ninety thousand, and twelve:

90. The entire circumference of the sphere of the Brahma-egg is eighteen quadrillion, seven hundred and twelve trillion, eighty billion, eight hundred and sixty-four million: within this is the pervasion of the sun's rays.

We present below the numerical data given in these verses, in a form easier of reference and of comparison with the like data of other treatises:

Planet etc.	Orbit, in yojanas.
Moon,	324,000
" apsis,	38,328 484
" node,	80,572,864
Mercury (conjunction),	1,043,209
Venus (conjunction),	2,664,637
Sun,	4,331,500
Mars,	8,146,909
Jupiter,	51,375,764
Saturn,	127,668,255
Asterisms,	259 890,012
Universe,	18,712,080,864,000,000

We have already more than once (see above, notes to i. 25–27, and iv. 1) had occasion to notice upon what principles the orbits of the planets, as here stated, were constructed by the Hindus. That of the moon (see note to iv. 1) was obtained by a true process of calculation, from genuine data, and is a tolerable approximation to the truth: all the

others are manufactured out of this, upon the arbitrary and false assumption that the mean motion of all the planets, each upon its own orbit, is of equal absolute amount, and hence, that its apparent value in each case, as seen by us, is inversely as the planet's distance, or that the dimensions of the orbit are directly as the time employed in traversing it, or as the period of sidereal revolution. These dimensions, then, may be found by various methods: upon dividing the circumference of the moon's orbit by her time of sidereal revolution, we obtain as the amount of her daily motion in yojanas 11,858.717 nearly (more exactly 11,858.71693+); and multiplying this by the time of sidereal revolution of any planet, we obtain that planet's orbit. This is equivalent to making the proportion

moon's sid. rev : planet's sid. rev. : : moon's orbit : planet's orbit

And since the times of sidereal revolution of the planets are inversely as the number of revolutions made by them in any given period, this proportion, again, is equivalent to

planet's no. of rev. in an Æon : moon's do : : moon's orbit : planet's orbit

This is the form of the proportion from which is derived the rule as stated in the text, only the latter designates the product of the multiplication of the moon's orbit by her number of revolutions as the orbit of the ether (*âkâça*), or the circumference of the Brahma-egg, within which the whole creation, as above taught, is enclosed. This is the same thing with attributing to the outermost shell of the universe one complete revolution in an Æon (*kalpa*), of 4,320,000,000 years.

There is one feature of the system exposed in this passage which to us is hitherto quite inexplicable: it is the assignment to the asterisms of an orbit sixty times as great as that of the sun. This, according to all the analogies of the system, should imply a revolution of the asterisms eastward about the earth once in each period of sixty sidereal years. The same orbit is found allotted to them in the Siddhânta-Çiromani (Ganitâdhy., ix. 5), and it is to be looked upon, accordingly, as an essential part of the general Hindu astronomical system. We do not see how it is to be brought into connection with the other doctrines of the system, or what can be its origin and import—unless, indeed, it be merely an application to the asterisms, in an entirely arbitrary way, of the general law that everything must be made to revolve about the earth as a centre. We have noticed above (note to iii. 9–12) its inconsistency with the doctrine of the precession adopted in this treatise.

The dimensions of the several orbits stated in the text are for the most part correct, being such as are derived by the processes above explained from the numbers of sidereal revolutions given in a former passage (i. 29–34). There is, however, one exception: the orbit of Mercury, as so derived, is 1,043,207.8, and the number adopted by the text—which rejects fractions throughout, taking the nearest whole number—should be, accordingly, —208, and not —209. If we took as divisor the number of Mercury's revolutions in an Æon as corrected by the *bîja* (see note to i. 29–34), we should actually obtain for his orbit the value given it by the text; the exact quotient being 1,043,208.73. But as none of the other orbits given are such as would be found by admitting the several

corrections of the *bîja*, it seems preferable to assume that the text has at this point become corrupt, or else that the author of the chapter made a blunder in one of his calculations.*

The value of a minute of arc upon the moon's orbit being fifteen yojanas (see note to iv. 2–3), the value, in minutes, of any planet's mean daily motion may be readily found from its orbit by the proportion of which the rule given in verse 83 is a statement, as follows: as the distance, or the orbit, of the planet in question is to that of the moon, so is the moon's mean motion in minutes, or 11,858.717 ÷ 15, to that of the planet.

In verse 84 we are taught to calculate the distance of any planet from the earth's surface: in order to this, we are first to find the diameter of the planet's orbit, adopting, as the ratio of the diameter to the circumference, that of the diameter to the circumference of the earth—the former, of course, as calculated (i. 59) by the false ratio of $1 : \sqrt{10}$. After being guilty of so gross an inaccuracy, it is quite superfluous, and a mere affectation of exactness, to take into account so trivial a quantity as the radius of the earth, in estimating the planet's distance from the earth.

In the doctrine of the orbits of the planets, as here laid down, we have once more a total negation of the reality of their epicyclical motions, and of their consequently varying distances from the earth in different parts of their revolutions.

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE ARMILLARY SPHERE, AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS.

CONTENTS:—1–13, construction and equipment of the armillary sphere; 13–15, position of certain points and sines upon it; 15–16, its adjustment and revolution; 17–25, other instruments, especially for the determination of time.

1. Then, having bathed in a secret and pure place, being pure, adorned, having worshipped with devotion the sun, the planets, the asterisms (*bha*), and the elves (*guhyaka*),

2. Let the teacher, in order to the instruction of the pupil—himself beholding everything clearly, in accordance with the knowledge handed down by successive communication, and learned from the mouth of the master (*guru*)—

3. Prepare the wonder-working fabric of the terrestrial and stellar sphere (*bhûbhagola*) . . . .

* The last six verses of the chapter, which contain the numerical data, may very possibly be a later addition to its original content the Âyin-Akbari (as translated by Gladwin), in its account of the astronomy of the Hindus, which it professedly bases upon the Sûrya-Siddhânta, gives these orbits (8vo edition, London, 1800, ii 306), but with the fractional parts of yojanas, as if independently derived from the data and by the rules of the text. the orbit of Mercury it states correctly, as 1,043,207$\frac{4}{5}$ yojanas.

We have already remarked above (note to xii. 1–9) that the subject of this chapter is one respecting which no inquiries were addressed at the beginning of the preceding chapter by the recipient to the communicator of the revelation, and that the chapter accordingly wears in some measure the aspect of an interpolation. It comes in here as furnishing a means of illustrating to the pupil the mutual relations of the earth and the heavens as explained in the last chapter—and yet not precisely as there explained; for it gives a representation only of the earth and of the one starry concave upon which the apparent movements of all the heavenly bodies are to be traced, and not of the concentric spheres and orbits out of which the universe has been declared to be constructed. The chapter has a peculiar title, unlike that of any other in the treatise: it is styled *jyotishopanishadadhyâya*, "lection of the astronomical Upanishad." Upanishad is the name ordinarily given to such brief treatises, of the later Vedic period, or of times yet more modern, as are regarded as inspired sources of philosophical and theological knowledge, and are looked upon with peculiar reverence: its application to this chapter is equivalent to an assumption for it of especial sanctity and authority. It may possibly also indicate that the chapter is originally an independent treatise, incorporated into the text of the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

The word *bha*, in verse 1, may mean either the asterisms proper (*nakshatra*), or the signs (*râçi*), and is explained by the commentator as intended to include both. The *guhyakas*, "secret ones," are a class of demigods who attend upon Kuvera, the god of wealth, and are the keepers of his treasures: why they are mentioned here, as objects of especial reverence to the astronomical teacher, is not obvious. The commentator explains the word by "Yakshas etc., lesser divinities." In our translation of verse 3 we have followed the reading of the published text, which Colebrooke also appears to have had before him: our own manuscripts read, instead of *bhûbhagola*, *bhûmigola* and *bhûmer gola*, "sphere of the earth" simply.

Colebrooke, in his essay On the Indian and Arabian Divisions of the Zodiac (As. Res., ix. 323 etc.; Essays, ii. 321 etc.) to which we have already so often had occasion to refer, gives a translation of part of this chapter, from the beginning of the third to the middle of the thirteenth verse, as also a brief sketch of the armillary sphere of which the construction is taught in the Siddhânta-Çiromani. He farther furnishes a description, and a comparison with these, of the somewhat similar instruments employed by the Greeks, the Arabs, and the early European astronomers. It has not seemed to us worth while to extract these descriptions and comparisons, or to draw up others from independent and original sources: the object of the Hindu instrument is altogether different from that of the others, since it is intended merely as an illustration of the positions and motions of the heavenly bodies, while those are meant to subserve the purposes of astronomical observation; and its relation to them is determined by this circumstance: while it, of course, possesses some of the circles which enter into the construction of the others, it is, upon the whole, a very different and much more complicated and cumbersome structure. There is nothing in the way of supposing that the first hint of its construction may have been borrowed from the

instruments of western nations: but, on the other hand, it may possibly admit also of being regarded as an independent Hindu device.

3. . . . Having fashioned an earth-globe of wood, of the desired size,

4. Fix a staff, passing through the midst of it and protruding at either side, for Meru; and likewise a couple of sustaining hoops (*kaksha*), and the equinoctial hoop;

5. These are to be made with graduated divisions (*angula*) of degrees of the circle (*bhagaṇa*). . . .

The fixing of a solid globe of wood, representing the earth, in the midst of this instrument, is of itself enough to render impracticable its application to purposes of astronomical observation. For Meru, the axis and poles of the earth, see verse 34 of the preceding chapter. We are not informed of what relative size the globe and the encompassing hoops are to be made; probably their relation is to be such that the globe will be a small one, contained within an ample sphere. The two "supporting hoops," to which are to be attached all the numerous parallels of declination hereafter described, are, of course, to be fastened to the axis at right angles to one another, and to represent the equinoctial and solstitial colures. The commentary directly prescribes this, and the text also assumes it in a later passage (v. 10).

Colebrooke, following the guidance of the commentators, treats the former half of verse 5 as belonging to the following passage, instead of the preceding. It can, however, admit of no reasonable question that the connection as established in our translation is the true one: it is demanded by the natural construction of the verses, and also yields a decidedly preferable sense.

5. . . . Farther—by means of the several day-radii, as adapted to the scale established for those other circles,

6. And by means of the degrees of declination and latitude (*vikshepa*) marked off upon the latter—at their own respective distances in declination, according to the declination of Aries etc., three

7. Hoops are to be prepared and fastened: these answer also inversely for Cancer etc. In the same manner, three for Libra etc., answering also inversely for Capricorn etc.,

8. And situated in the southern hemisphere, are to be made and fastened to the two hoop-supporters. . . .

The grammatical construction of this passage is excessively cumbrous and intricate, and we can hardly hope that the version which we have given of it will be clearly understood without farther explanations. Its meaning, however, is free from ambiguity. We have thus far only three of the circles out of which our instrument is to be constructed, namely those intended to represent the two colures and the equator: we are next to add hoops for the diurnal circles described by the sun when at the points of connection between the different signs of the zodiac. Of these there will be, of course, three north of the equator, one for the

sun at the end of Aries and at the beginning of Virgo, one for the sun at the end of Taurus and at the beginning of Leo, and one for the sun at the end of Gemini and the beginning of Cancer, or at the solstice: also, in the southern hemisphere, three others corresponding to these. The dimensions of which they must be made are to be determined by their several radii (which are called day-radii—see above, ii. 60), as ascertained by calculation and reduced to the same scale upon which the colures and equator were constructed. They are then to be attached to the two general supporting hoops, or colures, each at its proper distance from the equator; this distance is ascertained by calculating the declination of the sun when at the points in question, and is determined upon the instrument by the graduation of the two supporting hoops. This graduation is in the text called that for declination (*krânti*) and latitude (*vikshepa*): it will be remembered that, according to Hindu usage, the latter means distance from the ecliptic as measured upon a circle of declination.

8. . . . Those likewise of the asterisms (*bha*) situated in the southern and northern hemispheres, of Abhijit,

9. Of the Seven Sages (*saptarshayas*), of Agastya, of Brahma etc., are to be fixed . . . .

If the orders given in these verses are to be strictly followed, our instrument must now be burdened with forty-two additional circles of diurnal revolution, namely those of the twenty-seven junction-stars (*yogatârâ*) of the asterisms and of that of Abhijit—which is here especially mentioned, as not being always ranked among the asterisms (see above, p. 352 etc.)—those of the seven other fixed stars of which the positions were stated in the eighth chapter (vv. 10–12 and 20–21); and also those of the Seven Sages, or the conspicuous stars in Ursa Major (see end of the last note to the eighth chapter). Such impracticable directions, however, cannot but inspire the suspicion that the instrument may never have been constructed except upon paper.

9. . . . Just in the midst of all, the equinoctial (*vâishuvatî*) hoop is fixed.

10. Above the points of intersection of that and the supporting hoops are the two solstices (*ayana*) and the two equinoxes (*vishuvat*) . . . .

We have already noticed (note to iii. 6) that the celestial equator derives its name from the equinoxes through which it passes. It seems a little strange that the adjustment of the hoop representing it to the two supporting hoops, which we should naturally regard as the first step in the construction of the instrument, is here assumed to be deferred until after all the other circles of declination are fixed in their places.

The word translated "above" (*ûrdhvam*) in verse 10 requires to be understood in two very different senses, as is pointed out by the commentator, to make the definitions of position of the solstices and of the equinoxes both correct: the latter are situated precisely at the intersection of the equinoctial colure with the equator; the former at a distance of 24° above and below the intersection of the equator with the other

colure, or at the intersection of the colure with the third parallel of the sun's declination, on either side of the equator.

We are next taught how to fix in its proper position the hoop which is to represent the ecliptic.

10. . . . From the place of the equinox, with the exact number of degrees, as proportioned to the whole circle,

11. Fix, by oblique chords, the spaces (*kshetra*) of Aries and the rest; and so likewise another hoop, running obliquely from solstice (*ayana*) to solstice,

12. And called the circle of declination (*krânti*): upon that the sun constantly revolves, giving light: the moon and the other planets also, by their own nodes, which are situated in the ecliptic (*apamaṇḍala*),

13. Being drawn away from it, are beheld at the limit of their removal in latitude (*vikshepa*) from the corresponding point of declination. . . .

Instead of simply directing that a circle or hoop, of the same dimensions as those of the equator and colures, be constructed to represent the ecliptic, and then attached to the others at the equinoxes and solstices, the text regards it as necessary to fix, upon the six diurnal circles of the sun of which the construction and adjustment were taught above, in verses 5–8, the points of division of all the twelve signs, before the ecliptic hoop can be added to the instrument. In the compound *tiryagjyâ*, in verse 11, which we have rendered "oblique chords," we conceive *jyâ* to have its own more proper meaning of "chord," instead of that of "sine," which, by substitution for *jyârdha* (see note to ii. 15–27, near the end), it has hitherto uniformly borne. We are to ascertain by calculation the measure of the chord of 30°, to reduce it to the scale of dimensions adopted for the other great circles of the instrument, and then, commencing from either equinox, to lay it off, in an oblique direction, to the successive diurnal circles, northward and southward, thus fixing the positions upon them of the initial and final points of the twelve signs; and through all these points the ecliptic hoop is to be made to pass.

It does not appear that separate hoops for the orbits of the other planets, attached to the ecliptic at their respective nodes, are to be added to the instrument.

In verse 12 we have a name for the ecliptic, *apamaṇḍala*, which does not occur elsewhere in the treatise. The word might be literally translated "off-circle," and regarded as designating the circle which deviates in direction from the neighboring equator; but it is more probably an abbreviation for *apakramamaṇḍala*, which would mean, like the ordinary terms *krântimaṇḍala*, *krântivṛitta*, "circle of declination."

13. . . . The orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*) is that at the orient horizon; the occident point (*astamgachat*) is similarly determined.

14. The meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyama*) is as calculated by the equivalents in right ascension (*lankodayâs*), for mid-heaven (*khamadhya*) above. The sine which is between the meridian

(*madhya*) and the horizon (*kshitija*) is styled the day-measure (*antyâ*).

15. And the sine of the sun's ascensional difference (*caradala*) is to be recognized as the interval between the equator (*vishuvat*) and the horizon. . . .

These verses contain an unnecessary and fragmentary, as also a confused and blundering, definition of the positions upon the sphere of a few among the points and lines which have been used in the calculations of the earlier parts of the treatise. We are unwilling to believe that the passage is anything but a late interpolation, made by an awkward hand. For the point of the ecliptic termed *lagna*, or that one which is at any given moment passing the eastern horizon, or rising, see iii. 46–48, and note upon that passage. The like point at the western horizon, which the commentator here calls *astalagna*, "*lagna* of setting," and which the text directs us to find "in a corresponding manner," has never been named or taken into account anywhere in the treatise: we have seen above (as for instance, in ix. 4–5) that all its processes into which distance in ascension enters as an element are transferred for calculation from the occident to the orient horizon. For *madhyalagna*, the point of the ecliptic situated upon the meridian, see above, iii. 49 and note. Although we have ordinarily translated the term by "meridian ecliptic-point," this being a convenient and exact definition of the point actually referred to, we do not regard the word *madhya*, occurring in it, as meaning "meridian" in the sense in which it is used in modern astronomy, namely the great circle passing through the observer's zenith and the north and south points of his horizon. For it deserves to be noted that the text has no distinctive name for the meridian, and nowhere makes any reference to it as a circle on the sphere: it will be seen just below that, while the position of the horizon is defined, the meridian is not contemplated as a circle of sufficient consequence to require to be represented upon the illustrative armillary sphere. The commentator not very infrequently has occasion to speak of the meridian, and styles it *yâmyottaravṛtta*, "south and north circle," or *ûrdhvayâmyottaravṛtta*, "uppermost south and north circle." In the latter half of verse 14, where we have translated *madhya* by "meridian," it would have been more exact to say "mid-heaven," or "the sun at the middle of his visible revolution," or "the sun when at the point called *madhyalagna*." For the "day-measure" (*antyâ*), see above, iii. 34–36. Its definition given here is as bad as it could well be: for, passing over the fact that the line in question is not properly a sine, and moreover that the text does not tell us in which of the numberless possible directions it is to be drawn from the meridian to the horizon, the line which it is attempted to describe is not the one which the treatise regards as the *antyâ*, but the correspondent of the latter in the small circle described by the sun. That is to say, the text here substitutes the line DA in Fig. 8, above (p. 232), for the line EG. A similar blunder is made in defining the sine of the sun's ascensional difference (*carajyâ*): the line AB in the same figure, which is the "earth-sine" (*kujyâ, kshitijyâ*), is taken, instead of its equivalent in terms of a great circle, CG. Moreover, the

text reads "equator" (*vishuvat*—E C in the figure) here for "east and west hour-circle" (*unmandala*—C P): the commentator restores the latter, and excuses the substitution by a false translation of the latter half of iii. 6, making it mean "the east and west hour-circle is likewise denominated the equinoctial circle."

In verse 14, *lankodayâs* is substituted for the more usual term *lankodayâsavas* (see above, iii. 49, and note), in the sense of "equivalents of the signs in right ascension," literally, "at Lankâ."

15. . . . Having turned upward one's own place, the circle of the horizon is midway of the sphere.

16. As covered with a casing (*vastra*) and as left uncovered, it is the sphere surrounded by Lokâloka. . . .

The simple direction to turn upward one's own situation upon the central wooden globe which represents the earth does not, it is evident, contemplate any very careful or exact adjustment of the instrument.

Verse 16 is very elliptical and obscure in its expressions, but their general meaning is plain, and is that which is attributed to them by the commentator. The proper elevation having been given to the pole of the sphere, a circle is by some means or other to be fixed about its midst, or equally distant from its zenith and nadir, to represent the horizon. Then the part below is to be encased in a cloth covering, the upper hemisphere alone being left open. As thus arranged, the sphere is, as it were, girt about by the Lokâloka mountains. Lokâloka is, as we have seen above (note to xii. 32–44), the name of the giant mountain-range which, in the Puranic geography, is made the boundary of the universe: it is apparently so called because it separates the world (*loka*) from the non-world (*aloka*); and as out of the Puranic Meru the new astronomical geography makes the axis and poles of the earth, so out of these mountains it makes the visible horizon.

The "wonder-working fabric of the terrestrial and stellar sphere" is now fully constructed, and only requires farther, in order to its completion as an edifying and instructive illustration of the relations of the heavens to the earth, to be set in motion about its fixed axis.

16. . . . By the application of water is made ascertainment of the revolution of time.

17. One may construct a sphere-instrument combined with quicksilver: this is a mystery; if plainly described, it would be generally intelligible in the world.

18. Therefore let the supreme sphere be constructed according to the instruction of the preceptor (*guru*). In each successive age (*yuga*), this construction, having become lost, is, by the Sun's

19. Favor, again revealed to some one or other, at his pleasure. . . .

Here we have another silly mystification of a simple and comparatively insignificant matter, like that already noticed at the end of the sixth chapter. The revolution of the machine of which the construction has now been explained, in imitation of the actual motion of the

heavens about the earth, is something so calculated to strike the minds of the uninitiated with wonder, that the means by which it is to be accomplished must not be fully explained even in this treatise, lest they should become too generally known: they must be learned by each pupil directly from his teacher, as the latter has received them by successive tradition, from the original and superhuman source whence they came. It is perfectly evident that such a fabric could only be made to revolve in a rude and imperfect way; that it should have marked time, and continued for any period to correspond in position with the actual sphere, is impossible.

The word which, upon the authority of the commentator, we have rendered "water," in verse 16, is *amṛtasrâva*, literally "having an immortal flow": perhaps the phrase should be translated rather, "by managing a constant current of water."

19\. . . . So also, one should construct instruments (*yantra*) in order to the ascertainment of time.

20\. When quite alone, one should apply quicksilver to the wonder-causing instrument. By the gnomon (*çanku*), staff (*yashṭi*), arc (*dhanus*), wheel (*cakra*), instruments for taking the shadow, of various kinds,

21\. According to the instruction of the preceptor (*guru*), is to be gained a knowledge of time by the diligent. . . . .

The commentator interprets the first part of verse 20 in correspondence with the sense of the preceding passage: the application of mercury to a revolving machine, in order to give it the appearance of automatic motion, must be made privately, lest people, understanding the method too well, should cease to wonder at it. The instruments mentioned in the latter half of the same verse are explained in the commentary simply by citations from the *yantrâdhyâya*, "chapter of instruments," of the Siddhânta-Çiromani (Golâdhy., pp. 111–136, published edition). We will state, as briefly as may be, their character:

The gnomon (*çanku*) needs no explanation: its construction and the method of using it have been fully exhibited in the third chapter of our treatise. The "staff-instrument" (*yashṭiyantra*) is described as follows. A circle is described upon a level surface with a radius proportioned to that of the sphere, or to tabular radius. Its cardinal points are ascertained, and its east and west and north and south diameters are drawn. From the former, at either extremity, is laid off the sine of amplitude (*agrâ*) ascertained by calculation for the given day: the points thus determined upon the circumference of the circle represent the points on the horizon at which the sun rises and sets. Another circle, with a radius proportioned to that of the calculated diurnal circle of the day (*dyujyâ*), is also described about the centre of the other, and is divided into sixty equal parts, representing the division of the sun's daily revolution into sixty nâḍis. Into a depression at the centre, the foot of a staff (*yashṭi*), equal in length to the radius of the larger circle, is loosely inserted. When it is desired to ascertain the time of the day, this staff is pointed directly toward the sun, or in such manner that it casts no shadow; its extremity then represents the place of the sun at the

moment upon the sphere. Measure, by a stick, the distance of that extremity from the point of sunrise or of sunset: this will be the chord of that part of the diurnal circle which is intercepted between the sun's actual position and the point at which he rose, or will set: the value of the corresponding arc in nâḍîs may be ascertained by applying the stick to the lesser graduated circle. The result is the time since sunrise, or till sunset.

The "wheel" (*çakra*) is a very simple instrument for obtaining, by observation, the sun's altitude and zenith-distance. It is simply a wheel, suspended by a string, graduated to degrees, having its lowest point and the extremities of its horizontal diameter distinctly marked, and with a projecting peg at the centre. When used, its edge is turned toward the sun, so that the shadow of the peg falls upon the graduated periphery, and the distances of the point where it meets the latter from the horizontal and lowest points of the wheel respectively are the required altitude and zenith-distance of the sun. From these, by the methods of the third chapter (iii. 37–39), the time may be derived.

The "arc" (*dhanus*) is the lower half of the instrument just described —or, we may also suppose, a quadrant of it; since only a quadrant is required for making the observations for which the instrument is employed.

21. By water-instruments, the vessel (*kapâla*) etc., by the peacock, man, monkey, and by stringed sand-receptacles, one may determine time accurately.

22. Quicksilver-holes, water, and cords, ropes (*çulba*), and oil and water, mercury, and sand are used in these: these applications, too, are difficult.

The instruments and methods hinted at in these verses are only partially and obscurely explained by the commentator. The *kapâla*, "cup" or "hemisphere," is doubtless the instrument which is particularly described below, in verse 23. The *nara*, "man," is also spoken of below, in verse 24, and is simply a gnomon; it is perhaps one of a particular construction and size, and so named from having about the height of a man. The peacock and monkey are obscure. The "sand-vessels" (*reṇugarbha*), which are "provided with cords" (*sasûtra*), are probably suspended instruments, of the general character of our hour-glasses. The commentator connects them also with the "peacock," as if the latter were a figure of the bird having such a vessel in his interior, and letting the sand pour out of his mouth. In illustration of the "quicksilver-holes" (*pâradârâ*) a passage is cited from the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi (as above), giving the description of an instrument in which they are applied. It is a wheel, having on its outer edge a number of holes, of equal size, and at equal distances from one another, but upon a zig-zag line: these holes are filled half full of mercury, and stopped at the orifice: and it is claimed that the wheel will then, if supported upon an axis by a couple of props, revolve of itself. The application of this method may well enough be styled "difficult": if a machine so constructed would work, the Hindus would be entitled to the credit of having solved the problem of perpetual motion. The descriptions of

one or two other somewhat similar machines are also cited in the commentary from the Siddhânta-Çiromani: the only new feature worthy of notice which they contain is the application of the siphon, or bent tube, in emptying a vessel of the water it contains.

It will have been noticed that, throughout the whole of this chapter, the different parts or passages end in the middle of a verse. In the twenty-first verse the coincidence between the end of a passage and the end of a verse is re-established, but it is at the cost of such an irregularity as is nowhere else committed in the treatise: the verse is made to consist of three half-çlokas, instead of two, the whole chapter being thus allowed to contain an uneven number of lines. There are two or three very superfluous half-verses at the beginning of the chapter, the omission of any one of which would seem an easier and preferable method of restoring the regular and connected construction of the text.

23. A copper vessel, with a hole in the bottom, set in a basin of pure water, sinks sixty times in a day and night, and is an accurate hemispherical instrument.

This instrument appears to have been the one most generally and frequently in use among the Hindus for the measurement of time: it is the only one described in the Âyîn-Akbari (ii. 302). One of the common names for the sixtieth part of the day, *ghaṭî* or *ghaṭikâ*, literally "vessel," is evidently derived from it: the other, *nâḍî* or *nâḍikâ*, "reed," probably designated in the first place, and more properly, a measure of length, and not of time. A verse cited in the commentary to this passage gives the form and dimensions of the vessel used: it is to be of ten *palas*' weight of copper, six digits (*angula*) high, and of twice that width at the mouth, and is to contain sixty *palas* of water: the hole in the bottom through which it is to fill itself is to be such as will just admit a gold pin four digits long, and weighing three and a third *mâshas*. The description of the Âyîn-Akbari does not precisely agree with this; and it is, indeed, sufficiently evident that an instrument intended for such a purpose could not be accurately constructed by Hindu workmen from measurements alone, but would have to be tested by comparison with some recognized standard, or by actual use.

24. So also, the man-instrument (*narayantra*) is good in the day-time, and when the sun is clear. The best determination of time by means of determinations of the shadow has been explained.

We have already noticed above, under verse 21, that the *nara* was a simple gnomon. The explanations here referred to are, of course, those which are presented in the third chapter.

The concluding verse of the chapter is an encouragement held out to the astronomical student.

25. He who thoroughly knows the system of the planets and asterisms, and the sphere, attains the world of the planets in the succession of births, his own possessor.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE DIFFERENT MODES OF RECKONING TIME.

CONTENTS:—1–2, enumeration of the modes of measuring time, and general explanation of their uses; 3, solar time; 4–6, of the periods of eighty-six days; 7–11, of points and divisions in the sun's revolution; 12–13, lunar time; 14, time of the Fathers; 15, sidereal time; 15–16, of the months and their asterisms; 17, of the twelve-year cycle of Jupiter; 18–19, civil, or mean solar, time; 20–21, time of the gods, Prajâpati, and Brahma; 22–26, conclusion of the work.

1. The modes of measuring time (*mâna*) are nine, namely those of Brahma, of the gods, of the Fathers, of Prajâpati, of Jupiter, and solar (*sâura*), civil (*sâvana*), lunar, and sidereal time.

2. Of four modes, namely solar, lunar, sidereal, and civil time, practical use is made among men; by that of Jupiter is to be determined the year of the cycle of sixty years; of the rest, no use is ever made.

This chapter contains the reply of the sun's incarnation to the last of the questions addressed to him by the original recipient of his revelation (see above, xii. 8). The word *mâna*, which gives it its title of *mânâdhyâya*, and which we have translated "mode of measuring or reckoning time," literally means simply "measure": it is the same term which we have already (iv. 2–3) seen applied to designate the measured disks of the sun and moon.

3. By solar (*sâura*) time are determined the measure of the day and night, the *shaḍaçîtimukhas*, the solstice (*ayana*), the equinox (*vishuvat*), and the propitious period of the sun's entrance into a sign (*sankrânti*).

The adjective *saura*, which we translate "solar," is a secondary derivative from *sûrya*, "sun." It is applied to those divisions of time which are dependent on and determined by the sun's actual motion along the ecliptic. The "day and night" measured by it are probably those of the gods and demons respectively; see above, xii. 48–50. The solar year, as already noticed (note to i. 12–13), is sidereal, not tropical; it commences whenever the sun enters the first sign of the immovable sidereal zodiac, or when he is 10 minutes east in longitude from the star ζ Piscium. The solar month is the time during which he continues in each successive sign, or arc of 30°, reckoning from that point. The length of the solar year and month is subject only to an infinitesimal variation, due to the slow motion, of 1′ in 517 years, assumed for the sun's line of apsides (see above, i. 41–44); but it is, as has been shown above (note to i. 29–34, near the end), somewhat differently estimated by different authorities. The precise length of the solar months, as reckoned according to the Sûrya-Siddhânta, is thus stated by Warren (Kâla Sankalita, p. 69):

Duration of the several Solar Months.

No.	Name.	Duration.					Sum of duration.				
		d	n	v	‴	⁗	d	n	v	‴	⁗
1	Vâiçâkha,	30	55	32	2	39	30	55	32	2	39
2	Jyâishtha,	31	24	12	2	41	62	19	44	5	20
3	Âshâḍha,	31	36	38	2	44	93	56	22	8	4
4	Çrâvaṇa,	31	28	12	2	42	125	24	34	10	46
5	Bhâdrapada,	31	2	10	2	40	156	26	44	13	26
6	Âçvina,	30	27	22	2	38	186	54	6	16	4
7	Kârttika,	29	54	7	2	35	216	48	13	18	39
8	Mârgaçîrsha,	29	30	24	2	33	246	18	37	21	12
9	Pâusha,	29	20	53	2	31	275	39	30	23	43
10	Mâgha,	29	27	16	2	32	305	6	46	26	15
11	Phâlguna,	29	48	24	2	33	334	55	10	28	48
12	Câitra,	30	20	21	2	36	365	15	31	31	24

The former passage (i. 12–13) took no note of any solar day; in this chapter, however, such a division of time is distinctly contemplated: it is also recognized by the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi (Gaṇitâdhy., ii. 8), and seems to be, for certain uses, generally accepted. The solar day is the time during which the sun traverses each successive degree of the ecliptic, with his true motion, and its length accordingly varies with the rapidity of his motion: three hundred and sixty such days compose the sidereal year. In order to determine the solar day corresponding to any given moment, it is, of course, only necessary to calculate, by the methods of the second chapter, the sun's true longitude for that moment. Hence it is a matter of very little practical account: all the periods regarded as determined by it may be as well derived directly from the sun's longitude, without going through the form of calling its degrees days. It is thus with the equinoxes, solstices, and entrances of the sun into a sign (*sankrânti*, "entrance upon connection with"): for the latter, and for the continuance of the propitious influences which are believed to attend upon it, see below, verse 11. The ***shaḍaçîtimukhas*** form the subject of the next following passage.

The manuscript without commentary inserts here the following verse: "the day and night of the gods and demons, which is determined by the sun's revolution through the circle of asterisms (*bhacakra*), and the number of the Golden (*kṛta*) and other Ages, as already stated, is to be known."

4. Beginning with Libra, the *shaḍaçîtimukha* is at the end of the periods of eighty-six (*shaḍaçîti*) days, in succession: there are four of them, occurring in the signs of double character (*dvisvabhâva*);

5. Namely, at the twenty-sixth degree of Sagittarius, at the twenty-second of Pisces, at the eighteenth degree of Gemini, and at the fourteenth of Virgo.

6. From the latter point, the sixteen days of Virgo which remain are suitable for sacrifices: anything given to the Fathers (*pitaras*) in them is inexhaustible.

We have not been able to find anywhere any explanation of this curious division of the sun's path into arcs of 86°, commencing from the autumnal equinox, and leaving an odd remnant of 16° at the end of Virgo. The commentary offers nothing whatever in elucidation of their character and significance. The epithet "of double character" (*dvisvabhâva*) belongs to the four signs mentioned in verse 5; judging from the connection in which it is applied to them by Varâha-Mihira (Laghujâtaka, i. 8, in Weber's Indische Studien, ii. 278), it designates them as either variable (*cara*) or fixed (*sthira*), in some astrological sense. The term *shaḍaçîtimukha* is composed of *shaḍaçîti*, "eighty-six," and *mukha*, "mouth, face, beginning." We do not understand the meaning of the compound well enough to venture to translate it.

7. In the midst of the zodiac (*bhacakra*) are the two equinoxes (*vishuvat*), situated upon the same diameter (*samasûtraga*), and likewise the two solstices (*ayana*); these four are well known.

8. Between these are, in each case, two entrances (*sankrânti*); from the immediateness of the entrance are to be known the two feet of Vishṇu.

9. From the sun's entrance (*sankrânti*) into Capricorn, six months are his northern progress (*uttarâyaṇa*); so likewise, from the beginning of Cancer, six months are his southern progress (*dakshiṇâyana*).

10. Thence also are reckoned the seasons (*ṛtu*), the cool season (*çiçira*) and the rest, each prevailing through two signs. These twelve, commencing with Aries, are the months; of them is made up the year.

The commentator explains *samasûtraga*, like *samasûtrastha* above (xii. 52), to mean situated at opposite extremities of the same diameter of the earth, or antipodal to one another.

The technical term for the sun's entrance into a sign of the zodiac is, as noticed already, *sankrânti* (the commentary also presents the equivalent word *sankramana*); of these there take place two between each equinox and the preceding or following solstice. The latter half of verse 8 is quite obscure. The commentator appears to understand it as signifying that, in each quadrant, the entrance (*sankrânti*) immediately following the solstice or equinox is styled "Vishṇu's feet." In the earliest Hindu mythology, Vishṇu is the sun, especially considered as occupying successively the three stations of the orient horizon, the meridian, and the occident horizon; and the three steps by which he strides through the sky are his only distinctive characteristic. These three steps, then, appear under various forms in the later Vâishṇava mythology, and there is plainly some reference to them in this designation of the sun's entrances into the signs. It would seem easiest and most natural to recognize in the three signs intervening between each equinox and solstice Vishṇu's three steps, and to regard the two intermediate entrances as the marks of his feet; this may possibly be the figure intended to be conveyed by the language of the text.

The word *ṛtu* means originally and literally any determined period of time, a "season" in the most general sense of the term; but it has also

been employed from very early times to designate the various divisions of the year. They were anciently reckoned as three, five, six, or seven; but the prevailing division, and the only one in use in later times, is that into six seasons, named Çiçira, Vasanta, Grîshma, Varsha, Çarad, and Hemanta, which may be represented by cool season, spring, summer, rainy season, autumn, and winter. Çiçira begins with the month Mâgha, or about the middle of January (see note to i. 48–51, and the table given below, under vv. 15–16), and each season in succession includes two solar months.

11. Multiply the number of minutes in the sun's measure (*mâna*) by sixty, and divide by his daily motion: a time equal to half the result, in nâḍîs, is propitious before the sun's entrance into a sign (*sankrânti*), and likewise after it.

The propitious influences referred to above, in verse 3, as attending upon the sun's entrance into a sign, are regarded as enduring so long as any part of his disk is upon the point of separation between the two signs. This time is found by the following proportion: as the sun's actual daily motion, in minutes, is to a day, or sixty nâḍîs, so is the measure of his disk, in minutes, to the time which it will occupy in passing the point referred to.

12. As the moon, setting out from the sun, moves from day to day eastward, that is the lunar method of reckoning time (*mâna*): a lunar day (*tithi*) is to be regarded as corresponding to twelve degrees of motion.

13. The lunar day (*tithi*), the karaṇa, the general ceremonies, marriage, shaving, and the performance of vows, fastings, and pilgrimages, are determined by lunar time.

14. Of thirty lunar days is composed the lunar month, which is declared to be a day and a night of the Fathers: the end of the month and of the half-month (*paksha*) are at their mid-day and midnight respectively.

For the *tithi*, or lunar day, see above, ii. 66: for the karaṇa, see ii. 67–69. For the month considered as the day of the *pitaras*, or manes of the departed, see note to xii. 73–77. Manu (i. 66) pronounces the day of the Fathers to be the dark half-month, or the fortnight from full moon to new moon, and their night to be the light half-month, or the fortnight from new moon to full moon. With this mode of division might be made to accord that stated in the latter part of verse 14, by rendering *madhye* "between," instead of "at the middle point of": we have translated according to the directions of the commentator.

15. The constant revolution of the circle of asterisms (*bhacakra*) is called a sidereal day. The months are to be known by the names of the asterisms (*nakshatra*), according to the conjunction (*yoga*) at the end of a lunar period (*parvan*).

16. To the months Kârttika etc. belong, as concerns the conjunction (*samayoga*), the asterisms Kṛttikâ etc., two by two: but

three months, namely the last, the next to the last, and the fifth, have triple asterisms.

The subject of sidereal time, although one of prominent importance in the present treatise, since the subdivision of the day is regulated entirely by it, is here very summarily dismissed with half a verse, while we find appended to it in the same passage matters with which it has nothing properly to do.

We have already (note to i. 48–51) had occasion to notice that the months are regarded as having received their names from the asterisms (*nakshatra*) in which the moon became full during their continuance. According to Sir William Jones (As. Res., ii. 296), it is asserted by the Hindus "that, when their lunar year was arranged by former astronomers, the moon was at the full in each month on the very day when it entered the *nakshatra*, from which that month is denominated." Whether this assertion is strictly true admits of much doubt. Our text does not imply any such claim: it only declares that the month is to be called by the name of that asterism with which the moon is in conjunction (*yoga*) at the end of the *parvan:* this latter word might mean either half of a lunar month, but is evidently to be understood here, as explained by the commentary, of the light half (*çukla paksha*) alone, so that the end of the *parvan* (*parvânta*) is equivalent to the end of the day of full moon (*pûrṇimânta*), or to the moment of opposition in longitude. Now it is evident that, owing to the incommensurability of the times of revolution of the sun and moon, as also to the revolution of the moon's line of apsides, full moon is liable to occur in succession in all the asterisms, and at all points of the zodiac; so that although, at the time when the system of names for the months originated and established itself, they were doubtless strictly applicable, they would not long continue to be so. Instead, however, of being compelled to alter continually the nomenclature of the year, we are allowed, by verse 16, to call a month Kârttika in which the full of the moon takes place either in Krttikâ or in Rohiṇî, and so on; the twenty-seven asterisms being distributed among the twelve months as evenly as the nature of the case admits.

At what period these names were first introduced into use is unknown. It must have been, of course, posterior to the establishment of the system of asterisms, but it was probably not much later, as the names are found in some of the earlier texts which contain those of the *nakshatras* themselves. We can hardly suppose that they were not originally applied independently to the lunar months; and certainly, no more suitable derivation could be found for the name of a lunar period than from the asterism in which the moon attained during its continuance her full beauty and perfection. In later times, as we have already seen (note to i. 48–51), the true lunar months are entirely dependent for their nomenclature upon the solar months, according to the determination of the latter, as regards their commencement and duration, by the data and methods of the modern astronomical science. There has been handed down another system of names for the months (see Colebrooke in As. Res., vii. 284; Essays, i. 201), which have nothing to do with the asterisms: whether they are to be regarded as more ancient than the others

we do not know. They are—commencing with the first month of the season Vasanta, or with that one which in the other system is called Câitra—as follows; Madhu, Mâdhava, Çukra, Çuci, Nabhas, Nabhasya, Isha, Ûrja, Sahas, Sahasya, Tapas, Tapasya.

For the sake of a clearer understanding of the relations of the asterisms, months, and seasons, we present their correspondences below in a tabular form:

Season.	Month.	Asterisms in which full moon may occur.
Çarad.	Kârttika. (Oct.-Nov.)	Kṛttikâ. Rohiṇî.
Hemanta.	Mârgaçîrsha. (Nov.-Dec.)	Mṛgaçîrsha. Ârdrâ.
	Pâusha. (Dec.-Jan.)	Punarvasu. Pushya.
Çiçira.	Mâgha. (Jan.-Feb.)	Âçleshâ. Maghâ.
	Phâlguna. (Feb.-Mar.)	P.-Phalgunî. U.-Phalgunî. Hasta.
Vasanta.	Câitra. (Mar.-Apr.)	Citrâ. Svâtî.
	Vâiçâkha. (Apr.-May.)	Viçâkhâ. Anurâdhâ.
Grîshma.	Jyâishtha. (May-June.)	Jyeshṭhâ. Mûla.
	Âshâdha. (June-July.)	P.-Ashâdhâ. U.-Ashâdhâ.
Varsha.	Çrâvaṇa. (July-Aug.)	Çravaṇa. Çravishṭhâ.
	Bhâdrapada. (Aug.-Sept.)	Çatabhishaj. P.-Bhâdrapadâ. U.-Bhâdrapadâ.
Çarad.	Âçvina. (Sept.-Oct.)	Revatî. Açvinî. Bharaṇî.

Davis (As. Res., iii. 218) notices that some of the ancient astronomers have divided the asterisms somewhat differently, giving to Çrâvaṇa the three beginning with Çravaṇa, to Bhâdrapada the three beginning with Pûrva-Bhâdrapadâ, and to Âçvina only Açvinî and Bharaṇî. It seems, indeed, that the selection of the three months to which three asterisms, instead of two, were assigned, must have been made somewhat arbitrarily.

It will be noticed that in this passage Kârttika is treated as the first of the series of months, while above (v. 10) Çiçira was mentioned as the first season, and while in practice (see note to i. 48–51) Vâiçâkha is treated as the first of the solar months, and Câitra of the lunar. Another name for Mârgaçîrsha, also, is Agrahâyaṇa, which appears to mean "commencement of the year." How much significance these variations of usage may have, and what is their reason, is not known to us.

As regards Vâiçâkha and Câitra, indeed, the case is clear, and we may also regard the rank assigned to Kârttika as due to the ancient position of Krttikâ, as first among the lunar mansions.

17. In Vâiçâkha etc., a conjunction (*yoga*) in the dark half-month (*kṛshṇa*), on the fifteenth lunar day (*tithi*), determines in like manner the years Kârttika etc. of Jupiter, from his heliacal setting (*asta*) and rising (*udaya*).

We have already, in an early part of the treatise (i. 55), made acquaintance with a cycle of the planet Jupiter, composed of sixty years; in this verse we have introduced to our notice a second one, containing twelve years, or corresponding to a single sidereal revolution of the planet. The principle upon which its nomenclature is based is very evident. Jupiter's revolution is treated as if, like that of the sun, it determined a year, and the twelve parts, each quite nearly equalling a solar year (see note to i. 55), into which it is divided, are, by the same analogy, accounted as months, and accordingly receive the names of the solar months. The appellations thus applied to the years, in their order, we are directed to determine by the asterism (*nakshatra*) in which the planet is found to be at the time of its disappearance in the sun's rays, and its disengagement from them: for it would, of course, set and rise heliacally twelve times in each revolution, and each time about a month later than before. The name of the year, however, will not agree with that of the month in which the rising and setting occur, but will be the opposite of it, or six months farther forward or backward, since the month is named from the asterism with which the sun is in opposition, but the year of the cycle from that with which he is in conjunction. The terms in which the rule of the text is stated are not altogether unambiguous: there is no expressed grammatical connection between the two halves of the verse, and we are compelled to add in our translation the important word "determines," which links them together. The meaning, however, we take to be as follows: if, in any given year, the heliacal setting of Jupiter takes place in the month Vâiçâkha, then the asterism with which the moon is found to be in conjunction at the end of that month—which will be, of course, the asterism in which the sun is at the same time situated—will determine the name of the year, which will be Kârttika: and so on, from year to year. The expression "in like manner," in the second half of the verse, is interpreted as implying that to the years of this cycle is made the same distribution of the asterisms as to the months in the preceding passage: the second and third columns of the last table, then, will apply to the cycle, if we alter their headings respectively, from "month" to "year of the cycle," and from "asterisms in which full moon may occur" to "asterisms in which Jupiter's heliacal setting and rising may occur."

There is one untoward circumstance connected with this arrangement which is not taken into account by the text, and which appears to oppose a practical difficulty to the application of its rule. The amount of Jupiter's motion during a solar year is not precisely one sign, but perceptibly more than that, so that the mean interval between two successive heliacal settings is a little more than a solar month; and this dif-

ference accumulates so rapidly that the thirteenth setting would take place about four degrees farther eastward than the first, so that, without some system of periodical omissions of a month, the correspondence between the names of the years, if applied in regular succession, and the asterisms in which the planet disappeared would, after a few revolutions, be altogether dislocated and broken up. If the cycle were of more practical consequence, or if it were contemplated as one of the proper subjects of this treatise, we might expect to find some method of obviating this difficulty prescribed. Warren, however, in his brief account of the cycle of twelve years (Kâla Sankalita, p. 212 etc.), states that he knows of no nation or tribe making any use of it, but only finds it mentioned in the books. According to both him and Davis (As. Res., iii. 217 etc.), the cycle of twelve years is subordinate to that of sixty, the latter being divided into five such cycles, to which special names are applied, and of each of which the successive years receive in order the titles of the solar months. The appellations of the cycles themselves are those which properly belong to the years of the lustrum (*yuga*), or cycle of five years, by which, as already noticed (note to i. 56–58), the Hindus appear first to have regulated time, and effected by intercalation the coincidence of the solar and lunar years: they are Samvatsara, Parivatsara, Idâvatsara, Idvatsara, (or Anuvatsara), and Vatsara (or Idvatsara, or Udravatsara). It would appear, then, either that the cycle of sixty years was derived from and founded upon the ancient lustrum, being an imitation of its construction in time of the planet Jupiter, of which a month equals a solar year, or else that the already existing cycle had been later fancifully compared with the lustrum, and subdivided after its model into sub-cycles for years, and years for months: of these two suppositions we are inclined to regard the latter as decidedly the more probable.

18. From rising to rising of the sun, that is called civil (*sâvana*) reckoning. By that are determined the civil days (*sâvana*), and by these is the regulation of the time of sacrifice;

19. Likewise the removal of uncleanness from child-bearing etc., and the regents of days, months, and years: the mean motion of the planets, too, is computed by civil time.

The term *sâvana* we have translated "civil," as being a convenient way of distinguishing this from the other kinds of time, and as being very properly applicable to the day as reckoned in practical use from sunrise to sunrise: in the more general sense, as denoting the mode of reckoning the mean motions of the planets, and the regency of successive periods, *sâvana* corresponds to what we call "mean solar" time. The word itself seems to be a derivative from *savana*, "libation," the three daily *savanas*, or the sunrise, noon, and sunset libations, being determined by this reckoning.

20. The mutually opposed day and night of the gods (*sura*) and demons (*asura*), which has been already explained, is time of the gods, being measured by the completion of the sun's revolution.

21. The space of a Patriarchate (*manvantara*) is styled time of Prajâpati: in it is no distinction of day from night. An Æon (*kalpa*) is called time of Brahma.

It may well be said that the mode of reckoning by time of the gods has been already explained: the length of a day of the gods, with the method of its determination, has been stated and dwelt upon, in almost identical language, over and over again (see i. 13–14; xii. 45–50, 67, 74; and the interpolated verse after xiv. 3), almost as if it were so new and striking an idea as to demand and bear repeated inculcation. For the Patriarchate (*manvantara*), or period of 308,448,000 years, see above, i. 18: this is the only allusion to it as a unit of time which the treatise contains. For the Æon (*kalpa*), of 4,320,000,000 years, as constituting a day of Brahma, see above, i. 20.

The remaining verses are simply the conclusion of the treatise.

22. Thus hath been told thee that supreme mystery, lofty and wonderful, that sacred knowledge (*brahman*), most exalted, pure, all guilt destroying;

23. And the highest knowledge of the heaven, the stars, and the planets hath been exhibited: he who knoweth it thoroughly obtaineth in the worlds of the sun etc. an everlasting place.

24. With these words, taking leave of Maya, and being suitably worshipped by him, the part of the sun ascended to heaven, and entered his own disk.

25. So then Maya, having personally learned from the sun that divine knowledge, regarded himself as having attained his desire, and as purified from sin.

26. Then, too, the sages (*rshi*), learning that Maya had received from the sun this gift, drew near and surrounded him, and reverently asked the knowledge.

27. And he graciously bestowed upon them the grand system of the planets, of mysteries in the world the most wonderful, and equal to the Scripture (*brahman*).

The Sûrya-Siddhânta, in the form in which it is here presented, as accepted by Ranganâtha and fixed by his commentary, contains exactly five hundred verses. This number, of course, cannot plausibly be looked upon as altogether accidental: no one will question that the treatise has been intentionally wrought into its present compass. We have often found occasion above to point out indications, more or less distinct and unequivocal, of alterations and interpolations; and although in some cases our suspicions may not prove well-founded, there can be no reasonable doubt that the text of the treatise has undergone since its origin not unimportant extension and modification. Any farther consideration of this point we reserve for the general historical summary to be presented at the end of the Appendix.

APPENDIX:

CONTAINING ADDITIONAL NOTES AND TABLES, CALCULATIONS OF ECLIPSES, A STELLAR MAP, ETC.

1. p. 142. The name *siddhânta*, by which the astronomical text-books are generally called, has, by derivation and original meaning, nothing to do with astronomy, but signifies simply "established conclusion;" and it is variously applied to other uses in the Sanskrit literature.

It may not be uninteresting to present here a summary view of the existing astronomical literature of the Hindus, as derived from such sources of information upon the subject as are accessible to us, even though such a view must necessarily be imperfect and incomplete. We commence by giving a list of works furnished to the translator, at his request, by the native Professor of Mathematics in the Sanskrit College at Pûna, and which may be taken as representing the knowledge possessed, and the opinions held, by the learned of Western India at the present time. Along with it is offered the list of nine treatises given in the modern Sanskrit Encyclopedia, the Çabdakalpadruma, as entitled to the name of Siddhânta. The longer list was intended to be arranged chronologically; the remarks appended to the names of treatises are those of its compiler.

1. Brahma-Siddhânta.
2. Sûrya-Siddhânta.
3. Soma-Siddhânta.
4. Vâsishtha-Siddhânta.
5. Romaka-Siddhânta.
6. Pâulastya-Siddhânta.
7. Bṛhaspati-Siddhânta.
8. Garga-Siddhânta.
9. Vyâsa-Siddhânta.
10. Pârâçara-Siddhânta.
11. Bhoja-Siddhânta; earlier than the Çiromaṇi.
12. Varâha-Siddhânta, earlier than the Çiromaṇi.
13. Brahmagupta-Siddhânta; earlier than the Çiromaṇi.
14. Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi, *çake* 1072 [A.D. 1150].
15. Sundara-Siddhânta, about 400 years ago.
16. Tattva-Viveka-Siddhânta; in the time of the reign of Jaya Sinha, about 250 [years ago.
17. Sârvabhâuma-Siddhânta; in the time of the reign of Jaya Sinha.
18. Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta } earlier than the Çiromaṇi.
19. Bṛhad-Ârya-Siddhânta } earlier than the Çiromaṇi.

1. Brahma-Siddhânta.
2. Sûrya-Siddhânta.
3. Soma Siddhânta.
4. Bṛhaspati-Siddhânta.
5. Garga-Siddhânta.
6. Nârada-Siddhânta.
7. Pârâçara-Siddhanta.
8. Pâulastya-Siddhânta.
9. Vasishtha-Siddhânta.

It is obvious that these lists are uncritically constructed, and that neither of them is of a nature to yield valuable information without additional explanations. The one is most unreasonably curt, and seems founded on the principle of allowing the title of Siddhânta to no work

which is the acknowledged composition of a merely human author, while the other contains treatises of very heterogeneous character and value: and neither list distinguishes works now actually in existence from those which have become lost, and those of which the existence at any period is questionable. A more satisfactory account of the Siddhânta literature may be drawn up from the notices contained in the writings of Western scholars, and especially from the various essays of Colebrooke. For what we shall here offer, he is our main authority.

In the present imperfect state of our knowledge of the subject, there is perhaps no better method of classifying the Hindu astronomical treatises than by dividing them into four classes, as follows: first, those which profess to be a revelation on the part of some superhuman being; second, those which are attributed to ancient and renowned sages, or to other supposititious or impersonal authors; third, those regarded as the works of actual authors, astronomers of an early and uncertain period; fourth, later texts, of known date and authorship, and mostly of a less independent and original character.

I. The first class comprises the Brahma, Sûrya, Soma, Bṛhaspati, and Nârada Siddhântas.

1. *Brahma-Siddhânta.* The earliest treatise bearing this name is said to have formed a part of the Vishṇudharmottara Purâṇa, a work which seems to be long since lost, and scarcely remembered except in connection with the Siddhânta. The latter, too, is only known by a few citations in astronomical writings, and by the treatise of Brahmagupta (see below, third class) founded upon it. Another work laying claim to the same title is that which we have many times cited above as the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ. Sanhitâ, "text, comprehensive work," is a term employed to denote a complete course of astronomy, astrology, horoscopy, etc.: this treatise, according to the manuscript in our possession, forms the second division (*praçna*) of such a course. It professes to be revealed by Brahma to the semi-divine personage Nârada. Of its relation to the Sûrya-Siddhânta we have spoken above (note to viii. 10–12). It does not appear to be referred to as an independent work in either of the native lists we have given.

2. *Sûrya-Siddhânta.* This is the treatise of which the translation has been given above, and of which, accordingly, we do not need to speak here more particularly.

3. *Soma-Siddhânta.* Judging from its title, this work must profess to derive its origin from the moon (*soma*), as the preceding from the sun (*sûrya*). Bentley speaks of it as following in the main the system of the Sûrya-Siddhânta. There is a manuscript of it in the Berlin Library (Weber's Catalogue, No. 840), and Colebrooke seems also to have had it in his hands.

4. *Bṛhaspati-Siddhânta.* Bṛhaspati is the name of a divine personage, priest and teacher of the gods, as also of the planet Jupiter. No work bearing this name is mentioned, so far as we can ascertain, by any European scholar, although Brhaspati is not infrequently referred to in native writings as an authority in astronomical matters.

5. *Nârada-Siddhânta.* A Nâradî-Sanhitâ, or course of astrology, in the Berlin Library (Weber, No. 862), and an occasional reference to

Nârada, among other divine or mythical personages, as an astronomical authority, are all the indications we find justifying the introduction of this name into the list of the Çabdakalpadruma.

II. In the second class we include the Gârga, Vyâsa, Pârâçara, Pâuliça, Pâulastya, and Vâsishtha Siddhântas. Garga, Parâçara, Vyâsa, Pulastya, and Vasishtha are prominent among the sages of the ancient period of Hindu history: the two latter are of the number of those who give name to the stars in Ursa Major (they are β and ζ respectively). They cannot possibly have been the veritable authors of Siddhântas, or works presenting the modern astronomical system of the Hindus: but—and this seems to be especially the case with regard to Garga and Parâçara—one and another of them may have distinguished themselves in connection with the older science, and so have furnished some ground for the part attributed to them by the later tradition, and for the fathering of astronomical works upon them.

1. *Garga-Siddhânta.* Astronomical treatises and commentaries upon them occasionally offer citations from Gârga (see, for instance, Colebrooke's Essays, ii. 356; Sir William Jones in As. Res., ii. 397), but of a Siddhânta, or text-book of astronomy, bearing his name, we find nowhere any mention excepting in these lists.

2. *Vyâsa-Siddhânta.* This name, too, is known to us only from the list above given.

3. *Pârâçara-Siddhânta.* According to Bentley, the second chapter of the Ârya-Siddhânta contains an extract from this work, in which are stated the elements of the mean motions of the planets adopted by it. The work itself appears to be lost; unless, indeed, it may have been contained in a manuscript of the Mackenzie Collection, which in Wilson's Catalogue (i. 120) is called Vriddha-Parâsara, and said to be "a system of astrology, attributed to Parâsara, the father of Vyâsa."

4. *Pâuliça-Siddhânta.* The planetary elements of this treatise also are preserved in later commentaries, and are stated by Bentley and Colebrooke. We have noticed above (note to i. 4–6) that al-Bîrûnî attributes it to Paulus the Greek; whence Weber (Ind. Lit., p. 226) conjectures that it was founded upon the *Εἰσαγωγή* of Paulus Alexandrinus. If this account of its origin be correct, the Puliça to whom the later Hindus attribute it is a fictitious personage, whose name is manufactured out of Pâuliça. The work, it will be seen, is not mentioned in either of the lists we have given, its place appearing to be taken by the Pulastya-Siddhânta. According to the Hindu tradition, the school represented by the Pâuliça-Siddhânta was the rival of that of Âryabhatta.

5. *Pulastya-Siddhânta.* Of this Siddhânta we find mention only in such native lists as omit the preceding. Hence we are led to conjecture that the two names may indicate the same work; an attempt, founded upon the similarity of the names, having been made by some to attribute the Pâuliça-Siddhânta to a known and acknowledged Hindu sage.

6. *Vasishtha-Siddhânta.* This work is spoken of as actually in existence by both Colebrooke and Bentley, and the latter states its system to correspond with that of the Sûrya-Siddhânta. More than one treatise bearing the name is referred to, the older one being of unknown authorship, and the other a later compilation founded upon this, by

Vishnu-candra, who is said also to have derived his material in part from Âryabhaṭṭa. A copy of a Vrddha-Vasishṭha-Siddhânta formed a part of the Mackenzie Collection (Wilson's Catalogue, i. 121).

III. To the third class may be assigned the Siddhântas of Âryabhaṭṭa, Varâha-mihira, and Brahmagupta, and the Romaka-Siddhânta, as well as the later version of the Vasishṭha-Siddhânta, last spoken of. The first three names are those of greatest prominence and highest importance in the history of Hindu astronomical science, and there is every reason to believe that the sages who bore them lived about the time when the modern system may be supposed to have received its final and fully developed form, or during the fifth and sixth centuries of our era.

1. *Ârya-Siddhânta.* The two principal works of Âryabhaṭṭa appear to have been originally entitled the Âryâshṭaçata, "work of eight hundred verses," and Daçagîtikâ, "work of ten cantos." Colebrooke knew neither of them excepting by citations in other astronomical text-books and commentaries. Bentley had in his hands two treatises which he calls the Ârya-Siddhânta and the Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta, which are possibly identical with those above named.* The Berlin Library also contains (Weber, No. 834) a work which professes to be a commentary on the Daçagîtikâ.

2. *Varâha-Siddhânta.* The only distinctively astronomical work of Varâha-mihira appears to have been his Pañca-siddhântikâ, or Compendium of Five Astronomies, of which we have already spoken (note to i. 2–3), and which was founded upon the Brahma, Sûrya, Pâuliça, Vasishṭha, and Romaka Siddhântas. It is supposed to be no longer in existence, although the astrological works of the same author have been carefully preserved, and are without difficulty accessible.

3. *Brahma-Siddhânta.* The proper title of the work composed by Brahmagupta, upon the foundation of an earlier treatise bearing this name, is Brahma-sphuṭa-Siddhânta, "corrected Brahma-Siddhânta," but the word *sphuṭa*, "corrected," is frequently omitted in citing it, as has been our own usage in the notes to the Sûrya-Siddhânta. Colebrooke possessed an imperfect copy of it, and it was also in Bentley's possession. Upon it was professedly founded, in the main, the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi of Bhâskara.

4. *Romaka-Siddhânta.* Of the name of this treatise, the only one we have thus far met with which is not derived from a real or supposed author, we have spoken in the note to i. 4–6. It is said by Colebrooke to be by Çrîshena, and to have been founded in part upon the original Vasishṭha-Siddhânta; its early date is proved by its being one of those treated as authorities by Varâha-mihira. No copy of it seems to have have been discovered in later times.

Our list also mentions a Bhoja-Siddhânta, probably referring to some astronomical work published during the reign, and under the patronage, of Râja Bhoja Deva, of Dhârâ, in the tenth or eleventh century of our era.

* See an article by Fitz-Edward Hall, Esq., On the Ârya-Siddhânta, in a later part of this volume.

IV. Our fourth class is headed by the Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi, written in the twelfth century by Bhâskara Âcârya, and founded upon the Brahma-Siddhânta of Brahmagupta. Our numerous references to it and citations from it indicate the prominent and important position which it occupies in the modern astronomical literature of India. For a description of the numerous commentaries upon it, see Colebrooke's Hindu Algebra, note A (Essays, ii. 450 etc.).

The longer of the lists given above mentions two or three other works of yet later date. Among them the Siddhânta-Sundara is the most ancient, having been composed by Jñâna-râja at the beginning of the sixteenth century. The Graha-Lâghava is a treatise of the same class, and is highly considered and much used throughout India, although omitted from the Pûna list. It is of nearly the same date with the work last spoken of, being the composition of Ganeça, and dated *çake* 1442 (A. D. 1520). The Siddhânta Tattva-Viveka, more usually styled the Tattva-Viveka simply, is a century later: it was written by Kamalâkara, about A. D. 1620. The Siddhânta-Sârvabhâuma dates from very nearly the same period, and is the work of Munîçvara, who is also the author of a commentary on the Çiromani, and the son of Ranganâtha, the commentator on the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

This class of astronomical writings might be almost indefinitely extended, but the works which have been mentioned appear to be the most authoritative and important.

Of all the treatises whose names we have cited, we know of but three which have as yet been published—the Sûrya-Siddhânta, the Siddhânta-Çiromani, and the Graha-Lâghava; the two latter under the auspices of the School Book Society of Calcutta. Prof. Hall's edition of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, to which reference is made in our Introductory Note, has been completed by the addition of a fourth Fasciculus since our own publication was commenced, so that we have been able to avail ourselves of its valuable assistance throughout.

2. p. 142. Ranganâtha, in the verses with which he closes his commentary, states it to have been completed on the same day with the birth of his son Munîçvara, in the *çâka* year 1525, or A. D. 1603. For his relationship to other well-known authors or commentators of astronomical treatises, see Colebrooke's Essays, ii. 452 etc. Other commentators on the Sûrya-Siddhânta mentioned by Colebrooke are Nṛsiṅha, who wrote but a few years later than Ranganâtha, and Bhûdhara and Dâdâ Bhâi, whose age is not stated. The Mackenzie collection (see Wilson's Catalogue, p. 118 etc.) contained commentaries on the whole or parts of the same text by Mallikârjuna, Yellaya, aṅ Âryabhaṭṭa, Mammabhaṭṭa, and Tammaya.

3. p. 143. As no especially suitable opportunity has hitherto offered itself for giving in our notes the synonymy of the names of the planets, we present here all the appellations by which they are known in the text of the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

The sun is called by the following names derived from roots signifying "to shine": *arka, bhânu, ravi, vivasvant, sûrya;* also *savitar,* literally "enlivener, generator"; *bhâskara,* "light-maker"; *dinakara* and

divâkara, "day-maker"; and *tigmânçu* and *tîkshṇânçu,* "having hot or piercing rays."

The moon, besides her ordinary names *indu, candra, vidhu,* is styled *niçâkara,* "night-maker"; *niçâpati,* "lord of night"; *anushnagu, çîtagu, çîtânçu, çîtadîdhiti, himaraçmi, himânçu, himadîdhiti,* "having cool rays"; and *çaçin* and *çaçânka,* "marked with a hare": the Hindu fancy sees the figure of this animal in the spots on the moon's disk. The name *soma* nowhere directly occurs, but it is implied in the title *sâumya* given to Mercury.

Mercury is styled *jña* and *budha,* "wise, knowing"; also *çaçija* and *sâumya,* "son of the moon." The reason of neither appellation is obvious. It will be seen below that the moon, the sun, and the earth have each of them one of the lesser planets assigned to it as its son: why Mercury, Saturn, and Mars were selected, and on what grounds their respective parentage was given them, is hitherto entirely unknown.

Venus has one name, *çukra,* "brilliant," which is derived from her actual character: she is also known as *bhṛgu,* which is the name of one of the most noted of the ancient sages, or as *bhṛguja* or *bhârgava,* "son of Bhrgu."

Mars has likewise a single appellation, *angâraka,* "coal," which is given him on account of his fiery burning light: all his other titles, namely *kuja, bhûputra, bhûmiputra, bhûsuta, bhâuma,* mark him as "son of the earth."

Jupiter is known as *bṛhaspati,* which is, as already more than once noticed, the name of a divine personage, priest and teacher among the gods; the word means originally "lord of worship." The planet also receives some of his titles, namely *guru,* "preceptor," and *amarejya,* "teacher of the immortals." The only other name given to it, *jîva,* "living," is of doubtful origin.

Saturn has two appellations, each represented by several forms; namely "son of the sun," or *arkaja, ârki, sûryatanaya;* and "the slow-moving," or *manda, çani, çanâiçcara.*

All these names, it will be noticed, are of native Hindu origin, and have nothing to do with the appellations given by other nations to the planets. In the Hindu astrological writings, however, even those of a very early period (see Weber's Ind. Stud., ii. 261), appear, along with these, other titles which are evidently derived from those of the Greeks.

4. p. 146. We have everywhere cited Bentley's work on Hindu astronomy according to the London edition of it (8vo., 1825), the only one to which we have had access.

In a few instances, where we have not specified the part of Bhâskara's Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi to which we refer, the Gaṇitâdhyâya, or properly astronomical portion of it, is intended.

5. p. 161. For the convenience of any who may desire to make a more detailed examination of the elements of the mean motions of the planets adopted in this treatise, and to work out the results deducible from them, we present them in the following table in a more exact form. We give the mean time of sidereal revolution, in mean solar days, and

the amount of mean motion, in seconds, during a day, and also during a Julian year, of 365¼ mean solar days.

Mean Motions of the Planets.

Planet.	Time of sideroal revolution.	Mean daily motion.	Mean yearly motion
	d	"	"
Sun,	365 25875648	3,548 16956	1,295,968.931
Mercury,	87 96970228	14,732 34496	5,380,988.996
Venus,	224 69856755	5,767 72702	2,106,662.295
Mars,	686.99749394	1,886 46976	689,033 081
Jupiter,	4,332 32065235	299 14683	109,263.381
Saturn,	10,765.77307461	120.38151	43,969.346
Moon,			
sider. rev,	27 32167416	47,434 86773	17,325,585 437
synod. rev.,	29 53058795	43,886 69817	16,029 616 507
apsis,	3,232 09367415	400.97848	146,457.389
node,	6,794 39983121	190.74532	69,669 730

6. p. 161. The system of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, so far as concerns the mean motions of the planets, the date of the last general conjunction, and the frequency of its recurrence, is also that of the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ. It is likewise presented, according to Bentley (Hind. Astr., p. 116), by the Soma and Vasishtha Siddhântas. So far as can be gathered from the elements of the Pâuliça and Laghu-Ârya Siddhântas, as reported by Colebrooke and Bentley, these treatises, too, followed a similar system; the revolutions of the planets in an Age, as stated by them, where they differ from those of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, always differ by a number which is a multiple of four. Some of the astronomical text-books, however, have constructed their systems in a somewhat different manner. Thus the Siddhânta-Çiromani, following the authority of Brahmagupta and of the earlier Brahma-Siddhânta, makes the planets commence their motions together at the star ζ Piscium at the very commencement of the Æon, and return to a general conjunction at the same point only after the lapse of the whole period of 4,320,000,000 years. The same is the case with the Ârya and Pârâçara Siddhântas: they too, as reported by Bentley (Hind. Astr., pp. 148, 150), state the revolutions of the planets for the whole Æon only, and in numbers which have no common divisor, so that they assume no briefer cycle of conjunction. But they all, at the same time, take special notice of the commencement of the Iron Age, which they make to begin at the moment of mean sunrise at Lankâ, and manage to effect very nearly a general conjunction at the time of its occurrence, as is shown by the table at the end of this note, in which are presented the positions of all the planets, and of the moon's apsis and node, as stated by them for that moment.

We insert these data here, because they seem to us to furnish ground for important conclusions respecting the comparative antiquity of the two systems. The commencement of the Iron Age, which to the one is of cardinal importance as an astronomical epoch, is to the other simply a chronological era, having no astronomical significance. Now if, as has been shown in our notes to be altogether probable, that epoch

is in fact of astronomical origin, being arrived at by retrospective calculation of the planetary motions, we can hardly avoid the conclusion that the system which presents it in its true character is the more ancient and original. This conclusion is strengthened by the notice taken of the epoch by the Siddhânta-Çiromani and its kindred treatises. We do not see how their treatment of it is to be explained, excepting upon the supposition that a general conjunction at that time was already so firmly established as a fundamental dogma of the Hindu astronomy, that they were compelled, even while rejecting the theory of brief cycles and recurring conjunctions, to pay it homage by so constructing their elements that these should exhibit at least a very near approach to a conjunction at the moment. We are clearly of opinion, therefore, that, apart from all consideration of the relative age of the separate treatises, the system represented by the Sûrya-Siddhânta is the more ancient.

Mean Places of the Planets, 6 o'c *A. M. at Ujjayinî, Feb.* 18*th, B. C.* 3102.

Planet.	Siddhânta-Çiromaṇi.				Ârya-Siddhânta.				Pârâçara-Siddhânta.			
	s	°	′	″	s	°	′	″	s	°	′	″
Sun,	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Mercury,	11	27	24	29	11	21	21	36	11	21	17	17
Venus,	11	28	42	14	11	27	7	12	11	26	58	34
Mars,	11	29	3	50	0	0	0	0	11	29	14	38
Jupiter,	11	29	27	36	11	27	7	12	11	27	2	53
Saturn,	11	28	46	34	0	0	0	0	11	28	57	22
Moon,	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10	48
" apsis,	4	5	29	46	4	3	50	24	4	5	12	29
" node,	5	3	12	58	5	2	38	24	5	2	49	12

7. p. 164. We present in the annexed table, in the same form as above (note 5), the elements of the mean motions of the planets as corrected by the *bîja*.

Mean Motions of the Planets, as corrected by the bîja.

Planet.	Time of sidereal revolution	Mean daily motion	Mean yearly motion
	d	″	″
Mercury,	87 96978075	14,732 33182	5,380,984 196
Venus,	224 69895152	5,767 71717	2,106,658 695
Jupiter,	4,332 41581277	299 14026	109,260 981
Saturn,	10,764 89171783	120 39136	43,972 946
Moon's apsis,	3,232 12015592	400 97519	146,456 189
" node,	6,794 28280845	190 74861	69,670 930

8. p. 166. At the time when we wrote our note, we had not observed that Bentley himself explains, in a foot-note to page 117 of his work, this apparent error. In the case of Mercury, since the number of revolutions as stated by the text of our treatise did not yield him the result which he desired, he has quietly taken the liberty of altering it from 17,937,060 to 17,937,024, assuming, as his justification, an error of the copyists which has not the slightest plausibility, and ignoring the fact

that the correctness of the former number is avouched by its occurrence in other treatises. It is highly characteristic of Bentley, that he has thus arbitrarily amended one of the data upon which he rests the most important of his general conclusions, a conclusion which, but for such emendation, would be not a little weakened or modified. Any one can see for himself, upon referring to our table given on page 188, with how much plausibility Bentley is able to deduce, from the dates of its fourth column, the year A.D. 1091 as that of the composition of the Sûrya-Siddhânta. We have been solicitous to allow Bentley all the credit we possibly could for his labors upon the Hindu astronomy, but we cannot avoid expressing here our settled conviction that, as an authority upon the subject, he is hardly more to be trusted than Bailly himself, that his work must be used with the extremest caution, and that his determination of the successive epochs in the history of astronomical science in India is from beginning to end utterly worthless.

9. p. 167. We have not fulfilled our promise to recur in the eighth chapter to the subject of the sun's error of position, because we felt ourselves incompetent to cast at present any valuable light upon it. Nothing but a careful and thorough sifting and comparison of all the earliest treatises, together with the traditions preserved by the commentators, and the practical methods of construction of the calendar, is likely to settle the question as to the manner in which the elements of the planetary orbits were originally made up.

10. p. 168. In making out our comparative table of sidereal revolutions, we have calculated the column for Ptolemy as we conceive that he would himself have calculated it, had he been called upon to do so. M. Biot, having in view an object different from ours, has carefully revised Ptolemy's processes (see his Traité Élémentaire d'Astronomie Physique, 3me éd., v. 37–71), and has deduced from the latter's original data what he regards as the true times of sidereal revolution of the primary planets furnished by them; his periods are accordingly slightly different from those presented in our table.

Colebrooke (As. Res., xii. 246; Essays, ii. 412) has also given a comparative table of the daily motions of the planets, but has committed in it the gross error of setting side by side the sidereal rates of motion of the Hindu text-books and the tropical rates of Ptolemy and Lalande. Of course, his data being incommensurable, the conclusions he draws from their comparison are erroneous.

11. p. 171. We add, in the following table, a comparison of the positions of the apsides and nodes of the planets as stated in our treatise—being those which are adopted, with unimportant variations, by all the schools of Hindu astronomy—with those laid down by Ptolemy in his Syntaxis. The latter we give as stated by Ptolemy for his own period, without reducing them to their value in distances from the initial point of the Hindu sphere. The actual distance of that point, or of the vernal equinox of A.D. 560, from the vernal equinox of Ptolemy's time, is about $5\frac{1}{2}°$. We should remark also that Ptolemy does not state expressly and distinctly the positions of the nodes: we derive them from the rules given by him, in the sixth chapter of his thirteenth Book, for

calculating the latitude of the planets: not being, however, altogether confident of our correct understanding and interpretation of those rules.

Positions of the Apsides and Nodes of the Planets.

Planet.	Sûrya-Siddhânta.		Ptolemy.		Difference.	
Apsides:	°	′	°	′	°	′
Sun,	77	15	65	30	+ 11	45
Mercury,	220	26	190	0	+ 30	26
Venus,	79	49	55	0	+ 24	49
Mars,	130	1	115	30	+ 14	31
Jupiter,	171	16	161	0	+ 10	16
Saturn,	236	38	233	0	+ 3	38
Nodes.						
Mercury,	20	44	10	0	+ 10	44
Venus,	59	45	55	0	+ 4	45
Mars,	40	4	25	30	+ 14	34
Jupiter,	79	41	51	0	+ 28	41
Saturn,	100	25	183	0	− 82	35

It will be perceived that the differences here are not so great as to exclude the supposition of a connected origin. We do not ourselves believe that the Hindus were ever sufficiently skilled in observation, or in the discussion of the results of observation, to be able to derive such data for themselves, or even intelligently to modify and improve them, when obtained from other sources. In order, however, fully to understand the relation of the Hindu to the Greek science in this part, we require to know, first, what were the positions assigned to the apsides and nodes by Greek astronomers prior to Ptolemy, and secondly, what were their actual positions at the periods in question. Upon the first point no information appears to have been handed down to our times; and as regards the other, we have not found any modern determination of the desired data, and are not ourselves at present in a situation to undertake so intricate and laborious a calculation.

12. p. 173. The era of the *kali yuga*, or Iron Age, is not in practical use among the Hindus of the present day: two others, of a less remote date, are ordinarily employed by them in the giving of dates. These are styled the eras of Çâlivâhana and of Vikramâditya respectively, from two sovereigns so named: their origin and historical significance are matters of much doubt and controversy. The years of the era of Çâlivâhana are, according to Warren (Kâla Sankalita, p. 381 and elsewhere), solar years: their reckoning commences after the lapse of 3179 complete years of the Iron Age, or early in April, A. D. 78: the 1782nd year, accordingly, coinciding with the 4961st of the Iron Age, commenced, as is shown by the table on p. 174, April 12th, 1859, and ended April 11th, 1860. The years of this era are generally cited as *çaka* or *çâka* years. In the other era, the luni-solar reckoning is followed (Warren, as above, p. 391 and elsewhere); and its first year began with the 3045th of the Iron Age, or early in 58 B. C.: its 1962nd year, coinciding with the 4961st of the remoter era, commenced (see table on p.

174) April 4th, 1859, and ended March 22nd, 1860. The years of this era are called and quoted as *samvatsara* years, or, by abbreviation, simply *samvat.*

13. p. 183. M. Vivien de St. Martin (in Julien's Mémoires de Hiouen-Thsang, ii. 258) supposes the value of the *li* in use in China during the seventh century to have been about 329 metres, or 1080 English feet. This would make the values of the three kinds of yojana mentioned by the Buddhist traveller to be $8\frac{1}{6}$, $6\frac{1}{8}$, and $3\frac{1}{3}$ English miles respectively.

14. p. 188. In the first table upon this page, we have, by an oversight, given the earth's heliocentric longitude, instead of the sun's geocentric longitude. To the sun's place as stated, accordingly, should be added 180°.

15. p. 196. M. Biot (Journal des Savants, 1859, p. 409) suggests that the Hindus, like Albategnius, obtained their sines directly from the chords of Hipparchus or Ptolemy. This may not be an altogether impossible supposition, but it is at least an unnecessary one, for they certainly had geometry enough, at the time of the elaboration of their astronomical system, to construct their table independently. Our notes have presented Delambre's view of the method of its construction and the reason of its limitation to arcs which are multiples of 3° 45′. We cannot but feel, however, upon maturer consideration, that the correctness of that view is very questionable; that the Hindus could probably have made out a more complete table if they had chosen to do so; and that a sufficient reason is found for their selection of the arc of 3° 45′ in the fact that it is a natural subdivision of a recognized unit, the arc of 30°, while the series of twenty-four sines was sufficiently full and accurate for their uses. We have been at the pains to calculate the complete series of Hindu sines from Ptolemy's table of chords, assuming the value of radius to be 3438′, in order to test the question whether there were any correspondence of errors between them which should prove the one to be derived from the other: our results are as follows. In five of the instances (the 14th, 15th, 19th, 22nd, and 23rd sines of the table) in which the value of the Hindu sine exceeds the truth, Ptolemy supports the error; in the other three cases (the 16th, 17th, and 18th sines), Ptolemy affords the correct value; to the 6th sine, also, which by the Hindus is made too small, Ptolemy's table gives its true value, but the next following sine he makes too great (namely 1520.59, which would give 1521, instead of 1520); this is his only independent error. The evidence yielded by the comparison may be regarded as not altogether unequivocal.

For the benefit of any who may desire to make practical use of the Hindu sines, in calculations conducted according to the processes of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, we give, upon the opposite page, a more detailed table of them than has been presented hitherto, with such sets of differences annexed as will enable the calculator readily to find the sine of any given arc, or the reverse, without resorting to the laborious proportions by which the text contemplates that they should in each case be determined. Such a table we have ourselves found highly useful, and even almost indispensable, in connection with our own calculations.

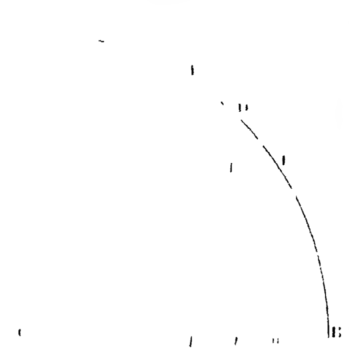
Table of Hindu Sines, with Differences.

Arc.	Sine.	Diff.	Arc.	Sine.	Diff.	Arc.	Sine.	Diff.
° '	'	' '	° '	'	' '	° '	'	' '
0	0		30	1719		60	2978	
1	60		31	1769 93	1 0.849 2 1.698 3 2.547 4 3.396 5 4.244	61	3006.27	1 0.471 2 0.942 3 1.413 4 1.884 5 2.356
2	120	1 1.000	32	1820.87		62	3034.58	
3	180		33	1871.80		63	3062.80	
3 45	225		33 45	1910		63 45	3084	
4	239.93	1 0.996 2 1 991 3 2 987 4 3.982 5 4.978	34	1922.20	1 0.813 2 1.627 3 2.440 4 3.253 5 4.067	64	3090.20	1 0.413 2 0.827 3 1.240 4 1.653 5 2.067
5	299.67		35	1971		65	3115	
6	359.40		36	2019.80		66	3139.80	
7	419.13		37	2068 60		67	3164.60	
7 30	449		37 30	2093		67 30	3177	
8	478.60	1 0.987 2 1.973 3 2 960 4 3 947 5 4 933	38	2116.20	1 0.773 2 1.547 3 2.320 4 3.093 5 3.867	68	3187.53	1 0.351 2 0.702 3 1.053 4 1.404 5 1.756
9	537.80		39	2162.60		69	3208.60	
10	597		40	2209		70	3229.67	
11	656.20		41	2255.40		71	3250.74	
11 15	671		41 15	2267		71 15	3256	
12	714.80	1 0.973 2 1 947 3 2 920 4 3 893 5 4.867	42	2299 80	1 0.729 2 1.458 3 2.187 4 2.916 5 3.644	72	3269	1 0.289 2 0.578 3 0 867 4 1.156 5 1.444
13	773.20		43	2343.52		73	3286.33	
14	831.60		44	2387.27		74	3303.67	
15	890		45	2431		75	3321	
16	947.33	1 0 956 2 1.911 3 2 867 4 3 822 5 4 778	46	2472 07	1 0 684 2 1.369 3 2.053 4 2.738 5 3.422	76	3334 60	1 0.227 2 0 453 3 0.680 4 0 907 5 1.133
17	1004.67		47	2513.14		77	3348.20	
18	1062		48	2554.21		78	3361.80	
18 45	1105		48 45	2585		78 45	3372	
19	1119	1 0.933 2 1.867 3 2.800 4 3.733 5 4.667	49	2594 53	1 0 636 2 1.271 3 1.907 4 2.542 5 3.178	79	3374 47	1 0.164 2 0.329 3 0.493 4 0.658 5 0 822
20	1175		50	2632.67		80	3384.33	
21	1231		51	2670.80		81	3394.20	
22	1287		52	2708.93		82	3404.07	
22 30	1315		52 30	2728		82 30	3409	
23	1342.33	1 0.911 2 1.822 3 2.733 4 3.644 5 4.556	53	2745 47	1 0.582 2 1.164 3 1.747 4 2.329 5 2 911	83	3411 93	1 0.098 2 0.196 3 0.293 4 0.391 5 0.489
24	1397		54	2780.40		84	3417 80	
25	1451 67		55	2815 33		85	3423.67	
26	1506.33		56	2850.27		86	3429 53	
26 15	1520		56 15	2859		86 15	3431	
27	1559.80	1 0.884 2 1.769 3 2.653 4 3.538 5 4.422	57	2882.80	1 0.529 2 1.058 3 1.587 4 2.116 5 2.644	87	3432.40	1 0.031 2 0.062 3 0.093 4 0.124 5 0.156
28	1612.87		58	2914.53		88	3434.27	
29	1665.94		59	2946.26		89	3436.13	
30	1719		60	2978		90	3438	

In explaining how the Hindus may have arrived at their empirical rule, as laid down in verses 15 and 16, for the development of the series of sines, we have also, as mentioned in our note, followed the guidance of Delambre. Prof. Newton, however, is of opinion that the rule in question was probably obtained by direct geometrical demonstration, in some such method as the following, which is much more in accordance with the mathematical processes exhibited or implied in other parts of the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

In the quadrant A B (Fig. 34), let B F, B D, and B E be three arcs, of which each exceeds its predecessor by the equal increment D F or D E; and let F m, D l, and E k be their sines, increasing by the unequal differences D h and E g. Now as E D and D F are small arcs (they are shown in the figure of three times the proportional length of the arcs of difference of the Hindu table), E D g and D F h may be regarded as plane triangles, and the angles made by C D at D as right angles: hence the angles E D g and C D l are equal, the triangles E D g and C D l are similar, and E D : E g : : C D : C l; or E g = E D.C l ÷ C D. In like manner, D h = E D.C m ÷ C D. Therefore D h − E g = E D.$l\,m$ ÷ C D; and E g, which is the amount by which E k exceeds D l, equals D h − (E D.$l\,m$ ÷ C D). But, by similarity of the triangles C D l and D F h, F h, or $l\,m$, equals E D.D l ÷ C D; and hence E D.$l\,m$ ÷ C D = (E D^2 ÷ C D^2) D l, or (E D ÷ C D)^2 D l. Now when E D equals 225′ and C D 3438′, E D ÷ C D = $\frac{1}{15}$ nearly (or exactly $\frac{1}{15.28}$), and (E D ÷ C D)^2 = $\frac{1}{225}$ nearly (more exactly, $\frac{1}{233.48}$). Hence E k = D l + D h − $\frac{1}{225}$ D l, which is equivalent to the Hindu rule.

Fig. 34.



When we wrote the note to the passage of the text relating to the sines, we assumed that the rule as there stated would give the series of sines, having found upon trial that it held good for the first few terms of the series. But, it having been pointed out to us by Prof. Newton that the adoption of $\frac{1}{15}$ as the value of E D ÷ C D could not but lead to palpably erroneous results, we carried our calculations farther, and found that only five of the sines following the first one can be deduced from it by the processes prescribed; that with the seventh sine begins a discordance between the table and the result of calculation by the rule, which goes on increasing to the end, where it amounts to as much as 70′ in the value obtained for radius.

This untoward circumstance, which may be regarded as a trait highly characteristic of a Hindu astronomical treatise, seems to us rather to favor the opinion that the rule is the result of construction and demonstration, and not empirically deduced from a consideration of the actual second differences. In the latter case we should more naturally suppose

that it would have been tested throughout by actual trial; while, if it had been arrived at in the manner above explained, an application of it to the first few members only of the series might more easily have been accepted as a sufficient test of its correctness.

16. p. 203. We are not sure that the name *bhuja* may not originally and properly belong rather to the arc than to its chord or sine. It comes from a root *bhuj*, "bend," and signifies primarily "a bend, curve," being applied also to designate the arm on account of the latter's suppleness or flexibility. The word *koṭi* also most frequently means "the end or horn of a bow." We might, then, look upon the relations of the arc (*dhanus*, *câpa*, *kârmuka*) and its parts and appurtenances as follows. The whole arc taken into account is (Fig. 2, p. 203) QRS: of this, BRC is the *bhuja*, curve or bow proper, while BQ and CS are its two *koṭis* or horns: BC is the chord or bow-string (*jyâ* etc.), or, more distinctively, the *bhujajyâ;* which name, by substitution for *jyârdha*, is also applied to either of its halves, BH or HC: BF or CL is in like manner the *koṭijyâ;* RH, finally, the versed sine, is the "arrow" (*çara*, *ishu*); by this name it is often known in other treatises, although not once so styled in this Siddhânta. If this view be correct, the terms *bhuja* and *koṭi* as applied to the base and perpendicular of a right-angled triangle, are given them on account of their relation to one another as sine and cosine, while the synonyms of *bhuja*, namely *bâhu* and *dos*, are employed on account only of their agreement with it in the signification "arm," and not in that which gives it its true application. For *koṭi* the treatise affords no synonyms.

17. p. 207. M. Delambre, in his History of Ancient Astronomy (i. 462 etc)., has subjected to a detailed examination the rules of the Sûrya-Siddhânta for the calculation of the equations of the centre for the sun and moon, has reduced them to a single formula, and has calculated for each degree of a quadrant the values of the equations, comparing them with those furnished by the Hindu tables, as reported by Davis (As. Res., ii. 255–256). M. Biot has more recently, in the Journal des Savants for 1859 (p. 384 etc.), taken up the same subject anew, especially pointing out, and illustrating by figures and calculations, the error of the Hindus in assuming the variation of the equation to be the same in all the four quadrants of mean revolution.

18. p. 220. Neither Delambre nor Biot (both as above cited), nor any other western savant who has treated of the Hindu astronomy, has found any means of accounting for the variation of dimensions of the planetary epicycles. In its present form and extent, indeed, it seems to defy explanation: we can only conjecture that it may be an unintelligent and reasonless extension to all the planets, and to both classes of epicycles, of a correction originally devised and applied only in one or two special cases. According to Colebrooke (As. Res., xii. 235 etc.; Essays, ii. 400 etc.), there is discordance among the different Hindu authorities upon this point. Âryabhaṭṭa agrees with the Sûrya-Siddhânta throughout; Brahmagupta and Bhâskara make the epicycles only of Venus and Mars variable; Muniçvara, in the Siddhânta-Sârvabhâuma, regards all the epicycles as invariable.

19. p. 236. Our suggestion of a possible derivation of the term *yoga* from the "sum" of the longitudes of the sun and moon is unquestionably erroneous. That term is to be understood here in the sense of "junction, conjunction," and the conception upon which is founded its application to the periods in question is that of a conjunction (*yoga*) of the moon with the twenty-seven asterisms (*nakshatra*) in their order, or her successive continuance in their respective portions. Only the system is divorced from any actual connection with the asterisms; for while the latter are stellar groups, having fixed positions in the heavens, they are here treated as if the twenty-seven-fold division of the ecliptic founded upon them had no natural limits, but was to be reckoned from the actual position of the sun at any given moment.

According to Warren (Kâla Sankalita, p. 74), the names of the twenty-seven yogas, as given by us on page 236, are also applied by the Hindus to the junction-stars (*yogatârâ*) of the asterisms (with the omission, of course, of Abhijit): for which see the notes to the eighth chapter. This fact we do not find noticed elsewhere; possibly the usage is a local one only.

Of the twenty-eight yogas of the other system, to which the Sûrya-Siddhânta makes no reference, the names are given by Colebrooke as follows:

1. Ânanda.	10. Mudgara.	19. Siddhi.
2. Kâladaṇḍa.	11. Chattra.	20. Çubha.
3. Dhûmra.	12. Mâitra.	21. Amrta.
4. Prajâpati.	13. Mânasa.	22. Musala.
5. Sâumya.	14. Padma.	23. Gada.
6. Dhvânksha.	15. Lambaka.	24. Mâtanga.
7. Dhvaja.	16. Utpâta.	25. Râkshasa.
8. Çrîvatsa.	17. Mrtyu.	26. Cara.
9 Vajra.	18. Kâṇa.	27. Sthira.
		28. Pravardha.

Colebrooke says farther: "The foregoing list is extracted from the Ratnamâlâ of Çrîpati. He adds the rule by which the yogas are regulated. On a Sunday, the nakshatras answer to the yogas in their natural order; viz. Açvinî to Ânanda, Bharaṇî to Kâladaṇḍa, etc. But, on a Monday, the first yoga (Ânanda) corresponds to Mrgaçiras, the second to Ârdrâ, and so forth. On a Tuesday, the nakshatra which answers to the first yoga is Âçleshâ; on Wednesday, Hasta; on Thursday, Anurâdhâ; on Friday, Uttara-Ashâḍhâ; and on Saturday, Çatabhishaj."

This is by no means a clear and sufficient explanation of the character and use of the system, yet we seem to see distinctly from it that this, no less than the other system, is cut off from any actual connection with the twenty-eight asterisms, since the succession of the yogas is made to depend upon the day of the week, while the week stands in no constant and definable relation to the motion of the moon.

20. p. 246. In stating that the Sûrya-Siddhânta furnished no hint of the precession excepting in this passage, we failed to notice that in one other place, namely in connection with the rules for finding the time

when the declinations of the sun and moon are equal (xi. 6), the precession is distinctly ordered to be calculated, and in terms which contain an evident reference to those in which the fact of the precession is here stated. The exception, however, is one which goes to prove, rather than overthrow, the general rule: the process in which we are for once favored with explicit directions upon the point in question is the one of all others in the work the most trivial, and the chapter which contains it furnishes, as pointed out by us in the notes, good reason to suspect late alterations and interpolations. We do not, then, regard the statement made in our note as requiring to be either retracted or seriously modified. Nor do we, although fully appreciating the difficulty of assuming that the original elaborators of the general Hindu system can have been ignorant of, or ignored, the precession, regret the force and distinctness with which we have stated the circumstances which appear to favor that assumption. Whether it be true or false, there is much in connection with the subject which is strange, and demands explanation: and that can only be satisfactorily given when there shall have been attained a more thorough comprehension of the early history and the varying forms of the science in India.

21. p. 258. The commentary frequently styles the sine of altitude *mahâçanku*, "great gnomon," to distinguish it from the *çanku*, "gnomon."

22. p. 275. Our statement that the Sûrya-Siddhânta employs only the term *graha* to designate the planets requires a slight modification. In one instance (ii. 69) they are called *khacârin*, and in one other (ix. 9) *khacara*, both words signifying "moving in the ether" (see xii. 23, 81).

23. p. 282. This use of the word *prâcî*, "east, east point," appears to be taken from the projections of eclipses, as directed to be drawn in the sixth chapter. Thus, in the figure there given (Fig. 27, p. 301), E M and *v* M represent the directions of the equator and ecliptic with reference to one another at the moment of first contact, and E and *v* are the east-points (*prâcî*) of those lines respectively: the arc E *v*, or the "interval of the two east-points," is the measure of the angle which the two lines make with one another at the given time.

24. p. 285. As promised above, we present here, by way of appendix to the fourth chapter of our translation and notes, a

Calculation, according to the Data and Methods of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, of the Lunar Eclipse of February 6th, 1860,

for the latitude and longitude of Washington.

Bailly, in his work on the Hindu astronomy (p. 355 etc.), presents several calculations of eclipses by Hindu methods, namely of the lunar eclipse of July 29th, 1730, of the lunar eclipse of June 17th, 1704, and of the solar eclipse of Nov. 29th, 1704. But, owing to his imperfect comprehension of the character and meaning of many of the processes, and owing to his incessant use of Hindu terms in the most barbarous transcriptions, without explanations, his intended illustrations are only with difficulty intelligible, and are exceedingly irksome to study. Davis,

in his first valuable article in the Asiatic Researches (ii. 273 etc.), has also furnished a calculation of a lunar eclipse, as made by native astronomers, comparing their results, obtained by several different methods, with the actual elements of the eclipse, as given by the Nautical Almanac. As it seemed desirable to give a like practical illustration of the Hindu methods of calculation, in connection with this fuller exposition of their foundation and meaning, and by way of an additional test of the accuracy of the results which the system is in condition to furnish, we have selected for the purpose the partial eclipse of the moon which occurred on the evening of Feb. 6th, 1860. Our calculations are made according to the elements of our text alone, without adding, like Davis, the correction of the *bîja*, since our object is to illustrate the text itself, and not the modern system as altered from it. The course of the successive steps of our processes may not everywhere strictly accord with that which would be pursued by a native astronomer, as we take the rules of the text and apply them according to our own conception of their connection.

We omit the preliminary tentative processes, and conceive ourselves to have ascertained that, at the time of full moon in the month Mâgha, I. A. 4961 (see page 174), or *samvat* 1917 (see add. note 12), the moon will be eclipsed.

I. To find the sum of days (*ahargaṇa, dinarâçi*) for mean midnight next preceding full moon.

The sixth day of February, 1860, being the day of full moon (*pûrṇimâ*), is the fifteenth day of the first, or light, half of the lunar month Mâgha, the eleventh month of the year, as is shown by the table on page 174. The time, then, for which we are to find the sum of days, is $4960^y\ 10^m\ 14^d$, reckoning (i. 56) only from the commencement of the Iron Age. For this period the sum of days, as found by the processes already sufficiently illustrated in the notes to i. 48–51, is 1,811,981 days.

II. To find the mean longitude of the sun and moon, and of the moon's apsis.

The proportions (i. 53)

$$1,577,917,828 : 1,811,981 :: \begin{cases} 4,320,000 : 4960^{rev}\ 9^s\ 23^\circ\ 17'\ 1'' \\ 57,753,336 : 66,320^{rev}\ 3^s\ 9^\circ\ 44'\ 19'' \\ 488,203 : 561^{rev}\ 1^s\ 13^\circ\ 43'\ 1'' \end{cases}$$

give us—rejecting whole revolutions, and deducting 3^s from the motion of the moon's apsis, for its position at the epoch (see note to i. 56–58)—the mean longitudes required. These are for the time of mean midnight at Ujjayinî: to find them for mean midnight at Washington, which is distant from Ujjayinî $1671^y.28$, upon a parallel of latitude $3936^y.75$ in circumference (note to i. 63–65), we add to the position of each $\frac{1671.28}{3936.75}$ or .42453 of its mean motion during a sidereal day. This correction is styled the *deçântaraphala*. We have, then,

	Long at Ujjay		Correction.		Long at Wash'n.
Sun,	$9^s\ 23^\circ\ 17'\ 1''$	+	$25'\ 2''$	=	$9^s\ 23^\circ\ 42'\ 3''$
Moon,	$3^s\ 9^\circ\ 44'\ 19'$	+	$5^\circ\ 34'\ 43''$	=	$3^s\ 15^\circ\ 19'\ 2''$
Moon's apsis,	$10^s\ 13^\circ\ 43'\ 1''$	+	$2'\ 50''$	=	$10^s\ 13^\circ\ 45'\ 51''$

The place of the sun's apsis remains as already found for Jan. 1st (note to ii. 39):

Longitude of sun's apsis,	2ˢ 17° 17′ 24″

In applying here the correction for difference of meridian, as well as in all other processes of the whole calculation into which the amounts of motion of the planets etc. during fractions of a day enter as elements, we have derived those amounts from the motions during a sidereal day, and not, as in the illustrative processes of our notes, during a mean solar day. The divisions of the day given in the text (i. 11–12) are distinctly stated to be those of sidereal time, and all the rules of the treatise are constructed accordingly (see, for instance, ii. 59). It is evident, then, that in making any proportion in which is involved the amount of motion during 60 nâḍîs, that amount is to be regarded as the motion during a sidereal day only. In overlooking in our notes the difference between the two, we have followed the example of all the illustrations of Hindu methods of calculation known to us. The difference is, indeed, in a Hindu process, of very small account; but we have preferred, in making this calculation, to follow what we conceive to be the exacter method. The mean motions during a sidereal day of the bodies concerned in a lunar eclipse are as follows:

Sun,	58′ 58″ 28‴ 55⁗
Moon,	13° 8′ 25″ 21‴ 21⁗
Moon's apsis,	6′ 39″ 53‴ 1⁗
Moon's node,	3′ 10″ 13‴ 28⁗

III. To find the true longitudes and motions of the sun and moon:

1. To find the sun's true longitude (note to ii. 39):

Longitude of sun's apsis,	2ˢ 17° 17′ 24″
deduct sun's mean longitude (ii. 29),	9ˢ 23° 42′ 3″
Sun's mean anomaly (*kendra*),	4ˢ 23° 35′ 21″
Arc determining the sine (*bhuja*—ii. 30),	36° 25′
Sine of sun's mean anomaly (*bhujajyâ*),	2040′
Corrected epicycle (ii. 38),	13° 48′
Equation (*bhujajyâphala*—ii. 39),	+ 1° 18′
add to sun's mean longitude,	9ˢ 23° 42′
Sun's true longitude,	9ˢ 25° 0′

2. To find the moon's true longitude (note to ii. 39):

Longitude of moon's apsis,	10ˢ 13° 45′ 51′
deduct moon's mean longitude,	3ˢ 15° 19′
Moon's mean anomaly,	6ˢ 28° 26′ 49″
Arc determining the sine,	28° 27′
Sine of moon's mean anomaly,	1637′
Corrected epicycle,	31° 50′
Equation,	− 2° 25′
deduct from moon's mean longitude,	3ˢ 15° 19′
Moon's true longitude,	3ˢ 12° 54′

3. To find the sun's true rate of motion (ii. 48–49):

Sun's mean motion in 60 nâḍîs,	58′ 58″
Sine of sun's mean anomaly,	2040′
Difference of sines,	183′
Daily increase of sine of anomaly,	47′ 58″
Equation of motion,	+ 1′ 50″
add to sun's mean motion,	58′ 58″
Sun's true motion,	60′ 48″

4. To find the moon's true rate of motion (ii. 47–49):

Moon's mean motion in 60 nâḍîs,	788′ 25″
deduct motion of apsis (ii. 47),	6′ 40″
Daily increase of moon's mean anomaly,	781′ 45″
Sine of moon's mean anomaly,	1637′
Difference of sines,	199′
Daily increase of sine of anomaly,	691′ 25″
Equation of motion,	+ 61′ 8″
add to moon's mean motion,	788′ 25″
Moon's true motion,	849′ 33″

IV. To find the interval between the given instant of midnight and the end of the half-month, or the moment of opposition in longitude of the sun and moon, which is the middle of the eclipse.

At the instant of mean midnight preceding full moon, we have found the true longitudes of the sun and moon, and their distance in longitude, to be as follows:

Sun's true longitude,	9ˢ 25° 0′
Moon's do.,	3ˢ 12° 54′
Distance in longitude,	6ˢ 12° 6′

Hence we see that the moon has still 12° 6′ to gain upon the sun. We have also found their true rates of motion, and the difference of those rates, to be as follows:

Moon's true motion,	849′ 33″
Sun's do,	60′ 48″
Moon's daily gain,	788′ 45″

Now we make the proportion: if the moon in 60 nâḍîs gains upon the sun 788′ 45″, in how many nâḍîs will she gain her present distance in longitude from the sun? or

788′ 45″ 60ⁿ : 726′ : 55ⁿ 13ᵛ 3ᵖ

It thus appears that the time of opposition is 55ⁿ 13ᵛ 3ᵖ after mean midnight of Feb. 5–6. This result, however, requires correction, for the moon's motion has become sensibly accelerated during so long an interval, and we find, upon calculation, that she is then 2′ past the point of opposition. A repetition of the same process shows that it is necessary to deduct 10ᵛ 3ᵖ from the time stated. Then, at 55ⁿ 3ᵛ after mean midnight, we have as follows:

Sun's mean longitude,	$9^s\ 24^\circ\ 36'$
Equation of place,	$+\quad 1^\circ\ 20'$
Sun's true longitude,	$9^s\ 25^\circ\ 56'$
Moon's mean longitude,	$3^s\ 27^\circ\ 22'$
Longitude of apsis,	$10^s\ 13^\circ\ 52'$
Equation of moon's place,	$-\ 1^\circ\ 26'$
Moon's true longitude,	$3^s\ 25^\circ\ 56'$

By the same process as before, the true motions of the two planets at the moment of opposition are found to be:

Sun's true motion,	$60'\ 48''$
Moon's do.	$854'\ 36''$

It would have been better to adopt, as the starting-point of our calculations, the mean midnight following, instead of that preceding, the opposition of the sun and moon, because in that case, the interval to the moment of opposition being so much less, it might have been found by a single process, not requiring farther correction. The same change would have enabled us to follow strictly the rule given in ii. 66 for finding the end of the lunar day; which rule we were obliged above to apply in a somewhat modified form, because a little more than one whole lunar day was found to intervene between the given midnight and the moment of opposition.

V. To determine the instant of local time corresponding to the middle of the eclipse.

What we have thus far found is the interval between mean midnight and the moment of opposition. But since Hindu time is practically reckoned from true sunrise to true sunrise, we have now, in order to determine at what time the eclipse will take place, to ascertain the interval between mean midnight and true sunrise.

In order to this, we require first to know the equation of time, or the difference between mean midnight and true or apparent midnight, which is the moment when the sun actually crosses the inferior meridian. As concerns this correction, we have deviated somewhat from the method contemplated by the text. It is there prescribed (ii. 46) that, so soon as the sun's equation of the centre has been determined, there should at once be calculated from it, and applied to the longitude of the two planets, a correction representing, in terms of their motion, the equation of time; so that the distance of the moment of opposition from mean midnight does not directly enter into account at all. We have preferred to follow the course we have taken, in order to bring out and illustrate more fully the utter inadequacy of the prescribed method of making allowance for the equation of time, to which we have already briefly referred in the note to ii. 46. The method in question is virtually as follows: the sun being found at the given midnight to be $1^\circ\ 18'$, or $78'$, in advance of his mean place, the equation of time may be ascertained by this proportion: as a whole circle is to a sidereal day, so is the sun's equation of place to the time by which his true transit will precede or follow his mean transit; or, in the present case,

$$21{,}600' : 60^n :: 78' : 0^n\ 13^v$$

which gives us 13 vinâḍîs, or $5\frac{1}{2}$ minutes, as the value of the equation. But this is assuming that the sun's motion takes place along the equator, instead of along the ecliptic, which is so grossly and palpably erroneous that we wonder how the Hindus could have tolerated a process which implied it. Their own methods furnish the means of making a vastly more correct determination of the equation in question. The mean longitude of the sun at the given midnight is—after adding to it the amount of the precession, as determined farther on—$10^s\ 14°\ 7'$: hence, if the sun were $10^s\ 14°\ 7'$ distant upon the equator from the vernal equinox, or if he had that amount of right ascension, mean and true midnight would coincide. But he is actually at $10^s\ 15°\ 25'$ of longitude. If, then, we ascertain what point on the equator will pass the meridian at the same time with that point of the ecliptic, its distance from the sun's mean place in right ascension will be the equation of time required. This may be accomplished as follows. The sun is in the eleventh sign, of which the equivalent in right ascension (iii. 42–45) is 1795^p: his distance from its commencement is $15°\ 25'$, or $925'$. Hence the proportion (ii. 46)

$$1800' : 1795^p :: 925' : 922^p$$

gives us 922^p as the ascensional equivalent of the part of the eleventh sign traversed by the sun (*bhuktâsavas*). Now add together the

Ascensional equivalents	of three quadrants,	$16,200^p$
do.	of the tenth sign,	$1,935^p$
do.	of the part of the eleventh sign traversed,	922^p
their sum is		$19,057^p$

which is equal to $10^s\ 17°\ 37'$; this, then, is the sun's true right ascension. The difference between it and his mean right ascension, $10^s\ 14°\ 7'$, is $3°\ 30'$, of which the equivalent in sidereal time is 210^p or 35^v, or 14 minutes. This, which is more than two and a half times as much as the value formerly found for the equation, is quite nearly correct; its actual amount for Feb. 6th being given by the Nautical Almanac as $14^m\ 20^s$.

There is not, among all the processes taught in the Sûrya-Siddhânta, another one of so inexcusably bungling a character as this, while the means lay so ready at hand for making it tolerably exact.

In going on to calculate the local time of the eclipse, we shall adopt the valuation of the equation of time given by the Hindu method, or 13^v, but we shall reserve the distance of the phases of the eclipse from midnight, free from this constant error of about 10^m, for final comparison with the like data given by our modern tables.

To find the local time, we must first ascertain (ii. 59) the length of the sun's day, from midnight to midnight, and in order to this we need to know in what sign the sun is. Hence we require

1. To determine the amount of precession for the given date.

By iii. 9–12, the proportion

$$1,577,917,828^d : 600^{rev} :: 1,811,981^d : 0^{rev}\ 8^s\ 8°\ 2'\ 14''.6$$

gives us $248°\ 2'\ 14''.6$ as the part of a revolution accomplished by the

movable point. Of this, the part determining the sine is 68° 2′ 14″.6. Then the farther proportion

10 : 3 : . 68° 2′ 14″.6 : 20° 24′ 44″

gives us 20° 24′ 44″ as the amount of the precession. Now, then, to the

Sun's true longitude,	9ˢ 25° 56′
add the precession,	20° 25′
Sun's distance from vernal equinox,	10ˢ 16° 21′

This quantity is often called *sâyana sûrya*; that is to say, "the sun's longitude with the precession (*ayana*) added."

The sun is accordingly in the eleventh sign, of which the ascensional equivalent is 1795ᵖ. His daily motion has been found to be 60′ 48″. Hence the proportion (ii. 59)

1800′ : 1795ᵖ : : 60′ 48″ : 60ᵖ.64

gives us 61ᵖ, or 10ᵛ 1ᵖ, as the excess of the sun's day over a true sidereal day of 60 nâḍîs: its length is accordingly 60ⁿ 10ᵛ 1ᵖ, or 21,661ᵖ.

Next we desire to know how much of this day passed between midnight and sunrise, and for this purpose we have

2. To find the sun's ascensional difference (*cara*).

a. To ascertain the sun's declination, and its sine and versed sine.

The sun's longitude, with precession added (*sâyana sûrya*),	10ˢ 16° 21′
Arc determining the sine (*bhuja*),	43° 39′
Sine,	2372′

Now, then, the proportion (ii. 28)

3438′ : 1397′ : 2372′ : 964′

gives us 964′ as the sine of declination (*krântijyâ*); the corresponding arc (ii. 33) is 16° 17′ S; its versed sine (ii. 31–32) is 139′.

b. To find the radius of the sun's diurnal circle (ii. 60).

From radius,	3438′
deduct versed sine of declination,	139′
Radius of diurnal circle (*dinavyâsadala, dyujyâ*),	3299′

c. To find the earth-sine (ii. 61).

The measure of the equinoctial shadow at Washington is (see note to ii. 61–63) 9ᵈ.68. The proportion, then,

12ᵈ : 9ᵈ.68 : . 964′ : : 778′

shows the value of the earth-sine (*kshitijyâ, kujyâ*) to be 778′.

d. To find the sun's ascensional difference (ii. 61–62).

The proportion

3299′ : 3438′ : 778′ : 811′

gives the sine of ascensional difference (*carajyâ*), which is 811′. The corresponding arc, or the sun's ascensional difference (*cara, caradala*), is 13° 39′, or 819ᵖ.

3. To find the time from midnight to sunrise.

The sun's declination being south, the ascensional difference is to be added (ii. 62–63) to the quarter of the sun's complete day, to give the length of the half-night. That is to say,

Quarter of sun's complete day (21,661p ÷ 4),	5,415p
Sun's ascensional difference,	819p
Sun's half-night,	6,234p

The interval between true midnight and true sunrise is therefore 6,234p, or $17^n\ 19^v$. That from sunrise till noon (a quantity required in later processes) is found in like manner by subtracting the ascensional difference from the quarter-day: it is 4596p.

Now then, finally,

Time of opposition, reckoned from mean midnight,		$55^n\ 3^v$
	deduct equation of time,	13^v
do.	reckoned from true midnight,	$54^n\ 50^v$
	deduct interval till sunrise,	$17^n\ 19^v$
do.	reckoned from sunrise,	$37^n\ 31^v$

The time at which the opposition of the sun and moon in longitude takes place, or the middle of the eclipse, is accordingly, by civil reckoning at Washington, $37^n\ 31^v$.

VI. To determine the diameters of the sun, moon, and shadow.

1. To find the sun's apparent diameter.

The sun's mean motion in a sidereal day being 58′ 58″, his true motion at the time of the eclipse being 60′ 48″, and his mean diameter 6500 yojanas, we find, by the proportion (iv. 2)

58′ 58″ : 60′ 48″ : : 6500y : 6702y.81

that the sun covers of his mean orbit, at the time of the eclipse, 6702.81 yojanas. This is reduced to its value upon the moon's mean orbit by the proportion (iv. 2)

57,753,336 : 4,320,000 : : 6702y.81 : 501y.37

And upon dividing the result, 501.37 yojanas, by 15 (iv. 3), we find the sun's apparent diameter to be 33′ 25″.

2. To find the moon's apparent diameter.

In like manner as before, the proportion (iv. 2)

788′ 25″ : 854′ 36″ : : 480y : 520y.3

shows us that the moon's corrected diameter is 520.3 yojanas. This also, divided by 15 (iv. 3), gives the value of the moon's apparent diameter in arc: it is 34′ 41″.

3. To find the diameter of the earth's shadow.

The following proportion (iv. 4),

788′ 25″ : 854′ 36″ : : 1600y : 1734y.3

determines the value of the earth's corrected diameter (*sûct*) to be 1734.3 yojanas.

Again, from the

Sun's corrected diameter,	6702y.81
deduct the earth's diameter (iv. 4),	1600
remains	5102y.81

and this remainder, when reduced by the following proportion (iv. 5),

6500y : 480y : : 5102y.81 : 376y.8

gives us the excess of the earth's corrected diameter (*sûci*) over the diameter of the shadow on the moon's mean orbit. Hence, from the

Earth's corrected diameter,	1734y.3
deduct last result,	376y.8
Diameter of shadow,	1357y.5
divide by	15
Diameter of shadow in arc,	90′ 30″

VII. To determine the moon's latitude at the middle of the eclipse, and the amount of greatest obscuration.

The proportion (i. 53)

1,577,917,828 : 232,238 : : 1,811,981 : 266rev 8s 7° 28′ 25″

gives us the amount of retrograde motion of the moon's node since the commencement of the Iron Age. Deducting from this 6s, for the position of the node at that time (note to i. 56–58), and taking the complement to a whole circle, we have

Longitude of moon's node, mean midnight, at Ujj.,	9s 22° 31′ 35″
deduct for difference of meridian,	1′ 21″
Longitude of moon's node, mean midnight, at Wash'n,	9s 22° 30′ 14″
deduct motion during 55n 3v,	2′ 55″
Longitude of moon's node at moment of opposition,	9s 22° 27′ 19″
subtract from moon's longitude (ii. 57),	3s 25° 56′
Moon's distance from node,	6s 3° 29′
Arc determining the sine (*bhuja*),	3° 29′
Sine,	209′

Hence the proportion

3438′ : 270′ : : 209′ : 16′ 25″

gives us, as the moon's latitude at the moment of opposition, 16′ 25″ S.

Now, then, by iv. 10–11,

Semi-diameter of eclipsed body (34′ 41″ ÷ 2),	17′ 22″
do. of eclipsing body (90′ 30″ ÷ 2),	45′ 15″
their sum,	62′ 37″
deduct moon's latitude,	16′ 25″
Amount of greatest obscuration (*grâsa*),	46′ 12″

and since this amount is greater than the diameter of the eclipsed body, it is evident that the eclipse is a total one.

This is a most unfortunate result for the Hindu calculation to yield; for, in point of fact, the eclipse in question is only a partial one, obscuring about four-fifths of the diameter of the moon's disk. The source of the error lies mainly in the misplacement, relatively to the sun and moon, of the moon's node, and the consequent false value found for the moon's latitude. The latter quantity actually amounts, at the time of opposition, to 35′ 42″, or more than twice the value given it by the Hindu processes. And it will be seen, on referring to the table on p. 188, that the relative error in the place of the moon's node, having been accumulating for seven centuries, is now about 3½°, and so reduces, by more than half, the true distance of the moon from her node. We have tried whether the admission of the correction of the *bîja* would better the result, but that is not the case: the error of position is still (see the table) nearly 2°, and the moon's latitude is increased only to 24′ 11″, so that the eclipse still appears to be total. It is evidently high time that a new correction of *bîja* be applied by the Hindu astronomers to their elements, at least to such as enter into the calculation of eclipses.

VIII. To find the duration of the eclipse, and of total obscuration, and the times of contact, immersion, emergence, and separation.

Diameter of the eclipsing body, the shadow,	90′ 30″	90′ 30″
do. eclipsed body, the moon,	34′ 41″	34′ 41″
Sum and difference,	125′ 11″	55′ 49″
Half-sum and half-difference (C M and C N, Fig. 21, p. 277),	62′ 35″	27′ 55″
Squares of do.,	3919′	724′
deduct square of latitude,	269′	269′
remain,	3650′	455′
Square roots of remainders (C A and C B),	60′ 25″	21′ 19″

In order to reduce these quantities to time, we need first to ascertain the difference of the true daily motions of the sun and moon at the given moment:

Moon's true daily motion,	854′ 36″
Sun's do,	60′ 48″
Moon's gain in a day,	793′ 48″

Hence the proportions (iv. 13)

$$793' \, 48'' : 60^{n} :: \begin{cases} 60' \, 25'' : 4^{n} \, 34^{v} \\ 21' \, 19'' : 1^{n} \, 36^{v} \, 4^{p} \end{cases}$$

give us the half-duration of the eclipse as $4^{n}\,34^{v}$, and the half-time of total obscuration as $1^{n}\,36^{v}\,4^{p}$, supposing the moon's latitude to remain constant through the whole continuance of the eclipse. We now proceed to correct these results for the moon's motion in latitude. And first, as regards the half-duration. We calculate the amount of motion of the moon and of her node during the mean half-duration by the following proportions (iv. 14):

$$60^{n} : 854' \, 36'' :: 4^{n} \, 34^{v} : 1^{\circ} \, 5' \, 2''$$
$$60^{n} : 3' \, 10'' :: 4^{n} \, 34^{v} : 14''$$

Farther,

To and from moon's long. at opposition,	$3^s\ 25^\circ\ 56'$	$3^s\ 25^\circ\ 56'$
add and subtract motion during half-duration,	$1^\circ\ 5'$	$1^\circ\ 5'$
Moon's long. at end and beginning of eclipse,	$3^s\ 27^\circ\ 1'$	$3^s\ 24^\circ\ 51'$
From and to long. of node at opposition,	$9^s\ 22^\circ\ 27'\ 21''$	$9^s\ 22^\circ\ 27'\ 21''$
subtract and add motion during half-duration,	$14''$	$14''$
Long. of node at end and beginning of eclipse,	$9^s\ 22^\circ\ 27'$	$9^s\ 22^\circ\ 28'$
Moon's distance from node,	$6^s\ 4^\circ\ 34'$	$6^s\ 2^\circ\ 23'$
Arc determining sine,	$4^\circ\ 34'$	$2^\circ\ 23'$
Sine,	$274'$	$143'$
Moon's latitude at end and beginning of eclipse,	$21'\ 31''$S.	$11'\ 14''$S.

From these valuations of the latitude we now proceed to calculate anew, in the same manner as before, the half-durations, as follows:

Square of half-sum of diameters,	$3919'$	$3919'$
deduct squares of latitude,	$463'$	$126'$
remain,	$3456'$	$3793'$
Square roots of remainders,	$58'\ 47''$	$61'\ 35''$

And the proportions

$$793'\ 48'' : 60^n :: \left\{\begin{array}{l} 58'\ 47'' : 4^n\ 26^v\ 3^p \\ 61'\ 35'' : 4^n\ 39^v\ 2^p \end{array}\right.$$

give us the corrected values of the intervals between opposition and contact and separation respectively, or the former and latter half-durations; as $4^n\ 39^v\ 2^p$ and $4^n\ 26^v\ 3^p$.

The text contemplates the repetition of this corrective process, if still greater accuracy be required in the results attained: we have not thought it worth while to carry the calculation any farther, as a second correction would be of altogether insignificant amount.

By a like process, the former and latter half-times of total obscuration, and the moon's latitude at immersion and emergence, are found to be as follows:

Moon's latitude at immersion and emergence,	$14'\ 36''$	$18'\ 13''$
Half-times of total obscuration,	$1^n\ 42^v\ 3^p$	$1^n\ 29^v\ 4^p$

By adding the two halves we obtain

Duration of the eclipse (*sthiti*),	$9^n\ 5^v\ 5^p$
do. of total obscuration (*vimarda*),	$3^n\ 12^v\ 1^p$

And by subtracting and adding the half-times of duration and of total obscuration from and to the time of opposition (iv. 16–17), we obtain the following scheme for the successive phases of the eclipse:

Phase.	Time of occurrence: after mean midnight.	after sunrise.
First contact,	$50^n\ 23^v\ 4^p$	$32^n\ 51^v\ 4^p$
Immersion,	$53^n\ 20^v\ 3^p$	$35^n\ 48^v\ 3^p$
Middle of eclipse,	$55^n\ 3^v\ 0^p$	$37^n\ 31^v\ 0^p$
Emergence,	$56^n\ 32^v\ 4^p$	$39^n\ 0^v\ 4^p$
Last contact,	$59^n\ 29^v\ 3^p$	$41^n\ 57^v\ 3^p$

The proper calculation of the eclipse is now completed. If, however, we desire to project it, we have still to determine the *valana*, or deflection of the ecliptic from an east and west line, for its different phases, as also the scale of projection. We will therefore proceed to calculate them, deferring to the end of the whole process any comparison of the results we have obtained with those given by modern astronomical science.

IX. To calculate the deflection of the ecliptic from an east and west line (*valana*) for the middle, beginning, and end of the eclipse.

1. For the middle of the eclipse.

a. To find the length of the moon's day and night respectively at the given time.

Moon's longitude at opposition,	$3^s\ 25^\circ\ 56'$
Precession,	$20^\circ\ 25'$
Moon's distance from vernal equinox,	$4^s\ 16^\circ\ 21'$
Arc determining sine,	$43^\circ\ 39'$
Sine,	$2372'$

The moon's declination is then found by the following proportion (ii. 28):

$$3438' : 1397' :: 2372' : 964' = \sin 16^\circ\ 17'$$

Now, from

Moon's declination	$16^\circ\ 17'$ N.
deduct her latitude (ii. 58),	$16'$ S.
Moon's true declination,	$16^\circ\ 1'$ N.
Sine of do.,	$948'$
Versed sine of do.,	$135'$
deduct from radius (ii. 60),	$3438'$
Moon's day-radius,	$3303'$

Again, to find the earth-sine, we say (ii. 61),

$$12^d : 9^d.68 :: 948' : 765' = \text{earth-sine}.$$

and to find the ascensional difference (ii. 61–62),

$$3303' : 3438' :: 765' : 796' = \sin 13^\circ\ 24' \text{ or } 804'.$$

The excess of the moon's complete revolution over a sidereal day is found by the proportion (ii. 59)

$$1800' : 1795^p :: 849'\ 33'' : 848^p$$

Adding this to a sidereal day, or 21,600p, we find that the moon's day is of 22,448p, of which one quarter is 5612p. Increase and diminish this by the moon's ascensional difference (ii. 62), and the half-day and half-night are found to be 6416p and 4808p respectively.

All this laborious process of ascertaining the length of the moon's half-day, or the time which, with the given declination, she would occupy in rising from the horizon to the meridian, is rendered necessary by the correction which the commentary applies to the rule of the text in which the moon's hour-angle is involved, as pointed out in the note to iv. 24–25 (p. 284, above). We now proceed

b. To find the hour-angle, and the corrected hour-angle.

At the moment of opposition, the moon's hour-angle is evidently the same with that of the sun. Hence it may be found as follows:

Time of opposition reckoned from sunrise, $37^n\ 31^v$, or	13,506p
deduct the whole day,	9,192p
remains	4,314p
deduct from the half-night,	6,235p
Sun's distance in time from inferior meridian,	1,921p

The moon's distance eastward from the upper meridian is accordingly 1921p. This is corrected, or reduced to its proportional value as a part of the moon's arc of revolution from the horizon to the meridian, by the following proportion:

$$6416^p : 90^\circ :: 1921^p : 26^\circ\ 57'$$

The moon's corrected hour-angle, then, is 26° 57′ : its sine is 1557′.

c. To determine the amount of deflection for latitude (*valanânçâs*, or *âksha valana*—iv. 24).

The sine of the latitude of Washington, 38° 54′, is 2158′. Hence the proportion

$$3438' : 1557' :: 2158' \quad 977' = \sin 16^\circ\ 31'$$

gives us 16° 31′ as the value of the quantity sought. The moon being in the eastern hemisphere, it is to be reckoned as north in direction.

d. To determine the amount of deflection for ecliptic-deviation (*âyana valana*—iv. 25).

Moon's distance from vernal equinox,	$4^s\ 16^\circ\ 21'$
add a quadrant,	3^s
their sum,	$7^s\ 16^\circ\ 21'$
arc determining sine,	$46^\circ\ 21'$
sine,	$2486'$

Hence, by ii. 28, the proportion

$$3438' \cdot 1397' \cdot . \ 2486' : 1010' = \sin 17^\circ\ 6'$$

gives us 17° 6′ as the amount of declination of the point of the ecliptic which is a quadrant in advance of the moon, and this is the deflection required. Its direction is south. We are now ready for the final process.

e. To ascertain the net amount of deflection (*valana*), in digits.

From the ecliptic-deflection,	17° 6′ S.
deduct the deflection for latitude,	16° 31′ N.
remains the net deflection, in arc,	35′ S.
divide (iv. 25) by	70
Deflection in digits,	$0^d\ 50$ S.

It thus appears that, at the moment of opposition, the part of the ecliptic in which the moon is situated very nearly coincides in direction with an east and west circle. The amount of deflection is so small that

in our projection, given in connection with the sixth chapter, we were obliged to exaggerate it somewhat, in order to make it perceptible.

2. For the beginning of the eclipse.

As, owing to the moon's motion in latitude and longitude, her declination, and so also her ascensional difference, are not precisely the same at the beginning and end of the eclipse as at the moment of opposition, we ought in strictness to repeat the first part of the preceding calculation, determining anew the length of the moon's half-day, as it would be if she made her whole revolution about the earth with those declinations respectively. This we take the liberty of omitting to do, as the modification thus introduced into the process would be of very small importance.

a. To find the moon's corrected hour-angle.

And first, for the sun's hour-angle:

Time of first contact, reckoned from sunrise, $32^n\ 51^v\ 4^p$, or	$11,830^p$
deduct the whole day,	$9,192^p$
remain	$2,638^p$
deduct from the half-night,	$6,235^p$
Sun's distance in time from inferior meridian,	$3,597^p$

This, then, is the hour-angle of the centre of the shadow at the time of contact. The distance of the centre of the moon in longitude from that of the shadow was found above (under VIII) to be 61′ 35″. This is reduced to its value in right ascension by the proportion

$$1800' . 1795^p :: 61' 35'' : 61^p.4$$

Now, then,

from the hour-angle of the shadow,	$3,597^p$
deduct the difference of the moon's right ascension,	61^p
Moon's hour-angle at beginning of eclipse,	$3,536^p$

This is virtually an application of the process taught in iii. 50.

The moon's hour-angle is now corrected, as before, by the proportion

$$6416^p . 90° :: 3536^p . 49° 36'$$

The sine of 49° 36′ is 2617′.

b. To find the deflection for latitude.

The proportion

$$3438' : 2158' :: 2617' : 1643' = \sin 28° 34'$$

gives us the deflection for latitude as 28° 34′, which is north, as before.

c. To find the ecliptic-deflection.

Moon's distance from vernal equinox at opposition,	$4^s\ 16°\ 21'$
deduct motion during $4^n\ 39^v\ 2^p$,	$1°\ 6'$
do. at time of contact,	$4^s\ 15°\ 15'$
add a quadrant,	3^s
sum,	$7^s\ 15°\ 15'$
arc determining sine,	$45°\ 15'$
sine,	$2441'$

Next, the proportion

$$3438' : 1397' :: 2441' : 992' = \sin 16° \; 47'$$

shows us that the ecliptic-deflection is 16° 47′; it is, as in the former case, south.

d. To find the deflection, in digits.

From the deflection for latitude,	28° 34′ N.
deduct the ecliptic-deflection,	16° 47′ S.
remains the net deflection, in arc,	11° 47′ N.
its sine is	702′
divide by	70
Deflection, in digits,	$10^d.03$ N.

3. For the end of the eclipse.

Of this process, which is throughout closely analogous to the last, we shall present only a brief statement of the results.

Hour-angle of the centre of the shadow,	322^p E.
Distance of the centre of the moon in right ascension,	59^p E.
Moon's hour angle,	381^p E.
do. corrected,	5° 20′
Sine,	320′
Deflection for latitude,	3° 21′ N.
Moon's distance from vernal equinox + 3^s,	7^s 17° 24′
Arc determining sine,	47° 24′
Sine,	2530′
Ecliptic-deflection,	17° 24′ S.
Net deflection, in arc,	14° 3′ S.
do. in digits,	$11^d.93$ S.

The mode of application of these quantities in making a projection of an eclipse is sufficiently explained in the notes to the sixth chapter, and illustrated by the figure there given, which is adapted to the conditions of the eclipse here calculated. All the quantities entering into the projection, however, of which the value has been stated in minutes, require also to be reduced to digits, according to a scale determined by the following process.

X. To determine the scale of projection of the disks and latitudes (iv. 26).

This process we will perform only for the moment of opposition, or for the middle of the eclipse. At this time, as has been seen above, we have

Moon's half-day,	6416^p
do. hour-angle (*nata*),	1921^p
do. altitude in time (*unnata*),	4495^p
add $6416^p \times 3$	$19,248^p$
the sum is	$23,743^p$
divide by	$6,416^p$
the quotient is	3.7

At the elevation, then, which the moon has when in opposition, 3′.7 make a digit, and by this amount the values of the disk of the moon, the shadow, and the latitudes, are to be divided, in order to reduce them to a scale upon which they may be plotted. It is evident that, in strictness, the same calculation requires to be made also for the time of contact and the time of separation, or the time of any other phase of which the projection is to serve as an illustration: but it is evident also that this is wellnigh impracticable, since one projection could then be used to illustrate only a single phase, unless several different scales should be employed in the same figure.

It now only remains for us to present a comparison of the elements of the eclipse, as thus calculated, with their true values as determined by modern astronomical science. This is done in the annexed table. The true elements we take from the American Nautical Almanac for 1860. In comparing the time of the middle of the eclipse, we take, as already mentioned, the value of it given by the Hindu process as calculated from mean midnight.

	Sûrya-Siddhânta.	Am. Naut. Almanac.	Hindu error.
Time of opposition in long.,	$9^h\ 57^m\ 35^s$ P. M.	$9^h\ 27^m\ 10^s.8$ P. M.	+ $30^m\ 24^s$
Moon's long. at opposition,	136° 21′	137° 35′ 53″.7	– 1° 15′
" lat. at "	16′ 25″ S.	35′ 42″.1 S.	– 19′ 17″
" hourly motion in long.,	35′ 37″	38′ 0″.6	– 2′ 24″
Semi diameter of sun,	16′ 42″	16′ 15″.2	+ 27″
do. of moon,	17′ 20″	16′ 42″.6	+ 37″
do. of shadow,	45′ 15″	45′ 16″	– 1″
Amount of obscuration,	1.33	0.812	+ 0.518
Whole duration of eclipse,	$3^h\ 37^m\ 44^s$	$2^h\ 52^m\ 24^s$	+ $45^m\ 20^s$

25. p. 299. Our next note is a

Calculation, according to Hindu Data and Methods, of the Solar Eclipse of May 26th, 1854,

for the latitude and longitude of Williams' College, Williamstown, Mass.

As has been already mentioned in the closing note to the fifth chapter, the following calculation of a solar eclipse was mainly made for the translator, while in India, by his native assistant. Some additional calculations have been appended here by us, in order to render the whole process a more complete illustration of the rules as given in the text of our treatise; and we have also had to reject and replace certain parts of the work actually done, on account of their inaccuracy. For the most part, we present the work as it was made, although involving some repetitions which might be regarded as superfluous, after the explanations and illustrations already given in the notes and in the preceding calculation of a lunar eclipse. The eclipse selected is the one calculated and delineated in Prof. James H. Coffin's useful work, entitled "Solar and Lunar Eclipses familiarly illustrated and explained, with the method of calculating them, according to the theory of Astronomy as taught in New-England Colleges" (New York, 1845).

I. To find the sum of days (*ahargaṇa*) from the commencement of the planetary motions to the time of calculation.

The eclipse in question occurs at the close of the month Vâiçâkha, the second month of the luni-solar year, in the 1777th year of the era of Çâlivâhana (see add. note 12). To compute, then, the number of whole years, and to reduce them, with the remaining part of a year, to mean solar days, we proceed as follows:

Sandhi at the beginning of the *kalpa*,	1,728,000
Six *manvantaras*,	1,850 688 000
Twenty-seven *mahâyugas* of the seventh Manu,	116,640,000
	1,969 056 000
deduct the time spent in creation,	17,064,000
From creation to beginning of 28th *mahâyuga*,	1,951 992,000
Kṛta yuga of 28th or current *mahâyuga*,	1,728,000
Tretâ yuga of "	1,296,000
Dvapara yuga of "	864,000
Kali yuga, to era of Çâlivâhana,	3,179
Complete years elapsed of the era,	1,776
From the creation to end of March, 1854, complete years,	1,955,884,955
to reduce to solar months, multiply by	12
Solar months,	23,470,619,460
add month of current year elapsed,	1
Whole number of solar months,	23,470,619,461

Now, to find the intercalary months, we make the proportion

51,840,000 . 1,593,336 :: 23,470,619,461 : 721,384,701

Then, to

Solar months elapsed,	23,470,619,461
add intercalary months,	721,384,701
Lunar months elapsed,	24,192,004,162
to reduce to lunar days, multiply by	30
Lunar days,	725,760,124,860
add for current month,	29
Whole number of lunar days,	725,760,124,889

Farther, to find the number of *tithikshayas*, or omitted lunar days, in this period, we say

1,603,000,080 : 25,082,252 :: 725,760,124,889 : 11,356,018,362

Next, from

Lunar days elapsed,	725,760,124,889
deduct omitted lunar days,	11,356,018,362
Mean solar days elapsed,	714,404,106,527

This, then, is the required *ahargaṇa*, or sum of days from the commencement of the planetary motions to about the time of new moon, May, 1854. The processes by which it is found are in all respects the

same with those illustrated by us in the notes to i. 21–23, 24, 48, 48–51, above. It will be noticed that the Hindu astronomer, at least when working out an illustrative process, like the one in hand, scorns to make use of any of the means for reducing the labor of computation which the text directly or impliedly permits, and of which, in our own calculations, we have been glad to avail ourselves.

II. To ascertain the mean longitudes of the sun, the moon, the sun's apsis, the moon's apsis, and the moon's node, for mean midnight on the Hindu meridian, at the given interval from the creation.

The amount of motion, since the creation, of the bodies named, in their order, is found by the following series of proportions:

1,577,917,828 :	714,404,106,527 ::	4,320,000 :	$1,955,884,955^{rev}$	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 14'\ 14''$
1,577,917,828 :	714,404,106,527 ::	57,753,336 :	$26,147,889,118^{rev}$	$1^s\ 9^\circ\ 44'\ 29''$
1,577,917,828,000 :	714,404,106,527 ::	387 :	175^{rev}	$2^s\ 17^\circ\ 17'\ 23''$
1,577,917,828 :	714,404,106,527 ::	488,203 :	$22,134,467^{rev}$	$2^s\ 21^\circ\ 56'\ 9''$
1,577,917,828 :	714,404 106,527 .:	232,238 :	$105,146,020^{rev}$	$10^s\ 17^\circ\ 11'\ 50''$

Rejecting whole revolutions, and, in the case of the moon's node, subtracting the fraction from a whole revolution, we have, as the mean longitudes required:

Sun,	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 14'\ 14''$
Moon,	$1^s\ 9^\circ\ 44'\ 29''$
Sun's apogee,	$2^s\ 17^\circ\ 17'\ 23''$
Moon's apogee,	$2^s\ 21^\circ\ 56'\ 9''$
Moon's node,	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 48'\ 10''$

The Hindu calculator has taken, in the case of the moon's apsis and node, the numbers of revolutions given by the text, omitting the correction of the *bîja*. We have not, in order to test the accuracy of his arithmetical operations, worked over again the proportions, excepting in two instances, the first and last: our results differ but slightly from those above given (we find the seconds of the sun's place to be 40″, and the minutes and seconds of the node's motion to be 12′ 43″)—not enough to render any modification necessary.

III. To ascertain the values of the same quantities at mean sunrise on the equator, or 6 o'clock.

In order to this, we must add to each planet's longitude one fourth the amount of its mean motion in a day. We require, then, the mean daily motions. They are found as follows, taking the sun as an example:

$$1,577,917,828^d : 4,320,000^{rev} :: 1^d : 59'\ 8''\ 10'''\ 10''''.4$$

We omit the other proportions and their results, as the latter have been fully stated in the table of mean motions of the planets (note to i. 29–34). Adding a quarter of the daily motion, we have as follows:

	Long. at midnight.		Correction.		Long at sunrise
Sun,	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 14'\ 14''$	+	$14'\ 47''$	=	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 29'\ 1''$
Moon,	$1^s\ 9^\circ\ 44'\ 29''$	+	$3^\circ\ 17'\ 39''$	=	$1^s\ 13^\circ\ 2'\ 8''$
Sun's apogee,	$2^s\ 17^\circ\ 17'\ 23''$	+	0	=	$2^s\ 17^\circ\ 17'\ 23''$
Moon's apogee,	$2^s\ 21^\circ\ 56'\ 9''$	+	$1'\ 40''$	=	$2^s\ 21^\circ\ 57'\ 49''$
Moon's node,	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 48'\ 10''$	−	$48''$	=	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 47'\ 22''$

IV. To ascertain the values of the same quantities at mean sunrise upon the equator, on the meridian of the given place.

Adopting 75° 50′ as the longitude of the Hindu meridian east from Greenwich, we have, as the interval in longitude of Williams' College from it, 149° 2′ 30″, which is equal to 24^{n} 50^{v} 2^{p}. The latitude is 42° 42′ 51″. We have, then, first, to determine the distance of the place in question, upon its own parallel of latitude, from the Hindu meridian.

The equatorial circumference of the earth has been found above (note to i. 59–60) to be 5059.64 yojanas. Its circumference upon the parallel of latitude of Williams' College is found (i. 60) by the following proportion:

3438′ (=R) · 2525′ (= cos 42° 42′ 51″) : 5059y 64 : 3715y.97

The *deçântara*, or difference of longitude in yojanas, is then determined thus:

60n : 24n 50v 2p :. 3715y.97 : 1538y.41

And the *deçântaraphala*, or correction for difference of longitude, is calculated from the daily motion of each body, by such a proportion as the one subjoined, which gives the sun's correction:

3715y 97 : 1538y.41 :: 59′ 8″ : 24′ 27″

We omit the other proportions, and merely present their results in the following table:

	Sunrise at Lankâ.		Correction.		Sunrise on giv. merid.
Sun,	1s 12° 29′ 1″	+	24′ 27″	=	1s 12° 53′ 28″
Moon,	1s 13° 2′ 8″	+	5 27 12	=	1s 18° 29′ 20″
Sun's apogee,	2s 17° 17′ 23″	+	0	=	2s 17° 17′ 23″
Moon's apogee,	2s 21° 57′ 49″	+	2′ 45″	=	2s 22° 0′ 34″
Moon's node,	1s 12° 47′ 22″	−	1′ 19″	=	1s 12° 46′ 3″

We have already (note to i. 63–65) called attention to the excessively awkward and cumbrous character of this process for making the correction for difference of meridian.

V. To find the sun's true longitude.

From the longitude of the sun's apsis,	2s 17° 17′ 23″
deduct sun's mean longitude (ii. 29),	1s 12° 53′ 28″
Sun's mean anomaly,	1s 4° 23′ 55″
Sine,	1927′

The diminution of the sun's epicycle is now found by the following proportion (ii. 38):

3438′ : 20′ :: 1927′ : 11′ 12″

The dimensions of the epicycle are, then (ii. 34), 14° − 11′ 12″, or 13° 48′ 48″. Next, the proportion (ii. 39)

360° : 13° 48′ 48″ :: 1927′ : 74′ 11″

gives us the sun's equation of the centre, which, by ii. 45, is additive. Hence to the

Sun's mean longitude,	1s 12° 53′ 28″
add the equation,	1° 14′ 11″
Sun's true longitude,	1s 14° 7′ 39″

This calculation exhibits a rather serious error: the sine of 34° 24′, the anomaly, is 1942′, not 1927′. The final result, however, is not perceptibly modified by it: the equation ought to be 1° 14′ 30″, and the true longitude 1ˢ 14° 7′ 58″.

VI. To find the moon's true longitude.

From the longitude of the moon's apsis,	2ˢ 22° 0′ 34″
deduct moon's mean longitude,	1ˢ 18° 29′ 20″
Moon's mean anomaly,	1ˢ 3° 31′ 14″
Sine,	1898′
Diminution of epicycle,	11′ 2″
Dimensions of epicycle,	31° 48′ 58″
Equation of the centre,	+ 2° 47′

Hence, to the

Moon's mean longitude,	1ˢ 18° 29′ 20″
add the equation,	2° 47′
Moon's true longitude,	1ˢ 21° 16′ 20″

VII. To calculate the true daily motions of the sun and moon.

The equations of motion for the sun and moon have been found by the calculator of the eclipse by the following proportion: as the whole orbit of either planet is to its epicycle, so is its mean daily motion to the required equation. That is to say, for the sun,

360° : 13° 48′ 48″ : 59′ 8″ : 2′ 16″

which, by ii. 49, is subtractive. Hence the sun's true motion is 59′ 8″ − 2′ 16″, or 56′ 52″.

Again, for the moon,

360° : 31° 48′ 58″ : 790′ 35″ : 69′ 36″

And the moon's true motion is 790′ 35″ − 69′ 36″, or 720′ 59″.

These calculations are exceedingly incomplete and erroneous, as may readily be seen by referring to the corresponding process in the other eclipse, or to that given as an illustration in the note to ii. 47–49. The actual value of the sun's equation of motion, as fully calculated by the method of our treatise, is only 1′ 51″; that of the moon is only 58′ 49″: whence the true motions are 57′ 17″ and 731′ 46″ respectively. These are elements of so much importance, and they enter so variously into the after operations, that we have hesitated as to whether it would not be better to cancel the whole work of the Hindu calculator from this point onward, and to perform it anew in a more exact manner; but we have finally concluded to present the whole as it is, as a specimen—although, we hope, not a favorable one—of native work; pointing out, at the same time, its deficiences, and cautioning against its results being accepted as the best that the system is capable of affording.

We have thus far found the true longitudes of the sun and moon for the moment of mean sunrise at the equator, upon the meridian of the given place. We desire now farther to find the same data for the moment of sunrise upon the same meridian in latitude 42° 42′ 51″ N.

VIII. To find the longitudes of the sun and moon at sunrise in long. 149° 2′ 30″, lat. 42° 42′ 51″ N.

1. To calculate the precession of the equinoxes (iii. 9–12).

The proportion

$$1,577,917,828^d : 600^{rev} :: 714,404,106,527 : 271,650^{rev}\ 8^s\ 7^\circ\ 45'\ 22''$$

gives us the amount of the motion of the equinox in its own circle of libratory revolution, since the beginning of things. Rejecting complete revolutions, and deducting 6^s from the fraction of a revolution, we have the distance of the equinox from the origin of the sidereal sphere, in terms of its own revolution, as $67^\circ\ 45'\ 22''$: three tenths of this, or $20^\circ\ 19'\ 36''$, is the amount of the precession.

2. To calculate the sun's declination.

Sun's longitude,	$1^s\ 14^\circ\ 7'\ 39''$
Precession,	$20^\circ\ 19'\ 36''$
Sun's distance from vernal equinox,	$2^s\ 4^\circ\ 27'\ 15''$
Sine,	$3101'$

Then, by ii. 28,

$$3438' : 1397' :: 3101' : 1260' = \sin 21^\circ\ 31'\ 3''$$

the sun's declination is therefore $21^\circ\ 31'\ 3''$.

3. To calculate the sun's ascensional difference.

The radius of the sun's diurnal circle (*dyujyâ*—ii. 60) is 3199′.

The equinoctial shadow in the given latitude is $11^d.07$, being found by the proportion (iii. 17)

$$\text{cos lat.} : \text{sin lat.} :: \text{gnom.} : \text{eq. shad.}$$

or

$$2525' : 2330' :: 12^d : 11^d.07$$

Again, to find the earth-sine (*kujyâ*—ii. 61),

$$12^d : 11^d.07 :: 1260' : 1162'$$

And, to find the sine of ascensional difference,

$$3199' : 3438' :: 1162' : 1249'$$

The corresponding arc is $21^\circ\ 19'$, or 1279′; and since a minute of arc is equivalent to a respiration of time, the sun's ascensional difference in time is 1279^p, or 213^v, or $3^n\ 33^v$, rejecting the odd respiration.

4. To calculate the length of the sun's day.

The sun being in the third sign, of which the equivalent in right ascension (iii. 42–45) is 1935^p, the excess of his day over 60 nâḍîs is found by the proportion

$$1800' : 1935^p :: 59'\ 8'' : 63^p$$

whence the length of his day is $21,663^p$.

In this calculation of the length of the sun's day, the operator has taken the mean, instead of the true, motion of the sun, which is obviously less accurate, and which is contrary to the meaning of the rule of the text (ii. 59), as explained by the commentator.

Now, in order to find the difference between the sun's longitude at sunrise on the equator and sunrise on the given parallel of north latitude, we make a proportion, as follows: if in his whole day the sun moves an amount equal to his daily motion, how much will he move during an interval corresponding to his ascensional difference? or

$$21,663^p : 59'\ 8'' :: 1279^p : 3'\ 29''$$

The sun's declination being north, sunrise on the given parallel precedes sunrise on the equator, and hence this result—which is called the *carakalâs*, "minutes (*kalâ*) of longitude corresponding to the ascensional difference (*cara*)"—is to be subtracted from the sun's longitude as formerly found. That is to say,

Sun's longitude at equatorial sunrise,	$1^s\ 14^\circ\ 7'\ 39''$
deduct the correction (*carakalâs*),	$3'\ 29''$
Sun's longitude at sunrise, lat. $42^\circ\ 42'\ 51''$ N, long. $149^\circ\ 2'\ 30''$ W. from Lankâ,	$1^s\ 14^\circ\ 4'\ 10''$

In finding the corresponding value of the moon's longitude we apply first a correction for the sun's equation of place; it is, in fact, the equation of time, calculated after the entirely insufficient method which we have already fully exposed, in connection with part V of the preceding process. The proportion is (ii. 46) as follows:

$$21{,}600' : 790'\ 35'' :: 1^\circ\ 14'\ 11'' : 2'\ 43''$$

Here, again, bad is made worse by taking as the second term of the proportion the moon's mean, instead of her true, rate of motion. It is to be noticed that a like correction should have been applied also to the sun's longitude, but was omitted by the calculator. We have, then,

Moon's longitude, mean equatorial sunrise,	$1^s\ 21^\circ\ 16'\ 20''$
add the correction for the equation of time,	$2'\ 43''$
Moon's longitude, true equatorial sunrise,	$1^s\ 21^\circ\ 19'\ 3''$

Now we apply farther the correction for the sun's ascensional difference (*carasanskâra*); it is calculated in the same manner with that of the sun, and its amount is found to be $47'\ 51''$.

Moon's longitude, true equatorial sunrise,	$1^s\ 21'\ 19'\ 3''$
deduct the correction for the sun's asc. diff.,	$47'\ 51''$
Moon's longitude at sunrise, lat. $42^\circ\ 42'\ 51''$ N., long. $149^\circ\ 2'\ 30''$ W. from Lankâ,	$1^s\ 20'\ 31'\ 12''$

On comparing the longitudes of the sun and moon, as thus determined, it is seen that the time of conjunction is already past. Hence the calculation is carried a day backward, by subtracting from the longitude of each body its motion during a day. That is to say,

	Longitude, sunrise following eclipse		day's motion.		Longitude, sunrise preceding eclipse.
Sun,	$1^s\ 14^\circ\ 4'\ 10''$	−	$56'\ 52''$	=	$1^s\ 13^\circ\ 7'\ 18''$
Moon,	$1^s\ 20^\circ\ 31'\ 12''$	−	$12^\circ\ 0'\ 59''$	=	$1^s\ 8^\circ\ 30'\ 13''$
Moon's node,	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 46'\ 3''$	+	$3'\ 11''$	=	$1^s\ 12^\circ\ 49'\ 14''$

This is an entirely uncalled-for, and a highly inaccurate proceeding. By the rule given in our text (ii. 66), it is just as easy and regular a process to find from any given time the interval to the beginning of the current lunar day by reckoning backward, as that to the end of the day by reckoning forward. And to assume that the whole calculation may be transferred from one sunrise back to the preceding by simply deducting the amount of motion in a day as determined for the former time is to take a most unwarrantable liberty, and to ignore the change during

the interval of many of the elements of the calculation, as the sun's and moon's rates of motion, the sun's declination and ascensional difference, etc. In making the transfer, moreover, the longitude of the moon's node has been taken as found for mean equatorial sunrise, without any correction for the equation of time, or for the sun's ascensional difference.

IX. To find the time of true conjunction, and the longitudes of the sun, moon, and moon's node at that time. By ii. 66, from the

Moon's true longitude,	1s 8° 30′ 13″
deduct the sun's do.,	1s 13° 7′ 18″
remains	11s 25° 22′ 55″
divide by the portion of a lunar day,	720′
the quotient is	29d and 442′ 55″
deduct the remainder from a whole portion,	720′
remains	277′ 5″

This process shows us that the moon has still 277′ 5″ to gain upon the sun, in order to arrive at the end of the thirtieth or last day of the lunar month, or at conjunction with the sun.

Next, from the

Moon's true daily motion,	720′ 59″
deduct the sun's do.,	56′ 52″
Moon's daily gain in longitude,	664′ 7″

Hence the proportion

$$664' \, 7'' : 60^{n} :: 277' \, 5'' : 25^{n} \, 2^{v}$$

gives us the time of conjunction, reckoned from sunrise, as $25^{n}\,2^{v}$.

Now, by iv. 8, we proceed to find the longitudes for that time. The amounts of motion during $25^{n}\,2^{v}$ are found by the following proportions:

$$60^{n} : 25^{n}\,2^{v} :: \begin{cases} 56' \, 52'' : 23' \, 43'' \\ 720' \, 59'' : 300' \, 48'' \\ 3' \, 11'' : 1' \, 19'' \end{cases}$$

Then, to the

Sun's longitude at sunrise,	1s 13° 7′ 18″
add the correction,	23′ 43″
Sun's longitude at conjunction,	1s 13° 31′ 1″
Moon's longitude at sunrise,	1s 8° 30′ 13″
add the correction,	5° 0′ 48″
Moon's longitude at conjunction,	1s 13° 31′ 1″
Node's longitude at sunrise,	1s 12° 49′ 14″
deduct the correction,	1′ 19″
Node's longitude at conjunction,	1s 12° 47′ 55″

The mode of proceeding adopted by us above, in the lunar eclipse, for finding the time of the middle of the eclipse, and the longitudes of the sun and moon at that time, is, as will not fail to be observed, quite different from that of the native calculator of this eclipse. That followed by Davis, or his native assistants (As. Res., ii. 273 etc.), varies

considerably from both. Our own method, though varying in some respects from that contemplated by the text, is a not less legitimate application of its general methods than either of the others, and it possesses this important advantage over both, that we were able to verify it, and to show, by calculating the mean and true places for the given instant, that the latter was actually the one at which the system made the opposition of the sun and moon to take place: while, on the contrary, in the process now in hand, so many errors have been involved, that, were the same test to be applied, we should find the centres of the sun and moon many minutes apart at the moment fixed upon as that of conjunction, and the place of conjunction as far removed from the point of longitude above determined for it.

X. To find the apparent diameters of the sun and moon.

These quantities are determined by means of the following proportion: as the mean daily motion in yojanas is to the mean diameter in yojanas, so is the true motion in minutes to the true diameter in minutes. That is to say, for the sun and moon respectively,

$$11{,}858\tfrac{3}{4}y : 6500y :: 56'\,52'' : 31'\,10''$$
$$11{,}858\tfrac{3}{4}y : 480y :: 720'\,59'' : 29'\,2''$$

This method is in appearance quite different from that which is prescribed by our text (iv. 2–3), but it is in fact only a simplification, or reduction, of the rules there given. Thus, for the moon, the text gives

m. mot. in minutes : true mot. in min. : : m. diam. in yoj. : true diam. in min. $\times$ 15

Transposing, now, the middle terms, transferring the factor 15 from the fourth term to the first, and noting that the mean motion in minutes, when multiplied by 15, gives the value of the same in yojanas, we have the former proportion, namely,

m. mot. in yoj. : m. diam. in yoj. : : true mot. in min. : true diam. in min.

Again, in the case of the sun, the rules of the text give

m. mot. in min. : true mot. in min. : : m. diam. in yoj. : true diam. in yoj.
and true diam. in yoj $=$ true diam. in min. $\times$ 15 $\times$ (sun's orbit $\div$ moon's orbit)

Now transposing the second and third terms of the proportion, substituting for the fourth its equivalent as here stated, and transferring to the first term the last two factors of that equivalent, we have

$$\text{m. mot. in min.} \times 15 \times \frac{\text{sun's orbit}}{\text{moon's orbit}} : \text{m. d. in y.} :: \text{true mot. in min.} : \text{true diam. in min.}$$

But the first term, as thus constructed, is, by the method of determination of the planetary orbits (see xii. 81–83), equal to the sun's mean daily motion upon his orbit reckoned in yojanas: hence the proportion becomes for the sun, as for the moon,

m. mot. in yoj. : m. diam. in yoj. : : true mot. in min. : true diam. in min.

XI. To calculate the parallax in longitude (*lambana*), and the time of apparent conjunction (v. 3–9).

1. To find the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*) at the moment of true conjunction (iii. 46–48).

In order to this, we require to have first the equivalents in oblique ascension (*udayâsavas*) of the several signs of the zodiac for the latitude

of Williams' College, 42° 42′ 51″ N. We present annexed their values as employed by the calculator of the eclipse, and also as calculated by ourselves according to the method taught in our text (iii. 42–45). It will be noticed that the differences are not inconsiderable, and evince much carelessness on the part of the native astronomer; who, moreover, employs vinâḍîs only in his processes, rejecting the odd respirations, which is an inaccuracy not countenanced by the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

	Equivalent in oblique ascension: acc. to calculator.	acc. to us.	
1st sign	....	1008p	12th sign
2nd "	....	1238p	11th "
3rd "	287v or 1722p	1699p	10th "
4th "	359v or 2154p	2171p	9th "
5th "	387v or 2322p	2352p	8th "
6th "	388v or 2328p	2332p	7th "

The equivalents assigned by the Hindu calculator to the 3rd and 4th signs are moreover, it may be remarked, inconsistent with one another, since the one ought to fall short of 1935p by as much as the other exceeds that quantity.

Now, then, to the

Sun's longitude at conjunction,	1ˢ 13° 31′ 1″
add the precession,	20° 19′ 36″
Sun's distance from the equinox,	2ˢ 3° 50′ 37″

It appears, accordingly, that the sun is in the 3rd sign, and 26° 9′ 23″ from the beginning of the fourth. Hence the proportion (iii. 46)

30° : 287v : : 26° 9′ 23″ : 250v

give us 250v as the ascensional equivalent of the part of a sign to be traversed (*bhogyâsavas*). The time of the day, or the sun's distance in time from the eastern horizon, is 25n 2v, or 1502v. Then, from the

Time of conjunction,	1502v
deduct asc. equiv. of part of 3rd sign,	250v
remains	1252v
deduct asc. equiv. of 4th, 5th, and 6th signs,	1134v
remains	118v

This remainder of time, or of ascension, is reduced to its value in arc of the ecliptic by the proportion (iii. 49)

388v : 30° : : 118v : 9° 7′ 25″

Add this result to the whole signs preceding, and the longitude of the orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*) is found to be 6ˢ 9° 7′ 25″: its sine is 544′ (more correctly, 545′).

2. To find the orient-sine (*udayajyâ*—v. 3).

This is found by the proportion

2525′ : 1397′ : : 544′ : 301′

2525′ being the cosine of the latitude, and 1397′ the sine of the inclination of the ecliptic (ii. 28).

3. To find the meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*—iii. 49).

In order to this, we must first know the sun's hour-angle (*nata*), or distance in time from the meridian; it is determined as follows:

A quarter of the complete day,	15n 0v
add the sun's ascensional difference,	3n 33v
The sun's half-day,	18n 33v
deduct from time of conjunction,	25n 2v
Sun's hour-angle, west,	6n 29v

The sun's distance from the beginning of the fourth sign was found above to be 26° 9′ 23″. Its equivalent in right ascension (*lankodayâsavas*) is found by the following proportion (iii. 49):

$$30^\circ : 323^v :: 26^\circ\ 9'\ 23'' : 285^v$$

Now, from the

Sun's hour-angle, 6n 29v, or	389v
deduct the result of the last proportion,	285v
remains	104v

and this remainder, being less than the equivalent of a sign, is reduced to its value as longitude by the proportion (iii. 48)

$$323^v : 30^\circ :: 104^v : 9^\circ\ 3'\ 57''$$

The longitude of the meridian ecliptic-point is accordingly $3^s\ 9^\circ\ 3'\ 57''$: its sine is 3393′.

In criticism of the process as thus conducted, we would only remark that the quarter of the sun's day should have been called $15^n\ 2^v\ 4^p$ (see above, VIII. 4), and that to take 323^v as the equivalent in right ascension of the third and fourth signs is inaccurate, the value given it by our treatise being 1935^p, or $322\frac{1}{2}^v$.

4. To find the meridian-sine (*madhyajyâ*—v. 4–5).

First, the declination of the meridian ecliptic-point is determined by the proportion (ii. 28)

$$3438' : 1397' :: 3393' : 1378' = \sin 23^\circ\ 39'\ 37''$$

Its value being north, it is deducted from the latitude of the place for which the calculation is made, since this, though by us reckoned as north, is to the Hindu apprehension (iii. 14) always south, being measured south from the zenith to the equator. That is to say,

From the given latitude,	42° 42′ 51″
deduct decl. of merid. ecliptic-point,	23° 39′ 37″
Meridian zenith-distance (*natâṅçâs*),	19° 3′ 14″

The sine of this arc, which is 1117′, is the meridian-sine.

Here is another blunder of the calculator: the sine of 19° 3′ 14″ is actually 1122′.

5. To find the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*), and the sine of ecliptic-altitude (*dṛggati*).

First, by v. 5,

$$3438' : 301' :: 1117' : 97'\ 48''$$

Now, then, by v. 6,

Square of last result,	9,564′
deduct from square of mer.-sine,	1,247,689′
remains	1,238,125′
Square-root,	1113′

This, then, is the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance. The sine of ecliptic-altitude is found by subtracting its square from that of radius, and taking the square-root of the remainder; it is found to be 3253′.

6. To find the divisor (*cheda*), and the sun's parallax in longitude (*lambana*).

The sine of one sign, or 30°, is 1719′.

Square of sin 30°,	2,954,961
divide by	3,253
Divisor (*cheda*),	908

Next, to find the interval on the ecliptic between the sun's place and the meridian:

Longitude of meridian ecliptic-point,	$3^s\ 9^\circ\ 3'\ 57''$
do. of sun,	$2^s\ 3^\circ\ 50'\ 37''$
Interval in longitude,	$1^s\ 5^\circ\ 13'\ 20''$

Of this the sine is 1950′, and, upon dividing it by 908, the divisor (*cheda*) above found, the value of the parallax in longitude (*lambana*) is ascertained to be $2^n\ 21^v$.

Here is some of the worst blundering which we have yet met with. The sine of 35° 13′ is actually 1982′, not 1950′; and upon dividing it by 908, we find the quotient to be only $2^n\ 11^v$.

The calculator assumes the time of apparent conjunction to be determined by this single correction. As the text, however (v. 9), directs that the process be repeated, to insure a higher degree of accuracy, we shall finally quit at this point the guidance of his computations, and go on to apply in full the rules of the Sûrya-Siddhânta.

The sun being west of the meridian, or his longitude being less than that of the meridian ecliptic-point (v. 9), the correction for parallax is additive to the time of true conjunction. Hence, to the

Time of true conjunction,	$25^n\ 2^v$
add the correction,	$2^n\ 11^v$
Time of conjunction once equated,	$27^n\ 13^v$

For the time thus found, we now proceed to calculate again the value of the parallax. The results of the calculation are briefly presented below:

Sun's longitude at corrected time of conjunction,	$2^s\ 3^\circ\ 52'\ 41''$
Orient ecliptic-point (*lagna*),	$6^s\ 18^\circ\ 50'$
Its sine,	1110′
Orient-sine (*udayajyâ*),	614′
Sun's hour-angle,	3103^p

Meridian ecliptic-point (*madhyalagna*),	$3^s\ 21^\circ\ 59'$
Its sine,	$3188'$
Its declination,	$22^\circ\ 9'$ N
Its zenith-distance,	$20^\circ\ 34'$ S.
Meridian-sine (*madhyajyâ*),	$1207'$
Sine of ecliptic zenith-distance (*dṛkkshepa*),	$1188'$
Sine of ecliptic-altitude (*dṛggati*),	$3226'$
Divisor (*cheda*),	[illegible]$6'$
Sine of sun's dist. in long. from meridian,	$2558'$
Parallax in longitude (*lambana*),	$2^n\ 48^v$
add to time of true conjunction,	$25^n\ 2^v$
Time of conjunction twice equated,	$27^n\ 50^v$

Once more, we repeat the same calculation; its principal results are as follows:

Orient ecliptic-point,	$6^s\ 21^\circ\ 41'$
Orient-sine,	$702'$
Meridian ecliptic-point,	$3^s\ 25^\circ\ 26'$
Meridian-sine,	$1241'$
Sine of ecliptic zenith-distance,	$1215'$
Sine of ecliptic-altitude,	$3216'$
Divisor,	$919'$
Parallax in longitude,	$2^n\ 55^v$
add to time of true conjunction,	$25^n\ 2^v$
Time of apparent conjunction,	$27^n\ 57^v$

A farther repetition of the process would still yield an appreciable correction, but as so many errors have been involved in the preceding parts of the calculation as to render any exactness of result unattainable, and as enough has been done to illustrate the method of correction by successive approximation and the comparative value of the results it yields, we stop here, and rest content with the last time obtained, as that of the apparent conjunction of the sun and moon, or of the middle of the eclipse, at Williams' College.

XII. To calculate the parallax in latitude (*nati*) for the middle of the eclipse.

This is given us by the proportion (v. 10)

$$3438' : 731'\ 27'' \div 15 :: 1215' : 17'\ 14''\ \text{S.}$$

in which $1215'$ is the sine of ecliptic zenith-distance, as found in the last process.

XIII. To calculate the moon's latitude, and her apparent latitude, for the middle of the eclipse.

We require first to find the longitude of the moon, and that of her node, for the moment of apparent conjunction, by adding to their longitudes, as already found (above, IX) for the time of true conjunction, their motion during $2^n\ 55^v$. The amount of motion is found by the proportions

$$60^n : 2^n\ 55^v :: \begin{cases} 720'\ 59'' : 35'\ 3' \\ 3'\ 11'' : 0'\ 9' \end{cases}$$

Now, then, to the

Moon's longitude at true conjunction,	1ˢ 13° 31′ 1″
add the correction,	35′ 3″
Moon's longitude at apparent conjunction,	1ˢ 14° 6′ 4″

Farther, from the

Node's longitude at true conjunction,	1ˢ 12° 47′ 55″
deduct the correction,	9″
Node's longitude at apparent conjunction,	1ˢ 12° 47′ 46″
deduct from moon's longitude,	1ˢ 14° 6′ 4″
Moon's distance from node,	1° 18′ 18
Sine,	78′

Hence the proportion (ii. 57)

$$3438' : 270' :: 78' : 6' \, 8''$$

gives us the

Moon's true latitude,	6′ 8″ N.
deduct from parallax in latitude (v. 12),	17′ 14″ S.
Moon's apparent latitude,	11′ 6″ S.

XIV. To find the amount of obscuration (*grâsa*) at the moment of apparent conjunction.

By iv. 10, we add to the

Diameter of the eclipsing body, the moon,	29′ 2″
Diameter of the eclipsed body, the sun,	31′ 10″
Sum of diameters,	60′ 12″
Half-sum of diameters,	30′ 6″
deduct moon's apparent latitude,	11′ 6″
Amount of greatest obscuration,	19′ 0″

This remainder being less than the sun's diameter, the eclipse (iv. 11) is partial only.

XV. To determine the times of the beginning and end of the eclipse respectively.

As the eclipse is a partial one only, we have not to calculate the times of the beginning and end of total obscuration; and indeed, we may well suppose that the Hindus would never venture to calculate those times in a solar eclipse: it is even questionable whether the accuracy of their methods would justify them in ever predicting with confidence that an eclipse would be total.

In the first place, we assume that the moon's apparent latitude, as calculated for the moment of conjunction, remains unchanged during the whole duration of the eclipse, and calculate, by iv. 12–13, what would be, upon that assumption, the interval between the middle of the eclipse and either contact or separation of the disks. That is to say (iv. 12), from the

Square of sum of semi-diameters (30′ 6″),	906′ 1″
deduct square of moon's latitude (11′ 6″),	123′ 13″
remains	782′ 48″
Square root of remainder,	27′ 59″

This result represents the distance, as rudely determined, of the two centres at the moments of contact and separation. To ascertain the corresponding interval of time, we say (iv. 13)

664′ 7″ : 60n :: 27′ 59″ . 2n 32v

Now, then, from and to the

Time of apparent conjunction,	27n 57v
subtract and add the half duration,	2n 32v
Beginning of eclipse,	25n 25v
End of eclipse,	30n 29v

This is as far as the operation was carried by the native calculator, and with data and results somewhat different from those here given, owing to his neglect to repeat the process of determination of the parallax in longitude in finding the time of apparent conjunction. Unfortunately, however, the text (iv. 14–15; v. 13–17) prescribes a long and tedious series of modifications and corrections of the results so far obtained, of which we shall proceed to perform at least enough to illustrate the method of the process, and the comparative importance of the corrections which it furnishes.

We have first to find the longitude of the sun, moon, and node, at the moments thus determined as those of contact and separation; they are as follows:

Sun's long. at true conj. (25n 2v),	1s 13° 31′ 1″	1s 13° 31′ 1″
add for his motion	22″	5′ 10″
Sun's long. at beg. and end of eclipse,	1s 13° 31′ 23″	1s 13° 36′ 11″
add the precession,	20° 19′ 36″	20° 19′ 36″
Sun's distance from the vernal equinox,	2s 3° 50′ 59″	2s 3° 55′ 47″
Moon's long at app. conj.	1s 14° 6′ 4″	1s 14° 6′ 4″
subtract and add motion in 2n 32v,	30′ 26″	30′ 26″
Moon's long. at beg. and end of eclipse,	1s 13° 35′ 38″	1s 14° 36′ 30″
Node's long. at app. conj.,	1s 12° 47′ 46″	1s 12° 47′ 46″
add and subtract	8″	8″
Node's long. at beg. and end of eclipse,	1s 12° 47′ 54″	1s 12° 47′ 38″

To find, then, the moon's true latitude at contact and separation, we have

Moon's distance from node,	47′ 44″	1° 48′ 52″
Sine,	48′	109′
Moon's latitude,	3′ 46″ N.	8′ 34″ N.

Next are calculated the moon's parallax in latitude, and her apparent latitude, at the beginning and end of the eclipse, by a process of which the main results are the following:

Orient ecliptic-point,	6s 10° 28′	7s 3° 59′
Sine,	625′	1921′
Orient-sine,	345′	1063′
Sun's hour-angle,	2455p	4279p
Meridian ecliptic-point,	3s 11° 54′	4s 11° 7′
Sine of do.,	3363′	2590′
Zenith-distance of do.,	19° 16′	24° 53′
Meridian-sine,	1134′	1445′
Sine of ecliptic zenith-distance,	1128′	1374′
Parallax in latitude,	16′ 0″ S.	19′ 29″ S.
deduct true latitude,	3′ 46″ N.	8′ 34″ N.
Moon's apparent lat. at beg. and end of eclipse,	12′ 14″ S.	10′ 55″ S.

Finally, from the

Square of sum of semi-diameters,	906′ 1″	906′ 1″
deduct squares of app. latitude,	150′ 39″	119′ 11″
remain	755′ 22″	786′ 50″
Distance of centres in longitude,	27′ 29″	28′ 3″
Corresponding interval,	2n 29v	2n 32v
Corrected times of beginning and end of eclipse,	25n 28v	30n 29v

It is evidently unnecessary to carry any farther this part of the process; at the time of the eclipse, the increase of the moon's latitude northward, and the increase of her parallax southward, so nearly balance one another, that the additional correction yielded by a new computation would be quite inappreciable—as, indeed, has been, in one of the two cases, that already obtained. In making this corrective calculation we have not followed with exactness the directions given in the commentary under v. 14–17. It is there taught that, after making the first rough determination of the half-duration, based upon the moon's apparent latitude at apparent conjunction, we must turn back to the true conjunction, find the positions of the planets and node at intervals of the half-duration from that point, and make these positions the data of our farther approximative processes. The text itself, as already remarked by us in the notes, shows an utter and provoking want of explicitness with regard to the whole matter, and may be regarded as favoring equally the method of the commentary, our own, or any other that might be devised. We have taken our own course, then, because we were unable to see any sufficient reason for reverting from apparent to true conjunction, as directed by the commentator.

With regard to the next steps, the language of the text is less ambiguous: it distinctly orders us to deduct from and add to the time of true conjunction (*tithyanta*) the intervals found as the former and latter half-duration, and from the moments thus determined to compute anew, by a repeated process, the parallax in longitude. This is a very laborious operation, and not altogether accurate, although perhaps as much so as any which the Hindu methods admit. As we are supposed to have already ascertained how far apart the two centres must be at the moments of contact and separation, the problem is, evidently, to determine

at what moment of time they will, allowing for the parallax in longitude, be at that distance from one another. Now as formerly, to find the time of apparent conjunction, we started from that of true conjunction, and arrived at the desired result by a series of approximative calculations of the parallax in longitude, so now, starting from points removed from true conjunction by the given intervals, we shall ascertain, by a similar series of approximations, the times when the distances represented by those intervals will be apparent, or the moments to which contact and separation of the disks will be deferred by parallax in longitude. The results of the calculations, as made by us, are as follows:

Time of true conjunction,	$25^n\ 2^v$	$25^n\ 2^v$
subtract and add,	$2^n\ 29^v$	$2^n\ 32^v$
Times of true contact and separation,	$22^n\ 33^v$	$27^n\ 34^v$
Sun's longitude, with precession,	$2^s\ 3^\circ\ 48'\ 16''$	$2^s\ 3^\circ\ 53'\ 1''$
Orient ecliptic-point,	$5^s\ 27^\circ\ 9'$	$6^s\ 20^\circ\ 27'$
Orient-sine,	$95'$	$664'$
Meridian ecliptic-point,	$2^s\ 25^\circ\ 52'$	$3^s\ 23^\circ\ 56'$
Meridian-sine,	$1107'$	$1226'$
Sine of ecliptic zenith-distance,	$1106'$	$1203'$
Sine of ecliptic-altitude,	$3255'$	$3219'$
Divisor,	908	918
Moon's longitude,	$2^s\ 3^\circ\ 21'$	$2^s\ 4^\circ\ 21'$
Distance from meridian ecliptic-point,	$22^\circ\ 31'$	$1^s\ 19^\circ\ 35'$
Sine,	$1316'$	$2617'$
Parallax in longitude,	$1^n\ 27^v$	$2^n\ 51^v$

Again, we go on to correct these results by repeated calculations of the parallax, in the mode which has already been sufficiently illustrated. Annexed are the results only:

Times of contact and separation,	$22^n\ 33^v$	$27^n\ 34^v$
add correction for parallax,	$1^n\ 27^v$	$2^n\ 51^v$
Times of contact and separation, once equated,	$24^n\ 0^v$	$30^n\ 25^v$
Corresponding parallax,	$1^n\ 54^v$	$3^n\ 20^v$
add to times first obtained,	$22^n\ 33^v$	$27^n\ 34^v$
Times of contact and separation, twice equated,	$24^n\ 27^v$	$30^n\ 54^v$
Corresponding parallax,	$2^n\ 2^v$	$3^n\ 24^v$

Without taking the trouble to carry the calculations any farther, we may accept these as the finally determined values of the parallax in longitude at the times of apparent contact and separation. Then, by v. 16,

Parallax in longitude at contact and separation,	$2^n\ 2^v$	$3^n\ 24^v$
do. at apparent conjunction,	$2^n\ 55^v$	$2^n\ 55^v$
Difference of parallaxes,	53^v	29^v
add to former and latter mean half-duration,	$2^n\ 29^v$	$2^n\ 32^v$
True former and latter half duration,	$3^n\ 22^v$	$3^n\ 1^v$
subtract and add from and to time of app. conj.,	$27^n\ 57^v$	$27^n\ 57^v$
Times of apparent contact and separation,	$24^n\ 35^v$	$30^n\ 58^v$

The calculation of the elements of the eclipse is thus completed. For the purpose, however, of illustrating the rules of the text (iv. 18–21) for determining, in the case of a solar eclipse, the amount of obscuration at any given moment during the continuance of the eclipse, we add also the following process:

XVI. To find the amount of obscuration of the sun, $2^n\ 38^v$ after first contact.

We make choice of this time, which is equivalent to $27^n\ 13^v$ after sunrise, because the data for finding the parallax in latitude at the moment have already been calculated (see above, XI). By iv. 18, from the

True former half-duration (*sphuṭa sparçasthityardha*),	$3^n\ 22^v$
deduct the given interval,	$2^n\ 38^v$
Interval to apparent conjunction (*madhyagrahaṇa*),	44^v

To reduce this interval in time to distance in longitude of the centres, we say (iv. 18)

$$60^n : 664'\ 7'' :: 44^v : 8'\ 7''$$

This, then, would be the interval in longitude between the two centres at the given moment, if there were no change of the moon's parallax in longitude during the eclipse, or if the moon actually gained in $2^n\ 29^v$, instead of in $3^n\ 22^v$, the distance intervening between her centre and the sun's at the moment of first contact. That, however, being not the case, we must reduce the result thus found in the ratio of $3^n\ 22^v$ to $2^n\ 29^v$, or of the true to the mean half-duration. That is to say (iv. 19),

$$3^n\ 22^v : 2^n\ 29^v :: 8'\ 7'' : 5'\ 59''$$

and this result, $5'\ 59''$, is the true distance of the two centres in longitude, $27^n\ 13^v$ after sunrise.

A briefer and more obvious method of obtaining the quantity in question would have been to make a proportion as follows: if, at the time of the eclipse, the moon gains upon the sun $27'\ 29''$ in $3^n\ 22^v$, what will she gain during 44^v? or

$$3^n\ 22^v : 27'\ 29'' :: 44^v : 5'\ 59''$$

Upon computation, we find the

Moon's parallax in latitude, $27^n\ 13^v$ after sunrise,	$16'\ 51''$ S.
Moon's true latitude,	$5'\ 25''$ N.
Moon's apparent latitude,	$11'\ 26''$
Its square,	$130'\ 43''$
Square of distance in longitude ($5'\ 59''$),	$35'\ 59''$
Their sum (iv. 20),	$166'\ 34''$
Actual distance of centres,	$12'\ 54''$
deduct from sum of semi-diameters,	$30'\ 6''$
Amount of obscuration at given time,	$17'\ 12''$

If it were desired to project the eclipse, we should now have to calculate (by iv. 24–25) the deflection (*valana*) for the moments of contact, conjunction, and separation, and likewise (by iv. 26) the scale of projection. As we do not, however, intend to present here a projection, and as

the subject of the deflection has been sufficiently illustrated already, in the notes upon the text and in the calculation of the lunar eclipse, we regard it as unnecessary to go through with the labor required for making the computations in question. Finally, we annex, as in the case of the lunar eclipse formerly calculated, a summary comparison of the principal results of the Hindu processes with the elements of the eclipse in question as determined by Prof. Coffin, in his work referred to above. It must be borne in mind, however, that, owing to the faulty manner in which many of the computations of the native astronomer have been made, the comparison is not entirely trustworthy; a more careful adherence to the methods of the Siddhânta would have given somewhat different results: in the case of the daily motions of the sun and moon, the true calculations, as performed by us (see p. 452), give more correct values; in other instances, the contrary might perhaps have been the case.

	Sûrya-Siddhânta.	Prof Coffin.	Hindu error.
Time of true conjunction in longitude,	2h 30m	3h 56m	− 1h 26m
Sun's and moon's longitude,	63° 50′ 37″	65° 12′ 37″	− 1° 22′
Moon's distance from node,	43′ 6″	4° 12′ 22″	− 3° 29′ 16″
Sun's daily motion in longitude,	56′ 52″	57′ 45″	− 53″
Moon's do. do.	12° 0′ 59″	12° 7′ 12″	− 6′ 13″
Sun's apparent diameter,	31′ 10″	31′ 37″	− 27″
Moon's do. do.	29′ 2″	29′ 45″	− 43″
Time of apparent conjunction,	3h 40m	5h 32m	− 1h 52m
Parallax in longitude, in time,	1h 10m	1h 36m	− 26m
Amount of greatest obscuration,	19′	30′ 59″	− 11′ 59″
Time of first contact,	2h 20m	4h 15m	− 1h 55m
Time of separation,	4h 50m	6h 38m	− 1h 48m
Duration of eclipse,	2h 30m	2h 23m	+ 7m

26. pp. 327–344. Prof. Weber, of Berlin, has favored us in a private communication with a number of additional synonyms of the names of the asterisms, derived from the literature of the Brâhmana period.

Mṛgaçiras, the fifth of the series, is also styled *andhakâ*, "the blind," apparently from its dimness; *âryikâ*, "honorable, worthy;" *invakâ*, of doubtful meaning: this latter epithet is also found in some manuscripts of the Amarakoça, as various reading for *ilvalâ*, which is there expressly declared (I. i. 2. 25) to designate the stars in the head of the antelope.

Ârdrâ, the sixth asterism, is called *bâhu*, "arm." Taking this name in connection with that of the preceding group, it seems probable that the Hindus figured to themselves the conspicuous constellation Orion as a running antelope, of which α, γ, β, and $\varkappa$ mark the feet: α, then, is the left fore-foot, or arm. Perhaps the name Mrgavyâdha, "antelope-hunter," given to the neighboring Sirius (viii. 10), is connected with the same fancy.

The Maghâs are called in a hymn of the last book of the Rig-Veda (x. 85. 13) *aghâs:* the word means literally "evil, base, sinful," and its application to one of the asterisms is so strange that, if not found elsewhere, we should be inclined to conjecture a corrupted reading.

Phalgunî, or the Phalgunîs, forming the eleventh and twelfth groups, are styled also *arjunî*, "bright, shining."

Çravaṇa, the twenty-third asterism, receives the name *açvattha*, which is properly that of a tree, the Ficus religiosa; the reason of the appellation is altogether obscure.

Bhâdrapadâ, the last double asterism, is called *pratishṭhâna*, "stand, support," in evident allusion to the disposition of the four bright stars which compose it, like the four feet of a stand, table, bedstead, or the like.

27. p. 344. We offer herewith the stellar chart to which reference was made in the note on p. 349, and which is intended to illustrate the positions and mutual relations of the Hindu *nakshatras*, the Arab *manâzil al-ḳamar*, and the Chinese *sieu*. We add a brief explanation of the manner in which it has been constructed, and the form in which it is presented.

The form of the map is that of a plane projection, having the ecliptic as its central line. It would have better illustrated the Hindu method of defining the positions of the junction-stars, and the errors of the positions as defined by them, if the equator of A. D. 560, instead of the ecliptic, had been made the central line of the projection. This, however, would have involved the necessity of calculating the right ascension and declination of every star laid down, a labor which we were not willing to undertake. Moreover, the ecliptic is, in fact, the proper central line along which the groups of the Hindu and Arab systems, at least, are arranged, and the form given to the chart also facilitates the laying down of the equator of B. C. 2350, which we desired to add, for the purpose of enabling our readers to judge in a more enlightened manner of the plausibility of M. Biot's views respecting the origin of the Chinese system: it is drawn with a broken line, while the equator of A. D. 560 is also represented, by an entire line. As the zone of the heavens represented is, in the main, that bordering the ecliptic, the distances and the configuration of the stars are altered and distorted by the plane projection to only a very slight degree, not enough to be of any account in a merely illustrative chart, such as this is. As a general rule, we have laid down all the stars of the first four magnitudes which are situated near the ecliptic, or in that part of the heavens through which the line of the asterisms passes; stars of the fourth to fifth magnitude are also in many cases added; smaller ones are noted only when they enter into the groups of the several systems, or when there were other special reasons for introducing them. The positions are in all cases taken from Flamsteed's Catalogue, and the magnitudes are also for the most part from the same authority: in many individual cases, however, we have followed other authorities. We have endeavored so to mark the members of the three different series that these may readily be traced across the map; but, to assure and facilitate the comparison, we also place upon the page opposite it a conspectus of the nomenclature, constitution, and correspondence of the three systems, referring to pages 327–344 for a fuller discussion of these matters, and an exposition of what is certain, and what more or less hypothetical, or exposed to doubt, with regard to them.

Hindu asterism.	Arab *manzil.*	Chinese *sieu.*
1. Açvinî. β and γ Arietis.	1. ash-Sharatân. β and γ Arietis.	27. Leu. β Arietis.
2. Bharaṇî. 35, 39, and 41 Arietis.	2. al-Butain. 35, 39 and 41 Arietis.	28. Oei. 35 Arietis.
3. Kṛttikâ. η Tauri, etc. (Pleiades).	3. ath-Thuraiyâ. η Tauri etc. (Pleiades).	1. Mao. η Tauri.
4. Rohiṇî. α, ϑ, γ, δ, ε Tauri.	4. ad-Dabarân. α, ϑ, γ, δ, ε Tauri.	2. Pi. ε Tauri.
5. Mṛgaçiras. λ, φ^1, φ^2 Orionis.	5. al-Hak'ah. λ, φ^1, φ^2 Orionis.	3. Tse. λ Orionis.
6. Ârdrâ. α Orionis.	6. al-Han'ah. η, μ, ν, γ, ξ Geminorum.	4. Tsan. δ Orionis.
7. Punarvasu. β, α Geminorum.	7. adh-Dhirâ'. β, α Geminorum.	5. Tsing. μ Geminorum.
8. Pushya. ϑ, δ, γ Cancri.	8. an-Nathrah. γ, δ Cancri, and Præsepe.	6. Kuei. ϑ Cancri.
9. Âçleshâ. ε, δ, σ, η, ρ Hydræ.	9. at-Tarf. ξ Cancri, λ Leonis.	7. Lieu. δ Hydræ.
10. Maghâ. α, η, γ, ζ, μ, ε Leonis.	10. aj-Jabhah. α, η, γ, ζ Leonis.	8. Sing. α Hydræ.
11. Pûrva-Phalgunî. δ, ϑ Leonis.	11. az-Zubrah. δ, ϑ Leonis.	9. Chang. υ^1 Hydræ.
12. Uttara-Phalgunî. β, 93 Leonis.	12. aṣ-Sarfah. β Leonis.	10. Y. α Crateris.
13. Hasta. δ, γ, ε, α, β Corvi.	13. al-Auwâ'. β, η, γ, δ, ε Virginis.	11. Chin. γ Corvi.
14. Citrâ. α Virginis.	14. as-Simâk. α Virginis.	12. Kio. α Virginis.
15. Svâtî. α Bootis.	15. al-Ghafr. ι, κ, λ Virginis.	13. Kang. κ Virginis.
16. Viçâkhâ. ι, γ, β, α Libræ.	16. az-Zubânân. α, β Libræ.	14. Ti. α^2 Libræ.
17. Anurâdhâ. δ, β, π Scorpionis.	17. al-Iklîl. β, δ, π Scorpionis.	15. Fang. π Scorpionis.
18. Jyeshṭhâ. α, σ, τ Scorpionis.	18. al-Kalb α Scorpionis.	16. Sin. σ Scorpionis.
19. Mûla. λ, υ, κ, ι, ϑ, η, ζ, μ, ε Scorp.	19. ash-Shaulah. λ, υ Scorpionis.	17. Uei. μ^2 Scorpionis.
20. Pûrva-Ashâdhâ. δ, ε Sagittarii.	20. an-Na'âim. γ^2, δ, ε, η, φ, σ, τ, ζ Sagittarii.	18. Ki. γ^2 Sagittarii.
21. Uttara Ashâdhâ. σ, ζ Sagittarii.	21. al-Baldah N. of π Sagittarii	19. Teu. φ Sagittarii.
22. Abhijit. α, ε, ζ Lyræ.	22. Sa'd adh-Dhâbih. α, β Capricorni.	20. Nieu. β Capricorni.
23. Çravaṇa. α, β, γ Aquilæ.	23. Sa'd Bula'. ε, μ, ν Aquarii.	21. Nü. ε Aquarii.
24. Çravishṭhâ. β, α, γ, δ Delphini.	24. Sa'd as-Su'ûd. β, ξ Aquarii.	22. Hiü. β Aquarii.
25. Çatabhishaj. λ Aquarii etc.	25. Sa'd al-Akhbiyah. α, γ, ζ, η Aquarii.	23. Goei. α Aquarii.
26. Pûrva-Bhâdrapadâ. α, β Pegasi.	26. al-Fargh al-Mukdim. α, β Pegasi.	24. Che. α Pegasi.
27. Uttara-Bhâdrapadâ. γ Pegasi, α Andromedæ.	27. al-Fargh al-Mukhir. γ Pegasi, α Andromedæ.	25. Pi. γ Pegasi.
28. Revatî. ζ Piscium, etc.	28. Batn al-Hût. β Andromedæ, etc.	26. Koei. ζ Andromedæ.

28. p. 351. We have perhaps expressed ourselves in a manner liable to misconstruction as to the want of reason or authority for giving to the asterisms the name of "lunar mansions," "houses of the moon," and the like. We would by no means be understood as denying that in the Hindu science, especially its older forms, and in the Hindu mythology, they are brought into particular and conspicuous relations with the moon. Indeed, whether they were originally selected and established with reference to the moon's daily progress along the ecliptic, as has been, until lately, the universal opinion, or whether we are to believe with M. Biot that they had in the first instance nothing to do with the moon, and only came by chance to coincide in number with the days of her sidereal revolution—it is at any rate altogether probable that to the Hindu apprehension this coincidence formed the basis of the system. We may even conclude, from the fact that the asterisms are so frequently spoken of in the early literature of the Brâhmaṇa period, while nevertheless there is no distinct mention of the planets until later (Weber, Ind. Lit., p. 222), that for a long time the Hindus must have confined their attention and observations to the sun and moon, paying no heed to the lesser planets: and yet we cannot regard it as in any degree probable—hardly as possible, even—that any nation or people could establish a system of zodiacal asterisms without discovering and taking note of the planets; or that such a system could have been communicated to, and applied by, the Hindus, without a recognition on their part of those conspicuous and ever-moving stars. It may fairly be claimed, then, that the asterisms, as a Hindu institution, are an originally lunar division of the zodiac; but we object none the less to their being styled "lunar mansions," or called by any equivalent name; because, in the first place, the Hindus themselves have given them no name denoting a special relation to the moon, and no name signifying "house, mansion, station," or anything of the kind; and because, in the second place, as soon and as far as the Hindu astronomy extended itself beyond its limitation to observations of the moon, just so far and so soon did it employ the system of asterisms as a general method of division of the ecliptic; so that finally, as pointed out by us above, the asterisms have come to be divested, in the properly astronomical literature of India, of all special connection with the moon. With almost the same propriety might we call the Hindu signs "luni-solar mansions"—since they are, by origin, the parts of the ecliptic occupied by the sun during each successive synodical revolution of the moon—as denominate the *nakshatras* of the Siddhântas "lunar mansions."

29. p. 353. We should have mentioned farther, that an additional inducement—and one, probably, of no small weight—to the reduction of the number of asterisms from twenty-eight to twenty-seven, is to be recognized in the fact that the time of the moon's sidereal revolution in days, though intermediate between the two numbers, is yet decidedly nearer to twenty-seven, exceeding it by less than a third. M. Biot might even claim with some reason that the choice of the number twenty-eight tended to prove the whole system not a lunar one by origin: yet it might be replied that, the time of revolution being distinctly more than twenty-seven days, the larger number was fully admis-

sible, and that it was also in some respects preferable, as being one that could be halved and quartered.

30. p. 417. In bringing this work to a close, we deem it advisable to present, in a summary manner, but more distinctly and connectedly than could properly be done in the notes upon the text, our conclusions as to certain points in the history of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, and of the astronomical science which it represents.

In the first place, Bentley's determination of the age of the treatise we conceive to be altogether set aside by the considerations which we have adduced against it (note to i. 29–34); there is no reasonable ground for questioning that the Sûrya-Siddhânta is, as the Hindus have long believed it to be, one of the most ancient and original of the works which present their modern astronomical science. How far the text of which the translation has been given above is identical in substance and extent with that of the original Sûrya-Siddhânta, is another question, and one not easy to solve. That it is not precisely the same is evident enough. Even the modern manuscripts differ from one another in single readings, in details of arrangement, in added or omitted verses. A comparison of the texts adopted and established by the different commentators would be highly interesting, as carrying the history of the treatise a step farther back: but to us only one commentary is accessible, nor do we find anywhere any notices respecting the versions given by the others: in the absence of such, we may conclude that all present substantially the same text, and so are alike posterior to the modelling of the work into its present form and with its present contents. But the indications of addition and interpolation, which we have had in so many cases to point out in our notes, are sometimes too telling to be misinterpreted. Farther than this we may not at present go: any detailed discussion of the subject must remain unsatisfactory, until a fuller acquaintance with other of the ancient treatises, and a more careful comparison of them with one another, shall throw upon it new light. A point of special interest connected with it is, whether the elements of mean motions of the planets do actually date from about the time pointed out by Bentley's calculations. With regard to this we are far from being confident; but we do not regard it as impossible, or even as very improbable, that those elements, as presented by our text, have been the same from the beginning, never having undergone correction until the application of the *bija*, about A. D. 1500 (p. 163 etc.). And the date of that correction is calculated at least to suggest the suspicion that Muslim science may have had something to do with it. That observation, and the improvement of their system by deductions from observation, were ever matters of such serious earnest with the Hindus that they should have been led to make such amendments independently, is yet to be proved. The most important alteration of which anything like direct proof is furnished is that which concerns the precession of the equinoxes (note to iii. 9–12); and even here we would not undertake to say confidently what is the conclusion to be drawn. All such inquiries must remain conjectural, mere gropings in the twilight, until the position of the Sûrya-Siddhânta in the Siddhânta literature shall be better understood. What has given it so much greater

prominence and popularity than are enjoyed by the other works of its class, or from what period its preeminence dates, is unknown. There are treatises, like the Çâkalya-Sanhitâ (add. note 1), which agree with it in all essential features; there are yet others, like the Soma and Vasishtha Siddhântas, which are said (add. note 6) to vary little from it: whether any one among them all is original—and if any, which—whether in each case the relation is one of co-ordination or of subordination—we must be content for the time to be ignorant.

One thing, however, is certain: underneath whatever variety may characterize the separate treatises, there exists a fundamental unity; their differences are of secondary importance as compared with their resemblances; they all represent essentially a single system. And this by no means in the same sense in which all modern astronomical works may be said to represent a single system. For the Hindu system is not one of nature; it is not even a peculiar method of viewing and interpreting nature, from which, after it had once been devised by some controlling intellect, others had not the force and originality to deviate: it is a thoroughly artificial structure, full of arbitrary assumptions, of absurdities even, which have no foundation in nature, and could be invented by one as well as another. We need only to refer, as instances, to the frame-work of monstrous chronological periods (i. 14–23)—to the common epoch of the commencement of the Iron Age (note to i. 29–34), with its exact or nearly exact (add. note 6) conjunction of all the planets—to the form of statement of the mean motions, yielding recurring conjunctions, at longer or shorter intervals—to the assumption of a starting-point for the planets from at or near ζ Piscium (note to i. 27)—to the revolutions of the apsides and nodes of the planets (i. 41–44)—to the double system of epicycles (ii. 34–38)—to the determination of the planetary orbits (xii. 80–90), etc., etc. These are plain indications that the Hindu science emanated from one centre; that it was the elaboration of a period and of a school, if not of a single master, who had power enough to impose his idiosyncracy upon the science of a whole nation. The question, then, of the comparative antiquity of single treatises is lost in the higher interest of the inquiry—when, where, and under what influence originated the system which they all agree in representing?

What our opinions are upon these points will not be a matter of doubt with any one who may have carefully looked through the preceding pages, although they have nowhere been explicitly stated. We regard the Hindu science as an offshoot from the Greek, planted not far from the commencement of the Christian era, and attaining its fully developed form in the course of the fifth and sixth centuries. The grounds of this opinion we will proceed briefly to state.

In considering such a question, it is fair to take first into account the general probabilities of the case. And there can be no question that, from what we know in other respects of the character and tendencies of the Hindu mind, we should not at all look to find the Hindus in possession of an astronomical science containing so much of truth. They have been from the beginning distinguished by a remarkable inaptitude and disinclination to observe, to collect facts, to record, to make induc-

tive investigations. The old belief under the influence of which Bailly could form his strange theories—the belief in the immense antiquity of the Indian people, and its immemorial possession of a highly developed civilization—the belief that India was the cradle of language, mythology, arts, sciences, and religions—has long since been proved an error. It is now well known that Hindu culture cannot pretend to a remoter origin than 2000 B. C., and that, though marked by striking and eminent traits of intellect and character, the Hindus have ever been weak in positive science; metaphysics and grammar—with, perhaps, algebra and arithmetic, to them the mechanical part of mathematical science—being the only branches of knowledge in which they have independently won honorable distinction. That astronomy would come to constitute an exception to the general rule in this respect, there is no antecedent ground for supposing. The infrequency of references to the stars in the early Sanskrit literature, the late date of the earliest mention of the planets, prove that there was no special impulse leading the nation to devote itself to studying the movements of the heavenly bodies. All evidence goes to show that the Hindus, even after they had derived from abroad (p. 348) a systematic division of the ecliptic, limited their attention to the two chief luminaries, the sun and moon, and contented themselves with establishing a method of maintaining the concordance of the solar year with the order of the lunar months. If, then, at a later period, we find them in possession of a full astronomy of the solar system, our first impulse is to inquire, whence did they obtain it? A closer inspection does not tend to inspire us with confidence in it as of Hindu origin. We find it, to be sure, thoroughly Hindu in its external form, wearing many strange and fantastic features which are to be at once recognized as of native Indian growth; but we find it also to contain much true science, which could only be derived from a profound and long-continued study of nature. The whole system, in short, may be divided into two portions, whereof the one contains truth so successfully deduced that only the Greeks, among all other ancient nations, can show anything worthy to be compared with it; the other, the framework in which that truth is set, composed of arbitrary assumptions and absurd imaginings, which betray a close connection with the fictitious cosmogonies and geographies of the philosophical and Puranic literature of India. The question presses itself, then, strongly upon us, whether these two portions can possibly have the same origin: whether the scientific habit of mind which could lead to the discovery of the one is compatible with those traits which would permit its admixture with the other. But most especially, could a system founded—as this, if original, must have been—upon sagacious, accurate, and protracted observation of the heavenly bodies, so entirely ignore the ground-work upon which it rested, and refuse and deny all possibility of future improvement by like means, as does this Hindu system, in whose text-books appears no record of an observation, and no confessed deduction from observations; in which the astronomer is remanded to his text-book as the sole and sufficient source of knowledge, nor ever taught or counselled to study the heavens except for the purpose of determining his longitude, his latitude, and the local time? Surely, we have a right to

say that the system, in its form as laid before us, must come from another people or another generation than that which laid its scientific foundation; that it must be the work of a race which either had never known, or had had time to forget, the observing habits and the inductive methods of those who gave it origin. But the hypothesis that an earlier generation in India itself performed the labors of which the later system-makers reaped the fruit, is well-nigh excluded by the absence, already referred to, of all evidence, in the more ancient literature of deep astronomical investigation: the other alternative, of derivation from a foreign source, remains, if not the only possible, at least the only probable one. We come, then, next to consider the direct evidences of a Greek origin.

First in importance among these is the system of epicycles for representing the movement, and calculating the positions, of the planets. This, the cardinal feature in both systems, is (ii. 34–45) essentially alike and the same in both. Now, notwithstanding the fact that such secondary circles do in fact represent, to a certain degree, true quantities in nature, there is yet too much that is strange and arbitrary in them to leave any probability to the supposition that two nations could have devised them independently. But there are sufficient grounds for believing the Greeks to have actually created their own system, bringing it by successive steps of elaboration to the form in which Ptolemy finally presents it. In the history of the science among the Greeks, everything is clear and open; they tell us what they owed to the Egyptians, what to the Chaldeans: we trace the conceptions which were the germs of their scheme of epicycles, the observations on which it was based, the inductive and deductive methods by which it was worked out and established. In the Hindu astronomy, on the other hand, all is groundless assumption and absurd pretense: we find, as basis for the system, neither the conceptions—for these are directly or impliedly denied or ignored—nor the observations—for not a mention of an actual observation is anywhere to be discovered—nor the methods: the whole is gravely put forth as a complete and perfect fabric, of divine origin and immemorial antiquity. On the agreement of the two sciences in point of numerical data we will not lay any stress, since it might well enough be supposed that two nations, if once set upon the same track toward the discovery of truth, would arrive independently at so near an accordance with nature and with one another. We will look for other evidences, of a less ambiguous character, to sustain our main argument. The division of the circle, into signs, degrees, minutes, and seconds, is the same in both systems, and, being the foundation on which all numerical measurements and calculations are made, is an essential and integral part of both. Now the names of the first subdivisions, the signs, are the same in Greece and in India (see note to i. 58): but with the Greeks they belong to certain fixed arcs of the ecliptic, being derived from the constellations occupying those arcs; with the Hindus they are applied to successive arcs of 30°, counted from any point that may be chosen: this is an unambiguous indication that the latter have borrowed them, and forgotten or neglected their original significance. But farther, the ordinary Hindu name of that division of the circle which is in most frequent use, the

minute, is no Sanskrit word, but taken directly from the Greek, being *liptâ*, which is λεπτόν. Again, the planets are ordinarily named in the Siddhântas in the order in which they succeed one another as regents of the days of the week; and not only has it been shown above that the week is no original Hindu institution, but it has even appeared that, on tracing it to its very foundation, we find there another Greek word, ὥρα, represented by *horâ*. Once more, in the cardinal operation of finding by means of the system of epicycles the true place of a planet, we see that one of the most important data, the mean anomaly, is called by another name of Greek origin, namely *kendra*, which is κέντρον. These three words, occurring where they do, not upon the outskirts of the Hindu science, but in its very centre and citadel, amount of themselves almost to full proof of its Greek origin: taken in connection with the other concurrent evidences, they form an argument which can neither be set aside nor refuted. Of those other evidences, we will only mention farther here that Hindu treatises and commentaries of an early date often refer to the *yavanas*, "Greeks" or "westerners," and to *yavanâcâryâs*, "the Greek (or western) teachers," as authorities on astronomical subjects—that astronomical treatises are found bearing names which come more or less distinctly from the West (note to i. 4–6)—and that floating traditions are met with, to the effect that some of the Siddhântas were revealed to their human promulgators in Romaka-city, that is to say, at Rome. Farther witness to the same truth, deducible from other coincidences of the two systems, we pass unnoticed here, since it is not our object to discuss the question exhaustively, but only to bring forward the main grounds of our opinions.

The question next arises, when, and in what manner the knowledge of astronomy was communicated from Greece to India. In reply to this, only probabilities offer themselves, yet in some points the indications are pretty distinct. It is, in our own view, altogether likely that the science came in connection with the lively commerce which, during the first centuries of our era, was carried on by sea between Alexandria, as the port and mart of Rome, and the western coast of India. Two considerations especially favor this supposition: first, that the chief site of the Hindu science is found to be the city which lay nearest to the route of that commerce (note to i. 62): secondly, that Rome is the only western city or country which is distinctly mentioned in the astronomical geography (xii. 39), and the one with which, as above noticed, the astronomical traditions connect themselves. Had the Hindus derived their knowledge overland, through the Syrian, Persian, and Bactrian kingdoms which stood under Greek government, or in which Greek influence was predominant, and Greek culture known and prized, the name of Rome would have been vastly less likely to stand forth with such prominence, and the capitals of Hindustan proper would more probably have been the cradles of the new science. The absence from the Hindu system of any of the improvements introduced by Ptolemy into that of the Greeks (note to ii. 43–45) tends strongly to prove that the transmission of the principal groundwork of the former took place before his time: nor can we think it likely that the numerical elements adopted by the Hindus would vary so much as in many cases they are found to

do from those of the Syntaxis, if the latter had been already in existence, and acknowledged as the principal and most authoritative exponent of Greek astronomy. Whether the information was transmitted through the medium of Hindus who visited the Mediterranean, or of learned Greeks who made the voyage to India, or by the translation of Greek treatises, or by what other methods, we would not at present even offer a conjecture; and the point is one of only subordinate consequence.

Whatever may have been the date of the first communication of the elements out of which the Hindu system was elaborated, there is good reason to suppose that its final reduction to its present form did not take place until some time during the fifth and sixth centuries. That period is distinctly pointed out by the choice of the equinox of A. D. 570 as the initial and principal point of the fixed sphere (note to i. 27), by the definition of position of the junction-stars of the asterisms (p. 355), and by the Hindu traditions which refer to that time the names of greatest prominence and authority in the early history of the science. It is evident that the elaboration of the system must have been a work of time, probably of many generations: what were the forms which it wore in the interval we do not know; here, as in many other departments of the Hindu literature, all record of the steps of development appears to be lost, only the final and fully formed product being preserved and transmitted to us: yet more light upon this point may still be hoped for, from the careful examination of all documents now accessible, or of such as may hereafter be discovered. The process of assimilation and adaptation to Hindu conceptions and Hindu methods was thoroughly and completely performed. Among the changes of method introduced, the most useful and important was the substitution of sines for chords (p. 200); the general substitution of an arithmetical for a geometrical form also deserves particular notice. That no great amount of geometrical science is implied in any part of the system, is very evident: it is distinguished by the constant and dexterous application of a few simple principles: the equality of the square of the hypothenuse to the sum of the squares of the base and perpendicular—the comparison of similar right-angled triangles—the formation and combination of proportions, the rule of three—are the characteristic features of the early Hindu mathematical knowledge, as displayed in the Sûrya-Siddhânta. Of other treatises, of an earlier or later period, as those of Brahmagupta and Bhâskara, which (see Colebrooke's Hindu Algebra) give evidence of knowledge more profound in arithmetic and algebra, we cannot at present speak; but we hope at some future time to be able to revert to the subject of the Hindu astronomy, in connection with these or other of the text-books by which it is represented.

Rev. Mr. Burgess, having placed his translation and notes in the hands of the Committee of Publication for farther elaboration, has very liberally allowed them entire freedom in their work, even where their deductions, and the views they expressed, did not accord with his own opinions. The most important point at issue between us is that discussed in the next preceding pages, or the originality of the Hindu astronomy; upon this, then, he is desirous of expressing independently his dissenting views, as in the following note.

Concluding Note by the Translator.

It may not be improper for me to state, in a closing note, that I had prepared a somewhat extended and elaborate essay on the history of astronomy among the Hindus, to be published in connection with the preceding translation. But the length of this essay is such—the subject matter of it not being material to the illustration of the Siddhânta, and the translation and notes having already occupied so much space—that it was not thought advisable to insert it here.

Yet as my investigations have led me to adopt opinions on some points differing from those advanced by Prof. Whitney in his very valuable additions to the notes upon the translation, truth and consistency seem to require me to present at least a brief summary of the results at which I arrived in that essay in reference to the points in question. By so doing, I free myself from any embarrassment under which I should labor, if hereafter—as I now intend—I shall wish to express the grounds for my opinions on these points, in this Journal or elsewhere.

The points to which I allude bear upon the claims of the Hindus to the honor of original invention and discovery in astronomical science—especially, their claims to such an honor in comparison with the Greeks.

Prof. Whitney seems to hold the opinion, that the Hindus derived their astronomy and astrology almost bodily from the Greeks—and that what they did not borrow from the Greeks, they derived from other people, as the Arabians, Chaldeans and Chinese (see pp. 178, 348, 350, et al.). I think he does not give the Hindus the credit due to them, and awards to the Greeks more credit than they are justly entitled to. In advancing this opinion, however, I admit that the Greeks, at a later period, were the more successful cultivators of astronomical science. There is nothing among the Hindu treatises that can compare with the great Syntaxis of Ptolemy. And yet, from the light I now have, I must think the Hindus original in regard to most of the elementary facts and principles of astronomy as found in their systems, and for the most part also in their cultivation of the science; and that the Greeks borrowed from them, or from an intermediate secondary source, to which these facts and principles had come from India. I might perhaps so far modify this statement as to admit the supposition that neither Greeks nor Hindus borrowed the one from the other, but both from a common source. But with my present knowledge, I cannot concur in the opinion that the Hindus are, to any great extent, indebted to the Greeks for their astronomy, or that the latter have any well grounded claims to the honor of originality in regard to those elementary facts and principles of astronomical science which are common to their own and other ancient systems, and which are of such a nature as indicates for them a single origin, and a transmission from one system to another. For the sake of clearness, it is well that I should state more specifically a few of the more important facts and principles that come under the class above referred to. They are as follows:

1. The lunar division of the zodiac into twenty-seven or twenty-eight asterisms (see transl., ch. viii). This division is common, with slight modifications, to the Hindu, Arabian, and Chinese systems.

2. The solar division of the zodiac into twelve signs, with the names of the latter. These names are, in their import, precisely the same in the Hindu and Greek systems. The coincidence is such that the theory of the division and the names of the parts having proceeded from one original source is unquestionably the correct one.

3. The theory of epicycles in accounting for the motions of the planets, and in calculating their true places. This is common to the Hindu and Greek astronomies. At least, there is such a coincidence in the two systems in reference to the epicycles as almost to preclude the idea of independent origin or invention.

4. Coincidences, and even a sameness in some parts, between the systems of astrology received among the Hindus, Greeks, and Arabians, strongly indicate for those systems, in their primitive and essential elements, a common origin.

5. The names of the five planets known to the ancients, and the application of these names to the days of the week (see notes, i. 52).

In regard to these specifications I remark in general:

First, in reference to no one of them do the claims of any people to the honor of having been the original inventors or discoverers appear to be better founded than those of the Hindus.

Secondly, in reference to most of them, the evidence of originality I regard as clearly in favor of the Hindus; and in regard to some, and those the more important, this evidence appears to me nearly or quite conclusive.

I have not space for detail, nor is it the design of this note to enter into the details of argument on any point whatever. A brief remark, however, for the sake of clearness, seems called for in reference to each of the above five specifications of facts and principles common to some or all of the ancient systems of astronomy and astrology.

1. As to the lunar division of the zodiac into twenty-seven or twenty-eight asterisms. The undoubted antiquity of this division, even in its elaborated form, among the Hindus, in connection with the absence or paucity of such evidence among any other people, incline me decidedly to the opinion that the division is of a purely Hindu origin. This is still my opinion, notwithstanding the views advanced by M. Biot and others in favor of another origin.

2. As to the solar division of the zodiac into twelve parts, and the names of those parts. The use of this division, and the present names of the signs, can be proved to have existed in India at as early a period as in any other country; and there is evidence less clear and satisfactory, it is true, yet of such a character as to create a high degree of probability, that this division was known to the Hindus centuries before any traces can be found in existence among any other people.

As corroborative of this position in part, or at least as strongly favoring the idea of an eastern origin of the division of the ecliptic in question, I may be allowed to adduce the opinions of Ideler and Lepsius, as quoted by Humboldt (Cosmos, Harper's ed., iii. 120, note): "Ideler is inclined to believe that the Orientals had names, but not constellations, for the Dodecatomeria, and Lepsius regards it as a natural assumption 'that the Greeks, at the period when their sphere was for the most part

unfilled, should have added to their own the Chaldean constellations from which the twelve divisions were named.'" Whether Ideler meant by "Orientals" the Chaldeans, or some other eastern people, the application of the term in this connection to the Hindus exactly suits the supposition of the Indian origin of the division in question, since in Indian astronomy the names of the signs are merely names of the twelfth parts of the ecliptic, and are never applied to constellations. Humboldt's opinion is, that the solar divisions of the ecliptic, with the names of the signs, came to the Greeks from Chaldea. I think the evidence preponderates in favor of a more eastern, if not a Hindu, origin.

3. The theory of epicycles. The difference in the development of this theory in the Greek and Hindu systems of astronomy precludes the idea that one of these people derived more than a hint respecting it from the other. And so far as this point alone is concerned, we have as much reason to suppose the Greeks to have been the borrowers as the contrary; but other considerations seem to favor the supposition that the Hindus were the original inventors of this theory.

4. As regards astrology, there is not much honor, in any estimation, connected with its invention and culture. The coincidences that exist between the Hindu and Greek systems are too remarkable to admit of the supposition of an independent origin for them. But the honor of original invention, such as it is, lies, I think, between the Hindus and the Chaldeans. The evidence of priority of invention and culture seems, on the whole, to be in favor of the former; the existence of three or four Arabic and Greek terms in the Hindu system being accounted for on the supposition that they were introduced at a comparatively recent period. In reference, however, to the word *horâ*, Greek ὥρα (see notes to i. 52; xii. 78–79), it may not be inappropriate to introduce the testimony of Herodotus (B. II, ch. 109): "The sun-dial and the gnomon, with the division of the day into twelve parts, were received by the Greeks from the Babylonians." There is abundant testimony to the fact that the division of the day into twenty-four hours existed in the East, if not actually in India, before it did in Greece. In reference, farther, to the so-called Greek words found in Hindu astronomical treatises, I would remark that we may with entire propriety refer them to that numerous class of words common to the Greek and Sanskrit languages, which either came to both from a common source, or passed from the Sanskrit to the Greek at a period of high antiquity; for no one maintains, so far as I am aware, that the Greek is the parent of the Sanskrit, to the extent indicated by this numerous class of words, and by the similarity of grammatical inflections in the two languages.

5. As to the names of the planets, I remark that the identity of all of them in the Hindu and Greek systems is not to my mind clearly made out. However this may be, I think the present names of the planets in Greek astronomy originated at least as far east as Chaldea. Herodotus says (B. II, ch. 52) . . . "the names of the gods came into Greece from Egypt." The names of the planets are names of gods. Herodotus's opinion indicates the belief of the Greeks in reference to the origin of these names. Other considerations show for them, almost beyond a question, an origin as far east, to say the least, as Chaldea.

As to the application of the names of the planets to the days of the week, it is impossible to determine definitely where it originated. Respecting this matter, Prof. H. H. Wilson expresses his opinion—in which I concur—in the following language: "The origin of this arrangement is not very precisely ascertained, as it was unknown to the Greeks, and not adopted by the Romans until a late period. It is commonly ascribed to the Egyptians and Babylonians, but upon no very sufficient authority, and the Hindus appear to have at least as good a title to the invention as any other people" (Jour. Roy. As. Soc., ix. 84).

One word on the claims of the Arabians to the honor of original invention in astronomical science. And first, they themselves claim no such honor. They confess to having received their astronomy from India and Greece. They had at an early period some two or three of the first Hindu treatises of astronomy. "In the reign of the second Abbasside Khalif Almansúr . . . (A. D. 773), as is related in the preface to the astronomical tables of Ben-Al-Ádamí, published . . . A. D. 920, an Indian astronomer, well versed in the science which he professed, visited the court of the Khalif, bringing with him tables of the equations of planets according to the mean motions, with observations relative to both solar and lunar eclipses, and the ascension of the signs; taken, as he affirmed, from tables computed by an Indian prince, whose name, as the Arabian author writes it, was Phíghar" (Colebrooke's Hindu Algebra, p. lxiv). That the Arabians were thoroughly imbued with a knowledge of the Hindu astronomy before they became acquainted with that of the Greeks, is evident from their translation of Ptolemy's Syntaxis. It is known that this great work of the Greek astronomer first became known in Europe through the Arabic version. In the Latin translation of this version, the ascending node (Greek *ἀναβιβάζων σύνδεσμος*) is called *nodus capitis*, "node of the head," and the descending node (Greek *καταβιβάζων σύνδεσμος*), *nodus caudæ*, "node of the tail"—which are pure Hindu appellations (see Latin Translation of Almagest, B. iv, ch. 4; B. vi, ch. 7, et al.). This fact, with other evidence, clearly shows the influence of Hindu astronomy on that of the Arabians. In fact, this latter people seem to have done little more in this science than work over the materials derived from their eastern and western neighbors.

Another fact showing the belief of the Arabians themselves respecting their indebtedness, in matters of science, to the Hindus, should be mentioned here. They ascribe the invention of the numerals, the nine digits (the credit of whose invention is quite generally awarded to the Arabians), to the Hindus. "All the Arabic and Persian books of arithmetic ascribe the invention to the Indians" (Strachey, on the Early History of Algebra, As. Res., xii. 184; see likewise Colebrooke's Hindu Algebra, pp. lii–liii, where the same is shown from a different authority. Strachey's article was published subsequently to the work of Colebrooke).

The above facts and considerations, showing the indebtedness of the Arabians to the Hindus in regard to mathematical and astronomical science, clearly have an important bearing on the question of priority of invention in regard to the lunar division of the zodiac into twenty-eight asterisms, at least so far as the Arabians are concerned. Taking

all the facts into account, the supposition that this people were the inventors is altogether untenable.

I close this note—already longer than I intended—with a quotation from that distinguished orientalist, H. T. Colebrooke. In a very valuable essay entitled "On the Notions of the Hindu Astronomers concerning the Precession of the Equinoxes and Motions of the Planets," having stated with some detail some of the more striking peculiarities of the Hindu systems, and likewise coincidences existing between them and that of the Greeks, with the evidence of communication from one people to the other, he says: "If these circumstances, joined to a resemblance hardly to be supposed casual, which the Hindu astronomy, with its apparatus of eccentrics and epicycles, bears in many respects to that of the Greeks, be thought to authorize a belief, that the Hindus received from the Greeks that knowledge which enabled them to correct and improve their own imperfect astronomy, I shall not be inclined to dissent from the opinion" (As. Res., xii. 245–6; Essays, ii. 411).

This is all that so learned and cautious a writer could say in favor of the opinion that the Hindus derived astronomical knowledge from the Greeks. More than this I certainly could not say. After the solar division of the zodiac, with the names of its parts, it is evident, I think, that only hints could have passed from one people to the other, and that at an early period; for on the supposition that the Hindus borrowed from the Greeks at a later period, we find it difficult to see precisely what it was that they borrowed; since in no case do numerical data and results in the systems of the two peoples exactly correspond. And in regard to the more important of such data and results—as for instance, the amount of the annual precession of the equinoxes, the relative size of the sun and moon as compared with the earth, the greatest equation of the centre for the sun—the Hindus are more nearly correct than the Greeks, and in regard to the times of the revolutions of the planets they are very nearly as correct: it appearing from a comparative view of the sidereal revolutions of the planets (p. 168), that the Hindus are most nearly correct in four items, and Ptolemy in six. There has evidently been very little astronomical borrowing between the Hindus and the Greeks. And in relation to points that prove a communication from one people to the other, with my present knowledge on the subject, I am inclined to think that the course of derivation was the opposite to that supposed by Colebrooke—from east to west rather than from west to east; and I would express my opinion in relation to astronomy, in the language which this eminent scholar uses in relation to some coincidences in speculative philosophy and religious dogmas, especially the doctrine of metempsychosis, found in the Greek and Hindu systems, which indicate a communication from one people to the other: "I should be disposed to conclude that the Indians were in this instance teachers rather than learners" (Transactions of the Roy. As. Soc., i. 579). This opinion is expressed in the last essay on oriental philosophy that came from the pen of Colebrooke. E. B.

Boston, May, 1860.

SANSKRIT INDEX.

The following Index contains all the Sanskrit words, excepting proper names, which have been cited in the text and notes, in connection with their translation or more detailed explanation. It includes many terms of trivial importance, but we prefer to err upon the side of fullness, if upon either. All the cases of occurrence of each word are not given, but it is referred to a characteristic passage, or to the note where it is explained. The references by Roman and Arabic figures are to chapter and verse, and an added *n* denotes the note next following the verse given Arabic figures when used alone refer to pages.

GENERAL INDEX.

The references are as in the preceding Index.

ARTICLE IV.

TWO SANSKRIT INSCRIPTIONS

ENGRAVEN ON STONE:

THE ORIGINAL TEXTS,

WITH TRANSLATIONS AND COMMENTS.

By FITZ-EDWARD HALL, Esq., M. A.

Presented to the Society October 26, 1859.

The stones containing the inscriptions now published were procured, the first at Bhera Ghat[a] on the Nerbudda, and the other at the village of Tewar.[b] Both these places I visited, in 1857, while on the first march from Jubulpoor to Nursinghpoor. The larger stone had been brought, as serviceable building-material, to the side of a temple which was in course of erection. When rescued, it was on the point of being buried, face downward, in one of the walls. Had its threatened fate been realized, quite possibly it would not have been spoken of in print for several centuries.

More than one historical fact deserving of record has been discovered from these monuments. The queen of Gayakarṇa Deva, Alhaṇa Deví, was daughter of a Rana of Udeypoor, and granddaughter, through her mother, of Udayáditya,[c] king of Malwa. The paternal greatgrandfather of this lady, Hansapála, is, further, a representative of the royal house of Mewar, now first brought to light. A near approximation to the dates of three of her progenitors being practicable, a basis is afforded by which a portion of the current chronology, for the mediæval period, of preëminently the foremost family of Rajpoots may be readjusted to advantage.

The names of the modern rulers of Chedi,[d] beginning with the earliest, and the names of their consorts and kinsmen, so far

as they have been ascertained, shall here be exhibited. The first genealogical table shows the family that reigned in Central India:

Lakshmaṇa Deva[e] or Yuvarája Deva.[f]
Kokalla Deva.
Gángeya Deva.
Karṇa Deva.[g] He married A'valla Deví, a Húṇa.[h]
Yas'ahkarṇa Deva.[i]
Gayakarṇa Deva.[j] He married Alhaṇa Deví.[k]
Narasinha Deva.[l]
Jayasinha Deva, brother of the last.
Vijayasinha. He married Gásala Deví.
Ajayasinha Deva,[m] heir apparent.

Alhaṇa Deví's ancestry, as deduced from my larger inscription, was as follows:

Hansapála, a Gobhila.[n]
Vairisinha.
Vijayasinha.[o] He married S'yámala Deví, daughter of Udayáditya of Málava; and these were the parents of Alhaṇa Deví.

The second person mentioned in my larger inscription has a very unusual name. That his kingdom was that of Chedi is beyond doubt. I am not prepared to pronounce him identical with the Kokalla who is expressly said to have been lord of that country, and who was likewise a Haihaya; but as, on further enquiry, the two may turn out to be one, I shall enumerate such of the descendants of the latter as are known from inscriptions that have been found in the west:

S'adruka.	S'ankaragaṇa or Raṇavigraha. Mahálakshmí or Lakshmí, and Govindámbá, were his daughters.	Mahádeví.	Arjuna. His son was Aggaṇa (?) Deva, who had a daughter Dwijámbá.

This Kokalla thus had, at least, three sons and one daughter. S'adruka, after a single glimpse, is seen no more. S'ankaragaṇa[p] is termed lord of Chedi: but it is questionable whether the title was ever more than a compliment of hopeful expectation. Mahádeví married a royalet named Krishṇa. Who he was we are still to learn. Their son, Jagadrudra or Jagattunga, as to whose nationality equally little has transpired, married his two cousins german, Lakshmí and Govindámbá. This spirited polygamist had, however, already wedded a daughter of Akálavarsha; but he had by her, it should seem, no issue. Indra, his son by Lakshmí, was nevertheless allowed—so elastic is Hindu courtesy—to be a grandson of Akálavarsha, and was his heir to the

Yádava raja-ship. Indra's wife was Dwijámbá, granddaughter of his grandparents' brother Arjuna.[q]

Far from insignificant were the later dukes of Chedi,[r] as is patent from their matrimonial alliances: and yet—such is the caprice of fortune—the extent of their occupancy can now be estimated only by the opinion of their power; and the determination of its locality has not been effected without some little research. In the most recent of their inscriptions is the last word of them that oblivion has not usurped. Their neighbors, the kings of Gaḍhámaṇḍala, may have wrought their extinction; for, as it appears, their territory passed in part to those chieftains, while the eastern shire of it was ultimately possessed by the Baghelas of Rewa.

The later Bhoja of Central India has been assigned, on tolerably cogent gounds, to the middle of the eleventh century. Of his grandsons, one, Lakshmídhara, was living in A. D. 1104; and another, Naravarman, died in 1133.[s] Udayáditya, who connects the two generations, may, then, have flourished about 1075. Alhaṇa Deví, who is named, in the older of my two inscriptions, as if she were still surviving at the time of its execution, was a granddaughter,[t] as we have seen, of Udayáditya. She may thus have been born about 1100. According to the sequel of this paper, and other evidence, one of her sons, Narasinha, was reigning in a year 907; another, Jayasinha, in 928; and her greatgrandson, Ajayasinha, was a minor in 932.[u] Her birth may, therefore, have taken place as early as 850, which carries back Udayáditya perhaps to 790. These lesser numbers plainly do not denote either the era of S'áliváhana or that of Vikramáditya.[v] Nor can they be computed from that of Valabhi, as ordinarily assumed to count from A. D. 319: a position which, in passing, I believe to be contestable. The specifications attached to the dates 907 and 928 are, however, so full, that any one who chooses to undertake a somewhat tedious calculation is provided with data from which the first year of this, or of some other unaccustomed epoch, may be definitely determined.

Of the two inscriptions now edited, the second, a rude specimen of engraving, I copied with its stone before me. As for the first, I have made use of a couple of fac-simile tracings from it: but they were prepared by a native, a Muhammadan, who was unable to read a letter of the original, and who, consequently, is not to be suspected of conscious attempts at amendment.[w] The style and conformation of its characters resemble, as nearly as possible, those observed on the copperplate of Gásala Deví. At the end of the sixth, sixteenth, and thirty-first stanzas are elaborate flourishes. Once they were, it may be, of some significance, now forgotten: here they simply mark the conclusions of paragraphs.

ओम्। नमः शिवाय।

कल्याणितामविकलां भवतां तनोतु
भाले कलानिधिकला शशिशेखरस्य।
एकैव या प्रमथसार्थगतां द्वितीया
बुद्धिं प्रदोषविरहेऽपि करोति नित्यम् ॥१॥

किं मालाः कुमुदस्य किं शशिकलाः किं धर्म्यकर्मांकुराः
किं वा कञ्चुकिकञ्चुकाः किमथ[illegible]। भूत्युद्गमा भान्त्यमी।
इत्थं नाकिवितर्किताः शिवशिरःसञ्चारिनाकापगा-
रिङ्गद्वल्गुतरङ्गभङ्गिततयः [illegible]पाः पान्तु वः ॥२॥

भूतं सद् विभु यद् विभाति भुवनं यद्विभ्रमाद् यज् जगन्-
नेत्रानन्दकरं धराश्रयरसाद्यन्यत्वहेतुश्च यत्।
यद् गन्धोद्धुरधाम यच् च यजते शीतं यदेकान्ततः
सस्पर्शं यदनूपमेभिरवताद् युष्मान् शरीरैः शिवः ॥३॥

शक्ति[illegible]तिपरप्रीति[illegible]तुश्चन्द्रकचर्चितः।
ताण्डवाडम्बरः कुर्यान् नीलकण्ठः प्रिया[illegible]णि वः ॥४॥

विघ्नौघसन्तमससं[illegible]रणाय शक्तं
मुक्तं कल[illegible]कलय। शकलं सुधांशोः।
कुन्[illegible]दन्ततर[illegible]लामिषाद् दधानः
श्रेयः परं दिशतु वः सदयं द्विपास्यः ॥५॥

रैरनेकैर्व्यवहारजातम्
आतन्वती पातु सरस्वती वः।
यल्लेशलालित्यलवादपि स्यात्
संसत्सु पुंसां गरिमा गरीयान् ॥६॥
गोत्रे रात्रिकरस्य भूपतिरभूद् बिभ्रत् सहस्रं करान्
प्रत्येकं त्रिजगन्मनोविनयने रात्रिन्दिवं जागृविः।
तेजोभिर्जगतीभृतां परिभवी नाम्नाऽर्जुनः संस्मृते
यस्याऽद्याऽप्यधिगम्यते वसु गतं नीतं च चौरैश्चिरम् ॥७॥
तस्याऽन्वये समभवत् प्रथितः पृथिव्या
नाथः कथाऽद्भुततमाऽपि वृथा न यस्य।
कोकल्लदेव इति बिभ्रदुदाररूपं
नाम त्रिलोकरक्षसज्जननैकधाम ॥८॥
निर्जित्योर्जितगर्वपर्वतभृतः प्रत्यर्थिपृथ्वीभुजः
प्राप्तानन्तयशा बभूव नृपतिर्गाङ्गेयदेवस्ततः।
पृथ्वी येन विधाय मेरुमतुलं कल्पद्रुमेणाऽर्थिनां
स्वर्गादूर्ध्वमधःस्थिताऽपि विबुधाधारेयमापादिता ॥९॥
पुण्यामृतेन संसिक्ता शुद्धसत्त्वप्रवर्धिका।
यत्कीर्तिलतिका सर्वं व्याप ब्रह्माण्डमण्डपम् ॥१०॥
तेनाऽजनि महीपालः कर्णः स्वर्णेन कुर्वता।
पूर्णतृष्णार्णवानर्थिसार्थानर्थितकीर्तिना ॥११॥

पाण्ड्यश्चण्डिमतां मुमोच मुरलस्तत्याज गर्वस्पृहं*
कङ्गः† सङ्गतिमाजगाम चकमे वङ्गः कलिङ्गैः सह ।
कीरः कीरवदास पञ्जरगृहे हूणः प्रहर्षं जहौ
यस्मिन् राजनि शौर्यविभ्रमभरं बिभ्रत्यपूर्वप्रभे ॥१२॥
अस्मद्भर्तृपराभवेन सकलां भुङ्क्ते भुवं यामसौ
तामेतां तनवामहे तनुतराकारामितीव स्त्रियः ।
यत्प्रत्यर्थिमहीभुजां नयनजैर्बाष्पैः पयोधीन् व्यधुः
स्फारान् रत्नमहोर्मिभिः पुनरमी ‡संवर्धकाश्चक्रिरे ॥१३॥
चम्पारण्यविदारणोद्गतयशःशुभ्रांशुना भासयन्
आशाश्चक्रमवक्रभावहृदयः क्ष्मापालचूडामणिः ।
तस्माज् जन्म समाससाद विशदं श्रीमान् यशःकर्ण इ-§
त्यौदार्याद् ‖धनिकीचकार विबुधान् यः प्रेक्ष्य सर्वानपि

---

* The स्पृ is rather dim in my fac-similes. The word in which it occurs ends a line on the stone, which is here somewhat worn. There is no doubt about the हं ; स्पृहा is the only form given in the dictionaries ; but स्पृह is equally grammatical.

† I may as well remark, concerning this unusual name, that its appearance on the stone is such as to preclude all uncertainty. No person who is familiar with Indian inscriptions need be told that अङ्गः was here to be expected. Had this, however, been the intended reading, the method observed, without exception, in this inscription, would have converted the nasal point, at the end of the foregoing verse, into a म.

‡ In these words, at the termination of a line, the stone is slightly broken. The का is unmistakable : but the conjunct श्च has no authority but indisputable necessity. The verb चक्रिरे is completed, in the next line, with perfect distinctness.

§ This division violates a law of prosody.

‖ Some letters are here missing, on the stone, directly beneath the °श्च- spoken of in the last note but one. The ध is plainly legible ; and the following line commences with °चकार. My suggestion of °निकी- will hardly be challenged.

तस्मादशेषगुणरत्ननिधेरगाधाद्
  भूवल्लभः समभवद् गयकर्णदेवः ।
यस्य प्रतापत ऽनो ऽप्यरिसुन्दरीणां
  शोकार्णवोदयनिदानपदं प्रपेदे ॥ १५ ॥
द्युतिजितहरितालः शीलताकल्पशालः
  पृथुतरगुणमालः शत्रुवर्गैककालः ।
विमलितरणभालः कान्तकीर्त्याशटालः
  शिततरकरवालः सो ऽभवद् भूमिपालः ॥ १६ ॥
अस्ति प्रसिद्धमिह गोभिलपुत्रगोत्रं
  तत्राऽजनिष्ट नृपतिः किल हंसपालः ।
शौर्यार्जितनिर्मलकीर्त्तिपुञ्ज-
  नम्रीकृताखिलमिलद्रिपुचक्रवालः ॥ १७ ॥
तस्याऽभवत् तनुभवः प्रणमत्समस्त-
  सामन्तशेखरशिरोमणिरञ्जिताङ्घ्रिः ।
श्रीवैरिसिंहवसुधाधिपतिर्विशुद्ध-
  बुद्धेर्निधिर्न परमर्थिजनस्य चोच्चैः ॥ १८ ॥
स वैरिसिंहो ऽप्यनयद् रिपूणां
  कुलानि गम्भीरगुहागृहाणि ।
स्वयं च तेषामधिशय्य चक्रे
  पुराणि दूरावजितालकानि ॥ १९ ॥

तस्मादजायत समस्तजनाभिनन्द्य-
तान्द्वंशोर्मिभरभङ्गुरिता-ितश्रीः ।
पृथ्वीपतिर्विजयसिंह इति प्रवर्ध-
मानः सदा जगति यस्य यशःसुधांशुः ॥२०॥
तस्याऽभवन् मालवमण्डलाधि-
नाथोदयादित्यसुता सुरूपा ।
शृङ्गारिणी श्यामलदेव्युदार-
चरित्रचिन्तामणिरर्चितश्रीः ॥२१॥
मेनायामिव शङ्करप्रणयिनी क्षोणीभृतां ·ायकाद्
वीरिण्यामिव शुभ्रभानुवनिता दक्षात् प्रजानां सृजः
तस्मा८९·-णादेव्यजायत जगद्वन्द्यात्तमाद् भूपतेर्
एतस्यां निजदीर्घवंशविशदप्रेङ्खत्पताकाकृतिः ॥२२॥
विवाहविधिमाधाय गयकर्णनरेश्वरः ।
चक्रे प्रीतिं परामस्यां शिवायामिव शङ्करः ॥२३॥
शृ·ारशाला कलशी कलानां
लावण्यमाला गुणा· ·यभूमिः ।
असूत पुत्रं गयकर्ण भूपाद्
असौ नरेशं नरसिंहदेवम् ॥२४॥
अस्य श्रीनरसिंहदेवनृपतेः प्रोद्यन् यशश्चन्द्रमा
दिग्भित्तीर्विदधातु बन्धुरसुधासम्भारगर्भा इव ।

भूर्भर्तारमवाप्य ॰॰नमुचितं प्रीतिं तथा प्रापुषा॰
पूर्वेषां न यथा मनागपि महाक्षोणीभृतां ध्यायति ॥२५॥

अस्यानुजो विजयतां जयसिंहदेवः
सौमित्रिवत् प्रथमजेऽद्भुतनूपसेवः ।
यो मेघनादबहुमायम॰॰तिकाय-
सैन्यं द्विषामभिभवन्नहह प्रहस्तः ॥२६॥

अकारयन् मन्दिरमिन्दुमौलेर्
इदं मठेनाऽद्भुतभूमिकेन ।
सहाऽमुना श्रीनरसिंहदेव-
प्रसूरसाव॰॰॰॰देवपुरः ॥२७॥

व्याख्यानशालामुद्यानमालामविकलाममूम् ।
अकारयत् स्वयं शम्भुप्रासादालीढयं निजैः ॥२८॥

देवायाऽस्मै वैद्यनाथाभिधाय
प्रादाद् देवी ॰॰॰पत्तलायाम् ।
ग्रामं नाम्ना नाम उण्डीति सर्वा-*
दायैः सार्धं चारुचर्चाप्रसिद्ध्यै ॥२९॥

नर्मदादक्षिणे कूले पर्वतोपत्यकाश्रये ।
तथाऽपरमदाद् ग्रामं नाम्ना ॰॰॰॰॰कम् ॥३०॥

॰॰॰॰यः पाशुपत॰॰॰॰

* Here is another prosodial defect, similar to that pointed out in the fourteenth stanza.

श्रीरुद्रराशिर्विधिवद् व्यधत्ताम्।
स्थानस्य रक्षाविधिमस्य तावद्
यावन् मिमीते भुवनानि शम्भुः॥३१॥
मौन्यान्वये भार्गववैतहव्य-
सावेतसेतिप्रवरत्रयाढ्ये।
महेश्वराख्याद् धरणीधरोऽभून्
नाम्ना गरिम्णा यशसा श्रिया च॥३२॥
कोमलकान्तिसटालेनोच्चैःस्तेहातिभारभरितेन।*
दीर्घमनोज्ञदशेन त्रिभुवनदीपायितं येन॥३३॥
पृथ्वीधरस्तस्य सुतः समस्त-
गभीरशास्त्रार्णवपारदृश्वा।
प्रशस्तिमेतामलिखद् यदीयैर्
दिङ्मण्डलीं शिष्यगणैर्विजिग्ये॥३४॥
एतस्याऽवरजस्तर्कनिष्णातानुत्तनिपुणः।
प्रशस्तिमकरोदेतां सूरिः शशिधराभिधः॥३५॥
आसूत्रयदिदं सर्वं विश्वकर्मविधानवित्।
पीथेसमभिधः सूत्रधारः पृथ्वीं पृथुर्यथा॥३६॥
सूत्रधाराग्रणीबालसिंहसूनुर्महीधरः
शिलां तथाऽकरोद् वर्णैर्नभस्तारकितं यथा॥३७॥
संवत् १०७ मार्गसुदि ११ रवौ।

* The first half of this line faultily ends with the middle of a word, the syllable स्ते; in contrariety to a metrical canon.

Translation.

Om! Glory to S'iva!

1. May the lunar digit on the brow of the Moon-bedecked—which *digit, though* but one, *and individual, yet,* even in the absence of evening, constantly begets the conviction, as pertains to the opulent in attendants, that it is the second—augment your prosperity, *and preserve it* unimpaired.[1]

2. May the ranges of sacred watering-booths—chafed by the creeping and leaping waves of the celestial river which meanders on the head of S'iva—protect you. Is it lines of white lotoses that present themselves? Or divisions of the moon? Or germs of virtuous deeds? Or, else, the sloughs of serpents? Or, again, eruptions of ashes? Thus are they made the subject of speculation by the immortals.[2]

3. *That* which *is* a pure pervading element; *that* by whose revolutions the earth is illuminated; *that* which imparts happiness to the eyes of the world; *that* which *is* the cause of diversity among savors and the like, whose inhesion is in the terrene; *that* which *is* a receptacle surcharged with odor; *he* that sacrifices; *that* which *is* absolutely cold; *and that* which is tactile, *but* devoid of color: may S'iva, by virtue of these material forms,[3] defend you.

4. May Nílakaṇṭha[4]—exciting, by *the display of his* javelin and battle-axe,[5] affection in *his* votaries; the smeared with camphor; *and* exultant in *his* dance—confer on you *all* objects of desire.

5. May the Elephant-faced[6]—counterfeiting ivory whiter than the jessamin, in bearing a lunar fragment[7] potent to dispel the darkness[8] of multitudinous impediments, *and* free from the smallest stain—compassionately accord to you supreme felicity.

6. May Saraswatí—practicing, with manifold elocution,[9] all *her* devices; *and* by *employing* though but the minutest rudiment of whose blandishments, men inspire, in assemblies, the highest reverence—support you.

7. In the lunar line[10] there was a sovereign, by name Arjuna: possessor of a thousand arms; a fire, by night and day, in subduing the hearts, one after another, of *all dwellers in* the three worlds; by *his* effulgence putting contempt on *other* monarchs; *and,* by the recollection of whom, things long ago lost, or taken by thieves, are, even to this day, recovered.[11]

8. Among his descendants arose Kokalla Deva: a famous lord of earth; whose story, though most wonderful, *is yet* not mythical; wearing a majestic aspect; *and whose* name, *invoked, was* the sole resort that produced joy to the triple universe.

9. From him sprung King Gángeya Deva: *who,* by the discomfiture of hostile princes sustaining huge mountains of pride,

acquired infinite distinction; *and* who, an all-bestowing tree to suppliants, *as* making *Mount* Meru unworthy of similitude, *placed* this earth, though lying below, above elysium, and rendered it a *fit* habitation for the gods:

10. The vine of whose renown—*a vine* sprinkled with the nectar of meritorious achievements, *and* promotive of pure excellence—expanded itself over the entire pavilion of the cosmic egg.

11. Of him—who replenished with gold the ocean of importunities of *his* crowd of petitioners; *and* of coveted celebrity—was born King Karṇa:

12. Which king, unprecedented in splendor, maintaining the full energy of heroism, the Páṇḍya discontinued violence; the Murala renounced *all* inclination of arrogance; the Kanga negotiated an audience; the Vanga, with the Kalingas, was solicitous *to do thereafter;* the Kíra, like a parrot, staid in his house, *as* a cage;[12] *and* the Húṇa[13] dismissed *his* elation:

13. Princes at variance *with him;* whose consorts *severally thus protested:* 'This whole country, which he enjoys in consequence of the defeat of our lords, will we, as it were, diminish to view: for that, by the tears springing from *our* eyes, we have made great the seas; and we have, moreover, aggrandized them by the surpassing water[14] of *our* jewels.'

14. From him the illustrious Yas'ahkarṇa derived *his* honorable origin: who lighted up the circuit of the quarters with the moon of the fame which accrued *to him* from devastating Champáraṇya;[15] whose heart was free from crookedness; preëminent[16] among rulers; who, holding all learned men whomsoever in esteem, enriched *them* by *his* munificence.

15. From him, a treasure of the perfection[17] of all virtues, inscrutable, sprung King Gayakarṇa Deva; the very sun of whose grandeur availed[18] to bring about the uprising of a sea[19] of desolation to the wives of *his* foes.

16. A monarch was he, who, in brightness *of complexion,* outrivalled orpiment;[20] *who was* a cornucopia[21] of probity, a garland of diffusive merits, the one destroyer of the hordes of *his* enemies, of unsullied splendour in battle, restraining the wicked by *his* beaming glory, *and* whose sword was of the keenest.

17. The race[22] of the sons of Gobhila is of note among the nations. Therein was born King Hansapála; by whose thronging armaments, equipped with gallantry, and irresistible, the marshalled squadrons of all combined antagonists were humiliated.

18. The issue of his body was the fortunate King Vairisinha; whose feet were tinged by *the reflection of* the head-gems in the frontlets of all tributary chieftains,[23] prostrate *in act of fealty;*[24] a repository of faultless wisdom, but not, indeed, *an asylum*[25] to imperious suitors.

19. He, Vairisinha, moreover, consigned the kinsmen of *his* adversaries to the recesses of deep caverns; and, entering in person, caused that their women[26] neglected their tresses altogether.

20. Of him was born King Vijayasinha; the good fortune of whose foes was overborne by the pressure of his comeliness and chivalry, deserving the congratulations of all the people; *and* the moon of whose glory *was* waxing in the world continually.

21. S'yámala Deví, the beauteous daughter of Udayáditya, supreme ruler of the realm[27] of Málava, was his consort; a talisman[28] of bountiful courses, *and* lauded for *her* elegance.

22. Of him, King *Vijayasinha*, equal to the custody of the world, was born, by her, Alhaṇa Deví; in presentment, the spotless fluttering pennon of her long-descended lineage:[29] as the wife[30] of S'ankara *had her origin* from the Master of Mountains, by Mená,[31] *and* as the spouse of S'ubhrabhánu *sprang* from Daksha, creator of the human family, by Víriṇí.[32]

23. King Gayakarṇa, celebrating nuptial rites *with her*, bestowed on her the highest affection; *even* as S'ankara on S'ivá.[33]

24. She, a mansion of erotic sentiment, the pinnacle-ball[34] of accomplishments, a wreath of loveliness, the emporium of excellencies, brought forth, by King Gayakarṇa, a son, King Narasinha Deva.

25. Of him, the prosperous King Narasinha Deva, may the refulgent moon of glory as it were imbue the walls of the directions with grateful store of *refreshing* nectar. And may the earth, obtaining in him a fitting protector, thus enjoy content, as that of foregone mighty monarchs it shall take no slightest thought.

26. May his younger brother, Jayasinha Deva—in wondrous wise doing honor to *his brother*, the first-born; like as *for Ráma regard was had by* Saumitri—be eminently victorious; who, strong-armed, defeated *his* enemies' hosts, strepitant as *thundering* clouds, teeming with strategy, and comprising *warriors of* most stalworth frames. Bravo![35]

27. That *lady*, the open-handed Alhaṇa Deví, mother of the happy Narasinha Deva, occasioned this sanctuary of Indumauli[36] to be erected, and this cloister, with its admirable pavement.

28. The same, by the agency of her *commissioners*, constructed this hall of learning and line of gardens, wanting for nothing, in two ranges, *attached* to the temple of S'ambhu.

29. To this divinity, entitled Vaidyanátha,[37] the queen—to the end that *her* good deeds might be blazoned—set apart the village known by the name of Uṇḍí, in the canton[38] of Jáülí, with all the dues *exigible therefrom.*

30. In like manner she appropriated another village, called Makarapátaka,[39] situate at the base of the hills, on the south bank of the Narmadá.

31. Let the auspicious Rudrarás'i, a Pás'upata[40] ascetic, of the Láṭa[41] race, *and his heirs spiritual*, fitly administer the duties of the charge of this establishment, till S'ambhu shall mete out *the duration of* the spheres.

32. In the family of Maunin—connected with three branches, *those of* Bhárgava, Vaitahavya, and Sávetasa[42]—was born, of Mahes'wara, so called, *one* Dharaṇídhara, by name; *a person* of worship, repute, and good presence:

33. By whom—adorned with seemly radiance as his frontlet, replete with exuberance of exalted tenderness, *and* whose gratifying condition long *endured*—the three worlds were, so to speak, irradiated.

34. His son, Pṛithwídhara—who has scanned the further shore of the profound main of all science, *and* whose concourse of disciples has conquered *scholastically* the round of the quarters—transcribed[43] this encomium.

35. His—*Pṛithwídhara's*—younger brother, of singular skill among such as are conversant in logic, the learned S'as'idhara, as was his appellation, composed this memorial:

36. All this the artificer[44] called Píthe, proficient in the ordinances of Vis'wakarman,[45] has regulated; as Pṛithu *disposed* the earth.[46]

37. Mahídhara, son of the chief craftsman, Bálasinha, wrought *this* stone with characters; as the firmament *is bestrown* with stars.

Sunday, the 11th *day* of the light fortnight of Márga, in the year 907.

INSCRIPTION No. II.

ज्ञानानन्दं परं ब्रह्म ब्रह्मादिसुरसेवितम् ।
वन्देमा॰ महादेवं देवदेवं जगद्गुरुम् ॥ १ ॥
श्रीमद्गयाकर्णनृपस्य सूनुर्नरेश्वरः श्रीनरसिं॰देवः ।
जिग्ये धरित्रीमनुजोऽस्य सम्राड् जीयाच् चिरं श्रीजयसिंहदेवः
विप्रो योऽत्र कन॰भूदालदेवस्तदात्मजः ।
केशवः कारयामास प्रासादममुमैश्वरम् ॥ ३ ॥
संवत् ९२८ श्रावण॰ुदि ६ रवौ हस्ते ॥
नायककेशवस्य गोत्रं कात्याय॰ं स्थानं माल॰के सीखा

TRANSLATION.

1. We render homage to the supreme Brahma, *who is* intellect and felicity;[47] adored by Brahmá and the other *inferior* deities; Mahádeva;[48] god of gods; parent of the world.[49]

2. The son of the fortunate King Gayákarṇa, the auspicious King Narasinha Deva, has conquered the earth. May the fortunate Jayasinha Deva, the equitable prince,[50] his younger brother, long be triumphant!

3. Kes'ava, son of the late A'ladeva Astaka, the Bráhman so called, procured this temple of I's'wara to be constructed.[51]

In the year 928; Sunday, the 6th *day* of the light fortnight of S'rávaṇa; *the moon being in the asterism* Hasta.

Family name[52] of Kes'ava, the collector[53]—Kátyáyana; *his* residence—the village of Síkhá, in Málavaka.[54]

PROSODIAL INDEX TO THE FORMER OF THE FOREGOING INSCRIPTIONS.

No. of stanza.	Name of metre.
1, 5, 8, 15, 17, 18, 20, 26.	*Vasantatilaká.*
2, 3, 7, 9, 12, 13, 14, 22, 25.	*S'árdúlavikríḍita.*
4, 10, 11, 23, 28, 30, 35, 36, 37.	*Vaktra.*
6.	*S'ubhá.*
16.	*Málini.*
19, 27.	*Upendravajrá.*
21.	*S'ri.*
24.	*Sati.*
29.	*S'áḷini.*
31.	*Indravajrá.*
32, 34.	*Varidhará.*
33.	*A'ryá.*

None of these metres call for special remark, except those of stanzas 6, 21, 24, 32, and 34. In these we have quatrains composed of the *Indravajrá* and *Upendravajrá* measures intermixed. The modes in which they are combined were long ago alluded to,* but have not yet been detailed; and the *A'khyánaki*, which Colebrooke correctly limits,† has erroneously been understood as embracing all these variations.‡ The *A'khyánaki*, as ordina-

* Colebrooke's Miscell. Essays, ii. 100.
† Ibid., ii. 124, 164.
‡ Dr. Stenzler's *Raghuvans'a*, p. 174; and Dr. Boehtlingk's *S'ákuntala*, p. 290. Other editors have gone still further astray, in supposing the term *Indravajrá* to denote a tetrastich of any of the sixteen sorts named in the text, the *Upendravajrá*

rily described, is the same as the *Smriti*; some, on the other hand, holding it to be one with the *Maniprabhá*. The *Viparítákhyánakí*, again, is equivalent to the *S'ivá*; or, perhaps, on a different view, it corresponds with the *S'ubhá*. Very likely the comprehensive nomenclature about to be brought forward is of somewhat late origin. It does not, however, furnish appellations for mere factitious or new-fangled refinements; as will be seen —to go no further*—by the annexed references to a few of the first fifty-nine stanzas of a single canto of the *Raghuvans'a*.† The pure *Upendravajrá* and the pure *Indravajrá* constitute, respectively, the beginning and the end of the series.

No.	Sanskrit name.	Prákrit name.	Composition.	Raghu.,
2.	*Maniprabhá*, or *Kírti.*	*Kittí.*	I U U U.	39.
3.	*Kántimatí* or *Vání.*	*Vání.*	U I U U.	1.
4.	*Satí* or *Málá.*	*Málá.*	I I U U.	15.
5.	*Gati*, or *S'álá.*	*Sálá.*	U U I U.	28.
6.	*Smriti*, or *Hansí.*	*Hansí.*	I U I U.	2.
7.	*Kris'á*, or *Máyá.*	*Máá.*	U I I U.	59.
8.	*S'rí*, or *Jáyá.*	*Jáá.*	I I I U.	22.
9.	*Dhriti*, or *Bálá.*	*Bálá.*	U U U I.	6.
10.	*Unnatá*, or *A'rdrá.*	*Addá.*	I U U I.	13.
11.	*S'ivá*, or *Bhadrá.*	*Bhaddá.*	U I U I.	9.
12.	*Varídhará*, or *Premá.*	*Pemmá.*	I I U I.	16.
13.	*Prítimatí*, or *Rámá.*	*Rámá.*	U U I I.	8.
14.	*Priyá*, or *Riddhi.*	*Riddhi.*	I U I I.	31.
15.	*S'ubhá*, or *Buddhi.*	*Buddhi.*	U I I I.	12.

The metres of this table are disposed agreeably to a method which evidences some ingenuity. The ensuing couplet—which, like those that follow it, is from the *Vritta-ratnákara*—states the rule:

पादे सर्वगुरावाद्याल्लघुं न्यस्य गुरोरधः ।
यथोपरि तथा शेषं भूयः कुर्यादमुं विधिम् ॥

not excepted. See Prof. Lassen's *Anthologia Sanscritica*, p. 104; and his *Gíta-govinda, Prolegomena*, p. xxiv. Dr. Tullberg is of the same opinion, and, in like manner, wrongly holds that the *Indravajrá* may commence with a palimbacchius, or with an amphibrach, at pleasure. See his *Málaviká et Agnimitra*, p. vii. It may be observed that the stanza which he there numbers as the fiftieth has twelve syllables to the verse, not eleven. It is, therefore, *Vans'astha;* a metre which may be elongated from the *Upendravajrá*, by simply exchanging its final syllable for an iambus.

* The eleven stanzas, blended of *Upendravajrás* and *Indravajrás*, which occur in the *S'ákuntala*, exemplify no less than nine of these species.

† My authorities for the following particulars are the *Chhando-mártanda*, as cited in the *Vrittaratnákarádars'a* of Divákara Bhatta, son of Mahádeva Bhatta; and a treatise on Prákrit prosody, my copy of which is defective at the commencement and at the conclusion, and of which I know neither the title nor the author. If the Sanskrit names in the first column here given have Prákrit representatives, I have not met with them.

ऊने दद्याद् गुरूनेव यावत् सर्वलघुर्भवेत्।
प्रस्तारो ऽयं समाख्यातः छन्दोविचितिवेदिभिः॥

A more explicit explanation, and one specifically adapted to the combinations before us, may be given in these words. Write U four times in a horizontal line. Under the first to the left place an I; and, to complete the second line and variation, bring down the other three, to accompany it. The same process is again and again to be repeated. The U which stands furthest on the right is always the letter which governs the leading conversion next to be effected; all the letters to the right of that directly under it being exchanged for U's. Thus continue to operate until a line is brought out made up of I's.

Suppose, again, that only the number of a variation is known, and it is required to ascertain how that variation is constituted:

नष्टस्य यो भवेदङ्कस्तस्यार्धेऽर्धे समे च लः।
विषमे चैकमादाय तदर्धेऽर्धे गुरुर्भवेत्॥

In other words, halve the figure, if the result will be an integer. If not divisible by two without a remainder, first add unity to it. When four numbers are thus obtained, subscribe U's to the odd, and I's to the even.

E. g.	1 1 1 1	5 3 2 1	12 6 3 2	16 8 4 2
	U U U U	U U I U	I I U I	I I I I

Once more, the components of a variation are given, to find its number:

उद्दिष्टं द्विगुणानाद्यादुपर्यङ्कान् समालिखेत्।
लघुस्था ये च तत्राऽङ्कास्तैः सैकैर्मिश्रितैर्भवेत्॥

Write 1, 2, 4, and 8 beneath the four literal symbols, respectively; and increase by one the sum of the figures attached to the I's.

E. g.	U U U U	U U I U	I I U I	I I I I
	1 2 4 8	1 2 4 8	1 2 4 8	1 2 4 8

$0+1=1. \quad 4+1=5. \quad 1+2+8+1=12. \quad 1+2+4+8+1=16.$

The couplets which follow, in the original, however curious, are of little practical value. Two of them show how to determine the number of variations containing one I and three U's, two I's and two U's, etc. Afterwards, the construction of the *khaṇḍa-meru* is described by implication.

NOTES ON THE INTRODUCTION.

a. Near this spot I saw a temple, in the circumjacent close of which were mutilated images, of large size, of the sixty-four *Yoginis*.

b. When at this place, on enquiring its ancient name, I was told, by the village oracle, that it was the Tripura of the Puráṇas.

In the eighth chapter of the *Revá-máhátmya* it is said that Tripurí-kshetra, where S'iva flung down Tripura the Titan, lies to the north of the Narmadá.

The twenty-ninth chapter of the same work somewhat discordantly relates as follows. The demon Báṇa, in reward of his austerities as a votary of S'iva, received from him the gift of a city. Brahmá and Vishṇu each adding another, he obtained the epithet of Tripura, or Τρίπολις. When slain by S'iva, as he was traversing the heavens, a part of his carcass fell near the well-known mountain S'rís'aila, in Siddhakshetra; another fragment, not far from Amarakaṇṭaka; and the remainder, in the vicinity of Gangáságara. The weapon, Aghorástra, with which he was demolished, reached the earth at a point of the Nerbudda hard by Jales'waratírtha, and sunk to Rasátala, the nethermost of the infernal stages. Where this tale is briefly rehearsed in the *Gaṇes'opapuráṇa*—prior section, chapter seventy-one—Báṇa carries off Pradyumna; whose father, Kṛishṇa, attacks the giant, and, after propitiating Gaṇes'a, overcomes the monster and takes possession of his city S'oṇitapura. The *Vishṇu-puráṇa* tells a very different story. See Wilson's translation, p. 596. Some ten chapters of the first half of the *Gaṇes'opapuráṇa*, beginning with the thirty-eighth, are taken up with Tripura or Báṇa.

Parenthetically, M. Troyer is wrong in speaking of the "trois villes," named from Tripura, as being "du moderne pays de Tipparah" (*Rája-taranginí*, iii. 610). It is stated, in the course of the legend above recounted from the *Revá-máhátmya*, that there is a Tripurapura in the neighborhood of S'rís'aila. That the town vulgarly called Tipperah, which gives name to a district of Bengal, is more properly Tipura, by depravation of the Sanskrit Tripura, we have the high authority of Colebrooke. See his Remarks on the Husbandry and Internal Commerce of Bengal, London edition of 1806, pp. 28 and 30; and his Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 241. Some relevant but unverified assertions of Colonel Wilford will be found in the Asiatic Researches, xiv. 451. Of the situation of the third Tripura, or Tripurí, evidently the most noted of all, there can be little question. The Tripurí named in the *Haima-kos'a* is explained by Professor Wilson, in his Sanskrit Dictionary, as being "the modern Tipperah." But the *Haima-kos'a*, in my manuscript copy of the text and commentary, gives, as another designation of Tripurí, चेदिनगरी; which, in the Calcutta impression, is corrupted to वेदिनगरी. I have not access to the English or other new reprint of this vocabulary. Professor Wilson also inadvertently gives त्रैपुर, the adjective of त्रिपुरी, as an equivalent substantive.

I suspect that the ablution, spoken of at p. 492 of the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, took place at Tripurí, not at "Srí-

mantipurí," as according to the translation. That the original runs श्रीमत्त्रिपुर्यां, is not an unreasonable conjecture.

It is, thus, tolerably clear that Chedi, at one time, extended down the Nerbudda almost to the western extremity of the District of Jubulpoor, as now defined. I shall return to the consideration of Chedi a few pages forward.

Professor Lassen's deductions from the legend of the slaughter of Tripura are scarcely such as to command unqualified assent. See his Indische Alterthumskunde, i. 71, 72, foot-note.

c. Under the reign of Lakshmídhara—son of Udayáditya, and grandson of Bhoja—a grant of a village was issued by his younger brother, Naravarman. Its date is A. D. 1104. Naravarman lived till 1133. See the Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, i (1843). 277–281; and Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 303. I will here simply mention that the speculations of the late Mr. Henry Torrens, which carry back the era of Udayáditya to the seventh century, are utterly without foundation. This I shall show at length, in a future communication. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1840, p. 545.

d. Their gentile denomination was, perhaps, Kulachuri. I am not prepared to say what relation, whether that of identity, or otherwise, may have subsisted between the Kulachuris, "Karachulis," Kalachuris, and "Kalabhuris." See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, pp. 488 and 490; Select Specimens of the Theatre of the Hindus, ii. 359 (second edition); and Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 259, and iv. 19.

e. Vonthá Deví, daughter of a Lakshmaṇa who governed Chedi, became the wife of Vikramáditya—if the name be not Vijitáditya—a prince of the Chálukyas. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 261; iv. 7, 40; v. 345.

f. The term Yuvarája is much more like a title, 'prince regent,' than like an appellation. For an apparent example of it as the name of a king, see the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 96.

That our Yuvarája is an antonomasia for Lakshmaṇa Deva, is a revelation for which we are to thank a writer who has never yet been taxed with excess of critical scepticism. In the present instance, however, there is no reason why his word should not be taken without reserve. The fact here brought forward was immaterial to any of his theories. I mean Colonel Wilford. See the Asiatic Researches, ix. 108.

g. He founded the city of Karṇávatí. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, p. 489. Karṇávatí may have been misread for Karṇávalí. If so, perhaps we have it in Karanbel, now a heap of ruins, only a few miles from Bhera Ghat. But local tradition refers Karanbel to a chieftain of Gaḍhámaṇḍala.

"The famous S'ríkarṇa Deva, in his grant, lately found at Benares, declares that he was of the Haihaya tribe, who lived originally on the banks of the Narmadá, in the district of the western Gauḍa, or Gaur, in the province of Málava. Their residence was at Chauli Mahes'wara,

a famous place of worship, to this day, on the Narmadá; and built by one of his ancestors." Col. Wilford in the As. Res., ix. 103.

"The ancestors of S'ríkarṇa Deva, mentioned in the grant, were, first, his father Gángeya Deva, with the title of Vijayakaṇṭaka: he died in a loathsome dungeon. He was the son of Kokalla Deva, whose father was Lakshmaṇarája Deva." Id., ibid., ix. 108.

' It is easy enough to imagine how Colonel Wilford would have speculated on a Kokalla's having a son S'adruka, had he been aware of the circumstance.

h. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, p. 490: also note 13, further down this paper.

i. Yas'ahkarma Deva is the form in which, doubtless by mistake, his name is elsewhere written. Ibid., p. 490.

j. Gayákarṇa, the more grammatical form, is found in my second inscription, and in the grant issued by Gásala Deví.

k. Her name has also appeared as Arhaṇa Deví. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, p. 490.

l. This prince, it should seem, left no offspring, male or female.

m. Ajayasinha is placed in the year 932 of an unspecified era. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, p. 492. His consent to the grant of a village, made, at that time, by his mother, was considered to be necessary. As further evidence that he was only heir expectant to the government, and not actually in possession, we have the argument that he is styled महाकुमार.

n. This appellation is the same as that of one or more ancient sages who have written on *Vaidika* matters. The immediate successor of the founder of the Udeypoor dynasty is called Guhila, in the only other inscription yet found, one from Mount Aboo, where he is commemorated:

शाखोपशाखाकुलितः सुपर्वा.
गुणोचितः पत्रविभूषिताशः ।
कृतास्पदो मूर्धनि भूधराणां
जयत्युदारो गुहिलस्य वंशः ॥५॥

'Preëminent is the generous race of Guhila; abounding with branches and offsets; of good progeny; of laudable attributes; whose vehicles adorn the directions; resting on the heads of monarchs.'

In translating, I have neglected the puns.

वप्पकस्य तनयो नयनेता
सम्बभूव नृपतिर्गुहिलाख्यः ।
यस्य नाम कलिनाऽङ्कितजातिं
भूभुजो दधति तत्कुलजाताः ॥ १२ ॥

'The son of Vappaka was King Guhila, so called; a master of policy; and whose name the rulers sprung from his family invocate, for the purpose of *obviating* the collective defilements of the Iron Age.'

For the original of these passages, and of those shortly to be adduced, which has never before been published, I am indebted to the kindness of my noble friend the late Sir Henry Lawrence. Professor Wilson's copy of the Sanskrit was manifestly a careless one. See the As. Res., xvi. 292–298.

Concerning the Gahlots, as the Gobhilas are vernacularly entitled, Sir Henry M. Elliot writes: "Their neighbors, who for some unexplained reason are fond of imputing cowardice to them, say their name of Gahlot is derived from *gahlá*, a slave-girl; but the real origin is the following, which is universally believed in Mewar. When the ancestors of the Rana of Mewar were expelled from Guzerat, one of the queens, by name Pushpavatí, found refuge among the Bráhmans of the Mallia Mountains. She was shortly afterwards delivered of a son, whom she called, from the cave—*guhá*—in which he was born, by the name of Gahlot; and from him are descended the present Ranas of Udeypur. Their claim to be descended from Noshirwán and a Grecian Princess, which has frequently been discussed, invests this clan with a peculiar interest." Supplemental Glossary, i. 322, 323. Sir Henry should have seen that this etymology has far too much of the ordinary complexion of native romance to deserve the ready credence he has accorded it.

Had the name in discussion been derived from *guhá*, and so etymologically significant, it would scarcely have been changed into Gobhila. Very likely it was originally Guhila, and was subsequently Sanskritized into Gobhila, for the sake of seeming canonization.

o. The present mention of Hansapála is, as I have already intimated, the first that we have of him. He was also called Vairaṭa, unless Vairaṭa was his brother, or some other near relative. I again cite the inscription from Mount Aboo:

*   *   *   *   *

दोर्दण्डद्वयभग्नवैरिवसतिः क्षोणीश्वरो वैरटश्
चक्रे विक्रमतः स्वपीठविलुठन्मूर्धश्चिरं द्वेषिणः ॥ २६ ॥
तस्मिन्नुपरते राज्ञि निहताशेषविद्विषि ।
वैरिसिंहस्ततश्चक्रे निजं नामाऽर्थवद् भुवि ॥ २७ ॥
व्यूढोरस्कस्तनुर्मध्ये क्ष्वेडाकम्पितभूचरः ।
विजयोपपदः सिंहस्ततो ऽरिकरिणो ऽवधीत् ॥ २८ ॥

'Vairaṭa, a lord of earth, who destroyed the abode of his antagonists with his two staff-like arms, caused, by his might, the heads of those inimical to him to toss long on their pillows.

'That king, who had destroyed all his adversaries, having demised, in the next place Vairisinha [*i. e., the lion of his foes*] justified his designation the earth over.

'Of broad chest and slender waist, making the dwellers of the earth to tremble at his battle-cry, Vijayasinha [*i. e., the lion of conquest*] then slew his enemies, as they had been elephants.'

Instead of the first of these three paragraphs, Professor Wilson has: "the king of the world, having slain the associates of his foes, compelled

them to bow their foreheads to his footstool." On this he observes: "There is, however, something wrong in the verse; and it seems likely that we should have the proper name, in it, of another prince. Kshonís'wara may be a proper name, instead of an epithet: but it is not ordinarily so used." As. Res., xvi. 295. It is difficult to form even a guess as to what the Professor had before him. At all events, his text was miserably corrupt.

p. Mangala, a Chálukya chieftain, is said to have repelled Buddharája, son of a S'ankaragana. See the Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 203 etc.

q. The matter of this paragraph I have collected from these sources: Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 94 etc.; and Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, i. 217 etc., iv. 111 etc. The last reference has Kokkala for Kokalla.

I have adopted, on examination, an obvious suggestion of the late Bálagangádhara S'ástrin, as regards the topical acceptation of the term importing the relationship between Akálavarsha and Indra. It may be added that Major G. L. Jacob has altogether misunderstood his original, in espousing Mahádeví to Akálavarsha.

r. Professor Lassen, in 1827, wrote as follows, touching Chedi and its synonyme: "hisce nominibus nil de situ gentis definitur; nam omnia prorsus sunt ignota. Chedes a Wilsone (s. v.) ad eam regionem referuntur, quae hodie dicitur Chandail: verum hoc contra auctoritatem Hamiltonis est, qui (Descrip. of Hind., II., p. 13) asserit, Chandail Sanscrite dictum fuisse Chandála. Totam rem, ut incertam, in medio relinquam." Commentatio etc. de Pentapotamia Indica, p. 89. And the question, it is believed, has awaited adjudication down to the publication of the present paper.

Mr. Wathen confounds Chedi with Ganjam. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, ii. 380. Afterwards he makes it to be "Chandail, in Berar." Ibid., v. 345, 346. From Captain Blunt we know where Chandail begins, in one direction: but its extent has never been defined. Asiatic Researches, vii. 59 etc. Sir Henry M. Elliot, speaking of the Chandels, says that there is "a large clan of them south of Burdee, giving name to a province called Chandelkhand." Supplemental Glossary, i. 180, 181. But the word Chandelkhand, though analogical in formation, is, I find, nothing but a coinage: like the late Colonel Dixon's Merwárá—as it is written accurately—for what the natives call Magrá.

But, if Mr. Wathen's views are more or less wide of the mark, neither can we rely on the dictum of Professor Wilson, who says that "the situation of the ancient kingdom of S'is'upála is always considered to be that of the modern Chandail; and in original Sanskrit writers Ranastambha * * is well known to be Chandail and Boghelt, and lying south of the country termed Vindhyapárs'wa, the skirts of the Vindhya mountains." Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, ii. 394. Again he speaks, vaguely, of "Chedi, or Chandail, in central Hindustan." Ibid., iii. 208. His earliest decision of this point is in the first edition of his Sanskrit Dictionary, where we read, in definition of Chedi: "The name of a country; perhaps the modern Chandail. *Or. D.*"

This abbreviation indicates "the original compilation, when the word contained appeared to be correct, and could not be found in any other authority." The fact seems to be, that the apposition of Chandail to Chedi was the mere guess of some pandit, and a guess prompted by their remote similarity in sound. Yet it is written, in the Professor's translation of the *Vishnu-purána*, p. 186: "Chedi is usually considered as Chandail, on the west of the Jungle Mehals, towards Nagpur. It is known, in times subsequent to the Puráṇas, as Raṇastambha." This annotation is annexed to the impossible word "Chedyas." The Sanskrit has Chedi; the people of which are Chaidyas or Chedayas, according to Hemachandra. The Jungle Mehals are to the east of Chhotá Nágpur, and conterminous with it; and the equivalence of Chandail to the doubtful Raṇastambha is altogether hypothetical. See the Quarterly Oriental Magazine for December, 1824, p. 192, foot-note. There is no such country as Raṇastambha named where Professor Wilson thought he had found one. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, iii. 262. Among the descendants of Jyámagha, says the Professor, "we have the Chaidyas, or princes of Baghelkhand, and Chandail, and Das'árha—more correctly, perhaps, Das'árṇa—Chattisgher" (*sic*). Translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*. In passing, at p. 186 of the same work, Chhattísgaṛh only "seems to be in the site of Das'árṇa." Das'árṇa was to the east of Chandeyree.

M. Troyer confidingly asserts of the "Tchêdas," that "ils habitent le Behâr méridional;" and he speaks of Chedi as being "probablement le Tchandail actuel." *Rája-taranginí*, i. 567, note; ii. 629.

It may be concluded that Rewa and Mundla, in part, if not in all, at least as to the second, were anciently embraced in the land of Chedi. At that time, as in times when the old geographical nomenclature of Central India had fallen into disuse, it also took in something of the District of Jubulpoor. When Dhrishṭaketu was lord of the Chaidyas, his residence was at S'uktimatí; and at one period, if not then as well, a stream of the same name flowed past the capital of Chedi. Hard by was Mount Koláhala. *Mahábhárata*, *Vana-parvan*, *s'l.* 898 and 2531; and *A'di-parvan*, *s'l.* 2342–2368. We might expect to find that the S'uktimatí river took its rise in the S'uktimat mountains; but, on the contrary, its source is referred to the Riksha range, from which various Puráṇas derive the Nerbudda, the Taptee, and the Tonse. The site of the city of S'uktimatí is, therefore, not yet to be settled by the aid of its river. Colonel Wilford, with his usual eccentricity, relegates the S'uktimatí, "full of oysters," to parts widely astray from its sober latitude and longitude. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1851, p. 254.

The town of Tewar, a few miles from the station of Jubulpoor, was, in distant ages, included in Chedi; as has been made out in a previous note (note **b**): and the first of the inscriptions in this paper shows that the jurisdiction of Narasinha was not bounded, in a southerly direction, by the Nerbudda.

Hiouen Thsang, the Buddhist traveller, according to his biographers, on leaving Ujjayiní, proceeded nine hundred *lis* N.E., to the kingdom of Mo-hi-chi-fa-lo-pou-lo, or Mahes'warapura. But it seems, from the

Si-yu-ki, that, about a thousand *lis* to the N. E. of Ujjayiní, he found the kingdom of Tchi-ki-t'o. M. Stanislas Julien thinks Mahes'warapura to be Mysore. Proposing, with doubt, Chikdha as the Sanskrit for Tchi-ki-t'o, he adds: "aujourd'hui, Tchitor." Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes, i. 207, 424, 465. Mysore is, however, a long stretch from Chitor, instead of a hundred *lis;* neither of these places is N. E. from Ujjayiní; and the second is not known to be of any great antiquity. On this last point small faith is to be put in Col. Tod. That Tchi-ki-t'o stands for Chedi may not be altogether a random suggestion; especially as we are ignorant how far Chedi extended northerly. Again, taking certain mistakes in supposition, would Cholí Mahes'wara satisfy the problem of the two places which Hiouen Thsang next visited after Ujjayiní?

s. See note **c**, above.

t. It is singular that her progeny, not more than a quarter of a century after her death, should have consented to speak of her without mention of her distinguished extraction. Yet so it was. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1839, p. 490.

u. Ibid., p. 492. The editors of the Journal referred to were, as we now know, wrong in taking this year to be of the common *Samvat*, and corresponding to A. D. 875.

Though I do not see what use can be made of the following remark of Colonel Wilford on his patent of Karṇa Deva, yet I transcribe it: "The grant is dated the second year of his new era, and also of his reign; answering to the Christian year 192." Asiatic Researches, ix. 108. The proposal to throw Karṇa Deva into the second century is characteristic. Of that chieftain's setting on foot an epoch of his own we have here the only intimation.

v. It may not be superfluous to note that the eleventh day of the light fortnight of *Márga*, 907, and the sixth day of the light fortnight of *S'rávaṇa*, 928, were not Sundays, in the era of Vikramáditya. Gásala Deví's inscription, as printed, does not name the month, the semilunation, its day, or the day of the week. But I should like to examine the copperplate itself.

w. I may add that it seems to have been aimed, in the manuscription of this memorial, to make it as formidable in aspect as practicable. To this end, few occasions are left unimproved of doubling consonants where the grammar permits their duplication, and of yoking the final letters of words to the initials of those that succeed. For example, we have अर्ज्जुन, कौर्य्या, and even निधिर्न्न and गर्भ्भे; as also किम्वा, which is an error. Equally unauthorized is सिन्ह, which is everywhere put for सिंह. The dental न is, in two instances, combined laterally with र; and likewise, in several places, with the dental and palatal sibilants; for the sake of conjunction, the *anuswára* is changed to न, before a sibilant, in stanzas six and thirty-five. In the last verse of the twenty-ninth stanza, the स of सार्द्धं is repeated, although the *visarga* of the preceeding word

is retained. But, on the other hand, the sibilants are nowhere confounded. ब and व have different symbols; and they are employed, generally, with just discrimination. The deviations, in this article, from accuracy, like several of the peculiarities above noticed, may have been the fault of the engraver. Thus, वुद्धि is once substituted for बुद्धि, वन्धुर for बन्धुर, वहुमाय for बहुमाय, वाल for बाल, and वाष्प for बाष्प.

From the eleventh stanza we learn that the *jihwámúlíya* and its क were once written ᳵ; and, from the twelfth stanza, that the shape of the *upadhmáníya* and its प (प) was ᳶ.

I take this opportunity of expressing the opinion that nearly all the inscriptions in the earlier volumes of the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, which have not been republished, should be deciphered and translated anew. At least, a restatement of their facts of history and geography—based on a fresh examination, with all our present aids, of the originals—would be an enterprise neither unworthy nor infructuous. A reservation would, however, fall to be made in favor of those among them which were entrusted to Dr. Mill, Mr. Sutherland, and Captain Marshall.

Relics of the description here referred to deserve, indeed, all the care that scholarship can bestow upon them; and, occasionally, for a reason quite independent of their value as chronicles. The princes, at whose instance they were written, employed for them, it is reasonable to suppose, the best ability they could command. The teachings of the past must have admonished them that in these memorials, if at all, their names and deeds would survive to coming ages. The style of an inscription, especially if the inscription be in verse, may, accordingly, be taken as no unfair index of what was reputed to be literary excellence at the time of its composition.

Notes on the Translations.

1. The divinity here invoked, under two epithets, is Mahádeva. The 'attendants' referred to are the well known *gaṇas*. There are fifteen groups of them; named Gomukha, Hariṇa, Stírṇa, Tálajangha, Vṛikodara, etc.—*Revá-máhatmya*, 29th chapter.

S'as'i-s'ekhara I have rendered by 'moon-bedecked.' As for the *s'ekhara* of S'iva, since he wears it on his forehead, it would be incongruous to speak of it as a crest; though it is usually so denominated. The ordinary *s'ekhara* was a sort of mural crown. In the eighteenth stanza we have a *s'ekhara* enchased with precious stones.

According to Hindu notions, the moon has sixteen digits; and the first of them never appears in the heavens. The new moon, the day of which they call the second of the light fortnight, is held to be a combination of the first two. But the writer of this inscription evidently conceits that the first digit is not seen, as having been transferred to S'iva.

By poetical license, इति is omitted after द्वितीया, in the third verse of this stanza.

2. In turning this quatrain into English, perspicuity was consulted by an entire departure from the structural sequence of the original.

Even after knowing that the stands in S'iva's hair are stands, one can form but a slightly less indefinite idea of them than was entertained by the supernals in their state of ocular indecision. It is, therefore, difficult to divine the precise drift of some of these saintly conjectures. Virtue, agreeably to the chromatics of Indian morality, is white; and so, it may be inferred, would be the buddings of meritorious acts. Possibly, in place of 'eruptions of ashes,' we should substitute 'sources of majesty,' which also is accounted colorless. Yet the interpretation in the text is strictly in keeping with S'iva's notoriously untidy habits.

Terrestrial stalls, analogous to those here mentioned, or, at least, such as are seen in hundreds, every hot season, in Central India, are, generally, fragile structures of coarse grass, or of wattle and dab, open on one side, and just large enough to hold two or three persons in a crouching posture, and as many jars of water.

To all appearance, whether rightly or wrongly, the word प्रपा is sometimes used in the sense of a small affluent or feeder. See the Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, for April, 1843, p. 222, foot-note.

There is a stanza, by the poetess Padmávatí, closely resembling, in style and construction, that to which this note is appended. Veṇídatta quotes it, in his *Padya-veṇí*. It depicts a lady's folded arms:

किं शृङ्गारसमुद्रकल्पलतिके किंवा मृणालीलते
किं वक्षोऽग्रमहीध्रचन्दनलते किं मारपाशीलते ।
किं लावण्यसुधाब्धिविद्रुमलते पत्राङ्गुलीसंयुते
भातः कङ्कटगुर्जरीसुललिते बाहू लते मन्मते ॥

Further down I shall have occasion to recur to these verses.

3. These manifestations, as here intended, and in the order in which they are implied or described, are the ether, the sun, the moon, fire, earth, the chief priest in sacrifice, water, and air. See Colebrooke's Miscell. Essays, ii. 248, foot-note; Wilson's translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, pp. 58 and 59, foot-note; the opening of the *S'ákuntala* drama; the *Kumára-sambhava*, vii. 76; and Hemachandra's scholia on his own vocabulary, ii. 110.

Yádava the lexicographer, as cited by Mallinátha on the *Raghuvans'a*, ii. 35, enumerates these forms in the following couplet:

पृथिवी सलिलं तेजो वायुराकाशमेव च ।
सूर्याचन्द्रमसौ सोमयाजी चेत्यष्ट मूर्तयः ॥

Mohanadása Mis'ra, in his *Hanumán-náṭaka-dípiká*, adduces the ensuing lines, of the same import, as from some *ágama*, or sacred authority:

भूर्जलं वह्निराकाशो वायुर्यज्वा शशी रविः ।
इत्यष्टौ मूर्तयः शम्भोर्मण्डलं जनयन्ति नः ॥

M. Chézy, as he says in his edition of the *S'ákuntala*, p. १७१, found the distich about to be quoted on one of the outer leaves of a MS.:

जलं सूर्यो मही वह्निर्वायुराकाशमेव च ।
दीक्षितो ब्राह्मणः सोम इत्यष्टौ तनवः स्मृताः ॥

Professor Wilson, where referred to above, alleges that this is from the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*; in which, however, I read, on the concurrent authority of nine MSS.:

सूर्यो जलं मही वायुर्वह्निराकाशमेव च ।
दीक्षितो ब्राह्मणः सोम इत्येतास्तनवः क्रमात् ॥

In hundreds of places, the discrepancies, for many consecutive verses, between passages in different Puráṇas, when one and the same subject is under treatment, are no grosser than these. The lines adduced by M. Chézy are still to be verified. Professor Boehtlingk has accepted Professor Wilson's statement, and, it should seem, without thinking to test its accuracy. See his *S'ákuntala*, p. 142.

Of the five elements, as the Hindus reckon them, the ether alone is propounded to be universally diffused. It is, further, maintained that the development, in earth, of color, taste, smell, and tangibility, is due to the influence of caloric. Stench and fragrance can be predicated of earth only: the characteristic of water is coldness: and the atmosphere can be touched, and has no hue.

Of the eight constituents of Krishṇa, only the five so-called elements are included in the catalogue above detailed; three, or mind, intellect, and consciousness, being the substitutes for the three objects omitted. See the *Bhagavad-gítá*, vii. 4.

Professor Wilson, in the second edition of his Sanskrit Dictionary, similarly sets forth the constitution of the अष्टमूर्तिधर; except that he puts "crude matter," or *prakṛiti*, in lieu of 'consciousness.' The exchange is certainly a mistake.

In the fourteenth chapter of the *Narmadá-máhátmya*, the octoform S'iva is thus represented:

शब्दः स्पर्शश्च गन्धश्च रसो रूपं च पञ्चमम् ।
बुद्धिर्मनश्चाऽहङ्कारो ह्यष्टमूर्तेर्नमोऽस्तु ते ॥

Here, instead of the five elemental substances, we strangely enough find the five qualities of which the senses take cognizance; or sound, tactility, odor, sapor, and color. The complement is made up as in the *Bhagavad-gítá*.

4. Or 'he of the dark throat;' that is to say, S'iva. The fable accounting for this designation will be familiar to every one that reaches this note. See the *Mahábhárata*, *A'di-parvan*, *s'l.* 1154.

5. The author of the *Budha-manohara* alleges that Kshíra Swámin defines हेति by परशु. If it be so, my copy of the *Amarakos'odghátana* is defective. Hemachandra, annotating iii. 437 of his own vocabulary,

says that the *keti* is a weapon of offense; as is, indeed, declared by its assigned etymology.

6. This is Ganes'a; who, however monstrous in what should be his divinest part, is figured with the body of a man.

7. Gaṇes'a, no less than S'iva, wears a digit of the moon on his forehead. How our poet, adhering to what he has said of the latter divinity's ornament, would make good its place in the sky, it is hard to say. The following piece of mythology is taken from the prior section of the *Gaṇes'opapuráṇa*, sixty-second chapter. Gaṇes'a, with intent to deter Brahmá from the work of creation, assumed a transformation devised to inspire terror: but the moon was so rash as to deride the hideous disguise. The divinity, incensed at this discourtesy, pronounced a malediction on the heedless luminary: in future its aspect was to be of evil omen. Commiserating the lunar distress, the minor gods went about to make interest, on behalf of the forlorn orb, with Gaṇes'a. By degrees he suffered his wrath to be somewhat mollified. Dissatisfied, however, with this partial result, the planet procured from Indra the monosyllabic prayer to his oppressor, and silently repeated it, for two and twenty years, on the south bank of the Ganges. Thus perseveringly importuned, Gaṇes'a appeared, cancelled his imprecation entirely, and associated the worship of himself with that of his suppliant, on the fourth day of every dark fortnight. Demanding one of its digits, he fixed it on his brow, and was thenceforward surnamed Bhálachandra. His grateful votary finally erected a fane in his honor, the site of which is celebrated as Siddhikshetra.

8. For सन्तमस (-सं), 'universal gloom,' Professor Wilson, in his Sanskrit Dictionary, erroneously gives सन्तमस् (-मः); wrongly citing the *Amara-kos'a* as his authority, and also infringing Páṇini, v. 4. 79. The *Manoramá* and the *Tattwa-bodhiní* do not even hint at any variety of opinion touching the form of this word.

9. Thus I translate रुप, a substantive of very rare occurrence, I am told.*

Saraswatí is the patroness of letters and of eloquence. The inscriptionist is celebrating the seductiveness of artful rhetoric.

10. On the word गोत्र, which is used here, and elsewhere in the record before us, I have remarked at length, as also on प्रवर, in a foot-note to p. 232 of the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, for 1858.

11. Allusion is here made to a superstition still very prevalent in India. The ensuing couplet, which is in the mouth of every learned Hindu, I found, after some search, in a colloquy between Agasti and Nárada, in an extract from the *Brahmáṇḍa-puráṇa*, of which I am unable to name the book and chapter:

कार्तवीर्यार्जुनो नाम राजा बाहुसहस्रवान् ।
तस्य स्मरणमात्रेण गतं नष्टं च लभ्यते ॥

---

* See our additional note, at the end of this article. COMM. OF PUBL.

'Arjuna, the son of Kṛitavírya, *was* a being who had a thousand arms. By simply calling him to memory, that which was lost or mislaid is found again.'

अनष्टद्रव्यता च तस्य राज्ये ऽभवत्। "In his reign nothing was lost or injured." Translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, p. 417. The conceit expressed in the stanza transcribed above may have arisen from this saying. The commentary on the words from the *Vishṇu-puráṇa* runs thus: अनष्टद्रव्यता च तद्राज्ये ऽभवत्। इत्यत्राऽतीतकालता न विवक्षिता यत इदानीमपि श्रीकार्तवीर्यार्जुनस्य नामाख्यानेन नष्टद्रव्यप्राप्तेः।

अनष्टद्रव्यता चैव तव नामाभिकीर्तनात्।

इति कूर्मोक्तेः।

Here the *Kúrma-puráṇa* is cited to the same effect with the stanza from the *Brahmáṇḍa-puráṇa*.

12. There is a pun here, in the original.

13. In this stanza, denominations of peoples—tallying, for the most part, with names of countries—are, by a noticeable idiom, put for their rulers.

The Páṇḍya kingdom is considered to have embraced the present District of Tinevelly, with something of Madura.

Murala is another name for Kerala, now Malabar. At least, the commentary on the *Haima-kos'a*, iv. 27, asserts their synonymy. M. Troyer, without adducing the slightest warrant for what he says, calls the Keralas "peuple du Pendjab." *Rája-taranginí*, ii. 605. Professor Wilson, having occasion to mention the Muralas and Mekalas, pronounces them to be "tribes along the Narmadá." Select Specimens of the Theatre of the Hindus, ii. 361. This is an inference, it may be supposed, from the fact that the Nerbudda is called Muralá and Mekalá or Mekhalá. Hemachandra says that the Nerbudda has its source in mount Mekala. The Muralá, mentioned in the *Raghuvans'a*, iv. 55, was, alleges Mallinátha, a stream in the region of Kerala.

Waiving the chance of a misprint, Kanga was the same as Chera, now known as Salem. Chola lay to the east of it; Páṇḍya, to the south; and Kerala, to the west. Mackenzie Collection, Vol. i, Introduction, p. xciii. In the same work—i. 63, 198—Chera is called Konga. Can it be that this is a modern corruption of Kanga? Also see the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1838, pp. 105, 106, 129, 379, etc.; and Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, viii. 1 etc.

Apparently, Kanga is the country intended by the Chinese phonographs Kong-yu-t'o, for which M. Stanislas Julien proposes Kôṇyôdha. Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes, i. 184, 411, 469. The Kangaṭa of the couplet cited in the second note on this inscription may be a lengthened form of Kanga. Venka and Venkaṭa, for instance, are one; and we have not here to do with pure Sanskrit.

In the *Bṛihat-sanhitá* of Varáha Mihira, as cited by Dr. Albrecht Weber, a country called Kanka is mentioned. Die Handschriften-Verzeichnisse der Königlichen Bibliothek, u. s. w.; Berlin, 1853; p. 240.

Professor Wilson remarks that the usual classification connects the Vangas and the Kalingas with the Angas. Translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, p. 188, foot-note. But it may be suspected that, out of compliance with the usual classification, Kanga, where found in company with Vanga and Kalinga, has sometimes been changed, through ignorance, to Anga. At the beginning of a line, as in the original of the passage on which Professor Wilson annotates, the substitution could be effected without prejudice to the metre.

Vanga is eastern Bengal, by universal acknowledgement. At a later date than that of this inscription, Bengal was known as Vankálá. See the *Rája-tarangiṇí*, Book III, *s'l.* 480 (in M. Troyer's edition, i. 114).

It would, possibly, have been more accurate to write Kalinga than Kalingas. But there really seem to have been several peninsular principalities of this name, or rather, perhaps, subdivisions of an extensive country styled Kalinga. It comprised "the sea-coast west of the mouths of the Ganges, with the upper part of the Coromandel coast." See, further, Professor Wilson's Sanskrit Dictionary, under the word in question.

Kíra, agreeably to Professor Wilson's citation of a native vocabulary, is Cashmere. Elsewhere it is mentioned in association with Cashmere, but as being distinct from it, unless we presume a redundancy. Asiatic Researches, viii. 340. Col. Wilford, to whom I here refer, eventually came to the conclusion, as appears from a posthumous essay of his, that the Kíra of the *Puráṇas* was "the country to the west of the Indus, as far west as Persia, and, to the north, as far as Candahar." His speculations on the subject are ingenious. Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1851, p. 262.

I copy the following from M. Troyer, but without endorsing his inference: "*Kíra* signifie 'perroquet' et 'habitant de Kachmír,' apparemment à cause de la grande aptitude de parole que possèdent les Kachmíriens." *Rája-tarangiṇí*, iii. 614.

It has repeatedly been averred that the Húṇas were "the white Huns, or Indo-Scythians." See Colonel Wilford, in the Asiatic Researches, passim; and the translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, p. 177, foot-note. Mr. Wathen is disposed to think that the Húṇas inhabited Tuluva, where there is a place called Hunawar or Anore. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, ii. 382; and iii. 103. But Mr. Wathen's Sanskrit is immetrical and nonsensical. The line where the Húṇas are named should undoubtedly begin हूणाविकरुपाण्ड्व°. I am not prepared to deny, positively, that the Indians gave the name of Húṇa to the Huns, if they knew them: but the term certainly denoted some tribe of Hindus. In the *Raghuvans'a*, iv. 68, the Húṇas are spoken of as if they may have been a people of fair complexion; and the region assigned to them is in the north. The commentator Mallinátha, annotating this couplet, says that the Húṇas were Kshatriyas. The wife of our Karṇa, a Kshatriya, was a Húṇa, as has been seen in the preface to this paper: and how could he have wedded a barbarian? As for the Sacæ, the Sanskrit S'akas, we know that they were Scythians of the Persian frontier. It would be very satisfactory to find that the northern Húṇas were esteemed to be in any wise related to them. The

S'akas and the Hárahúṇas are mentioned together in the *Mahábhárata, Sabhá-parvan, s'l.* 1843, 1844. In the *Harsha-charita*, Prabhákaravardhana is made to send his son Rájyavardhana to the north, against the Húrahúṇas. Which is right, Hárahúṇa, or Húrahúṇa?

Professor Wilson says: "if we might trust to verbal resemblances, we might suspect that the Hayas and Haihayas of the Hindus had some connection with the Hia, Hoiei-ke, Hoiei-hu, and similarly denominated Hun or Turk tribes, who make a figure in Chinese history." Translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, p. 419, foot-note.

14. The play on ऊर्मि, 'current' or 'wave,' and 'lustre,' has been imitated.

In the *S'árngadhara-paddhati* is the following stanza, by an anonymous author, descriptive of the confusion of toilet wrought by our Karṇa, or some other:

मुखे हारावाप्तिर्नयनयुगले कङ्कणभरो
नितम्बे पत्राली सतिलकमभूत् पाणियुगलम् ।
अरण्ये श्रीकर्ण त्वदरियुवतीनां विधिवशाद्
अपूर्वो ऽयं भूषाविधिरहह जातः किमधुना ॥

'By force of destiny, auspicious Karṇa, the pearl-necklaces of the youthful wives—*hiding* in the wilds—of thy foes are over their faces; their bracelets press against their twin eyes; their hips are tattooed; *and* frontal marks are on their two hands. Ha! how does an unprecedented style of embellishment now prevail!'

15. Vernacularly corrupted, this word would assume the form of Champáran. But the only Champáran generally known is much too far distant from Chedi for even a foray. The subdivision of the Mundla District which now goes by the name of Lánjí was formerly called Champávatí, as I learn from a MS. Hindí chronicle in my possession.

16. Literally, 'the frontlet-gem.'

17. More exactly, if necessary, 'the jewels.'

18. I have given the sentence this turn, in order to bring out the force of पद् distinctly.

19. This allusion to a physical phenomenon is worthy of note.

20. In place of this bathetic comparison I would much have preferred 'outvying the milky-way,' but for the consequent incongruity: for the prince's person is unequivocally the object proposed for description. By the way, Professor Wilson need have entertained no doubt as to हरिताल being defined by 'galaxy' in the *Medini-kos'a.*

21. So rendered, to vary the phrase, instead of 'tree of plenty.' See the ninth stanza.

That this quatrain exhibits eight rhymes is deserving of indication.

22. Here is the word गोत्र again, in the original.

23. So I translate सामन्त, which apparently imports a feudatory.

24. A vaunt even more hyperbolical than this occurs in an inscription published in one of the early volumes of the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal; that for 1838, p. 37. I repeat the first stanza of it; for it is verse, the measure being *sragdhará.*

> यस्योपस्थानभूमिर्नृपतिशतशिरःपातवातावधूता
> गुप्तानां वंशजस्य प्रविसृतयशसस्तस्य सर्वोत्तमर्द्धेः ।
> राज्ये शक्रोपमस्य क्षितिपशतपतेः स्कन्दगुप्तस्य शान्ते
> वर्षे त्रिंशद्दशैकोत्तरकशततमे ज्येष्ठमासि प्रपन्ने ॥

'The month of Jyeshtha having arrived, in the one hundred and forty-first year; the empire of Skanda Gupta—the floor of whose hall of audience was swept by breezes from the bowing of the heads of hundreds of kings; sprung from the line of the Guptas; of wide-extended fame; opulent beyond all *others;* comparable with S'akra; lord of hundreds of monarchs—being quiescent,' etc.

The reading in modern characters, given by Mr. Prinsep, of the hemistich which contains the date, is neither in his facsimile of the original, nor is it grammatical. To bring out his "thirty-three," he must have thought that he found त्रिंशद्दुगेक°, which is inadmissible Sanskrit. Nor is there, in the Sanskrit, शान्तः, the fifth case of a substantive; but शान्ते, the seventh case of a past participle.

There is, then, nothing here recorded concerning the death of Skanda Gupta, as Mr. Prinsep supposes. Being neither the first ruler of the Gupta dynasty, nor the last, nor of special note, it would be extraordinary indeed if time had been computed from his decease. Moreover, if he and his kingdom had so long passed away, it seems preposterous that they should be mentioned, and in so eulogistic a strain; especially as there is not, on this hypothesis, even a subordinate allusion to the reigning monarch. Indubitably, Skanda was on the throne when this memorial was written. The term शान्त, which is applied to his government, has, with other meanings, those of 'serene,' 'tranquil,' 'unperturbed,' 'flourishing.' In bearing these significations, in addition to that of 'discontinued' or 'extinguished,' it may be compared with निर्वाण. Whatever be the era here followed, it appears to have been too well understood, at the time, to call for explicit specification.

The numerical correction above noted was made several years ago, and was communicated to my friend Mr. Edward Thomas. But it had not then occurred to me to attach to शान्त the import which I would now accord it. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1855, p. 385, foot-note. Major Cunningham, while tacitly amending one of Mr. Prinsep's oversights, uncritically accepts another. See his Bhilsa Topes, pp. 141 and 144.

The inscription under comment, if the lithographed copy of it be correct, reads शतपतिः, in the third line, for शतपतेः. Mr. Prinsep gives the latter, and rightly; as the former is irreconcilable with the context.

25. The original word, निधि, before rendered 'repository,' is here to be resumed, but in an altered acceptation.

26. पुर, 'abodes'; put, metonymically, for their inmates. The word is here used for अन्तःपुर, 'the female apartment.'

27. मण्डल, the term employed, was formerly taken in a sense of wider latitude, and in one of narrower. In the middle ages, राष्ट्र and विषय designated, respectively, realms of greater and of inferior power, when they were spoken of with reference to their relative importance.

28. The original is चिन्तामणि, 'the gem of reflection,' by the aid of which all wishes were attainable. We have already had 'the tree of abundance.' The कामधेनु, or 'all-bestowing milch cow,' is fabulously endowed with the like marvellous quality.

29. In the Sanskrit, by studied ambiguity, the expression rendered as above also implies 'tall bambu.'

30. Professor Wilson inadvertently writes the original word with a cerebral in the final syllable.

31. Mená is Párvatí, the daughter of Himálaya.

32. This prolific dame—for she is celebrated as having been the mother of five thousand sons and sixty daughters—is also called Vairiṇí. See the *Harivans'a*, *s'l.* 121, 142. Her father was Víraṇa.

33. S'ivá is a name of Párvatí. Her husband was S'iva, or S'ambhu.

34. Possibly the inscriptionist, who is rather addicted to paltry figures of rhetoric, intended that his 'pinnacle-ball' should, retrospectively, likewise surmount the 'mansion of erotic sentiment.'

35. A moment's pause is due to the elaborate amphibology with which the latter half of this quatrain is conceived. The vanquisher, on another construction than that of the text, is Saumitri, 'who . . . . hosts, embracing the many-wiled Meghanáda and the great Atikáya.' In the third line there is an inaccuracy, however, in the postposition of बहुमाय to its substantive: for it scarcely agrees with अतिकाय.

Saumitri is Lakshmaṇa, the half brother of Ráma. Meghanáda and Atikáya were sons, elder and younger, of Rávaṇa.

It is only by a strain that प्रहस्त can be taken to signify 'strong-armed.' It is not usual as an adjective; its ordinary acceptation being that of 'the palm of the hand with the fingers extended.' There is little doubt that its introduction here was induced by the fact that Prahasta was Rávaṇa's chief counsellor. Yet thus to suggest him in a panegyric on Jayasinha looks anything but complimentary.

36. 'He who has the moon on his head:' S'iva. See the note on the first stanza.

37. 'The lord of physicians:' S'iva, again.

38. Perhaps 'barony:' पत्तला; a vocable not yet entered in our dictionaries.

39. Neither has this place, nor have Uṇḍí and Jáülí, yet been verified.

40. S'aiva, or 'of S'iva,' who is called Pas'upati; a word variously accounted for.

41. The country of Láṭa, or Láṭika, Hellenised into Λαρική, was later called Gurjara, or Gúrjara; Gujerat. Ptolemy regarded it as part of Indo-Scythia.

42. The गोत्र of these प्रवर was that of Yáska. See the note on the seventh stanza.

Maunin is still a well-known family name.

43. Before himself, the author of these verses commemorates their copyist, as happening to be his elder brother. A want of fraternal piety can rarely be urged against the Hindus.

44. Professor Wilson defines सूत्रधार by "carpenter." See the *Haima-kos'a*, section of homonymes, iv. 284; to which the Professor vaguely refers. The word is there explained to mean 'a kind of workman.' It may have the restricted sense of architect, or even of mason. In the next couplet we again meet with it.

45. The general mechanician of the gods; a Vulcan, and much besides.

46. This comparison is not at all more felicitious in the Sanskrit than it is in the English. Pṛithu, who was a king, subdued the earth, which had assumed the figure of a cow. See the translation of the *Vishṇu-puráṇa*, p. 103.

47. The *Vedánta* philosophy is here recognized.

48. This, and the I's'wara of the third couplet, are here, no doubt, epithets of S'iva.

49. A synonymous title of the Destroyer, चराचरगुरु, 'parent of *things* movable and fixed,' is mistaken, by Colebrooke, for वराचरगुरु, "holy, beneficent." Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 304, 308, 309.

50. See, for this and several cognate terms, my note in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1858, p. 227.

51. Thus far this inscription is metrical. The measure of the first and third stanzas is the *Vaktra;* that of the second, the *Priyá.*

52. In the original, *gotra.*

53. Kes'ava's functions not being particularly described, it is uncertain whether *náyaka*, a word of a dozen meanings, or of more, has any reference to revenue.

54. Or Málava; the pleonastic *ka* being adjected.

Fort-Saugor, January 10th, 1858.

Additions.

This paper, after being sent to the Asiatic Society of Bengal, and partially printed for its Journal, was withdrawn. I had hoped to obtain, in England, a solution of the chronological difficulty spoken of in the introductory remarks: but the hope was disappointed. Since reaching America, chiefly by reason of access to books as yet unpublished at the beginning of 1858, I, have been enabled to add the few notes following.

When passing through the station of Jubulpoor, in February of last year, I found, in the Museum at that place, a somewhat weather-worn inscription, hitherto inedited, of the same class with those which precede. Unhappily, I had neither leisure nor health to take a copy of it. The date that it bears is 926: संवत् षड्विंशत्युत्तरनवशताब्देऽपि ९२६. Its poet was S'as'idhara, son of Dharaṇídhara; and it makes mention of Námadeva, son of Mahídhara, as a *sútradhára.* Three of these names we have met with in the record of 907. At the foot of the stone, the ensuing benediction, in the *A'ryá* measure, is legible without difficulty:

यावत् सूर्याचन्द्रौ यातायातं नभस्तले तपतः
तावत् कीर्त्तनमेतत् कीर्त्यै कर्तुः स्थिरं भूयात्।

'As long as the sun and the moon, going and returning, shall shine in the firmament, so long may this eulogy endure, *conducing* to the renown of the doer *of the transaction herein memorialized.*'

To note g, p. 517. Hema A'chárya expressly qualifies Karṇa as Rájá of Chedi, and speaks of him as being of Ḍáhala. This, as we know from the Haima-kos'a, is a synonyme of Tripurí. Karṇa is also mentioned as having been contemporary with Bhoja; and Bhíma Deva marched against him. This Bhíma reigned from A. D. 1022 to A. D. 1072. *Rás-málá,* i. 83, 90.

To note r, p. 520. I now find, on the faith of M. Stanislas Julien's translation, that Hiouen Thsang, agreeably to the *Si-yu-ki,* travelled about a thousand *lis* N. E., in going from Ujjayiní to Tchi-ki-t'o, and thence about nine hundred *lis* N., to Mahes'warapura. M. L. Vivien de Saint-Martin, in his "Mémoire Analytique," puts N. E. for N., in designating the direction of Mo-hi-chi-fa-lo-pou-lo from Tchi-ki-t'o. M. Julien now silently surrenders his identification of Mahes'warapura with Mysore, to the suggestion of his collaborator, that the locality intended is "Matchéri, ou, selon la forme sanskrite, Matchivâra." But it is scarcely probable that Mahes'warapura was transformed into "Matchivâra;" and there is no ground for holding that both names were ever applied to the same city. See Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes, iii. 168, 169, 336, 408, 457, 458.

Professor Wilson writes: "A sudden return to the south-east brings Hiouen Thsang, after a journey of 2800 li (560 miles) to U-che-yen-na, which is clearly Ujjayini or Ougein, the king of which was a Brahman, and consequently Buddhism was at a low ebb. He then goes to Chí-ki-to, north-east 1000 li, considered to be the modern Khajuri, twenty-

five leagues south-west of Gwalior: thence, in the same direction 900 li, to Mo-hi-chi-fa-lo-pu-lo, which M. de St. Martin identifies with Macheri, perhaps Matsyavara, in support of which conjecture it is to be remembered that this part of India is known, in Sanskrit geography, as the Matsyadesa. Little is said of these two principalities, as they were both ruled by Brahman princes, and did not follow the faith of Buddha." Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, xvii. 133.

To note **13**, p. 527. Hiouen Thsang, now that we have a translation of the *Si-yu-ki*, tells us but little of value, touching Kong-yu-t'o, over and above what was reproduced by his biographers. Kong-yu-t'o lay near a bay; and it also lay near the sea. Its position is as far from being fixed as ever. Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes, iii. 91.

To note **42**, p. 532. There are two works, treating of the *Vais'eshika* philosophy, by writers bearing the name of Maunin. One is the *Siddhánta-tattwa-sarvaswa*, by Gopínátha Maunin; a commentary on the *Padártha-viveka* or *Siddhánta-tattwa*. It was prepared by command of Rájá Jayasinha of Báberí. This Gopínátha also composed scholia on the *Kusumánjali*, entitled *Kusumánjali-vikás'a*. The other work is the *S'abdártha-tarkámṛita*, whose author is Kṛishṇa Maunin. See my 'Contribution towards an Index to the Bibliography of the Indian Philosophical Systems;' Calcutta, 1859; pp. 77 and 79.

Troy, N. Y., U. S. A., February 27th, 1860.

Additional Note by the Committee of Publication.

The two monuments illustrated in the foregoing paper—together with a third of like character, already made public by the same author—have been presented by Mr. Hall to the American Oriental Society, and are deposited in its Cabinet, now at New Haven. We have accordingly taken occasion, while this article was going through the press, to make anew a careful examination of the inscriptions, and a verification of the text as published, and would offer here the following additional remarks and explanations.

The larger stone is 33½ inches broad, by 22½ inches high. It is a plain block of greenstone (aphanite, containing a little carbonate of lime), of a soft texture, and easily cut. The inscription upon it is of 29 lines—the last one of them indented about 4 inches—which cover its whole surface, excepting a narrow and unornamented margin. It is engraved with great care, and with no little skill and nicety of execution, and is in almost perfect preservation, so that its characters are, for the most part, as regular, elegant, and legible as the best manuscript. As remarked above by Mr. Hall (note w), no combination of consonants is so difficult or intricate as to compel a resort to any device for abbreviating it: thus the *viráma* never appears, save at the end of a half-verse; the *anusvára*, whether in the middle or at the end of a word, is more often

turned into a conjunct nasal; and a consonant, or the first consonant of a group, is doubled under a ॅ—the only exceptions to this latter rule being र्घ, र्थ, र्य, र्श, र्स, in all cases of their occurrence; and also, in a single instance, र्भ. As regards the diphthongs *e*, *ai*, *o*, *au*, the inscription follows, with total indifference, the ordinary *devanâgarî* method of writing them, or that which is usual in the Bengâlî. The sign of omission (ऽ) is not employed on the stone, nor are the verses of its text numbered; but the marks of interpunction—। after a first half-verse, ॥ after a verse—are introduced with entire regularity. At the end of a half-verse stands always म्, and not *anusvâra*: in two cases, however, (10 d, 28 b) the *virâma* is omitted. Of other omissions, we have, verse 2 a, ाकुरा: for ाकुरा:—this is at a place where a few syllables (viz., धर्म्यकर्म्मा) have been erased and recut. Another like case of correction occurs just before in the same line (viz., कुमुद्स्यकिंश्रा), and a third near the end of the 9th line of the inscription, or at the end of 12 a, affecting the syllables which read, as printed, ज्ञगर्वस्पृ. The correctness of this reading, however, is not entirely certain. The ज्ञ, indeed, admits of no question; the ग is less clear, but yet is altogether probable; for the next syllable the stone gives only the double *v* (व्व), omitting the superposed *r* (ॅ) which causes the reduplication; and the following character is entirely illegible, but cannot possibly, we think, be स्पृ: its lower part, which alone remains unobliterated, is clearly ् (*r*), and not ृ (*ṛ*): above it might stand almost any single letter, but not a double one; for that there is no room, nor could a स have been cut without leaving distinct traces on the unbroken part of the stone. We know not what to conjecture, if not ग्र: ग्रह is sometimes found used in the sense of 'possession' by a passion: the clause might then mean 'Murala ceased to be possessed with arrogance.' In the following *pâda* the stone reads distinctly चकंप for चक्रमे: this is probably Mahîdhara's error; but, if the metre did not forbid, we might regard it as a mis-reading for चकंपे, 'trembled'; perhaps this word was in the cutter's mind. Of the first syllable in the same line and *pâda* only the upper and part of the right-hand lines are left: the consonant must be क; but it might be combined with *r*, and with any vowel excepting *î*—these are the possibilities of the case; we presume the reading proposed by Mr. Hall to be the correct one. At the beginning of verse 6, Mr. Hall's fac-similes failed to give him under the र a ृ, which, though not deeply cut, is still unmistakably traceable: the true reading, then, is ऋपैरनेकैः, 'with manifold forms.' In verse 10, the last syllable of the first half-verse, which comes at the end of a line, is much broken: what is left seems to us to point out distinctly, as the original reading, ता instead of का: this would change the meaning of the word from active to passive. In verse 17 b, finally, the stone has अनिष्ठ्र (जनिष्ठ?) for अनिष्ट.

The stone on which the second inscription is cut is of like character with the other, but has a more amygdaloidal structure, being full of little cavities, which hold carbonate of lime. It is 12 inches broad and 7½ inches high, and contains eight lines. The characters are coarsely, irregularly, and inelegantly cut. It exhibits several orthographical errors, which are corrected in the text as printed: thus the proper name Keçava is both times written with the dental instead of the palatal sibilant, and a like substitution is made in 2 b and 3 d, in the name of Îçvara and its adjective; at the end of 2 b we have °र्द्वो, although the sign of interpunction is not omitted after it; and in 2 c the reading of the stone is सम्राट् (with the virâma; not conjoined with the following ज्ञ). A long passage in the fourth line (from यो to वस्त) has been erased and recut, and parts of it are obscure. Above the syllable मा of नामा (3 a) is a vowel-stroke, and under the म is either a ्, or the remains of one, not quite erased; so that either the former or the present reading is meant to be नाम्रो. The syllable next following, though clearly and deeply cut, is of a somewhat nondescript character, but we do not see how it can be meant for anything but the भू by which it has been rendered. The last line, following the date, is apparently an afterthought, and appended to the inscription as at first engraved. It is crowded in at the lower edge of the stone, and, from वक्त inclusive, runs up its right margin, in the manner which, in printing it, we have imitated.

The third monument, referred to above, is a stone measuring 13½ inches in height by 13 inches in breadth, besides a raised and rounded margin. It is thick and heavy, and shaped upon the back into some form of which the intent is not now recognizable. Its material is greenstone, like that of the others, but much harder and tougher in quality. The text of its inscription, with a translation and notes, was published by Mr. Hall in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Vol. xxviii, for 1859. As appendix to that article, he desires to insert here the following additional note upon the inscription.

Among the three lapidary monuments given by me to the American Oriental Society, there is one of which I have already published the inscription, with an interpretation. My translation was made from a fac-simile tracing; the original never having, at that time, been before me. Now that I have seen the stone itself, it turns out, not unexpectedly, that my first conclusions admit of being rectified. The particulars are as follows:

In the first stanza I find, not what I took to be intended for प्रार्थ्यते ऽनिशम् 'is supplicated persistently,' but, distinctly enough, स्तूयते ऽनिशम् 'is lauded continually.'

The कुर्वन्तो of the second stanza is a misprint for कूर्वन्तो.

For my former decipherment of the third stanza I substitute, with confidence:

केशाः कशालिकाशाभाहुङ्काराारिपिनाकिनः ।
विविगोगतयो द्युः शं वो शाम्बुनगौकसः ॥

'May Brahmá, Vishnu, and S'iva—in color resembling, *severally*, the water-lily, the black bee, and *kás'a* grass; having, *respectively*, for weapons, menacing utterances, a discus, and the *pináka;* moving, *in order as enumerated*, with birds, a bird, and a bull; *and* whose abode is on the *jámbu*-bearing mountain—bestow upon you prosperity.'

After incising वोम्बुनाम्बु—which makes sense, but militates against the metre—the engraver half deleted the first म्ब. It could scarcely have been part of his original.

Limbáryá,* not Liswáyá, is the name of the lady spoken of in the prose.

षिते, for सिते, in the fourth stanza, is an error of the press.

In the sixth stanza there is सर्वं where I have put पूर्वं. सर्वं I am compelled to reject. The person here commemorated is Dosin, not Dhosin.

तद्रा, in the eighth stanza, is my own, I find; and yet right, I suspect, as against the word exhibited, सद्रा. It will be seen that, to avoid something worse than a vain repetition, my conjecture was not ill advised.

The last verse of the inscription has प्रशास्तैयं. By deducting a stroke, so as to bring out प्रशास्तयं, the text is healed; but only provided that प्रशस्ता is permissible in lieu of प्रशस्ती; and this is exceedingly doubtful. To repeat what I have remarked elsewhere, the Sanskrit of this inscription is of very questionable purity.

F. E. H.

Troy, N. Y., April 3rd, 1860.

* Or Litswáryá, as it also admits of being read; the characters of this inscription are cut in such fashion that, where no aid is to be derived from the sense, some readings must remain uncertain.—Comm. of Publ.

ARTICLE V.

THREE SANSKRIT INSCRIPTIONS,

RELATING TO GRANTS OF LAND:

THE ORIGINAL TEXTS, TRANSLATIONS, AND NOTES.

BY FITZ-EDWARD HALL, ESQ., M. A.

Presented to the Society May 17, 1860.

THE copper plate which contains the original of the first among the ensuing inscriptions exists, I believe, at Benares. My transcript was made several years ago; and any indications which I may have noted down at that time are not at present forthcoming. On the age of the grant I am, therefore, unprepared to pronounce with assurance.

A negative fac-simile of the second inscription has been lithographed in the Journal of the Archæological Society of Delhi, for January, 1853. A coarse essay towards an English version of it will also be seen there, together with some speculations which I decline to criticize.

With reference to the remaining inscription, my translation of it is not the first that has been published. For my copy of the Sanskrit, which has not before been in print, I am indebted to the late Major Kittoe. This transcript may have been sophisticated by pandits. A like suspicion, however, attaches to that used by Colebrooke.*

INSCRIPTION NO. I.

स्वस्ति

बृहदर्हद्भगवतो देवासुरशिरोमुकुटरत्नप्रभाविच्छुरित-
पादपद्मयुगलस्याऽद्भुतानेकपतेरनेकवरप्रदस्य देवेश्वरस्वा-

* See his Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 295, 296. My copy has, in the first measure of the second stanza, and again in the prose, the word *deú*, which is not pure Sans-

मिनः पादमूलादवाप्तपञ्चमहाशब्दम॰ासामन्तश्री॰ ॥ ु-वमदवपादानुध्यातः परममा॰श्वरः परमब्रह्मण्यः सम-वाप्तपञ्चमहाशब्दमहासामन्तश्रीबलवर्मदेवः कुशली वेशनदोपकण्ठे भुजङ्गिकाग्रामे सयूथशतानि वर्तमा॰-भविष्यद्राजकुलान्येतद्ग्रामनिवासिनश्च ब्राह्मणोत्तरान् यथार्हं मानय॰ि बोधयति।

वो ऽस्तु विदितमयमुपरिलिखितग्रामो ऽस्माभिः श्रेष्ठि-धर्मकप्रथमवणिग्ग्रामप्रार्थनया ऽऽत्मीयमातापित्रोः स्वस्य च पुण्याभिवृद्धय॰ एभ्यो गौतमसगोत्रयाज्ञिमाध्यन्दिनभोग-स्वाम्यौपमन्यवर॰गोत्रकौथुमछ॰न्दोगनरस्वामिशाण्डिल्य-स॰गोत्रकौथुमछ॰न्दोगविलासस्वामिवासिष्ठसगोत्रकौथुम-छन्दोगभीमस्वामिगौतमसगोत्रकौथुमछन्दोगरुद्रस्वामिभ्यः सब्रह्मचारिभ्यो मुक्तब्रह्मकरविष्टिरचाटभटप्रवेश्यो ऽनन्यक्षितीन्द्रग्राह्य आचन्द्रार्कक्षितिसमकालस्थित्या अग्रहारत्वेन प्रतिपादितः।

मत्वैवं भवद्भिर्यथाकालाध्यासिभी राजकुलानुमन्तव्यचि-त्रसीमनिवासिभिरप्याज्ञाप्रवणाविधेयीभूय समुचितमिय-द्भोगभागकर॰ि॰रण्यादयः प्रत्यादेयाः सर्वे यथाधर्मममी-षामेषां यथाभागा इति।

---

krit, and is evidently a proper name. It is precisely in such a case as this that a pandit would tamper with an original text, by substituting something more classical than what he found. Colebrooke puts "thievish" as the correlate of whatever his apograph exhibited; and that, it is natural to conjecture, may have been *dasyu*.

संवत् ६१ चैत्रसुदि २। दूतकोऽत्र कल्हणः। लिखितं सान्धिविग्रहिकादित्यदत्तेन।

स्वदत्तां परदत्तां वा यो हरेत वसुन्धराम्।
स विष्ठायां कृमिर्भूत्वा पितृभिः सह पच्यते ॥१॥
बहुभिर्वसुधा भुक्ता राजभिः सगरादिभिः।
यस्य यस्य यदा भूमिस्तस्य तस्य तदा फलम् ॥२॥
षष्टिं वर्षसहस्राणि स्वर्गे मोदति भूमिदः।
आच्छेत्ता चाऽनुमन्ता च तान्येव नरके वसेत् ॥३॥
इति शुभम्।

TRANSLATION.

Well be it!

Fortunate *is* the auspicious Bala Varma Deva; sovereign; wholly devoted to the Brahmans;* thoroughly possessed of the five great titles† and great realms; son and successor of the aus-

---

* *Parama brahmanya.*—Hemachandra, in his explanation of his own vocabulary, i. 42, defines the *brahman* and others, in the hagiology of his communion, to be 'ministers of the Arhats and of Ri-habha, etc.,': अर्हतामृषभादीनामुपासकाः।
The promulgator of this instrument was a Jaina.

† Colebrooke (Miscell. Essays, ii. 303) remarks on a passage where this expression occurs, that he is "not entirely confident of the meaning" of it. He was then writing in England; and yet at but little disadvantage, so far as the assistance of learned Bráhmans was concerned.

My own pandits have furnished me with their guesses, which I repeat. Some of these men suppose that the common fivefold repetition of the word *s'rí*, a sort of heathenish pentagion, is here intended. This exposition has the concurrence of Prof. Wilson. See As Res., xv. 508, sixth foot note. Others think that allusion must be had to the five *kalyáṇa-s'abda*, 'utterances of good omen,' enumerated in Baudháyana's *Kalpa-sútra*, for instance. These are *punyáha*, *swasti*, *riddhi*, *s'rí*, and *kalyáṇa*. Others, again, fix their conjecture on the five epithets *mahá-yas'aswin*, *mahá pratápin*, *mahá-dánin*, *mahá-dayálu*, and *mahá prabhu*; or 'most renowned, most glorious, most liberal, most clement, and most powerful.' But no authority has been brought forward in support of any of these elucidations.

Pending the production of something positive, I am disposed to believe that the riddle may be solved by reference to an extract which I made, on a former occasion, in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1858, p. 227, foot-note. If Rájá

picious Pándu Varma Deva: who obtained the five great titles and great realms from the soles of the feet* of the great Arhat,† the adorable; whose two blessed feet‡ are irradiated by the lustre from the gems in the diadems on the heads of benevolent and malignant genii; the wonderful; chief of the multitudes; bestower of numerous boons; lord of the gods; *and* master.

To the present and future royal families, with *their* hundreds of troops, in the village of Bhujangiká,§ near the river Ves'a; and to the inhabitants of that village, most eminent Bráhmans; *he* duly pays respect and gives notice, as follows:

Be it known to you, that this village aforesaid, at the prayer of the head of *his* guild, Dharmaka, and of the leading traders collectively; for enhancement of our mother's, our father's, and our own merit; has been decreed, by us, as an endowment, for such time as the moon, the sun, and the earth shall endure; to be dispensed from religious taxes and from unpaid labor; exempt from the ingress of fortune-tellers‖ and soldiers;¶ *and* protected from the exactions of any other king; to these associate students in theology: Bhoga Swámin, of the stock** of Gautama, and of the *Mádhyandina*;†† Nara Swámin, of the stook of Upamanyu,

---

be there rejected, as having been vulgarized by frequency of use, five titles still remain; those of *Samrál, Bhoja, Swarál, Virál,* and *Parameshthin.* The *mahásámanta* 'great dominions,' named, in the text, after the 'great titles,' and which should seem to be as many in number, may be *sámrájya, bhaujya, swárájya, vairájya,* and *párameshthya.*

Or are the 'five titles' those of *parama-bhattáraka, mahá-rája, adhi-rája, parames'wara,* and *parama-máhes'wara?* See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1858, p. 226, foot-note.

These designations, after all, may be as idle as the sonorous nomenclature of the Byzantine princes of the blood: Despot, Sebastocrator, Cæsar, Panhypersebastos, and Protosebastos. See Gibbon, chap. liii.

It should excite no surprise to find the Jainas borrowing almost anything from the Hindus.

* *Pádamúla* Prof Wilson, professedly taking Hemachandra for his guide, renders this word by "heel." Hemachandra simply gives *gohira* as its synonyme; and this he derives from *guhyate,* 'is concealed.' Several words for 'foot' precede, in this author, *pádamúla* and *gohira*, and others for 'heel' follow them. But Rantideva, as quoted in Vedánti Mahádeva's *Budha-manohara,* interprets *pádamúla* by *párshni,* 'heel.' The translation in the text may, accordingly, be liable to correction.

† This name may denote either a Buddha or a Jina. The latter is here meant.

‡ Literally, 'lotos-feet.'

§ This place has not been recognized; nor has the river Ves'a; nor Chitra, further on.

‖ *Cháta;* which Colebrooke translates as above, in his Digest of Hindu Law, etc., i. 311 (8vo edition).

¶ The billeting of troops appears, from this phrase, to have been known among the Hindus, in former ages.

I think I can, at this place, detect several words of my original, and in the same order, in another inscription. See As. Res., xv. 510, fifth foot-note: and the first transcript at the end of the volume, twelfth and thirteenth lines ab infra.

** In the Sanskrit, here and several times below, *gotra.*

†† This is a branch of the White *Yajur-veda.*

and of the *Kauthuma-chhandoga;** Vilása Swámin, of the stock of S'aṇḍila, and of the *Kauthuma-chhandoga;* Bhíma Swámin, of the stock of Vasishṭha, and of the *Kauthuma-chhandoga;* and Rudra Swámin, of the stock of Gautama, and of the *Kauthuma-chhandoga.*

Thus aware, you successive residents, dwelling in the vicinity of the town of Chitra, under authority from *our* regal house, humbly giving attention to *our* mandate, are, moreover, fitly to pay to these very Bráhmans, in such proportion as is equitable, all share of produce, tribute, money-rent, and similar *impositions.*

Done in the year sixty-one,† on the second *day* of the moon's increase in *Chaitra;* the deputy‡ in this *transaction being* Kalhaṇa; *and these articles* being drawn up by A'dityadatta, fecial.§

1. He that wrongfully resumes land, given by himself, or given by another, turned to a worm in ordure, with his forefathers, *thus* receives retribution.

2. By many kings, Sagara and others, the earth has been enjoyed. His, ever, whose is the soil, is *its* produce.

3. Sixty thousand years does the giver of land rejoice in heaven: *and* even as many does he that confiscates *land,* or abets *its confiscation,* abide in a place of torment.||

Prosperity!

Inscription No. II.

ओम्। नमो नारायणाय। संवत् ११७७ कार्त्तिकवदि अमावास्यायां रविदिने ऽद्येह श्रीमन्मलपुरनगरदुर्गे परम-वैष्णवः परमब्रह्मण्यो दीनानाथकृपणजनवत्सलो ऽनेक-गुणगणालङ्कृतशरीरः पितृमातृपादाम्बुजशुश्रूषणापरो युधिष्ठिरवत् सत्यवादी भीमसेन इवाऽत्यद्भुतवीर्यो ऽर्जुन इव धनुर्धराग्रेसरः कर्ण इव त्यागार्जितकीर्त्तिः दुर्योधन

---

* The *Chhandoga* is the *Sáma-Veda;* and the *Kauthumí* is one of its divisions.

† *Samvat,* as was long ago established, is frequently otherwise employed than to express the era of Vikramáditya. See Colebrooke's Miscell. Essays, ii. 281; and Prinsep's Useful Tables, Part the Second, p. 87.

‡ Envoy, commissioner: *dútaka.* See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1837, p. 669, last line; and for 1839, p. 299, l. 9.

§ *Sándhi-vigrahika,* in the original.

|| The metre of the three stanzas with which this grant terminates is the *pathyávaktra.*

इव म-ामानी मृगेन्द्र इवाऽप्रतिमपराक्रमः समर-वसुधावतीर्णदुर्वारवैरिवारणघटासङ्घट्टविघट्टनोपार्जितय-शःसुधाधवलिताखिलम-ीमण्डलः श्रीमत्क-ऽपघाता-न्वयसरःकमलमार्तण्डो महाराजाधिराजपरमेश्वरश्रीगग-नसिंहदेवपादानुध्यानप्रबलपरमभट्टारकम-ाराजाधिराज-परमेश्वरश्रीशरदसिं-देवपादा-ध्यानपरः परमराज्ञीश्री-लषमादेवीगर्भरत्नाकरोत्पन्नमाणिक्यमूर्तिः परमभट्टारक-म ाराजाधिराजपरमेश्वरश्रीवीरसिंहदेवो विजयी उपरि-सूचितग्रामे ब्राह्मणोत्तरान् बलिराजमहत्तप्रमुखसमस्त-जनपदान् यथार्हं प्रतिमान्य सम्बोधयति समाज्ञापयति च।

विदितमस्तु भवतां यथानामतः प्रसिद्धो बबाडो ग्रामः र-मस्तनिजसीमखलावलयपर्यन्तः सवनवृक्षमालाकुलः साम्रमधूकारामः र-मस्ततृणकाष्ठाटवीयुक्त आकाशपाता-लीयोत्पत्तिसमुपेतो महादण्डदोहदशापराधपरिवर्जितः प्रतिषिद्धचौर ्रप्रवेशो ऽष्टादशप्रबलीसमन्वितो यथा-भागभोगकरहिरण्यादिप्रवेशः -तु ाघाटविशुद्धः श्रद्धया पुण्ये ऽहनि मनोनुध्यातग ानदीजले हिरण्यदर्भो-दकस्पर्श ्वकं विधिवत् पित्रोरात्मनश्चैहिकामुष्मिकपु-ण्यय ोभिवृद्धये ऽस्माभिः प्रतीतः काश्यपगोत्रायाऽवस-थिकगोविन्दाय पदे २ आ पद्मनाभाय पदं १ केशवाय

पदं १ उपमन्युगोत्राय ब्रतुर्वेदिरामाय पदं १ केशवाय पदं १ नारसिंहाय पदं १ लक्ष्मणाय पदं १ भारद्वाजगोत्राय सठे पदं १ काश्यपगोत्राय दामोदराय पदं ०॥ केशवाय पदं ०॥ कृष्णात्रेयगोत्राय पंडितिल्लाय पदं १ काश्यपगोत्राय पं गोपति पदं १ अत्रिगोत्राय महसोण पदं १ भार्गवगोत्राय शीले पदं १ कृष्णात्रेयगोत्राय नानू पदं १ भारद्वाजगोत्राय माल्ये पदं १ कपिष्ठलगोत्राय चामर पदं १ गौतमगोत्राय ठम्राय पदं १ प्रदत्तः। स च भवद्भिरनुमन्तव्य अनुपालनीयश्च।

यानि च भूदानप्रशंसावाक्यानि व्यासादिभिः प्रणीतानि भवद्भिः श्रुतान्येव यथा।

बहुभिर्वसुधा भुक्ता राजभिः सगरादिभिः।
यस्य यस्य यदा भूमिस्तस्य तस्य तदा फलम्॥१॥
सर्वेषामेव दानानामेकजन्मानुगं फलम्।
हाटकक्षितिगोनॄणां सप्तजन्मानुगं फलम्॥२॥
हलकृष्टां महीं दद्यात् सबीजां शस्यशालिनीम्।
यावत् सर्पभूतान् लोकान् तावत् स्वर्गे महीयते॥३॥
भूमिं यः प्रतिगृह्णाति यस्तु भूमिं प्रयच्छति।
उभौ तौ पुण्यकर्माणौ नियतौ स्वर्गगामिनौ॥४॥
समाः शतसहस्राणि स्वर्गे तिष्ठति भूमिदः।

आच्छेत्ता चाऽनुमन्ता च तान्येव नरकं व्रजेत् ॥५॥
यागानां च सहस्रेण अश्वमेधशतेन च।
गवां शतसहस्रेण भूमिहर्त्ता न शुध्यति ॥६॥
अस्मद्वंशे परिक्षीणे परवंश्यो ऽपि यो भवेत्।
तस्याऽहं पादयोर्लग्नो मद्दत्तं पालयिवि ॥७॥

लिखितमिदं ग्रामशासनं ठकुरअर्जुनसुतेन पण्डित-सलखकेन। यदस्मिन् न्यूनाक्षरमधिकाक्षरं वा तत् सर्वं प्रमाणमिति।

महाराजाधिराजश्रीमद्वीरसिंहस्य विजयिनः स्वहस्तः।

TRANSLATION.

Om! Glory to Náráyaṇa!

In the year 1177, on this *current* day, Sunday, at the moon's conjunction* in the dark fortnight of *Kárttika*, here, in the great fortress of fortunate Nalapura, the auspicious Vírasinha Deva; an earnest worshipper of Vishṇu; a zealous votary of Bráhmaṇs; compasionate to the indigent, the helpless, and the miserable; whose figure is graced with an assemblage of numerous merits; diligent in deferential attachment to the lotos-feet of his father and mother; veracious as Yudhishṭhira; for heroism, the most surprising, equal to Bhímasena; like Arjuna, eminent among archers; a parallel to Karṇa, in having acquired fame by his munificence;† like Duryodhana, very superb; like the lord of beasts, unrivalled in prowess; who has illustrated the entire orb of the earth by the radiance of his renown, in resisting the encounter of legions of elephant-like enemies, hard to be repulsed when they have taken the field of battle; a sun to the lilies in the lake of the happy Kachchhapa-ghátá lineage; supreme sovereign, great king, chief ruler, and lord paramount; whose person is a ruby derived from that mine of gems, the womb of the noble queen, the

* The original has, erroneously, अमावास्यां.

† On the plate is त्यागार्ज्जिताज्जित°. A repetition, detected when inchoate, was left unerased.

auspicious Lakshmí* Deví; son and successor of the fortunate S'aradasinha Deva, very potent,† supreme sovereign, great king, chief ruler, and lord paramount, son and successor of the fortunate Gaganasinha Deva, great king, chief ruler, and lord paramount; victorious; with due esteem acquaints and enjoins, *as follows*, Bráhmans most excellent, *and* persons of influence, royalets, heads of ascetic communities,‡ and all *his* most respectable subjects, *dwelling* in the within-mentioned village.

Be it known to you, that the village *herein* specified, notorious under the name of Babáḍa—as far as all its zone-like limits; with its forests, lines of trees, and habitations; with its groves of mangoes and *madhúkas;* with all its grass, wood, and wilds; including whatever is produced from the heavens to the regions beneath the earth; free from rigorous penalties, wrong-doing, and the ten offenses; a place where the ingress of robbers is prohibited; provided with the eighteen classes; exempt from *the payment of* share of produce, tax, money-rent, and the like *exactions;* its four boundaries being ascertained; from pure motives; on a lucky day; *we standing* in water mentally meditated as *symbolizing* the Ganges and other great rivers; after the touching of gold, sacrificial grass, and water; for augmentation of the merit and celebrity,§ in this world and in the next, of our parents and of ourself—has, by us, been allotted, in prescribed form, to Govinda, a householder, of the stock of Kas'yapa, two shares;‖ to *his* brother, Padmanábha, one share; to Kes'ava, one share; to Chaturvedí Ráma, of the stock of Upamanyu, one share; to Kes'ava, one share; to Nárasinha, one share; to Lakshmaṇa, one share; to Saṭh,¶ of the stock of Bharadwája, one share; to Dámodara, of the stock of Kas'yapa, half a share; to Kes'ava, half a share; to Panchhíhila, of the stock of Krishṇátreya, one share; to the pandit Gopati, of the stock of Kas'yapa, one share; to Mahasoṇa, of the stock of Atri, one share; to S'íl, of the stock of Bhṛigu, one share; to Nánú, of the stock of Krishṇátreya, one share; to Málí, of the stock of Bharadwája, one share; to Chámara, of the stock of Kapishṭhala, one share; and to

* Here I give the old form for the modern of the original, Lakhamá, as is the pronunciation.

The scholar will observe other like substitutions a little further down.

† I have struck out a superfluous *visarga* postfixed to the Sanskrit of this expression.

‡ The designation of these monastic superiors is *mahanta*, which is impure Sanskrit. Sounded as *mahant*, it is still in common use.

§ यशो has been corrected from ऽशो.

‖ The word *pada* is employed, throughout this instrument, in an acceptation somewhat unusual.

¶ This name, and several others to come, not being Sanskrit, have rather perplexed the inscriptionist, as subjects of inflectional manipulation.

Thaä, of the stock of Gautama, one share. And *the appropriation of* this *village* you are to respect and maintain.

You must have heard the sentences, delivered by Vyása and others, encomiastic of the presenting of land; as for instance:

1. By many kings, *such as* Sagara and others, the earth has been enjoyed. His, ever, whose is the soil, is *its* produce.

2. The result, *generally*, of all gifts whatever affects *but* a single life; *but* the recompense of *bestowing* gold, land, cows, and slaves, attaches to seven courses of existence.

3. Let one confer land that has been tilled by the plough, or sown, or that bears a crop: while the worlds, upheld by the serpent, subsist, does *such* a one receive honor in elysium.

4. He that receives land, and he that bestows land, both, as performing acts of merit, assuredly go to the regions of bliss.

5. A hundred thousand years does the donor of land abide in paradise; *and* for even as many is the disseizor, or the furtherer *of disseizin*, consigned to a place of torment.

6. Not by a thousand sacrifices, nor by a hundred hippocausts, nor by *the gift of* a hundred thousand kine, does the usurper of land make *effectual* expiation.

7. Whatever offspring of a stranger may be *monarch*, when my race shall have become extinct, I clasp his feet; *suing that* he will regard my donation.

This grant of the village was engrossed by the pandit Salakshaṇa, son of the Ṭhakur Arjuna. As for there being in it a letter too few, or a letter too many, it is, still, complete authority.

The autograph of the auspicious Vírasinha, great king and chief ruler, the victorious, *is subscribed*.*

INSCRIPTION NO. III.

स्वस्त्युद्धतप्रथितकीर्तिधरः समन्ताद्
देवः प्रतापधवलो वदति स्ववंशम्।
ग्रामेष्वमीषु कलहण्डिसमीपगेषु
विप्रैः सुदण्डहलनैरिह छद्मना यत् ॥१॥
उत्कोच्य गाधिनगराधिपदासदेऊ-
हस्तात् कुताम्रमिमकं प्रगृहीतमस्ति।

* An arrow, pointing to the left, is traced at the end of the writing, on the tablet.

नाऽत्र प्रतीतिविषयः परितो विधेयः
सूच्यग्रभेद्यमपि भूमितलं न तेषाम् ॥२॥

संवत् १२२५ ज्येष्ठवदि ३ बुधे जापिलाधिपतिमहा-नायकश्रीप्रतापधवलदेवचरणा आत्मवंशोद्भवानां पुत्र-पौत्रादीनां स्वरूपं कथयन्ति। यदेतत् सुदण्डहलीयलोकैः कान्यकुब्जाधिपतिश्रीविजयचन्द्रभूपदासदेऊपार्श्वादुत्कोचं दत्वा कलहण्डीबडपिलाग्रामयोः कुताम्रमानीतं छद्मना तत्र प्रतीतिर्न कार्या। सर्वथा लम्पटा अमी द्विजाः। सूच्यग्रभेद्याऽपि भूमिर्न तेषामस्ति। इति ज्ञात्वा स्वामि-भोगादिकं ग्रहीष्यथ विलपिष्यथ चेति।

महाराजपुत्रस्य।

TRANSLATION.

Well be it!* Pratápa Dhavala Deva, everywhere† possessor of eminent and extensive renown, addresses his kindred *in these words:* As for that paltry copper‡ *grant* which *certain* Bráhmans —sprung from men of goodly staves and ploughs§—living in

* Hindu inscriptions very commonly have an auspicious vocable, as *siddham*, *siddhi*, or *swasti*, prefixed to them. In the present instance, the word is *swasti*, and is part of a verse. Still I conceive that it must be taken as an interjection. Colebrooke connects it with the contiguous *udgata;* rendering the combination by "happily risen:" a form of expression of which I have never seen a precedent or parallel; unless it qualifies the *s'rí* which is often written after it.

† Colebrooke represents *samantád* by "wholly," a meaning of which it is susceptible; but he joins it, unnaturally, with the next word, *deva*. This term denotes kingly rank. It is never employed in the construction which Colebrooke here assumes.

‡ My copy has *kutámra* twice, where Colebrooke's had *kutámbra*. I fear that Major Kittoe's pandit has here been officious.

§ In my copy, *sudandahala;* in place of which the prose has *sudandahalíya*. Colebrooke gives *suvalluhala* and *swalluhaníya*, respectively. In my transcript I here again suspect adulteration at the hands of Major Kittoe's pandit. The original should seem to have been wrested, so as to yield a sense in keeping with the rest of the document; as if Pratápa Dhavala taunted the Bráhmans in question, by hinting that they were mere rustics and husbandmen, and lacked the appropriate literature of their tribe.

these villages adjoining Kalahaṇḍi,* have fraudulently, by bribery, obtained from the hand of Deú, a slave of the sovereign of Gádhinagara;† foundation of credit in it is not in any wise‡ to be admitted; *as* they have not even so much ground as could be pierced with the point of a needle.§

In *Samvat* 1225,|| on Wednesday, the third *day* of the dark semi-lunation of *Jyesṭhha*, the feet¶ of the great chieftain,** the fortunate Pratápa Dhavala Deva, governor of Jápila,†† announce the truth, *as follows*, to *his* sons, grandsons, and others, born of his stock: With respect to this vile copper *grant* of the villages of Kalahaṇḍí and Baḍapilá,‡‡ surreptitiously procured, on giving a bribe, by *sundry* folk of goodly staves and ploughs, from Deú, a slave of the lord of Kányakubja, the fortunate king Vijayachandra;§§ dependence is not to be placed on it. These Bráhmans are altogether reprobates. They have not even soil which the point of a needle could penetrate.

Mindful of this *proclamation*, you will collect and levy|||| the proprietor's¶¶ share of produce and the like.***

The son of the great king.†††

Saugor, February, 1858.

---

* As remarked by Colebrooke, the short vowel at the end of this name is exchanged for a long one, where the word is repeated further on.

† Gádhinagara is called, below, Kányakubja; or Kanoj.

‡ In the Sanskrit, *parito;* which Colebrooke strangely translates "by the people around."

§ Thus far the inscription is in verse; the metre, *vasantatilaká*. An intelligible English translation of these two stanzas renders it impossible to mark the beginning of the second, without taking in much of the first. The prose which follows is a paraphrase of what has preceded.

|| Colebrooke has 1229. The Samvat year 1225 corresponds to A. D. 1168.

¶ This singular expression only shows the dignity of the person concerned. A Hindu disciple refers, in the same phraseology, to the enunciations of his preceptor or of his ancestors.

** In the Sanskrit, *náyaka*.

†† Colebrooke has Japila, which, he says, is a portion of the district of "Rámaghar"—*recte*, Rámagaḍha or Rámgaṛh. This district lies in South Bihár.

‡‡ "Badayitá," according to Colebrooke.

§§ Vijayachandra was the penultimate king of Kanoj. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for 1858, p. 218.

|||| "You will take ....; or destroy," says Colebrooke. But *vilapayatha* scarcely imports destrction; and the *cha* seems to be cumulative rather than alternative.

¶¶ Colebrooke does not translate *swámi*.

*** In the Sanskrit, *bhoga*. "Share of produce" is Colebrooke's. Its correctness may admit of question.

††† Instead of this, Colebrooke has: "*Signature* of the great Rájaputra (king's son) the fortunate S'atrughna." My copy of the original must, consequently, be defective by several words.

ARTICLE VI.

A GREEK INSCRIPTION FROM DAPHNE,

NEAR ANTIOCH, IN SYRIA.

By JAMES HADLEY,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN YALE COLLEGE.

Presented to the Society May 10, 1859.

For our copies of this remarkable inscription, we are indebted to the Rev. Homer B. Morgan, a missionary of the American Board in Syria. The following extracts from a letter addressed by that gentleman to a friend in this country contain an account of the stone which bears the inscription, and of the circumstances under which he made his first copy. He writes from "Bitias (Antioch), July 23rd, 1858."

"Enclosed I send you a copy of an inscription which I have found in a garden on the ancient site of Daphne. I have reason to believe that it has not been copied before. It is only a few years since it was dug up, and although I have been at the spot many times, I have never heard from the Fellahs, that any Europeans but myself, and those whom I have taken there, have seen it. Indeed, the whole inscription cannot have been copied; for one half of the stone was covered with a calcareous incrustation which I was obliged to chip off. The stone is a very compact limestone. The portion of it which is covered by the inscription is 17 × 30 inches, and there are about six inches of plain surface below the last line of letters. The end below is rough and narrowed, as if to fit into a mortice, to hold it in an upright position. Neither the edges nor the back of the stone are polished. It is eight or ten inches thick. I have been for nearly a year trying to get it into my possession, so as to remove it to Antioch; but the owner of the garden at last got such high notions of its value, that I made up my mind to obtain the best copy I could on the spot. I went out two successive days, taking

a young man with me to assist in cleaning the stone. Many of the letters were exceedingly indistinct, and some of them I could not make out at all. Indeed, I should not have been able to copy nearly so much as I did, if I had not adopted a plan suggested by the young man with me. He first blackened the whole surface with ink, and then, after it had well dried, sponged the surface, which left the letters considerably plainer than before. * * * Should the inscription prove to be of value, and there be any necessity for it, I would take the time to examine the stone with more care. I send also a fac-simile of the first part of the 23d and 25th lines, to show you the size and style of the letters.

I have said that the stone was dug up in a garden at Daphne. The immediate vicinity gives every evidence of having been the site of important buildings in ancient times. The whole surface of the ground is covered with fragments of pottery, and bits of wrought marble. There are two other stones near by with fragmentary inscriptions, one of which begins with *HBOYAH* in large, handsome letters. It consists of a half dozen lines of ten or twelve letters each, which evidently ran off upon another stone placed by the side of this, which stone is not above the surface of the ground, if it still exists. There are also several fragments of granite pillars. One of these, two years ago, was lying by the side of the road, and upon the edge of a bit of rather handsome tesselated pavement. The part that was then visible has now been destroyed, probably by some treasure-hunting Fellah. There are also in this same garden a large number of blocks of stone, which evidently once formed a water-course. They are about two feet in diameter, and twenty inches or two feet in length, with a perforation about six inches in diameter. Each block is made with a circular projection corresponding to an indentation in its next neighbor, after the fashion of water-pipes. They have evidently been cemented to each other, though I can see no calcareous deposit showing that they were used any length of time, which would certainly be found if the Daphne-water had flowed through them. The external surface of all was finished with evident care. Some of them are fluted longitudinally, as if they had served for columns. So much about antiquities for the present. There is a great field here for minute investigation; but I have little time to give to such employments."

The gentleman addressed in this letter sent it with the enclosed copy of inscription to Professor Gibbs, who at once recognized the interesting nature of the Greek text, and wrote to Mr. Morgan, begging him to give the stone a new and more complete examination. In return he received two copies further, evidently made with great care, one of them dated Oct. 19th, 1859,

the other Nov. 23rd, 1859. The latter of these copies is represented in the following lines, though in some instances we have supplied its imperfections by letters (which we enclose in brackets) taken from the copy of Oct. 19th :

Δ \ \Ι ΙΓΝ ΙΙΙΙ
ΤΗΣΕΙΣΗΜΑΣΚΑΙ—Α ΙΣ Α
ΛΑΣΚΑΙΜΕΓΑΛΑΣΑΠΟΔΕ Ε[Ι]Σ [ΕΠΟ] ΜΕΝΟΝ
ΕΚΤΕΝΩΣΚΑ[Ι]ΟΥΤΕΤΗΣΥ [Κ]ΗΣΟ [ΕΤΩΝ]ΥΠΑΕ
ΧΟΝΤΩΝΠΕΦΕΙΣΜΕΝΟ [ΕΙ]ΣΤΑΗΜΙΝΣΥΜΦΕΡΟΝΤΑ
ΔΙΕΞΑΓΗΟΧΟΤΑΔΕΚΑ Ε[Γ]ΧΕΙΡΙΣΘΕΝΤΑΑΥΤΟ
ΩΣΗΝΠΡΟΣΗΚΟΝΚΑΙΚΑΤΑΤ[Α]ΛΟΙΠΑΑΓΟΜΕΝΟΝ
ΞΙΩΣΤΩΝ[Π]ΡΟΥΠΗΡΓΜΕΝΩΝΕ ΑΥΤΟΥΕΙΣΤΑΠ
ΓΜΑΤΑΗΒΟΥΛΟΜΕΘΑΜ[ΕΝ]Ε[Τ]Ε ΣΥΝΕΧΕΙΝΣΥ[Μ]
ΠΡΑΣΣΟΝΤΑΗΜΙΝΠΟΛΛΑ [ΙΑ]· ΑΥΤΟΥΠΡΟΦΕΡΟ
ΜΕΝΟΥΤΗΝΠΕΡΙΤΟΣΩΜ[Α]Σ [Γ]ΕΝΗΜΕΝΗΝΑΣΘΕ
ΝΕΙΑΝΔΙΑΤΑΣΣΥΝΕΧΕΙΣΚΑΚΟΤΑΘΙΑΣΑΞΙΟΥΙ
ΤΟΣΤΕΗΜΑΣΕΑΣΑΙΑΥΤΟΝΕ[Φ]ΗΣ ΧΙΑΣΓΕΝΕ
ΟΛΙΟΓΩΣΤΟΝΕΠΙΛΟΙΠΟΝΧΡΟΝΟΝΤΟΥΒΟΥΛΓ
ΣΠΑΣΤΩΣΕΝΕΥΣΤΑΘΕΙΑ ΤΟΥΣΩΜΑΤΟΣΓ[Ε]
ΗΤΑΙΣΥΜΠΕΡΙΗΝ[ΕΧ]ΘΗΜΕΝΟΕΛΟ[Ν]ΤΕΣΚΑΙΕ
ΟΥΤΟΙΣΦΑΝΕΡΑΝΠΟΙΕΙΝΗΗΝΕΝΟΜΕΝΠΡΟ
ΤΟΝΑΙΡΕΣ ΝΙΝΑΜΕΝΟΥΝΚΑΕΙΣΤΟΑΟ
ΟΝΤΥΓΧΑΝΗΙΠΑΝΤΩΝΤΩΝΕΙΣΤΙΜΗΝΚ
ΟΞΑΝΑΝΗΚΟΝΤΩΝΗΜΙΝΕΣΤΑΕΠΙΜΕΛ
ΠΕΙΔΗΤΗΣΑΡΧΙΕΡΩΣΥΝΗΣΤΟΥΑΠΟΛΛΩΝΟ
ΑΙΤΗΣΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣΤΩΝΔΑΙΤΤΩΝΚΑΙΤΩ
ΑΛΛΩΝΙΕΡΩΝΩΝΤΑΤΕΜΕΝΗΕΣΤΙΝΕΠ
ΔΑΦΝΗΣΠΡΟΣΔΕΟΜΕΝΗΣΑΝΔΡΟΣΦΙΛΟΥ
ΝΗΣΟΜΕΝΟΥΔΕΠΡΟΣΤΗΝΑ ΑΞ ΩΣΤΗΣ
ΠΕΡΤΟΥΤΟΠΟΥΣΠΟΥΔΗΣΗ[Ν]ΕΣΧΟΝΟ Τ
ΓΟΝΟΙΚΑΙΗΜΕΙΣΚΑΙΤΗ Ε ΗΜΩΝΠΡΟΣΤΟΘΕΙΟΝ
ΕΥΣΕΒΕΙΑΣΑΠΟΔΕ Ε[Ι]ΧΑΜ ΝΑΥΤΟΝΑΡΧ
ΕΡΕΑΤΟΥΤΩΝΠΕΓ Σ ΝΟΙΤΗΝΠΕΡΙΤΑΙΕΡ
ΕΞΑΓΩΓΗΝΜΑΛΙΣΤΑΝΔΙΑΤΟΥΤΟΥΣΥΝ
ΤΕΛΕΣΘΗΣΕΣΘΑΙΔΕΟΝΤΩΣΣΥΝΤΑΞΟΝ
ΕΝΤΕΤΟΙΣΧΡΗΜΑΤΙΣΜΟΙΣΚΑΤΑΧΩΡΙΞΕΙΝ
ΑΥΤΟΝΑΡΧΙΕΡΕΑΤΩΝΔΕΔΗΛΩΜΕΝΩΝΙΕΡΩΝ
ΚΑΙΠΡΟΤΙΜΑΝΤΟΝΑΝΔΡΑΑΞΙΩΣΤΗΣΗΜΕ
ΤΕΡΑΣΚΡΙΣΕΩΣΚΑΙΕΑΝΕΙΣΤΙΝΑΠΑΡΑΚΑΛ
ΤΩΝΑΝΗΡΟΝΤΩΝΕΙΣΤΑΥΤΑΣΥΝΕΠΙΛΑΜ
ΒΑΝΕΣΘΑ[Ι]ΤΟΥΣΤΕΠΡΟΣΤΟΙΣΙΕΡΟΙΣΓΙΝΟΜ
ΝΟΥΣΚΑΙΤΟΥΣΑΛΛΟΥΣΟΥΣΚΑΘΗΚΕΙΠΙ

ΘΑΡΧΕΙΝΑΥΤΟΥΣΥΣΤΗΣΑΙΠΑ[ΡΑ]ΓΓΕ[ΙΑ]Α
ΤΑΣΥΠΑΚΟΥΕΙΝ ΕΡΙΩΝΑΝ[Γ]ΡΑ[Φ]ΙΙΙΗΣΙΝΤΑ
ΣΗΙΑΝΑΓΡΑΦΗΝΔ[Ι]ΔΕΚΑΙΤΗΣΕΠΙΣΤΟΛΗΣ
ΤΟΑΝΤΙΓΡΑΦΟΝΕΙΣΣΤΗΛΑΣΚΑΙΑΝΑΘΕΙΝ
ΕΝΤΟΙΣΕΠΙΦΑΝΕΣΤΑΤΟΙΣΤΟΠΟΙΣ

ΔΚΡ ΔΙΟΥ ΙΔ

In the copy of Oct. 19th, the first two lines are given as follows:

Δ \Λ-Ι ΙΕΝ ΗΠΙΛ
ΤΗΣΕΙΣΗΜΑΣΚΑΙΤΑ ΡΑΓ Α ΙΑΦΕΣ \ ΣΙΟ

Daphne, the place of this inscription, was celebrated in antiquity for its magnificent worship of Apollo and Artemis, which was established here by the first Seleucus of Syria, and continued for more than six centuries, until the temple was destroyed by fire in the reign of Julian the Apostate. An elaborate and glowing description of the place and its worship may be found in Gibbon's Decline and Fall, chapter xxiii. A more recent account has been given by the distinguished K. O. Müller, in his dissertations De Antiquitatibus Antiochenis (Gottingae, 1829), p. 41 etc. The inscription before us relates, as we might have expected, to the worship of these divinities. It is a document which recites the appointment of a certain person as high-priest of Apollo and Artemis. The letters at the foot appear to give its date, as the 14th day of Dius (the first month of the Macedonian year, which seems to have commenced in October), in the year 124 of some era—most probably, that of the Seleucidæ. If so, the document belongs to the autumn of 189 B. C., when the Syrian king, Antiochus the Great, had come to the thirty-fifth year of his reign, one year after his decisive overthrow by the Romans at Magnesia, and two years before his violent death. The authority, individual or corporate, by which it was issued, the officer to whom it was addressed, and the person whose appointment to the high-priesthood it sets forth, must have been named at the beginning of the inscription. The illegible first line seems quite insufficient for all these designations: we can hardly help believing that one line at least, and perhaps two or three, have been lost altogether. Possibly they may have been engraved upon another stone, surmounting the one which contained the lines here copied. Notwithstanding the difficulties of which Mr. Morgan speaks, the first line of his copy is the only one which cannot be read with tolerable certainty. In the following restoration, we have been aided by suggestions from President Woolsey and Professor Gibbs.

[τὸν δεῖνα, τῆς πίστεως καὶ εὐνοίας] τῆς εἰς ἡμᾶς καὶ τὰ [π]ράγ[μ]α[τα σ]αφεσ[τάτα]ς [π]ολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἀποδε[ίξ]εις [π]εποι[η]μένον ἐκτενῶς, καὶ οὔτε τῆς [ψυχ]ῆς ο[ὔτ]ε τῶν ὑπα[ρ]χόντων πεφεισμένο[ν] εἰς τὰ ἡμῖν συμφέροντα, διεξαγηοχότα δὲ κα[ὶ τὰ] ἐγχειρισθέντα αὐτ[ῷ] ὡς ἦν προςῆκον, καὶ κατὰ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγόμενον [ἀ]ξίως τῶν προϋπηργμένων ἐ[ξ] αὐτοῦ εἰς τὰ π[ράγ]ματα, ἠβουλόμεθα μὲν ἔτε[ι] συνέχειν συμπράσσοντα ἡμῖν πολλά. [Ἀ]λ[λ'] αὐτοῦ προφερομένου τὴν περὶ τὸ σῶμα [γε]γενημένην ἀσθένειαν διὰ τὰς συνεχεῖς κακο[π]αθ[ε]ίας, ἀξιοῦ[ν]τός τε ἡμᾶς ἐᾶσαι αὐτὸν ἐφ' ἡσ[υ]χίας γενέ[σθ]αι ὅ[π]ως τὸν ἐπίλοιπον χρόνον τοῦ β[ί]ου [ἀδια]σπάστως ἐν εὐσταθείᾳ τοῦ σώματος γέ[ν]ηται, συμπεριηνέχθημεν [θ]έ[λ]οντες καὶ ἐ[ν τ]ούτοις φανερὰν ποιεῖν ἣν ἔ[χ]ομεν πρὸ[ς αὐ]τὸν αἵρεσ[ι]ν. Ἵνα μὲν οὖν κα[ὶ] εἰς τὸ [λ]ο[ιπ]ὸν τυγχάνῃ πάντων τῶν εἰς τιμὴν κ[αὶ δ]όξαν ἀνηκόντων, ἡμῖν ἔστα[ι] ἐπιμελ[ές. Ἐ]πειδή, τῆς ἀρχιερωσύνης τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνο[ς κ]αὶ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῶν δαιτ[ρ]ῶν καὶ τῶ[ν] ἄλλων ἱερῶν ὧν τὰ τεμένη ἐστὶν ἐπ[ὶ] Δάφνης προσδεομένης ἀνδρὸς φίλου [δυ]νησομένου δὲ προστῆνα[ι] ἀξ[ί]ως τῆς [ὑ]πὲρ τοῦ τόπου σπουδῆς ἣν ἔσχον ο[ἵ] τ[ε πρό]γονοι καὶ ἡμεῖς καὶ τῆ[ς] ἐ[ξ] ἡμῶν πρὸς τὸ θεῖον εὐσεβείας, ἀποδε[δ]είχαμ[ε]ν αὐτὸν ἀρχ[ι]ερέα τούτων πε[πει]σ[μέ]νοι τὴν περὶ τὰ ἱερ[ὰ] ἐξαγωγὴν μάλιστ' ἂν διὰ τούτου συντελεσθήσεσθαι δεόντως — σύνταξον ἔν τε τοῖς χρηματισμοῖς καταχωρί[ζ]ειν αὐτὸν ἀρχιερέα τῶν δεδηλωμένων ἱερῶν, καὶ προτιμᾶν τὸν ἄνδρα ἀξίως τῆς ἡμετέρας κρίσεως, καὶ ἐὰν εἴς τινα παρακαλ[ῇ] τῶν ἀνη[κ]όντων εἰς ταῦτα, συνεπιλαμβάνεσθαι τούς τε πρὸς τοῖς ἱεροῖς γινομ[έ]νους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους οὓς καθήκει π[ει]θαρχεῖν αὐτοῦ συστῆσαι παραγγεί[λ]α[ν]τας ὑπακούειν [π]ερὶ ὧν ἂν γράφ[ῃ] ἢ σ[υ]ντά[σ]σῃ, ἀναγραφῆναι δὲ καὶ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς τὸ ἀντίγραφον εἰς στήλας καὶ ἀναθεῖν[αι] ἐν τοῖς ἐπιφανεστάτοις τόποις.

We subjoin the following rough translation.

"[A. B.] having, with strenuous effort, made very clear demonstrations, many and great, of his [fidelity and devotion]* to us and to the public service, and having spared neither his life nor his property for our interests, but having managed also as was proper the things put into his hands, and, for the rest, conducting himself in a manner worthy of the services before rendered by him to the public interests—*him* we desired, indeed, still longer to keep employed, co-operating with us in many things. But upon his bringing forward [as ground of excuse] his feebleness of body, the result of his continued hardships [in the public service], and requesting that we would permit him to be at rest, that for the remaining time of his life he may be, without interruption, in good health of body—we complied [with the request], desiring in this also to make manifest the preference which we have for him. So, then, that for the future also he may enjoy all things which pertain to honor and reputation, shall be our care. Since now—as the high-priesthood of Apollo and Artemis, over the [holy] carvers and the other sacred offices of which the consecrated grounds are at Daphne, requires a man of friendly feeling, but one who will be able to preside in a manner worthy of the zeal for the place which our ancestors had and we [now have], and [worthy] of the veneration on our part for the divinity—since now we have appointed *him* high-priest, with charge over these things, being persuaded that through him, above all others, the management belonging to the sacred offices would be conducted as it ought to be—[therefore] take order to inscribe him in the records as high-priest over the sacred offices set forth above, and to honor the man in a way worthy of our judgment, and, if he call to any duties, of such as appertain to these things, that those who are engaged in the sacred rites should co-operate with him, and should bring together on the spot the rest who ought to render service, charging them to obey in whatsoever he may write or order—and, farther, to have the copy of this letter inscribed on pillars, and to set it up in the most conspicuous places."

The contents of this inscription require little commentary. We will only remark that a class of persons, named δαιτροί, are mentioned in an interesting passage of Porphyry (De Abstinentia, ii. 30), as having part in the annual sacrifices of the Athenian Diipoleia. See K. F. Hermann, Lehrbuch der gottesdienstlichen Alterthümer der Griechen, § 61. 20, and W. Smith, Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities, under Diipoleia.

While the above is going through the press, we learn from Mr. Morgan that he has obtained possession of the stone bearing the inscription, and presents it to the Society, to be deposited in its Cabinet.—Comm. of Publ.

ARTICLE VII.

ON THE ÁRYA-SIDDHÁNTA.

BY FITZ-EDWARD HALL, ESQ., M.A.

Presented to the Society May 17, 1860.

As all Indianists must be apprised, the illustrious Colebrooke and the splenetic Mr John Bentley were diametrically at variance in their views of Hindu astronomy. To reopen this subject is not the purpose of the present cursory paper. If Colebrooke was celebrated for circumspection and accuracy, his opponent was equally remarkable for taking up theories on insufficient warrant, for rejecting them with arbitrary caprice, and for unrelenting animosity to all that dissented, though but implicitly, from his indecisive conclusions.* Difference of opinion, however unobtrusive, was, indeed, a thing which Mr. Bentley was unable to abide. It is well known how many of his vagaries dissolved, one after another, before the scholarly research of his unintentional rival; and, in measure as they dissolved, his wrath only grew the more vehement. In a volume which was written shortly before his death, he finally attempted to make good against Colebrooke a foolish fable that he had been the victim of a gross deception. A spurious *Brahma-siddhánta* had been passed upon his willing credulity. Small pains was required to disprove this silly fiction; but, in reprisal, the generally imperturbable Colebrooke was moved to prefer a countercharge.. Its grounds I propose here briefly to examine.

"I might retort on Mr. Bentley," says Colebrooke, "that the *A'rya-siddhánta*, described, by him, in the third section of the second part of his posthumous work, is not improbably a fabrication. No one but himself has yet seen it: the manuscript of it is not

* Since writing the above, I perceive that I have in a manner iterated the very sentiments and language of Colebrooke, who says: "Mr. Bentley was, as his writings evince, a good hater. He bore animosity to me, and to every one who did not implicitly adopt his opinions concerning Hindu astronomy, nor concede to the authority of his conclusions respecting it."

forthcoming: he did not understand Sanskrit, and therefore he was very liable to imposition: his notions, not to say prejudices, were well known to the natives who attended him: and he was as likely as his friend Col. Wilford, to have fabrications imposed upon him.* According to the quotations of authors, *A'ryáshṭaka* and *Das'agítiká* were the titles of A'rya Bhaṭṭa's works, and not *A'rya-siddhánta*. It is, in all likelihood, pseudonymous."

Mr. Colebrooke had previously said: "A'rya Bhaṭṭa was author of the *A'ryáshṭas'ata* (800 couplets) and *Das'agítiká* (ten stanzas), known by the numerous quotations of Brahmagupta, Bhaṭṭa Utpala, and others, who cite both under these respective titles. The *Laghu-árya-siddhánta*, as a work of the same author, and, perhaps, one of those above mentioned, is several times quoted by Bháskara's commentator, Munís'wara." Algebra, etc., Note G; or Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 467.

Two copies of the *A'rya-siddhánta*,† both imperfect and very incorrect, have come into my possession. This treatise is in eighteen chapters; and I more than suspect it to be the same composition which Mr. Bentley also had seen in a mutilated form. I shall proceed to verify it by a few extracts, professedly from A'rya Bhaṭṭa, which occur in the writings of various mathematical commentators. And first among these extracts I place those that were known to Colebrooke, though he was uninformed as to the particular work whence they were derived.

शरवर्गात् षड्गुणिताज् ज्याकृतियुक्तात् पदं चापम् ।

A'rya-siddhánta, kshetra-vyavahára chapter.

"The following rule for finding the arc is cited, by Gaṇes'a, from A'rya Bhaṭṭa: 'Six times the square of the arrow being added to the square of the chord, the square-root of the sum is the arc.'" Algebra, etc., p. 90, second foot-note.

विविधखगागमपाटीकुट्टकबीजादिदृष्टशास्त्रेण ।

A'rya-siddhánta, opening verse.

". . . . a passage of A'rya Bhaṭṭa . . . . : 'the multifarious doctrine of the planets, arithmetic, the pulverizer (*kuṭṭaku*) and

* Mr. Bentley had written: "I think Mr. Colebrooke, like my old friend the late Col. Wilford, and perhaps many others, was imposed on by his crafty dependants, who studied his inclinations and his wishes, and, from knowing the bias of his sentiments, were thereby enabled to practice, with security and advantage to themselves, their imposture of forged and interpolated books, which they produced for him, or put in his way to obtain, as might appear best to answer their purpose." A Historical View of the Hindu Astronomy (Calcutta edition), p. 189, foot-note.

† In the colophon to one of my copies, the work is called *Mahárya-siddhánta*; elsewhere, *Mahá-siddhánta*. In my other copy I find *A'rya-bhaṭṭa-siddhánta* six or seven times, and *Mahá-siddhánta* of A'rya Bhaṭṭa thrice. The augmentative epithet *Mahá* precedes the name of A'rya, where he is cited by Gaṇes'a. But see near the end of this article.

analysis (*bíja*), and the rest of the science treating of seen* objects.'" Algebra, etc., p. 112, foot-note.

विस्तृतिपिण्डाङ्गुलहतिरभिमतमार्गैर्हता भक्ता ।
षट्सप्तपञ्चभिरिदं खदिरदारोर्विदारणफलम् ॥
श्रीपर्णीशाककादिषु कल्प्यो हारः शतत्रयं सार्धम् ।
जम्बूबीजकदम्बाम्लीषु नखोनं शतचतुष्कम् ॥
सार्धं शतद्वयं स्याच्च छेदः शालाम्रसरलेषु ।
शाल्मल्यादौ द्विशती हारो हरवद् धनं देयम् ॥

"The following passage of A'rya Bhaṭṭa is cited by Gaṇes'a in his commentary on the *Lílávatí*: 'The product of the breadth [or length] and thickness, in fingers, being multiplied by the intended sections, and divided by five hundred and seventy-six, the quotient is the (*phala*) superficial measure of the cutting, provided the timber be *Khadira* (Mimosa catechu). If the wood be *S'ríparṇí* (   ), *S'ákaka* (Tectona grandis), &c., the divisor should be put three hundred and fifty: if the wood be *Jambu* (Eugenia Jamboo), *Bíja* (Citrus medica), *Kadamba* (Nauclea orientalis and Cadamb), or *Amlí* (Tamarindus Indica), it should be twenty less than four hundred. The divisor should be two hundred and fifty, if the timber be *S'ála*, *Amra*, and *Sarala* (Shorea robusta, Mangifera Indica, and Pinus longifolia). If it be *S'álmalí* (Bombax heptaphyllum), &c., the divisor is two hundred. Money is to be paid according to the divisor.'" Algebra, etc., p. 315, second foot-note: and see ibid., p. 102, foot-note.

Only one of my manuscripts has any portion of these last verses; the first line and a half. There is here a break in my copies.

Colebrooke—Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 392—translates, in these words, from A'rya Bhaṭṭa as cited by Pṛithúdaka Swámin: "The sphere of the stars is stationary; and the earth, making a revolution, produces the daily rising and setting of stars and planets." Subjoined is the original, according to Pṛithúdaka; but I have not sought out the passage in my MSS. of the *A'rya-siddhánta*. The *A'rya-siddhánta* being metrical, this extract might go to prove that A'rya, besides his works in verse, wrote others in prose; did we not know that there was a second writer so named. Moreover, our A'rya Bhaṭṭa argues the fixedness of the terrestrial orb. The words are these:

*** "Seen, or physical; as opposed to astrology, which is considered to be conversant with matters of an unseen and spiritual nature, the invisible influence which connects effects with causes."**

भपञ्जरः स्थिरो भूरेवावृत्यावृत्य प्रातिदैवसिकौ उदयास्तमयौ सम्पादयति नक्षत्रग्रहाणाम्।

Again, Colebrooke—Miscellaneous Essays, ii. 378, foot-note—quotes, through Munís'wara, from A'rya Bhatta's *A'ryáshtas'ata*. I do not find the quotation in the *A'rya-siddhánta*. That this treatise bore the second title of *A'ryáshtas'ata* is, as Colebrooke suggests, not impossible. My less defective copy of the *A'rya-siddhánta*, which contains five hundred and sixty-two stanzas, has omissions indicated at several points. Of their extent I can, of course, say nothing.

The passage referred to, by Mr. Bentley, at p. 126 of his "Historical View," as being in the fifteenth section of the *A'rya-siddhánta*, really occurs there. Further, I have traced to their places in the *A'rya-siddhánta* parts or wholes of three couplets* adduced in Munís'wara's *Maríchi*, a commentary on the *Siddhánta-s'iromani*, as from the *Laghu-árya-bhatta-siddhánta*; and two couplets† as given in the same writer's gloss on the *Lílávatí*, and there credited to A'rya by name. I have not had the same success as touching a couplet‡ vouched by Bhatta Utpala, in his annotations on the *Váráhí-sanhitá*, chapter xvii, and attributed, by him, to A'chárya A'rya Bhatta.

Mr. Bentley's MS. of the *A'rya-siddhánta*, as by him described, corresponds punctually, in the way of hiatuses, with one of my own copies.

The mathematician Ganes'a, as before observed, in making an extract from the *A'rya-siddhánta*, qualifies its author's name by the prefix of *Mahá*. This may, or it may not, have been designed as equivalent to *Vriddha*. On the first hypothesis, it was, perhaps, an oversight; unless A'rya Bhatta reproduced, in some more mature treatise, still to emerge, the very words which he had employed in an earlier performance: but there is no necessity for surmising that he may have done so. For, as reference is made in the *A'rya-siddhánta* to *Vriddha* A'rya Bhatta, there should seem to have been two writers called A'rya Bhatta. Senescence not preceding youth, the term *Vriddha*, when used of an author, must be susceptible of the same extension of import to which it is subject when applied to homonymous kings. Not to repeat myself on the verbal nicety here adverted to, I remit the reader to my preface to the *Vásavadattá* of Subandhu, pp. 49, 50, in the Bibliotheca Indica of the Asiatic Society of Bengal. Our *A'rya-siddhánta* had, for its writer, A'rya Bhatta Junior.

Troy, N. Y., U. S. A., March 1, 1860.

---

* Beginning, severally, कल्पे सूर्यादीनां, ऋपात्कटपयपूर्वा, and व्यासाकृतिघातो.

† Which commence with सर्वभुजैक्यं and सर्वज्ञानेन, respectively.

‡ Its first words are देवाः पश्यन्ति.

Additional Note on Âryabhaṭṭa and his Writings,

by the Committee of Publication.

Mr. Hall has conclusively shown, in the foregoing article, that the work described by Bentley, under the title of Ârya-Siddhânta, is not, as suggested by Colebrooke, a modern imposture, but that, on the contrary, it had been quoted by Colebrooke himself, at second hand, as by Âryabhaṭṭa, and is, by citations and references in the works of later Hindu astronomical writers, sufficiently attested as being, in their opinion, truly ascribable to that ancient and famous authority. He has farther made it at least a probable supposition that the treatise in question is, in conformity with Colebrooke's earlier conjecture, to be identified with that so often credited to Âryabhaṭṭa by the name of Âryâshṭaçata. Now on comparing the data furnished us from it by Bentley with the sketch of Âryabhaṭṭa's system given by Colebrooke (As. Res., xii. 248; Essays, ii. 414), upon the authority of Brahmagupta and his commentator, it will be seen that the two are quite discordant with one another; so much so as to render it unlikely that both should be productions of the same teacher. But the reader of Bentley will also notice that the latter speaks of another Ârya-Siddhânta, which he denounces as "spurious," proving it in detail, very much to his own satisfaction, to be a mere modern manufacture, although it lays claim to the title of Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta. The futility of the arguments with which he assails its authenticity is, however, in part palpable at first sight, in part evident upon a slight examination, nor is his opinion upon the matter of a straw's weight as authority. On the contrary, the peculiarities which, according to his statements, distinguish the work, are such as attract to it at once a high degree of interest, as one which, in some important particulars, is unlike all the other Hindu astronomical treatises of which we have thus far any account. This interest is increased, as we note that its doctrines agree, so far as we can compare them, with those attributed to Âryabhaṭṭa by Brahmagupta. Again, the number of civil days stated by it to compose a Great Age (*mahâyuga*), of 4,320,000 years, and so its valuation of the sidereal solar year, agree with those which Warren (Kâla Sankalita, pp. 7, 70) states to be adopted through a great part of Southern India, "upon the authority of the Ârya-Siddhânta." It seemed to us, then, not undesirable to add, if possible, to Mr. Hall's paper upon Âryabhaṭṭa and his works, some more particular information respecting this other Ârya-Siddhânta, and especially in view of the suggestion, finally thrown out by Mr. Hall, that there may have been more than one astronomical author of the name. And having observed, in Weber's Catalogue of the Berlin Sanskrit Manuscripts (No. 834, p. 232), that the Berlin Library contained a treatise which purported to be a commentary on Âryabhaṭṭa's Daçagîtikâ, we took the liberty of begging from the distinguished author of the Catalogue some notices from this manuscript. In reply to our application, he has, with the most obliging kindness, copied for us the whole work, so that we are able to present here a full sketch of its character, and to settle many of the questions which had presented themselves to our minds in connection with the subject in hand.

The treatise is a brief one, containing only about 150 stanzas. It is divided into four chapters, called *pâdas*, of which the third is, in its signature, called the "fourth," so that we may perhaps have only a fragment before us. It is certainly imperfect at its commencement, as the first leaf, and a little more, of the present MS. contains the calculation of an *ahargana*, or "sum of days," which has nothing whatever to do with the work itself: the first verse given of the latter is numbered 6. There are, however, five verses interposed between *pâdas* three and four, and numbered independently, which may possibly be those which are missing at the beginning, and the name given to the divisions of the work is at least strongly indicative of only a fourfold division of it: nor does it appear, from the general scheme of contents, that any indispensable part of a summary astronomical treatise is wanting. Unfortunately, the text is very badly corrupted and incorrect, so that, after the rather hasty study which we have as yet been able to give it, much remains obscure to us in its contents. It most unequivocally lays claim to being a commentary on the Daçagîtikâ of Âryabhatta; the latter, and no other authority, is repeatedly spoken of in its verses, and its concluding stanza is as follows (with some emendations):

भट्टेन पूर्वं दशगीतिसूत्रमतीव गूढार्थमुदाहृतं यत् ।
गुरुप्रसादादधिगम्य विद्वांस्तद् भूतविष्णुः समवोचदित्थम् ॥

"Bhûta-Vishṇu (?) hath thus comprehensively explained—having learned it by the favor of his teacher—the Daçagîti text-book, of very obscure meaning, formerly promulgated by Bhaṭṭa."

There can be no manner of doubt, now, in the first place, that the text of which this work is a metrical paraphrase is that described by Bentley as the Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta. In nearly every particular referred to by Bentley, it agrees with his authority. The numbers of revolutions of the planets—the order in which the latter are constantly named—the commencing of the present Æon (*kalpa*) with Thursday, and so that of the last Great Age (*mahâyuga*) with Wednesday, and the current Iron Age (*kali yuga*) with Friday—the number of years reckoned as elapsed since the beginning of the Æon, with that of the days contained in them—the statement of the positions of the apsides and nodes of the planets directly*—the ratio of the diameter to the

* The positions assigned by the treatise to the apsides and nodes are as follows:

Sun,	$2^s\ 18^\circ$	....
Mercury,	7^s	$0^s\ 20^\circ$
Venus,	$2^s\ 20^\circ$	$2^s\ 0^\circ$
Mars,	$3^s\ 28^\circ$	$1^s\ 10^\circ$
Jupiter,	$5^s\ 20^\circ$	$2^s\ 30^\circ$
Saturn,	$7^s\ 26^\circ$	$3^s\ 10^\circ$

Bentley (p. 182) says that "the positions of the aphelia .... are computed from the numbers given in the genuine Ârya-Siddhânta." The latter we have given above (under i. 41–44 of the Sûrya-Siddhânta): it will be seen, on comparing the two statements, that Bentley's assertion is by no means strictly true; and moreover, that the data of the Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta confirm the suspicion there expressed by us, that, in the case of Venus and Saturn, Bentley's manuscript, or his report of it, is in error. The positions of the nodes, on the other hand, are precisely accordant, to degrees, in the two treatises.

circumference of the circle—the diameters of the earth, sun, and moon (those of the other planets we have not yet succeeded in tracing out), and the "orbit of the wind"—are all here, as Bentley gives them. The passage cited by Bentley as referring to the Brahma-Siddhânta and to Brahmagupta is not, of course, to be found: on internal grounds, moreover, we should regard at present as very questionable its authenticity, as part of the treatise in question.

We will now proceed to inquire how far the doctrines of our treatise correspond with what has elsewhere been handed down as taught by Âryabhaṭṭa. The peculiar division of the Great Age (*mahâyuga*) and constitution of the Æon (*kalpa*), described by Brahmagupta (see Colebrooke, as above) as Âryabhaṭṭa's, are here given. The treatise begins the Æon with sunrise at Lankâ, a tenet which distinguished the school of Âryabhaṭṭa from that of Puliça (see Colebrooke, as above: also Essays, ii. 427, et al.). It affirms the revolution of the earth on its axis, and the non-reality of the apparent daily motion of the stars, comparing this to the effect of riding in a chariot, when fixed objects seem to be moving in a direction contrary to that in which the chariot is proceeding (see the reference to this point in Mr. Hall's paper). It declares the moon, planets, and stars to be naturally dark, and only illuminated upon the side which is turned toward the sun (see Colebrooke, Hind. Alg, Note G; Essays, ii. 467). The variability of dimensions of the epicycles of the planets is recognized, although the agreement between this treatise and the Sûrya-Siddhânta herein is not so close as Colebrooke (As. Res., xii. 236; Essays, ii. 401) seems to have understood it to be: perhaps Colebrooke's reference here belongs rather to the other Ârya-Siddhânta. The passage repeated by Colebrooke (Hind. Alg., Note I; Essays, ii. 473) from Bhaṭṭa-utpala on Varâha-mihira is almost precisely represented by the first verse of our third *pâda:* its evidence, however, is of little account, as it relates to a matter so general that it might occur in nearly equivalent terms in almost any treatise; Colebrooke is mistaken in attributing to it any necessary connection with the doctrine of the precession: the position of the equinoxes would be described by a Hindu astronomer as in the first of Aries and of Libra, whatever his theory respecting the important fact of their movement along the ecliptic. The doctrine respecting the precession attributed to Âryabhaṭṭa by Muniçvara and others (see Colebrooke, As. Res., xii. 213; Essays, ii. 378, et al.)—namely, that the equinoctial points librate 578,159 times in an Æon (*kalpa*) through an arc of 48°—appears from Bentley (Hind. Ast., p. 140 etc.) to belong to the more extended treatise, and not to the Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta. In connection with the latter, Bentley makes no mention of the precession, nor have we as yet succeeded in discovering anything about it in our treatise, although we would not venture to say with entire confidence that it is not there. It seems, then, altogether probable that Colebrooke's suggestion (as above) is well-founded, to the effect that the libration of the equinoxes may be taught in the Âryâshṭaçata, and not in the Daçagîtikâ, although we cannot regard as of force the particular reason he assigns for it, since the equinoxes are by no means likely to have been treated as nodes by the early astronomers. A scholiast upon

the Vârâhî-Sanhitâ ascribes to Âryabhaṭṭa (Colebrooke, As. Res., xii. 244; Essays, ii. 410) the determination of Jupiter's revolutions in a Great Age (*mahâyuga*) as 364,224; this is the number given in our treatise, and in Bentley's Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta; that found in his Ârya-Siddhânta is 364,219.682.

The agreement of the value of the sidereal solar year derivable from the work in our hands with that adopted in a part of Southern India as upon the authority of the Ârya-Siddhânta has already been noticed above. The value assigned to the same period by Bentley's Ârya-Siddhânta is slightly different (see above, p. 168).

Finally, we learn from an essay published by Whish, in the Transactions of the Literary Society of Madras for 1827 (and reproduced, in the main, by Jacquet, in the Journal Asiatique for August, 1835: we cite it from the latter, not having access to the original article), that Âryabhaṭṭa had devised a certain peculiar method of representing numbers by means of the letters of the Sanskrit alphabet*, a method which the essayist goes on fully to expose and illustrate. He states it to be derived by him from a mathematical work, named, after its author, the Âryabhaṭṭîya, and containing 123 stanzas, divided into 4 chapters. This method of notation appears in the treatise which we are considering. The five verses referred to above as interposed between its third and fourth chapters give an exposition of the system, and, in the following chapter, the numerical data, such as the numbers of revolutions of the planets, are given first in this form of notation, and then in the usual method. Moreover, after the signature of the work, the numbers of revolutions of the planets, including the moon's apsis and node, are once more given in Âryabhaṭṭa's peculiar notation: yet, as might be expected, notwithstanding this repetition, it would be impossible to restore, from the manuscript alone, the true forms of these brief algebraic expressions. Thus, for instance, for ख्युघृ, which expresses 4,320,000, the number of the sun's revolutions in a Great Age, the manuscript offers the first time स्कघृ, and the second ग्युघृ; and others are yet worse corrupted. The question suggests itself, whether Whish's Âryabhaṭṭîya is the same work with the Daçagîtikâ or Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta, or whether it is one of the general mathematical works of the

* M. Reinaud (Mémoire sur l'Inde, p. 299 etc.) derives from this fact the altogether mistaken inference that, at the time of Âryabhatta, the Hindus had not yet invented their system of signs employed in decimal notation. He farther notes the fact that the works of Brahmagupta and other later authors do not imply the use of such figures; although we do not understand him as holding that, at their period also, these were not known and used in India. He can have had, however, but a very imperfect apprehension, if any, of the exceeding pertinacity and circumspection with which, in certain departments, the fiction of an entirely memorized and orally transmitted literature is kept up in India, all allusion to written texts, characters, or figures being rigorously excluded. We doubt whether it might not fairly be inferred from the whole early astronomical literature, but for external evidence and the *argumentum ex impossibili*, that the Hindus of its period could neither write nor cypher. An eminent Indianist (Prof. Max Muller, in his History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 500 etc.) has, from similar evidence, drawn a like conclusion with respect to the later Vedic period; but, as we cannot but believe, with equal fallacy.

same author which Colebrooke (Hind. Alg., p. v; Essays, ii. 422) complains that he had diligently sought after in vain. From the manner in which Whish speaks of it, we should be inclined to draw the latter conclusion, although nevertheless not regarding the other as inadmissible. In either case, the discovery of this curious invention of Âryabhaṭṭa's in the work now under consideration is an additional proof of no slight force and value that it really represents the teachings of its alleged author.

We regard it, then, as established beyond all reasonable doubt that Bentley's Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta is the same with the work called the Daçagîtikâ, attributed to Âryabhaṭṭa, and containing, of the doctrines ascribed to its reputed author by later Hindu authorities, as far back as Brahmagupta, the larger and the more characteristic and interesting portion. The other Ârya-Siddhânta, judging it from the account given of it by Bentley, appears to be, in comparison with this, a quite ordinary astronomical treatise, representing the general Hindu system with unimportant modifications. Of special resemblances or connections between the two, such as should lead independently to the suspicion that both might come from the same hand, we have been able to discover none. Yet it seems clear that Brahmagupta and others have treated them as works of the same author, and have founded upon their discordances a charge of inconsistency against Âryabhaṭṭa. That the application, by so late an authority as Gaṇeça and by the scribes of manuscripts, of the equivocal title Mahâ to the Ârya-Siddhânta and its author, implies any distinct recognition on their part of the existence of more than one astronomer of the name, does not appear to us altogether certain. Yet we cannot refrain from joining with Mr. Hall in the belief that the Ârya-Siddhânta, even if rightly ascribed to Âryabhaṭṭa, is the work of another and a more modern hand than that which wrote the other treatise. If both treatises were so much older than Brahmagupta that in his time the memory of their distinct origin could have become dimmed or obliterated, this is an important testimony to their common antiquity. It must be a matter of much interest to deduce the true relation subsisting between the two; and then, farther, to determine whether the Laghu-Ârya-Siddhânta was composed before the final settling down of the general Hindu astronomical system into the form it has ever since worn, or whether its author had the boldness and independence to deviate from that system after its establishment. Nor do we think the study of any other treatise gives fairer prospect of throwing valuable light upon the early history of the Hindu astronomy, than that of Bentley's "spurious Ârya-Siddhânta," or the Daçagîtikâ of Âryabhaṭṭa.

W. D. W.

MISCELLANIES.

I. Inverted Construction of Modern Armenian.

BY REV. ELIAS RIGGS, D.D.

Presented to the Society May 20, 1857.

One of the most note-worthy phenomena of language which have come under my observation is the inverted construction of sentences in the Modern Armenian language. Essentially the same prevails in Turkish. What is specially worthy of notice in Armenian is, that the construction of the ancient language is almost the reverse of that of the modern; and that, notwithstanding the fact that the ancient dialect has been, up to the present century, the exclusive language of books, and continues still to be preferred by many Armenian scholars as the language of scientific works and of epistolary correspondence.

A striking illustration of the feature to which I allude is furnished by many passages in the Old Testament, where the order of words in the Ancient Armenian version is precisely the same with that of the Hebrew original, while the translation into the present spoken Armenian can be written directly under the Hebrew sentence, commencing at the left under its last word, following word for word the inverted order of the original, and ending at the right under the first word of the Hebrew sentence.

This inversion is not, like that of classical Greek and Latin, a matter of emphasis or euphony, but enters into the structure of the language, and is an essential feature of its syntax. I will endeavor to illustrate it in a few particulars.

1. All the words which correspond with our prepositions (excepting one or two, occasionally borrowed from Ancient Armenian) are postpositions. Thus, instead of 'concerning it,' the Modern Armenian says 'it concerning;' instead of 'in the house,' 'the house in;' and that, not merely in the case of syllables suffixed to form the oblique cases of nouns, but also in the case of separate words.

2. The particle which corresponds to our definite article is a suffixed letter. In this the Armenian agrees with some other dialects, both ancient and modern, as the Danish and Albanian in Europe, and the Chaldee and Syriac in Asia. Thus *doon* is 'house,' *doónŭ* 'the house;' genitive *dan*, emphatic form *dánŭ; dánŭ vrayov*, 'concerning the house.'

'3. The noun or pronoun expressing the object of an action precedes the verb by which it is governed: e. g., 'They him rejected;' 'God the earth created.'

4. In like manner, the noun or adjective which forms the predicate of a simple proposition is placed between the subject and the verb: e. g., 'He kind was;' 'I a man am.'

5. Most remarkable of all is that the circumstances of time, place, order, and frequently also of manner, means, and instrument, are placed at the beginning of a sentence. Thus, instead of saying, as in English, "A Greek, in consequence of a quarrel originating in the use of wine, killed an Egyptian yesterday with a pistol in one of the streets of this city," an Armenian would say, "Yesterday—of this city—of the streets—one—in—of wine—the use—in—originating—of a quarrel—in consequence—with a pistol—a Greek—an Egyptian—killed;" or, "a Greek, with a pistol, an Egyptian killed."

To sum up the above particulars—a complex sentence in Modern Armenian generally gathers up first all the circumstances of an action, as time, place, and order, frequently also of manner, means, and instrument (although these admit of more latitude in their collocation); then follows the subject, with its attributes; then the object with its attributes; and last of all the verb. The last verse of the Book of Leviticus in English reads thus: "These are the commandments which the Lord commanded Moses for the children of Israel in Mount Sinai." In Modern Armenian, the first word of this sentence is 'Sinai,' the second 'mount,' the third 'in,' the fourth 'of Israel,' the fifth 'the children,' and the sixth 'for,' being exactly the reverse of the order in English. The rest reads 'of the Lord—to Moses—the commanded commandments—these are.' In the Ancient Armenian version, the order of the words of this sentence is precisely the same as in English.

This remarkable change in the structure of sentences in Armenian is unquestionably to be attributed to the influence of the prevailing language of the country—the Turkish, in which the inverted order seems to be idiomatic and natural. The dialect spoken by the Armenians in Persia and India approaches much more nearly to the style and idiom of their ancient tongue.

II. On Dr. S. W. Williams's Chinese Dictionary.

BY REV. WILLIAM A. MACY.

Presented to the Society May 18, 1859.

A number of copies of the *Tonic Dictionary of the Chinese Language in the Canton Dialect*, by Dr. S. Wells Williams, are for sale at the rooms of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions, at 33 Pemberton Square, Boston; and as the work will be unknown to most of the scholars and literary institutions of the United States, a brief account of its character and merits may not be out of place among your literary notices.

The book is the production of one of the missionaries of the American Board, who at the time of its publication had been twenty-three years in China, and who is well known as not only a sinologue, but a Japanese scholar, and a naturalist. His introduction to the public, through his contributions to the "Chinese Chrestomathy" published by Dr. E. C. Bridgman, through the "Easy Lessons in Chinese," the "English and Chinese Vocabulary," and the "Middle Kingdom," gave assurance that a work such as this now under notice would be marked by accuracy, research, and availability.' This assurance has been fully realized, and in the small, portable manual, whose appearance so contrasts with the bulky volumes which are constantly associated with the study of Chinese, we have not only the most convenient, but the most valuable aid yet furnished for the attainment of the Chinese language.

The student of Chinese is now quite liberally furnished with helps, in the form of grammars, translations, chrestomathies, and dictionaries. It is with these last only that we shall now have to deal, in order to appreciate the value of the work of Dr. Williams.

The Chinese themselves have given much attention to lexicography, and have investigated the composition, meaning, and use of the words of their language in a very complete manner. In the Chinese Repository, xvii. 433–459, may be found a list of 218 separate works collected in the Imperial Library at Pekin. Of these, however, but few are ever consulted by the foreign student, and for general purposes probably not over four or five are worthy of mention. And among these, two have a decided preeminence; these are K'áng hí tsz tien, or the Dictionary compiled by Order of Kanghi, generally bound in 32 or 40 volumes, and P'ei wan yuen fú, or the Thesaurus of the Chinese Language, with the same arrangement as the preceding, but with copious illustrations from all Chinese classical literature: a notice of this work, as well as of a proposed translation, may be found in the Chinese Repository, xii. 300 etc.

It is needless to say that the benefit of any native dictionaries is confined to the advanced scholar, and cannot be felt by the beginner.

Of dictionaries by foreigners, besides several small vocabularies, very limited in their range, and generally very hard to obtain, there have been published six in the general language, and two in local dialects.

1. The large folio known as the Dictionary of De Guignes, with a supplement by M. Klaproth. This very bulky work was published in France, under the patronage of Napoleon I., and contains definitions in both French and Latin. It is not without value, though it was soon superseded by the more complete work of

2. Dr. Morrison. This monument of his industry, patience, and learning is contained in six quarto volumes. Three are devoted to the arrangement under the radicals, according to the system of Kanghi. The first of these is exceedingly full, containing, besides the matter appropriate to a dictionary, many translations and essays illustrative and explanatory. The fourth contains a selection of characters arranged alphabetically. This is the most useful portion of the work. The rest is taken up with indexes and an imperfect English-Chinese part. Dr. Morrison's claims to the grateful acknowledgments of posterity may be

best stated by saying that with his help have been trained all the scholars who in this land have as yet extended the bounds of our knowledge in this tongue. His dictionary has been the common fountain to which all have as yet resorted to obtain the knowledge they desired. Still his work was not perfect, and when the impression became nearly exhausted, there was a double call for some farther efforts in this path which he so successfully travelled.

3. Dr. Medhurst published at Batavia a translation of Kanghi's Dictionary, in two volumes. This work was reasonable in price and not inconvenient in form, and on the whole has been a great assistance to many students, though not free from serious errors.

4. M. Callery, a French missionary, published a compendious vocabulary, arranged on a new principle, the definitions in Latin, and the whole designed rather as an introduction to the large Encyclopedia which he undertook to publish, a translation of the Thesaurus mentioned above. This work is scarce and has been but little used.

5. Gonsalves, a Portuguese priest and professor in the College of St. Joseph, at Macao, published a dictionary in Chinese-Portuguese, and one in Chinese-Latin, with the corresponding parts in Port.-Ch. and Lat.-Ch. These works are valuable and erudite. But the language of the former is so little known as to interfere much with its use; and he created a new difficulty by rearranging the radicals of Kanghi on a plan of his own. But little use is made of any of his labors.

Besides these, there is a Dictionary of the Fuh-kien dialect, by Dr. Medhurst, of little value, and a small vocabulary of the Tie-chiu dialect, by the Rev. Mr. Goddard, which contains only very brief definitions, without any phrases or examples.

This was the state of things when, in 1849, Mr. Williams began a translation of a small manual of the Canton dialect, of which he gives an account in his introduction. The design was at first only to produce a vocabulary, of perhaps 200 or 300 pages. But after proceeding as far as the syllable Fá, the materials on hand, and the evident desirableness of a more complete work led him to enlarge his plans in such a way as to produce a book of 900 pages, the first 40 pages having been rewritten so as to make 72 pages as published. The work was extended through more than seven years, partly on account of the author's absence in the American expedition to Japan under Com. Perry, partly because it was only a secondary occupation for a part of the time.

It was originally undertaken as a direct help to those speaking the Canton dialect, and the sounds of the characters are therefore conformed to that local pronunciation. The gain to the students of that dialect is so great as to outweigh all objections from the limited use of those sounds, especially as in the case of every dialect the difficulty from the use of the sounds of even the general language is just as great.

This dictionary was by no means deprived of any advantage which P. Gonsalves threw away, when he refused even to look at the work of another. It professes to have gathered all that is really valuable in all the five works above mentioned, and from whatever has been written on points of lexicography that was within the author's reach. As compared with the works of De Guignes and Morrison, Dr. Williams had

the aid of forty years' study of the Chinese, both in Europe and in China, the contributions of many practical scholars embodied in a variety of works. The very necessities of the case would have compelled an advance and an improvement. But besides this, he brought his own acquaintance of twenty years with the language, and his wide range of general knowledge. Thus, in addition to the combined treasures of his predecessors, we have new stores of definition and illustration, and in particular an unrivalled accuracy in the case of terms of geography, history, and natural science. Where previous writers had to content themselves with saying, a river, a tree, a fish, or an insect, Dr. Williams has labored to fix upon the exact place, locality, and individual, or on the true technical name in every case. A cursory comparison of his work with others will show at least what he has attempted.

The size of his work will probably not prepare those who have been used to the dignified portliness of De Guignes and Morrison for the statement that no other dictionary is so *full* in its definitions, and this not only in the abundance of synonymous expressions, but also in the shades and changes of meaning. In this particular it is much in advance of any other. In the selection of phrases, the most important portion of a Chinese lexicon, it is also far in advance of any other similar work, drawing its examples from the classics, from ordinary styles of composition, from proverbial expressions, and from colloquial usage. It is to be regretted that the want of a suitable font of type should have prevented the insertion of all the Chinese characters, the fixing of which is often very difficult. But notwithstanding this drawback, these illustrations are of the highest value to the student, and in the Canton dialect the want is scarcely felt.

The Dictionary contains about 7800 characters, a number which, if it does not include all that will be met with in ordinary reading, yet omits only a few of unusual occurrence, the meaning of which can in Chinese works generally be found in a commentary. Parts of the Dictionary having been issued from time to time as printed, and placed in the hands of those who daily consulted it, many omitted words were supplied, which are inserted in the Appendix.

The list of proper names, which does not embrace those that have become extinct, is useful in China, and may be interesting elsewhere.

The Index according to radicals has been very carefully prepared, and is believed to be very reliable in respect to the radical and number of strokes as there given, and as an index to the Dictionary.

The various information given in the Introduction is also both interesting and accurate.

To any one, therefore, who feels attracted to the study of a language which, in spite of its traditional difficulties, has not been without attractions to a large number of European scholars, it may with confidence be said, that by the use of this little volume many rough places will be smoothed, and many an abyss bridged over, and many fields of thought and investigation made accessible. To such a one it may be a kindness also to mention that in the Chinese Repository, xviii. 402 etc., 657 etc., may be found a very full list of works relating to China and its language.

It must not be inferred from what is said above that Dr. Williams's work is to be regarded as having reached a point in Chinese lexicography which virtually precludes future efforts. The original design was not to construct a lexicon on scientific principles, and to exhaust the whole field thus laid open. Such a plan would have defeated any hopes of an immediate supply for the existing wants. Accuracy, copiousness, clearness, definiteness were the ends sought after, and in a very high degree secured. But the dictionary which shall embrace all the literature of 3000 years, in all its well defined divisions—which shall lay hold of the original thought contained in every word, and trace it through its changes during centuries, and under all the exigencies of a changing civilization—which shall do justice to the philosophies of different sects, in their original character and in their modified aspects after mutual friction and collision—which shall give due weight to historical elements which modify and revolutionize language—which shall arrange and explain the technology of a crude and often ridiculous science—who cannot see that this is not yet a possible thing! Local dictionaries, special lexicons, monographs, essays, translations, and especially new and more thorough investigations, must precede even the first inception of such an undertaking. If Hebrew, Greek, and Latin are only now just beginning to be illustrated in scientific dictionaries, how much more time must be given to a language in which only the rudiments have yet been mastered! In China there is a select number of works which may be compared with Assyrian inscriptions, for the deep obscurity which enshrouds them; there are the later classics, on which the Chinese have multiplied commentaries beyond number; there are countless works in poetry, in metaphysics, in science, in politics, in history, in religion; there is a style of loftiest conciseness, the acme of literary attainment; there is a conventional style of fine writing, the standard of the examinations; there is a style of public documents, a style of simple composition adapted to the comprehension of persons of limited education; a style of ordinary life, conversational, colloquial: each of these presents words under some new phase. Each of these styles must be separately studied, and from the comparison of all the true idea of every word be at last deduced. The lifetime of no man will enable him to compass all this labor, and as yet the materials are not prepared for any one by collation and comparison even to draw the outline.

But it is farther true that, while China has been an isolated land in a very peculiar sense, it has also been brought into contact with wild Tartar tribes by conquest, and with Indian monks through the introduction of Buddhism, in such way as to influence the language. The knowledge of Mongol, Manchu, and Sanskrit is a neccessary one to the successful lexicographer.

The greater part of what has been done in the way of aiding beginners in the study of Chinese has been done by missionaries. The very employments of these men lead them to undertake certain investigations which may contribute to a final result, but their time is too much occupied with weighty duties to permit them to be so absorbed in their literary employments as to produce perfect works, either in grammar or lexicography.

It rests, therefore, with those who feel called in the Providence of God to literary pursuits, to press into the wide and unexplored fields which this venerable language, with its immense literature, presents to an earnest explorer. France has long gloried in men whose knowledge of Chinese has been both extensive and thorough; and now, year by year, her scholars are making valuable contributions to the general fund of human knowledge.

The citizens of our Republic abroad are happy to see the commencement of a higher standard of literary attainment in our country. We are proud to mention the names of many of our countrymen who are known wherever there are scholars: we are proud to hear from men of other lands the respectful mention of not a few eminent for science and literature. We trust that this number may be continually swelled. The pursuit of wealth has drawn down to the merely material too many a soul capable of better things. Many an illustrious example has shown that even deep poverty is no bar to the pursuit of learning. It will be a happy day, when even worldly wisdom shall have charms enough to attract men away from all the pleasures of wealth or political honors.

The new relations of China to the nations of the West seem to demand that something more should be undertaken, by those who are so extensively engaged both in missionary and mercantile operations with that land, to cultivate an acquaintance with the language and literature of China. The language must be attractive to the philologist and the grammarian, while the literature, though meager and feeble in comparison with that of Europe, ancient and modern, is yet vast, and not devoid of many elements of attraction to one who loves to trace the workings of the human mind under differing conditions of development and progress.

Shanghai, Aug. 28th, 1858.

III. On the Natural Limits of Ancient Oriental History.

BY PROF. JAMES MOFFAT, D. D.

Presented to the Society Oct. 27, 1859.

The field of Ancient Oriental History has hitherto, so far as I know, been treated as if possessed of no natural boundaries in either time or place. Conventional limits have been assigned to it, merely because, for the convenience of both writer and reader, the Orient must be assumed to stop somewhere, and the ancient to stop somewhen.

Contrary to this prevailing notion, I find an epoch of history most properly styled Ancient Oriental, which is by nature singularly circumscribed, both chronologically and ethnologically, as well as by the relations and boundaries of its geography.

That epoch of civilization which flourished between the Deluge and the fifth century before Christ was both unique and harmonious in its style, and rounded and complete in its duration, passing through a natural maturity and decline.

The region in which it flourished has well defined natural boundaries: on the west, the great African desert, the Mediterranean, Ægean, Hellespont, Propontis, and Bosphorus; on the north, the Black Sea, the range of the Caucasus, the Caspian Sea, and the deserts of Tartary; on the east, the Ala Tagh mountains, the Hindu Kush and Himalaya range, as far as the Sutlej, and thence, the sandy desert on the east of that river and of the Indus, to the sea; and on the south, the Arabian Sea, the gulf of Aden, and the southern borders of Abyssinia. It is also symmetrical within itself, all its parts holding such relations as the parts of one body hold to that body and to one another. Its central element is a broad belt of highlands, running from north-west to south-east, beginning on the shores of the Ægean Sea, occupying in its breadth the whole peninsula of Asia Minor, and then of Armenia and Mesopotamia, and successively extending over Assyria, Persia, Cabul, and Gedrosia, until it terminates near the western bank of the Indus. On either side of this great belt of hill country lies a vast plain, bounded externally by the valley of a large and navigable river, and partly intersected by two inland seas. On the south-eastern side, the plain is that which comprehends the deserts of Arabia and the Nile valley, and the two seas which intersect it are the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf. The north-eastern plain is that which contains the deserts of Turkomania, and the seas which intersect it are the Caspian and Aral.

Into each of these plains runs a great and fertilizing system of rivers, connecting it with the central highlands. On the south-west, that system consists of the Euphrates and Tigris, with their tributaries, running down from the highest group of mountains in the western highlands; on the north-east it is that of the Oxus and Jaxartes, with their tributaries, which gather their waters from the highest summits of the eastern highlands. The features of the north-eastern plain face southward, and those of the south-western, in view of the same particulars, in the main, face northward.

The whole region is thus at once symmetrical and varied, bound together by great natural bands: it is one.

Both on the east and on the west, its southern side rests upon the valley of a great river, which feeds a rich belt of arable land through a desert to the sea. On the east, the Indus— on the west, the Nile, present a remarkable similarity in the nature of their course, their magnitude, the countries through which they flow, and the antiquity of human history connected with them.

Thus limited by natural boundaries on every side, and symmetrical within itself, this happy region was also possessed of great diversity of parts. It comprehends every variety of climate belonging to the temperate zone, and, with the exception of some mountain tops, and of Ethiopia and southern Arabia, is spared all the extremities which lie beyond that zone.

It is this region which was the oldest historical abode of all three historical branches of mankind: so far as history knows, it was their primitive home. Within its bounds they cultivated and ripened their first epoch of civilization, and saw its decline. That epoch began with the supremacy of the sons of Ham, and for more than fifteen hundred years

was under their control. It received a new impulse and loftier purpose from the great increase and energy of the sons of Shem, and from the religious reformation effected by their means; and it was both finally united, and brought to its close, by the first great empire of the Japhetic race. The Hamitic nations, Egypt, Ethiopia, and Sidon, were the leaders of the epoch, who gave shape and general bearing to its character from beginning to end. In the latter part of their history they found reformers, rivals, and correctives, but not masters, in the Hebrews, Arabians, and Assyrians; and the semi-barbarous Persians, in overrunning and subduing, contracted only the external gloss of the refinement, which died in their grasp. Though the Japhetic race first rose to dominion within that region, it was elsewhere that they were destined to unfold a civilization proper to themselves.

In the history of that epoch are to be found all the varieties of civilization which have their birth in the material habitation of man. All that refinement which is consistent with migratory life is illustrated in the story of the Hebrew patriarchs; Egypt carried to the very last results the genuine order of agricultural society; and Sidon, with her colonies, gave the earliest example of the more liberal culture which springs from commerce; while every inferior degree of these styles was to be found scattered among the table lands, the valleys, and the seacoasts of that most diversified yet harmonious country.

Moreover, when we consider its linguistic and ethnological relations—the fact that nations outside of its borders refer their origin to it—that physiologically they hold relations to those parts of it nearest to them—that its languages refer themselves to a common centre, and stand as the types of the linguistic systems beyond its bounds—that the language, for example, of its central highlands, has thrown out descendants to both east and west, which to this day recognize their affinity; while that of its southwestern plain has as clearly perpetuated itself into Africa, as that of its northeastern plain opens out to the geographical conditions of the Turanian or sporadic groups of the north of Asia and Europe—it seems to me that the history of that region and epoch assumes not only a roundness and unity, but also a magnitude of importance, hardly equalled in any subsequent time. Its historical unity stands out the more prominently that its prosperity, though the first to flourish and the first to fade, has never yet been restored.

To this epoch of civilization the Persians stood as the Romans to that of Hellenic growth. They gave one master to its whole domain. And as the decay of the Roman empire was to the Hellenic epoch, so was the decay of the Persian to the Oriental.

But the final blow was given by the campaigns of Alexander. Though the head of a great civilized power, and destined to diffuse the civilization of which he was the champion, he came upon the last days of ancient Orientalism as the Goth upon declining Rome. Though Hellenism did much good in the east, and was widely diffused, it never took root there. The dark ages of the Oriental world, so far as pertains to the original seat of its refinement, have seen no dawn; the learning of its antiquity no revival.

From looking at the subject in the light thus briefly indicated, and it is not necessary to detain the Society with more, I am impressed with the conviction that Ancient Oriental history has yet to be written. The very conception of its unity—or of the fact that it has such intrinsic and proper unity—has not appeared in any work that I have seen.

Princeton, N. J., Feb., 1859.

IV. Extracts from Correspondence.

1. *From a letter of Rev. Justin Perkins, D. D., of Orûmiah.*

Oroomiah, July 9th, 1857.

.... M. Jabá, the Russian Consul at Erzroom, showed our friend a manuscript Dictionary in French, Turkish, and Koordish, which he had prepared by the direction of his Government, and which is soon to be published at St. Petersburg. Also, a Grammar, Chrestomathy, and Dialogues, in the same languages. The Koordish is that spoken in the region of Van and Bayazeed. You are aware that the dialects of Koordish are very numerous. The Rev. Samuel A. Rhea, our esteemed missionary in Koordistan, is paying some attention to the Hakkary Koordish, spoken in the region of his residence. ....

We have sometimes speculated on the etymology of the name of our province, *Oroomiah.* It may be, I think, composed of ܐܪܥܐ 'land,' and ܪܗܘܡܐ 'Rome;' i. e., 'land of the Romans,' or belonging to Rome under the Byzantine rule—the same in fact as Erzroom, except that the latter takes the Arabic prefix, instead of the Syriac. The Nestorians say that it means 'land of water,' i. e., 'well-watered district,' from ܐܪܥܐ and ܡܝܐ: this accords well with the actual state of the country. ...

2. *From a letter of Prof. C. J. Tornberg, of the University of Lund.*

Lund, Sweden, July 19th, 1857.

.... You will perhaps be interested to learn that I am now preparing three new volumes (viii–x) of Ibn el-Athir, so that almost the half, and the more interesting half, of the great chronicle (the years 295–628 of the Hejira) will be in the hands of the learned world. A stay at Paris during the past year has placed me in possession of materials, not only for this new portion, but also for the revision of the text already published. A Latin version will accompany the whole. I hope that a volume may be ready to appear during the course of next year. If life and health are granted me, it is my design to take up the first sections also of this important work. I regard this labor as one of the problems of my life. ...

3. *From a letter of Râja Râdhâkânta Deva Bahâdur, of Calcutta.*

Calcutta, August 21st, 1858.

. . . . I avail myself of this opportunity to express my high sense of the importance of the objects of the Society, and my admiration for the zealous and indefatigable exertions of your learned men, in surmounting the difficulties incident to a young nation, which lie in the way of many interesting researches into the antiquities of the East.

The Society, in conducting its investigations in the various and extensive subjects of its study, has justly made Egypt and India the choicest fields of its inquiry: the love of knowledge for its own sake is alone sufficient to excite a rational curiosity to examine the ancient monuments of Hindu learning, which have now formed an absorbing subject of study amongst the savants of Europe.

The comprehensive language of ancient India, which has been demonstrated to be the primeval stock of more than two-thirds of the tongues of the civilized world, and the study of which has formed a new era in philology; her inexhaustible literature, which supplies a rich fund of intellectual entertainment; her profound and diversified philosophy, which displays at once the source and the fullest developments of the Dialectics of Aristotle, the Atomic theory of Democritus, the Stoical doctrine of Zeno, the Metempsychosis of Pythagoras, and the bold flights of Plato's fancy; her science, which contains all the wisdom of the ancients, and the germs of many modern discoveries; her arts, fair specimens of which attract the traveller in the temples of Ellora and Adjunta; her varied forms of religion; her extensive legislation, and her commerce with remote nations of antiquity—all form engrossing topics for the Society's research, and although much light has been thrown on them by the enthusiastic and persevering efforts of European scholars, yet much remains to be learned and examined: the surface of the mine has only been skimmed over, the profound depths yet lie unexplored: the youthful vigor and energies of your nation have been directed to these regions, and the labors of your scholars will ere long be rewarded with the richest treasures. Foremost amongst the results anticipated from such researches is the development of the science of Ethnography, which is now in its cradle.

Independent of this general incitement for the study of the ancient learning of India, there is a stronger and special reason which renders it the duty and interest of every American to devote his attention to this subject, inasmuch as there is a strong probability of its supplying some of the lost links of the ancient history of the Western world.

The ante-Columbian annals of America, to which the learned Charles Rafn and the venerable sage Alexander von Humboldt have directed the attention of the antiquarians, point to the colonization of the American coasts by the Scandinavians, who have been very cleverly identified by Todd with the ancient Kshatriyas; the Surya and Chandravansi Incas of Peru, their festival of Ramasitoa, and other Peruvian customs partaking of a Hindu character, noticed by the Bishop of Llandaff, in a charge delivered by him to the Clergy and Archdeaconry at Ely; the Mexican temples of the sun and moon, with altars having triple fire-vases;

the lunar and planetary mansions, and other astronomical divisions, represented on the astronomical wheel preserved in Mr. Bullock's museum amongst the relics of the antiquities of Mexico; the descriptions of Mexican armlets, anklets, earrings, noserings, and other ornaments, resembling those worn by Hindu women; the Sanskritisms in the names of American places and persons noticed by Moore in his Oriental Fragments—all indicate a mysterious relation between the ancient Hindus and the early colonization of America, and invite the attention of the Society to the solution of the question whether or not Aryavarta, which sent forth the Celts and Teutons to people Europe, also poured colonists into the New World long before its existence was heard of in Europe.

I have the most sanguine expectations that the rays of knowledge derived from researches into the antiquities of your own country from an extensive acquaintance with Vaidic and Puranic legends, and from the Saga literature of Northern Europe, the Skaldic songs of Iceland, and the ancient annals of Greenland, which are being published under the auspices of the Société Royale des Antiquaires du Nord—when combined into one focus, will illumine the dark vistas of the primeval history of America.

To the strict Benthamite, who would regard these advantages of the study of Sanskrit to be purely intellectual, and seek some practical utility to be derived from it, the Society can point out the present flourishing state of commerce between the United States of America and India, to carry on which it is indispensably necessary that your countrymen should be familiar with the language, manners, and customs of the people with whom they come into daily contact. But how are these to be mastered without some knowledge of Sanskrit, which is the source of almost all the dialects of India, and which is the repository of the laws and religions of the Hindus? ...

Wishing every success to the laudable undertakings of the Society,

I have the honor to remain, Sir,

Your obedient servant,

RADHAKANT

Raja Bahadoor.

4. *From a Letter of John Muir, Esq., D.C.L., of Edinburg (to F. E. Hall, Esq.).*

Edinburg, Nov. 24th, 1859.

.... It was mentioned to me, some time ago, that perhaps MSS. of the Atharva-Veda might be still forthcoming in Kashmir. On this I wrote at once to Mr. D. F. McLeod, to get him to make inquiries. I heard nothing in reply till the other day, when he was here, and told me that he had written to Goolab Singh, who directed inquiry to be made, but could hear nothing of the Atharva-Veda. ...

AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY.

I. Select Minutes of Meetings of the Society.

The regular Annual Meeting was held in Boston, at the rooms of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, in the Boston Athenæum, on Wednesday, May 20th, 1857, Rev. Rufus Anderson, D. D., of Boston, in the chair.

The Treasurer presented his account to be audited, accompanying it with the following summary statement of the receipts and expenditures of the year:

RECEIPTS.

Balance in hands of Treasurer, May 14th, 1856,		$103.83
Members' fees: forty annual assessments for 1856-7,	$200.00	
six do. do. for previous years,	30.00	
Total receipts of the year,		230.00
		$333.83

EXPENDITURES.

Journal, Vol. V, No. 2 (in part),	$270.00
Other printing,	3.00
Expenses of library and correspondence,	6.37
Total expenditures of the year,	$279 37
Balance in the Treasury, May 20th, 1857,	54.46
	$333.83

The Librarian being absent, no report on the Library was offered.

The Society next proceeded to the choice of officers for the ensuing year. A communication from Prof. Edward E. Salisbury of New Haven was read, declining a re-election as Corresponding Secretary. The following ticket, proposed by a Nominating Committee, was elected without dissent:

President—Prof. Edward Robinson, D. D., LL. D.,	of	New York.
Vice-Presidents Prof. Charles Beck, Ph. D.,	"	Cambridge.
Rev. William Jenks, D. D.,	"	Boston.
Pres. T. D. Woolsey, D.D., LL.D.,	"	New Haven.
Corresponding Secretary—Prof. W. D. Whitney,	"	New Haven.
Secr. of Classical Section—Prof. James Hadley,	"	New Haven.
Recording Secretary—Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr.,	"	Cambridge.
Treasurer—Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr.,	"	Cambridge.
Librarian—Prof. W. D. Whitney,	"	New Haven.

Directors	Rev. RUFUS ANDERSON, D. D.,	of Boston.
	Prof. C. C. FELTON, LL. D.,	" Cambridge.
	Mr. W. W. GREENOUGH,	" Boston.
	Rev. THEODORE PARKER,	" Boston.
	Dr. CHARLES PICKERING,	" Boston.

The Nominating Committee, being instructed to prepare an expression of the acknowledgments of the Society to Prof. Salisbury for his long and valued services as Corresponding Secretary, presented the following resolutions, which were unanimously passed:

Resolved, That the Society has received with deep regret a communication from Professor Edward E. Salisbury, of Yale College, announcing the necessity, by reason of his continued absence from the country, of his declining a re-election to the office of Corresponding Secretary: and that we should be doing violence to our feelings, if we suffered this occasion to pass without expressing to Professor Salisbury our great obligations to him for his able, faithful, and zealous performance of the duties of this office during so many years; and, in general, for the most liberal and valuable contributions of time, labor, learning, literary ardor, and pecuniary aid, which he has made to the interests of the Society from its very inception.

Resolved, That the Recording Secretary be requested to communicate the foregoing resolve to Prof. Salisbury, with the wish that his correspondence with the Society may be as full and frequent, during his absence, as his engagements will allow.

On motion, a Committee of five was appointed, to take into consideration the means of increasing the efficiency of the Society, with instructions to report at the next meeting.

The following papers were presented and read:

1. On Inverted Construction in the Modern Armenian Language, by Rev. Elias Riggs, Missionary in Turkey.

2. Abstract of a Tamil Translation of a Portion of the Mahâbhârata, by Rev. Miron Winslow, Missionary in India.

3. Illustrations of the Pangwe Language, spoken by a cannibal tribe in the highlands of Central Africa, by Rev. Albert Bushnell, Missionary in Africa.

A Semi-annual Meeting of the Society was held in New Haven, on Wednesday, Oct. 28th, 1857. The President, Dr. Robinson of New York, occupied the chair.

Brief verbal reports were made by the Treasurer and Librarian respectively upon the state of the finances and of the Library. Some of the latest accessions to the latter were laid before the meeting, among them the seventh volume of the late Baron von Hammer-Purgstall's History of Arabic Literature, the last work of its distinguished and venerable author. In connection with the latter, was unanimously passed the following resolution:

Resolved, That the Corresponding Secretary be directed to express to the family of the late Baron von Hammer-Purgstall the sympathy of the Society in their bereavement, and its painful sense of the loss which has

been sustained by the cause of Oriental learning in the decease of that eminent scholar.

The Committee on the mode of increasing the efficiency of the Society made an elaborate report through the Corresponding Secretary. They discussed the ends at which such an association ought to aim, and the way in which those ends could be most directly and successfully attained. They pointed out the reasons, general and special, why the sphere of the Society's highest and most useful activity must be the regular and liberal publication of valuable memoirs in its Journal. They exhibited the present resources of the Society, rehearsed its operations and modes of action, and showed wherein these were deficient and needed to be improved and extended. They made a comparative statement of the resources and activity of other Societies of kindred objects, especially in Europe, and claimed that, to maintain a satisfactory position with reference to them, the Society ought to enjoy an income of $1000 or more, and to publish an annual volume of four to five hundred pages: that this was due both to the contributing members and to the cause of science. They proposed a plan of action to this end, based especially upon a large increase of corporate membership, and recommended the appointment of a Committee charged with its execution.

The report was accepted, its suggestions formally adopted, and the proposed Committee appointed. It was farther voted:

That the initiation-fee of five dollars be no longer required of members newly elected, and that such members have the privilege of taking a copy of the previously published volumes of the Journal, if they desire them, at one half the original price.

That the Directors may, at their discretion, and in view of the circumstances of each case, transfer to the list of Corresponding Members persons elected as Corporate Members, but who may have since permanently left this country, and to the list of Corporate Members persons chosen as Corresponding Members, but who may have since transferred their residence to this country.

After the transaction of other business, the following communications were offered:

1. On the Harmonic Consecution of Vowels in Turkish, by Rev. Elias Riggs, Missionary in Turkey.

2. On the Prâtiçâkhyas, or Vedic phonetic and grammatical treatises, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

3. On the Hebrew Chronology, from Moses to Solomon, by Prof. James Hadley, of New Haven.

4. Analysis of the Chinese Terms and Characters *Tien* and *Shin*, by Dr. M. C. White, of New Haven.

5. On the Historical Geography, and the Geographical Position and Relations, of India, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

6. Analysis and Extracts of an Arabic Work on the Water-Balance, of the Twelfth Century, by the Chevalier N. Khanikoff, Russian Consul-General at Tabrîz, Persia; presented by Prof. E. E. Salisbury, of New Haven.

The Annual Meeting of the Society took place in Boston, on Wednesday, May 19th, 1858. Dr. Charles Pickering, in the absence of the President, occupied the chair.

The Treasurer's account was presented, audited, and accepted. The receipts and expenditures of the year were stated to be as follows:

RECEIPTS.

Balance in hands of Treasurer, May 20th, 1857,			$54.46
Members' fees: one life-membership,	$75.00		
sixty-one ann. assessm'ts for 1857-8,	305.00		
eight do. do. for previous years,	40.00		
five do. do. for 1858-9,	25.00		
three initiation fees,	15.00		
		460.00	
Sale of Journal: to new members, at half-price,	33.75		
by agents,	46.54		
		80.29	
Donation,		5.00	
Total receipts of the year,			545.29
			$599.75

EXPENDITURES.

Journal, Vol. V, No. 2 (balance remaining unpaid),	$105 00
Printing of Statement and Appeal, and blanks,	32 85
Postage and freight (in part since 1856),	42.03
Loss on uncurrent money,	.70
Total expenditures of the year,	$180 58
Balance in the Treasury, May 19th, 1858,	419.17
	$599.75

The Librarian reported that there had been added to the Library, since the last report, one hundred and sixty-five new titles, besides about fifty continuations and duplicates. The whole number of titles was now 1544, and of volumes not far from 2000. All the contents of the Library had been numbered and labelled, and provided with a complete card-catalogue.

The election of officers for the ensuing year resulted in the choice of the following ticket:

President—Prof. Edward Robinson, D. D., L.L. D., of New York.
Vice-Presidents { Prof. Charles Beck, Ph.D., " Cambridge.
Rev. William Jenks, D. D., " Boston.
Pres. T. D. Woolsey, D.D., L.L.D., " New Haven. }
Corresponding Secretary—Prof. W. D. Whitney, " New Haven.
Secr. of Classical Section—Prof. James Hadley, " New Haven.
Recording Secretary—Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr., " Cambridge.
Treasurer—Mr. Daniel C. Gilman, " New Haven.
Librarian—Prof. W. D. Whitney, " New Haven.
Directors { Rev. Rufus Anderson, D. D., " Boston.
Prof. C. C. Felton, L.L. D., " Cambridge.
Rev. Theodore Parker, " Boston.
Dr. Charles Pickering, " Boston.
Prof. E. E. Salisbury, " New Haven. }

The Board of Directors communicated the following rule:

The Committee of Publication shall consist of five members, of whom three shall be resident at the place where the Journal is published: they shall be appointed by the Directors, and shall report to the Society at every meeting respecting the matters committed to their charge.

After the transaction of other business and the reading of correspondence, communications were brought before the meeting.

1. Mr. Charles Folsom, of Cambridge, exhibited to the Society a fragment of an American inscription, of colony times, for the purpose of obtaining the opinion of the members present with respect to a restoration proposed by him of the missing portion.

2. A paper entitled "Petra in 1851," by Hon. George P. Marsh, of Burlington, Vt., was read by the Corresponding Secretary.

3. On the Greek Genitive as an Ablative Case, by Prof. James Hadley, of New Haven; read, in the absence of the author, by Mr. Abbot, of Cambridge.

4. On the Egyptian Monuments of El-Amarna, by Dr. Charles Pickering, of Boston.

5. Translation of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, a Sanskrit Text-Book of Astronomy, with Preliminary Remarks, and Notes, by Rev. Ebenezer Burgess, of Centreville, Mass.

6. On the History of Religions in China, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

7. On the Persian Doctrine of a Future Life, by Rev. W. R. Alger, of Boston.

A Semi-annual Meeting was held in New York, at the rooms of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions, and of the University of the City of New York, on Wednesday and Thursday, Nov. 3rd and 4th, 1858. The President was in the chair.

The Directors congratulated the Society on the gratifying success of the measures initiated at a previous meeting for increasing its numbers, strength, and efficiency.

The Librarian made a brief verbal report respecting the accessions to the Library and Cabinet. He also announced that he was authorized to give notice to members of the Society that, upon making application through him, they would be allowed copies of the Collection des Ouvrages Orientaux, published by the Asiatic Society of Paris, at the reduced price at which it is furnished to members of the latter society, namely at five francs per volume. Of that collection there have now been published four volumes, each of about five hundred octavo pages, containing the Travels of Ibn Batûta complete, in the Arabic text and with a French translation.

The correspondence of the past half-year was laid before the meeting, and extracts from it were read. The Society then proceeded to listen to communications.

1. On a Recent Work by Prof. Ross, of Halle, entitled "Italicans and Greeks. Did the Romans talk Sanskrit or Greek?", by Prof. James Hadley, of New Haven.

2. An Inquiry respecting the Meaning of *zohar*, in Genesis vi. 16, by Rev. J. A. Merrick, of Paris, Ky.; presented by Prof. J. W. Gibbs, of New Haven.

3. On Greek Metre, by Prof. Howard Crosby, of New York.

4. On the Vedic Doctrine of a Future Life, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

5. On the Prepositions, Conjunctions, and other Particles of the Isizulu and its Cognate Languages, by Rev. Lewis Grout, Missionary in South Africa; presented by Prof. E. E. Salisbury, of New Haven.

6. On an Ancient Greek Inscription, found at the site of Daphne, near Antioch, and copied by Rev. Homer B. Morgan, Missionary at Antioch; by Pres't T. D. Woolsey and Prof. J. W. Gibbs, of New Haven.

7. On the Relations of the Hebrew to the Indo-European Tongues, by Prof. W. H. Green, of Princeton.

8. On the Origin of Language, by Prof. Whitney.

9. On the Present Condition of the Hindû Mind, and the Manner in which it is affected by the Hindû Philosophy, by Rev. H. M. Scudder, Missionary in India.

10. On the Demonology of the New Testament, by Prof. J. J. Owen, of New York.

The regular Annual Meeting for 1859 was held in Boston and Cambridge, on Wednesday, May 18th. The President was in the chair.

The Treasurer's yearly statement was as follows:

RECEIPTS.

Balance in the Treasury, May 19th, 1858,			$419.17
Members' fees: two life-memberships,	$150.00		
eighty-nine ann. assessm'ts for 1858–9,	445.00		
fifteen do. do. for previous years,	75.00		
three do. do. for 1859–60,	15.00		
		685.00	
Sale of Journal,		77.56	
Interest on deposit in Savings Bank,		16.07	
Total receipts of the year,			778.63
			$1197.80

EXPENDITURES.

Journal, Vol. VI, No. 1 (in part),	$389.20
Printing of Proceedings and blanks,	30.75
Expenses of correspondence and library,	32.81
Total expenditures of the year,	$452.76
Balance in the Treasury, May 18th, 1859,	745.04
	$1197.80

The Librarian reported the accessions to the Library during the year, and its present condition.

The number of new works added to the Library during the year was stated to be one hundred and twenty-eight, besides about thirty continuations and duplicates, and twelve manuscripts. The Librarian called the

particular attention of the Society to the liberal gifts of books made to the Library during the past two or three years by Messrs. Williams and Norgate, oriental and general booksellers in London; and also to a very large, costly, and valuable donation of books, manuscripts, and other objects of interest, by Hon. Charles W. Bradley, Commissioner under the late treaty with China, who has been for a long time one of the most generous contributors to the Society's collections. A special vote of thanks to Mr. Bradley was moved and unanimously passed.

An amendment to the Constitution, increasing the number of Directors from five to seven, and the number required to form a quorum of the Directors from three to five, was proposed and adopted.

The Society then proceeded to the election of officers for the ensuing year, and the following ticket, proposed by a Nominating Committee of three, was elected:

President	Prof. Edward Robinson, D.D., LL.D.,	of New York.
Vice-Presidents	Prof. Charles Beck, Ph. D.,	" Cambridge.
	Rev. William Jenks, D. D.,	" Boston.
	Pres. T. D. Woolsey, D.D., LL.D.,	" New Haven.
Corresponding Secretary	Prof. W. D. Whitney,	" New Haven.
Secr. of Classical Section	Prof. James Hadley,	" New Haven.
Recording Secretary	Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr.,	" Cambridge.
Treasurer	Mr. D. C. Gilman,	" New Haven.
Librarian	Prof. W. D. Whitney,	" New Haven.
Directors	Rev. Rufus Anderson, D.D.,	" Boston.
	Prof. Howard Crosby,	" New York.
	Prof. C. C. Felton, LL. D.,	" Cambridge.
	Prof. W. H. Green, D.D.,	" Princeton.
	Rev. Theodore Parker,	" Boston.
	Dr. Charles Pickering,	" Boston.
	Prof. E. E. Salisbury,	" New Haven.

After the transaction of other business, and the reading of correspondence, communications were called for. The following were presented and read:

1. On Dr. S. W. Williams's New Chinese Dictionary, by Rev. W. A. Macy, Missionary in China; presented by Prof. James Hadley, of New Haven.

2. On the English Words *tortoise* and *turtle*, by Mr. Charles Folsom, of Cambridge.

3. On the Kings and Kingdom of Siam, by Hon. C. W. Bradley, of Ningpo; presented by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

4. On the Greek Inscription from Daphne, by Prof. Hadley.

5. On the Ethnological Relations of the Ancient Scythians, by Dr. Reinhold Solger, of Roxbury, Mass.

6. Remarks upon the Interpretation of Genesis ii. 25, by Rev. E. C. Jones, of Philadelphia; presented by Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr., of Cambridge.

7. On the Origin of the Hindu Science of Astronomy, by Prof. Whitney.

8. On the Relation between the Greek and Hindu Astronomies, by Rev. Ebenezer Burgess, of Centreville, Mass.

During the continuance of the meeting, announcement was made to the Society of the death of one of its Honorary Members, Alexander von Humboldt, of which event tidings had just been received by telegraph. Before adjournment, the following resolutions were proposed by Prof. C. C. Felton, seconded by Dr. Beck, and, after remarks by these gentlemen and others present, unanimously passed:

Resolved, That this Society has learned with the deepest regret of the death of the illustrious and venerable Baron Alexander von Humboldt, one of the most conspicuous ornaments of the age, and of human nature.

Resolved, That they recognize in the character and worth of this great man a splendid example of genius devoted with unsurpassed energy, perseverance, and enthusiasm to the entire circle of human knowledge, from early youth to the last hours of a life extended to the extraordinary length of fourscore and ten years; and that the example he set of a noble consecration to high pursuits in the midst of the allurements of rank, wealth, and society, presents an additional claim to the admiration and reverence of present and future generations.

The Semi-annual Meeting of the Society for 1859 was held in New York, on Wednesday and Thursday, Oct. 26th and 27th, at the Council-room of the University of the City of New York. The President was present and occupied the chair.

After the transaction of the usual business, and the reading of extracts from correspondence, the Society listened to and discussed the following communications:

1. On the Influence of the Semitic upon the Romanic Languages, by Dr. Max Grünbaum, of New York.

2. On Two Sanskrit Inscriptions, found near Jubulpoor, in Central India, by Fitz-Edward Hall, one of her Britannic Majesty's Inspectors of Schools for India.

3. On the Phenician Inscription of Sidon, by Prof. W. W. Turner, of Washington.

4. Comparison of the Elements of the Lunar Eclipse of Feb. 6th, 1860, as calculated according to the data and methods of the Sûrya-Siddhânta, and as determined by Modern Science, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

5. Strictures on the Occurrence of the Word *Israel* in a passage of Eusebius, by Rev. E. C. Jones, of Philadelphia; presented by Prof. James Hadley, of New Haven.

6. Contributions, from Original Sources, to our Knowledge of the Science of Muslim Tradition, by Prof. E. E. Salisbury, of New Haven.

7. On Biblical Geography, by Prof. Edward Robinson, of New York.

8. On the Formation of Futures in the Indo-European Languages, by Prof. Hadley.

9. On the Letters of Basil of Cesarea, and the Condition of the Oriental Church in the Fourth Century, by Prof. John Proudfit, of New Brunswick, N. J.

10. On an Unpublished Greek Inscription, discovered in Pisidia, by Mr. F. P. Brewer, of New Haven.

11. On the Limits of Ancient Oriental History, by Prof. J. C. Moffat, of Princeton, N. J.

12. On the Physical Geography of Asia, as connected with its Ethnology, by Prof. Arnold Guyot, of Princeton, N. J.

13. On Recent Geographical Explorations in Asia, by Mr. D. C. Gilman, of New Haven.

14. Rev. D. T. Stoddard's Collections illustrating the Modern Jews' Language of Orûmiah, arranged by Dr. A. H. Wright, of Orûmiah; presented by Prof. Turner.

15. Strictures upon the Views of M. Ernest Renan respecting the Origin and Early History of Languages, by Prof. Whitney.

The regular Annual Meeting for the year 1860 was held in Boston and Cambridge, on Wednesday and Thursday, May 16th and 17th, 1860, the President being in the chair.

The Treasurer's statement showed the receipts and expenditures of the past year to have been as follows:

RECEIPTS.

Balance in the Treasury, May 18th, 1859,			$745.04
Members' fees: 101 ann. assessm'ts for 1859-60,	$505.00		
20 do. do. for previous years,	100.00		
		605.00	
Sale of Journal,		26.23	
Total receipts of the year,			631.23
			$1376.27

EXPENDITURES.

Paper, printing, and engraving, for Journal, Vol. VI (in part),	$690.91
Other printing,	30 75
Binding books,	70.46
Copying of a Modern Syriac Vocabulary,	20.00
Expenses of correspondence and Library,	43.57
Total expenditures of the year,	$855 69
Balance in the Treasury, May 16th, 1860,	520 58
	$1376.27

The Librarian reported the accessions to the Society's collections during the year. The whole number of titles composing the catalogue was now 1726. Donations from the Imperial Academy of St. Petersburg, Dr. Wilson of Philadelphia, B. H. Hodgson, Esq., of England, Râjendralâla Mitra of Calcutta, and others, were especially noticed. The most valuable accessions to the Cabinet had been the three Sanskrit inscription-stones, from India, presented by F. E. Hall, Esq.: such monuments being exceedingly rare out of India itself. For the first time in its history, the Society had been able to expend something in binding, to the great improvement of the Library, in appearance and usefulness.

The following gentlemen were elected officers of the Society for the ensuing year:

President—Prof. Edward Robinson, D. D., LL. D., of New York.

Vice-Presidents
- Prof. Charles Beck, Ph. D., " Cambridge.
- Rev. William Jenks, D. D., " Boston.
- Pres. T. D. Woolsey, D.D., LL.D., " New Haven.

Corresponding Secretary—Prof. W. D. Whitney, " New Haven.
Secr. of Classical Section—Prof. James Hadley, " New Haven.
Recording Secretary—Mr. Ezra Abbot, Jr., " Cambridge.
Treasurer—Mr. D. C. Gilman, " New Haven.
Librarian—Prof. W. D. Whitney, " New Haven.

Directors
- Rev. Rufus Anderson, D. D., " Boston.
- Mr. J. G. Cogswell, LL. D. " New York.
- Pres. C. C. Felton, LL D., " Cambridge.
- Prof. W. H. Green, D. D., " Princeton.
- Prof. J. J. Owen, D. D., " New York.
- Dr. Charles Pickering, " Boston.
- Prof. E. E. Salisbury, " New Haven.

The Correspondence of the past six months was laid before the Society; and parts of it were read.

The following resolutions were proposed by Prof. E. E. Salisbury of New Haven:

Resolved, That in the death of Prof. William W. Turner, late of Washington City, this Society recognizes the loss of an earnest, diligent, accurate, and most successful scholar in the field of Oriental learning, whose varied attainments and fine qualities of mind rendered him an ornament to this association, and promised, with the increase of leisure for literary pursuits, to make his name more and more distinguished throughout the learned world.

Resolved, That a copy of these resolutions be transmitted to the family of our deceased associate by the Recording Secretary.

These resolutions were seconded by Prof. Beck: the President, Dr. Robinson, gave the Society a sketch of the life of Prof. Turner, and an estimate of his personal and literary character, and, after remarks from other members present, the resolutions were unanimously passed.

The Society then proceeded to listen to communications.

1. On the Character and Historical Position of the Sanskrit Alphabet, by Prof. W. D. Whitney, of New Haven.

2. On the Negrilloes, or Oriental Negroes, by Rev. J. T. Dickinson, of Middlefield, Conn.

3. Comparative Sketch of the Languages of Ponape and Ebon, two Islands of the Micronesian Archipelago, by Rev. E. T. Doane, Missionary in Micronesia; presented by Prof. Whitney.

4. Notes on Polynesia, its People and Languages, by Dr. Joseph Wilson, U. S. N.; presented by Prof. Salisbury.

5. On the Turkish Language and Literature, by Prof. Convers Francis, of Cambridge.

6. Diary of a Journey from Tabrîz to Tehrân, by Rev. Justin Perkins, Missionary in Persia.

7. On the Twenty-eight-fold Division of the Zodiac made by the Arabs, Chinese, Hindûs, and Persians, by Prof. Whitney.
8. Three Sanskrit Inscriptions, relating to Grants of Land; the Original Texts, Translations, and Notes, by Fitz-Edward Hall, M. A., one of her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools for India; presented by Prof. Whitney.
9. On the Ârya-Siddhânta, by the same; presented by the same.
10. Memoir on the the Language of the Gypsies and its Relation to the Sanskrit, together with Remarks upon the Present Condition, the History, and the Origin of this Race, and a Grammar of the Language, as now used in the Turkish Empire; by A. G. Paspati, A. M., M. D., of Constantinople; presented by Mr. D. C. Gilman, of New Haven.
11. A Latin Inscription, found on the supposed site of Lystra, in Phrygia, by Mr. F. P. Brewer, of New Haven.
12. On the lately discovered Orations of Hyperides, especially that against Demosthenes, in the matter of Harpalus, by Pres. C. C. Felton, of Cambridge.
13. On the Philosophy of Language, as illustrated by the Instruction of the Blind Mute, Laura Bridgman, by the same.

The next meeting of the Society is to be held in New Haven, on Wednesday, Oct. 17th, 1860.

II. Additions to the Library and Cabinet.

October, 1856—May, 1860.

From Rev. J. C. Adamson, D. D.

The Library of His Excellency Sir George Grey, K. C. B. Philology. Vol. I.—Part 1. South Africa ... by Wm. H. I. Bleek. s. l. 1858. 8vo.
A Compendium of Kafir Laws and Customs, including genealogical tables of Kafir chiefs and various tribal census returns. ... Mount Coke: 1858. 8vo.

From Rev. W. R. Alger, of Boston.

The Poetry of the East. By William Rounseville Alger. Boston: 1856. 12mo.

From Rev. D. O. Allen, D. D., of Wenham, Mass.

India, Ancient and Modern, Geographical, Historical, Political, Social, and Religious; ... by David O. Allen, D. D., etc. Boston: 1856. roy. 8vo.

From the American Academy of Arts and Sciences.

Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences. Vols. i–iv [parts of volumes, completing the set up to iv. 148]. Cambridge and Boston: 1855–59. 8vo.
Memoirs of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences. v. 2; vi. 1, 2; vii. Cambridge and Boston: 1855-60. 4to.

From the American Antiquarian Society.

Transactions and Collections of the American Antiquarian Society. Vol. i, Worcester: 1820; vol. ii, Cambridge: 1836; vol iii, [Boston] 1857. 8vo.
Proceedings of the American Antiquarian Society [at its various meetings, in Worcester and Boston, 1856-59]. Boston: 1856-59. 8vo.

From the American Baptist Missionary Union.

Annual Reports of the American Baptist Missionary Union, for the years 1850–57. Boston. 8vo.

From the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions.

Reports and Letters, connected with .... [the Deputation to India of the A. B. C. F. M.]. Bombay, Madras, Calcutta, and Boston: 1855–56. 8vo.
Proceedings of a General Conference of Bengal Protestant Missionaries, held at Calcutta, September 4-7, 1855. Calcutta: 1855. 8vo.
Standard Alphabet. ... by Dr Lepsius. ... London: 1855. 8vo.
Wanderings of Yamunábáí, or Narratives of Hindu Widow Life in India. By Bábá Padmanjí. With a Preliminary Essay on the Remarriage of Hindu Widows, in Sanskrit, by Dádobá Pándurang, Esq., etc. Bombay: 1857. 12mo.
A Zulu-Kafir Dictionary, etymologically explained, with Copious Illustrations and Examples, preceded by an Introduction on the Zulu-Kafir Language. By the Rev. J. L. Dohne, Missionary to the A. B. C. F. M. Cape Town: 1857. roy. 8vo.
49th Report of the A. B. C. F. M., 1858. Boston: 1858. 8vo.

From the American Geographical and Statistical Society.

Bulletin of the American Geographical and Statistical Society. Vol. ii, 1856. New York: 1857. 8vo.
Statement, Circular, and Sections of the same. New York: 1856–57. 8vo.
Report .... on the Extension of the Decimal System to Weights and Measures of the United States. New York: 1857. 8vo. pp. 22.

From Mahârâja Apûrva Kṛshṇa Bahâdur, of Calcutta.

Dewan Kuwar. [Hindustânî.] 4to.

From the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal. Nos. lxiv–lxvi, lxix–lxxvi. Calcutta: 1854–55. 8vo.

Bibliotheca Indica, No. 78. The Chhándogya-Upanishad of the Sáma-Vêda; with Extracts from the Commentary of S'añkara A'chárya. Translated from the Original Sanskrita by Rájendralál Mittra. Fasciculus I. Calcutta: 1854. 8vo.

No. 79. The Súrya-Siddhánta, with its Commentary, the Gúdhártha-Prakás'aka. Edited by Fitz-Edward Hall, A. M., with the assistance of Pandit Bápú Deva S'ástrí. Fasciculus I. Calcutta: 1854. 8vo.

From the Asiatic Society of Paris.

Journal Asiatique .... 5me Série. Tomes viii–xii. Paris: 1856–58. 8vo.

From the Editors of the Atlantis.

The Atlantis, a Register of Literature and Science, conducted by Members of the Catholic University of Ireland. Nos. ii, iii, iv. London: 1858–59. 8vo.

From M. l'Abbé Bargès, of Paris.

Mémoire sur le Sarcophage et l'Inscription Funéraire d'Eschmunazar, Roi de Sidon. Par M. l'Abbé J. J. L. Bargès, etc. Paris: 1856. 4to. pp. 40.

From the Batavian Society of Arts and Sciences.

Verhandelingen van het Bataviaasch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen. Deel xxvi. Batavia: 1854–57. 4to.

Tijdschrift voor Indische Taal-, Land-, en Volkenkunde. ... Deel iii–vi [or Deel iii, and Nieuwe Serie, Deel i–iii.] Batavia: 1854–57. 8vo.

From Dr. W. H. J. Bleek.

The Languages of Mozambique. Vocabularies of the Dialects of Lourenzo Marques, Inhambane, ... etc. Drawn up from the Manuscripts of Dr. William Peters, and from other materials, by Dr. William H. J. Bleek, etc. London. 1856. obl. 8vo.

From the Board of Foreign Missions of the Presbyterian Church.

Annual Reports of the Board of Foreign Missions of the Presbyterian Church, for the years 1850–57. New York. 8vo.

From the Board of Missions of the Protestant Episcopal Church.

Proceedings of the Board of Missions of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, for the years 1850, 1856, and 1857. New York. 8vo.

A Grammar of the Benga Language. By Rev. James L. Mackey. New York: 1855. 12mo. pp. 60.

The Benga Primer, containing Lessons for Beginners, a Series of Phrases, and a Catechism. New London, Pa.: 1855. 18mo. pp. 64.

Sango Iam .... [Matthew, in Benga]. New York: 1858. 12mo.

The Shorter Catechism, in the Benga Language. New York: 1858. 18mo. pp. 32.

Come to Jesus. [Tract in the Creek Language.]

From Prof. Otto Boehtlingk, of St. Petersburg.

Ueber die Sprache der Jakuten. Grammatik, Text, und Wörterbuch. Von Otto Boehtlingk. St. Petersburg: 1851. 4to.

From Professors Boehtlingk and Roth.

Sanskrit Worterbuch, herausgegeben von der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Bearbeitet von Otto Boehtlingk und Rudolph Roth. Lieferungen 4–16. St. Petersburg: 1855–59. 4to.

From the Bombay Mission of the A. B. C. F. M.

The Old Testament in the Marathi Language. ... Bombay: 1858. 4to. pp. 942.

Grammar of the Marathi Language [by Rev. Ebenezer Burgess]. Published by the American Mission. Bombay: 1854. 8vo.

The Dnyanodaya [a semi-monthly Journal, in Marâthî]. Published by the American Missionaries at Bombay and Ahmednuggur. Vol. xii. Bombay: 1853. roy. 8vo.

From Hon. C. W. Bradley, of Ningpo.

Explorations of Amoor River. Letter from the Secretary of State .... [containing letters and reports of P. McD. Collins, with Maps.] Public Document. Washington: 1858. 8vo. pp. 67.

A set of twelve pictures, in water colors, by a Chinese artist, illustrating scenes of Chinese life: twelve by fifteen inches, on silk-bordered paper, and bound together in scarlet silk.

A set of three pictures, in water colors, by a Chinese artist, illustrating scenes which occurred in 1858, on the Pei Ho river, in connection with the warlike operations of the English and French, and the conclusion of the treaty with America. Pictures about twelve and a half by twenty-five inches, on thin paper.

Cards of the two Chinese Commissioners, Kweiliang and Hwashana, sent to treat with the Allied Powers, in the Pei Ho, 1858.

Chinese Repository. xv 11, 12; xvi. 2; xvii. 12; xviii. 4–10, 12, 6; xix. 1, 3, 4, 8–12, 11; xx. 2, 3, 5–7, 7, 8–12.

A Grammar of the T,hai, or Siamese Language. By Capt. James Low, etc. Calcutta: 1828. 4to. pp. 88.

On Budd,ha and the Phrabát. By Capt James Low, etc. [From the Trans. of the Roy. As. Soc'y of G. B. and I, vol. iii.] London: 1831. 4to. pp. 62.
Also, bound with the above:
A Dissertation on White Elephants. By the same. [From the same.] London: 1831. 4to. pp. 7.

Remarks on the Siamese Language. By Rev. Mr. Gutzlaff. [Communicated through the late Robert Fullerton, Esq, etc.] [From the Trans. of the Roy. As. Soc'y of G. B. and I, vol. iii]. London: 1832. 4to. pp. 16 (and 3 of Siamese, lithographed).
With the above are bound up a MS. sermon, on Ezekiel xxxiii. 11, and a half-sheet of the Morning Chronicle, London, Apr. 5, 1837.

Brief Grammatical Notices of the Siamese Language; with an Appendix. By J. Taylor Jones. Bangkok: 1842. 8vo. pp. 90. With the above are bound up:
A Catalogue of Scripture Proper Names, as transferred from the Greek and Hebrew Languages into the Siamese Language. Bangkok: 1842. 8vo. pp. 71. And A Plan for Romanizing the Siamese Language; together with a list of Siamese Proper Names, in conformity therewith, as agreed upon by the American Missionaries in Siam. Bangkok: 1842. 8vo. pp. 24. 2 copies.

Treaty between the United States of America and the Kingdom of Siam. Concluded 29th May, 1856. Proclaimed 16th August, 1858. Washington: folio. pp. 9.

Proclamation of the Kings of Siam respecting the Treaty with the United States of America; in English. Dated Bangkok, June 15th, 1857. Copy, made and attested by Hon C. W. Bradley.

Autograph Letter of the First King of Siam, to Samuel Mattoon, Esq., Consul, in English; dated Bangkok, June 9th, 1857.

Dictionary of the Malay Tongue, as spoken in the Peninsula of Malacca, the Islands of Sumatra, Java, Borneo, Pulo Pinang, &c, &c. In two parts, English and Malay, and Malay and English. To which is prefixed a Grammar of that Language. Embellished with a Map. By James Harrison, M. D., etc. [the Malay in both Arabic and Roman characters.] London: 1801. 4to.

A Grammar of the Malayan Language, with an Introduction and Praxis. By Wm. Marsden, F.R.S., etc. London: 1812. 4to.

An Attempt to elucidate the Principles of Malayan Orthography. By W. Robinson. Fort Marlborough: 1823. 8vo.

Grammaire de la Langue Malaie, par Mr. W. Marsden: publiée à Londres en 1812, et traduite de l'Anglais par C. P. J. Elout. [Double version, French and Dutch on opposite pages.] Harlem: 1824. 4to.

Dictionnaire Malai, Hollandais, et Français, par C. P. J. Elout; traduit du Dictionnaire Malai et Anglais de Mr. W. Marsden. [Double version, French and Dutch; the Malay in the Arabic character and romanized: the Dutch version of each word or phrase first given, and followed by the French: the Dutch-Malay and French-Malay parts given separately.] Harlem: 1825. 4to. pp. xxiii, 604, and 482.

A Vocabulary of the English and Malay Languages. Enlarged and improved. [Containing, 1st, lists of English words with Malay equivalents, arranged according to subjects; 2nd, English and Malay sentences; 3rd, English and Malay Dialogues: the Malay romanized.] Singapore: 1846. 12mo.

Handleiding bij de Beoefening der Javaansche Taal en Letterkunde, voor de Kadetten van alle Wapenen, bestemd voor de Dienst in Nederlands Indië; door Dr. J. J. De Hollander, etc. Breda: 1848. 12mo.

Verslag van den Handel, de Scheepvaart, en de inkomende en uitgaande Regten op Java en Madura, over den Jare 1847 . . . 1848 . . . . 1849. Batavia: 1848, 1849, 1850. 3 vols. 4to.

A Sunscrit Vocabulary: containing the Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Indeclinable Particles, most frequently occurring in the Sunscrit Language, arranged in grammatical order; with Explanations in Bengalee and English. By William Yates. Calcutta: 1820. 8vo.

The Sunscrit Reader; or Easy Introduction to the Reading of the Sunscrit Language. In five Parts, etc. [In Bengâlî characters.] Calcutta: 1821. 8vo. pp. 64.

Principles of English Grammar, for the use of the Natives of India. By M. W. Woollaston. With a literal Translation into Sanscrit, by Madhusudana Tarkalankára. Calcutta: 1835. 12mo

An Elementary Grammar of the Sanscrit Language, partly in the Roman Character, arranged according to a New Theory, in reference especially to the Classical Languages: with short extracts in easy prose. By Monier Williams, M. A., etc. London: 1846. 8vo.

A Dictionary, English and Sanskrit, by Monier Williams, M. A., etc. Published under the patronage of the Honorable East India Company. London: 1851. 4to. pp. xii, 860.

A set of printed cards, constituting together a Bengâlî primer. 12 cards. pp. 1-24. 12mo. size.

The Bengalee and English Primer, for the use of Schools. Calcutta: 1833. 18mo. pp. 80.

A Grammar of the English Language; for the use of the Natives of Bengal. By Rev. J. D. Pearson. . . . [English and Bengâlî]. Calcutta: 1840. 8vo.

Introduction to the Bengálí Language. By the late Rev. W. Yates, D. D. In two volumes. Edited by J. Wenger. Vol. I Containing a Grammar, a Reader, and Explanatory Notes, with an Index and Vocabulary. Vol. II. Containing Selections from Bengálí Literature Calcutta: 1847. 8vo 2 vols.

Bákyábalí, or Idiomatical Exercises, English and Bengálí, with Dialogues on Various Subjects, Specimens of Legal Documents, Letters, &c. By the late Rev. J. D. Pearson. Calcutta: 1850. 12mo.

Ârabîyopâkhyâna. . . . [The Arabian Nights' Entertainments, translated from English into Bengâlî.] Calcutta: *çáka* 1775-6 (A.D. 1853-4). 12mo.

A Dictionary of the English Language, with English Definitions and a Bengali Interpretation; compiled from European and Native Authorities, by U. C. Addy. Calcutta: 1854 8vo pp. ii, 761.

Bengali and English Dictionary, for the use of Schools. . . . Calcutta: 1856. 16mo.

A Dictionary, Hindūstānī and English. By John Shakespear, etc. Second edition, much enlarged. London: 1820. 4to. pp. viii, 886.

The English and Hindūstānī Student's Assistant; or Idiomatical Exercises in those Languages. Designed to assist students of either language in acquiring an easy and correct method of expression. In four Parts. [romanized.] Calcutta: 1843. 12mo.

A Dictionary, Hindustání and English. By W. Yates, M D. Calcutta: 1847. 8vo.

The Handbook to Hindoostanee Conversation, with Familiar Phrases, and an Easy Vocabulary, English and Hindoostanee. [romanized.] Serampore: 1851. 18mo. pp. 59.

Romanized School Dictionary, English and Urdú. Third edition, revised. Calcutta: 1854. 16mo.

Stewart's Historical Anecdotes, with a Sketch of the History of England, and her Connection with India. Translated by Rev. W. T. Adam. Anglo Hinduwee. Calcutta: 1835. 12mo. pp. 91.

Vâkyâvalî. The Student's Assistant; or Idiomatical Exercises in English and Hindui. Calcutta: 1838. 12mo.

An Introduction to the Khasia Language; comprising a Grammar, Selections for Reading, and a Vocabulary. By the Rev. W. Pryse. Calcutta: 1855. 16mo.

A Malabar and English Dictionary, wherein the Words and Phrases of the Tamulian Language, commonly called by Europeans the Malabar Language, are explained in English. By the English Missionaries of Madras. Wepery, near Madras: 1779. 4to. [incomplete, interleaved, with MS. notes; much wormeaten.]

The Açvamedha-Parvan of the Mahâbhârata, in Tamil. Madras: 1852. 8vo.

The Râma-nâtaka, in Tamil. Madras: 1850. 8vo.

Catalogue of Publications in Various Languages, on sale by the Calcutta School-Book Society. 1856. [Calcutta: 1856.] 12mo. pp 10. (2 copies)

A Dictionary of Words used in the East Indies, with Full Explanations; . . . . To which is added Mohammedan Law and Bengal Revenue Terms. With an Appendix, containing Forms of Firmauns, etc., etc. . . . 2nd edition. London: 1804. 12mo.

Journal of a Tour through Part of the Snowy Range of the Himmālā Mountains, and to the Sources of the Rivers Jumna and Ganges. By James Baillie Frazer, Esq. London: 1820. 4to.

Sketch of the Column at Corygaum, with a Plan of the Village, some Letters, private and public, the General Orders, and the Dispatch from the Honorable Court of Directors, relating to the action on the 1st January, 1818. Madras: 1839. 8vo. pp. 32.

Articles of War for the Native Troops of the Army of India. Published by order of the Right Honorable the Governor General of India in Council. [Madras:] 1845. 12mo. pp. ix, 64.

A Letter to the Right Hon Sir J. Hobhouse, President of the Board of Control, on the Baggage of the Indian Army. By Sir Charles James Napier, etc. Fourth edition. London: 1849. 8vo. pp. 87.

Sketches of India: with Notes on the Seasons, Scenery, and Society of Bombay, Elephanta, and Salsette. By Henry Moses, M. D. London: 1850. 8vo.

On the Scientific Principles of Agriculture considered as a Branch of Public Education in India. By Henry Piddington. (Printed for private circulation in 1839) and now published. Calcutta: 1854. 8vo. pp. 23.

A Grammar of the Cingalese Language. By James Chater. [Interleaved, and with occasional MS. notes.] Colombo: 1815. 8vo. pp. x, 41.

A School Dictionary, English and Singhalese. Compiled for the Ceylon Central School Commission. Colombo: 1845. 24mo.

A School Dictionary, Singhalese and English. By the Rev. W. Bridgnell. Colombo: 1847. 24mo.

Second Report of the Female Boarding School at Oodooville, Jaffna; under the direction of the American Ceylon Mission. July, 1843. Jaffna. 8vo. pp. 27.
Also, bound with the above:
First Report of the Female Boarding School at Varany, Jaffna; under the direction etc. Oct., 1843. Jaffna. 8vo. pp. 10.

Report on the Wellicadde Gaol, Colombo, Ceylon; from its commencement, December 1, 1843, to September 30, 1849. By A. G. Green, J. P., Governor of the Establishment. Colombo: 1850. 8vo. pp. iv, 84.

The Leading Principles of English Grammar, translated into Persian, by Syud Auzumoodeen Hussun Belgramee. [English and Persian.] Calcutta: 1833. 12mo.

The Persian Reader; or Select Extracts from Various Persian Writers. [English and Persian] Vol. I, 1835. Vol. II, 1836. Calcutta. 8vo.

School Dictionary, English and Persian. Calcutta: 1855. 16mo.

An Armenian Book, historical and geographical. 12mo.

Specimen Nos. of 7 newspapers, published at Constantinople. Italian, Greek, Russian, Turkish and Armenian.

A Grammar of the Hebrew Tongue, being an Essay to bring the Hebrew Grammar into English, to facilitate the Instruction of all those who are desirous of acquiring a clear idea of this Primitive Tongue by their own Studies, ... and published more especially for the use of the students of Harvard College, at Cambridge, in New England. Composed and accurately corrected by Judah Monis, M. A. Boston, N. E.: 1735. sm. 4to. pp. 96.

A Manuscript Copy of the Kurân, written at Palembang, in Java, in 1854, in pursuance of a vow, by Mayerbinah, a returned Pilgrim to Mecca. 556 pages, folio size, the first two and last two pages brilliantly illuminated; the rest with colored borders, and occasional ornamented headings; Arabic binding. Very handsome, and in perfect order; enclosed in calico bag.

Dictionnaire Français-Arabe, (Idiome parlé en Algérie) contenant: 1° tous les mots usités pour parler en Algérie .... 2° leur prononciation .... 3° leur pluriel; 4° leur genre; par Ad. Paulnier, etc., etc. Ouvrage composé à Alger, et vérifié par plusieurs savants indigènes. Paris: 1850. 12mo. pp. xx, 911.

Dizionario portatile delle Lingue Maltese, Italiana, Inglese, compilato da F. Vella. Parte prima [Maltese-Italian-English]. Livorno: 1843. 8vo.

Maltese Grammar for the use of the English, by Francis Vella. Leghorn: 1831. 12mo.

Narrative of a Journey to the Zoolu Country, in South Africa. By Capt. Allen F. Gardiner, R. N. Undertaken in 1835. London: 1836. 8vo.

Ueber die Ursprache, oder über eine Behauptung Mosis, dass alle Sprachen der Welt von einer einzigen, der noachischen, abstammen; mit einigen Anhängen. Von D. Gottlieb Philipp Christian Kaiser, etc. Erlangen: 1840. 8vo.

Thirty-six copper coins, all from the mint of Alexandria; viz. 15 of Claudius Gothicus; 8 of Gallienus; 5 of Cornelia Salonina, wife of Gallienus; 3 of Gordianus; 2 of Severus Alexander; 1 of Philippus II; 1 of Valerianus; 1 of Trebonianus Gallus.

From Rev. E. C. Bridgman, D. D., of Shanghai.

Slips from the North-China Herald, describing the visit of the American Embassy to Pekin.

Catholic Prayer-Book, in Chinese. 1795. 12mo.

Inaugural Address before the Shanghai Literary and Scientific Society; Sketches of the Miau-Tsze; by Rev. E. C. Bridgman [From Vol. I of Journ. of N.-China Branch of Roy. As. Society]. Shanghai: 1857-59. 8vo.

From the British and Foreign Bible Society.

Catalogue of the Library of the British and Foreign Bible Society. By George Bullen, of the British Museum. London: 1857. 8vo.

From Prof. Hermann Brockhaus, of Leipzig.

Die Sage von Nala und Damayantî, nach der Bearbeitung des Somadeva herausgegeben von Hermann Brockhaus, etc. Leipzig: 1859. roy. 8vo. pp. x, 32.

Die Lieder des Hafiz .... herausgegeben von Hermann Brockhaus. i. 4; ii. 1-4.

From J. P. Brown, Esq., of Constantinople.

La Presse d'Orient [semi-weekly newspaper]. Nos. 237-246. April-May, 1857. Constantinople. fol.

From Rev. Ebenezer Burgess, of Boston.

A Vocabulary of Words in the Hawaiian Language [by Lorrin Andrews]. Lahainaluna: 1836. 8vo.

The Bengalee Translation of the Vedant, or Resolution of all the Veds..... Together with a Preface by the Translator. Calcutta: 1815. 8vo.

A Vocabulary, English and Goojurattee, to which is added a Selection of Fables, &c. By the Rev. William Fyvie. Surat: 1828. 8vo.

A Grammar of the Mahratta Language. To which are added Dialogues on Familiar Subjects. The Second Edition. By W. Carey, D. D., etc. Serampore: 1808. 8vo.

A Help in acquiring a Knowledge of the English Language.... [English and Canarese]. Bellary Mission Press: 1835. 8vo.

Vocabulary of the Haussa Language. Part I.—English and Haussa. Part II.—Haussa and English, and Phrases and Specimens of Translations. To which are prefixed, the Grammatical Elements of the Haussa Language. By the Rev. James Frederick Schön, etc. London: 1843. 12mo.

Vocabulary of the Yoruba Language. Part I.—English and Yoruba. Part II.—Yoruba and English. To which are prefixed, the Grammatical Elements of the Yoruba Language. By Samuel Crowther, Native Teacher, etc. London: 1842. 12mo.

An Imperfect Outline of the Elements of the Galla Language, by the Rev. J. L. Krapf. Preceded by a few Remarks concerning the Nation of the Gallas, and an Evangelical Mission among them, by the Rev. C. W. Isenberg. London: 1840. 12mo. pp. xiv, 16.

Dictionary of the Galla Language, composed by Charles Tutschek, published by Lawrence Tutschek. Part I. Galla-English-German. Munich: 1844. 8vo.

A Grammar of the Galla Language, by Charles Tutschek, edited by Lawrence Tutschek, M. D. Munich: 1845. 8vo.

By the Ceylon Mission of the A. B. C. F. M.

The Holy Bible.... translated.... under the auspices of the Brit. and For. Bible Society. Madras: 1850. roy. 8vo. *Tamil.*

The same, printed on paper of quarto size.

Genesis and Exodus XX. (New Version)....Jaffna: 1850. 18mo. *Tamil.*

Deuteronomy.... Manepy: 1839. 18mo. *Tamil.*

The Book of Joshua.... Manepy: 1839. 18mo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*

The Book of Judges.... Jaffna: 1840. 18mo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*

The First [and Second] Book of Samuel.... Jaffna: 1840. 18mo. *Tamil.*

The First [and Second] Book of Kings.... Jaffna: 1840. 18mo. *Tamil.*

The Book of Ezra [with Nehemiah, Esther, and Job].... Jaffna: 1841. *Tamil.*

The Psalms.... Manepy: 1839. 18mo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*

The Book of Psalms.... Manepy: 1850. 12mo. *Tamil.*

The Book of Psalms. Diglot Edition.... Jaffna: 1850. 12mo. 2 copies. *English and Tamil.*

The Proverbs of Solomon.... Jaffna: 1850. 12mo. *Tamil.*

The Book of Isaiah.... Jaffna: 1841. 18mo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*

The New Testament of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. In the Tamil Language. Madras: 1840. 8vo.

The same. Jaffna: 1843. 8vo.

The Gospel according to Matthew.... Jaffna: 1854. 18mo. *Tamil.*

Barnes' Notes on St. Matthew's Gospel.... Madras: 1848. 12mo. *Tamil.*

The Gospel of Mark.... Jaffna: 1851. 18mo. *Tamil.*

Luke's Gospel.... Jaffna: 1848. 12mo. *Tamil.*

The Gospel according to St. Luke.... Jaffna: 1849. 12mo. 3 copies. *English and Tamil.*

John's Gospel.... Jaffna: 1847. 12mo. *Tamil.*

The Acts of the Apostles.... Jaffna: 1854. 18mo. *Tamil.*

The Acts of the Apostles. Diglot Edition.... Jaffna: 1851. 12mo. *English and Tamil.*

Paul's Epistles to Timothy.—The General Epistle of James.—The Three Epistles of John.... Jaffna: 1837. 32mo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*

A Compendium of Scripture History.... Manepy: 1839. 18mo. *Tamil.*

A Compendium of Doctrine.... Jaffna: 1840. 18mo. *Tamil.*

The History of Little Henry and his Bearer. By Mrs. Sherwood. Translated from the English. Madras: 1840. 18mo. *Tamil.*

An Essay on Faith. Designed for Catechists and Students of Theology.... Jaffna: 1842. 18mo. *Tamil.*

Tamil Tracts.

General Series. Nos. 1-17, 24, 24-34, 36-66, 70, 71, 73-78; bound together in one volume. Jaffna: 1842-45. 12mo.

New Children's Series. Nos. 1-28; bound together in one volume. s. l. and s. a. 18mo.

A Brief History of the Church of Christ, from the German of the Rev. C. G. Barth, etc. Translated from the English. Madras: 1845. 12mo. *Tamil.*

Tamil Hymns, Selected and Original, adapted for Public, Private, and Social Worship.... Jaffna. 1846. 8vo.

The same, in 24mo.

Prayers for the use of Christian Families, with an Essay on Family Religion and a Table of Lessons for Family Worship.... Jaffna: 1846. 8vo. *Tamil.*
The Class Book of Natural Theology. By the Rev. T. H. Gallaudet.... Madras: 1846. 12mo. *Tamil.*
Line upon Line, by the author of "Peep of Day".... Madras: 1846. 2 vols. 18mo. *Tamil.*
The Indian Pilgrim.... Second Edition. Madras: 1847. 12mo. *Tamil.*
The Rise and Progress of Religion in the Soul, by Dr. Doddridge. Abridged and altered.... Jaffna: 1848. 12mo. *English and Tamil.*
The same. *Tamil* only.
The Pilgrim's Progress from this World to that which is to come. By John Bunyan.... Fifth Edition. Madras: 1848. 12mo. *Tamil.*
The Daily Monitor: containing a text from Holy Scripture and a verse of Sacred Poetry for every morning and evening in the year. Jaffna: 1849. 24mo. *Tamil.*
Instructions to Catechists. In twenty chapters; with an Appendix of eight chapters. By Rev. C. J. Beschi. Madras: 1849. 18mo. *Tamil.*
A Poetical Compend of the Bible. In the form of a dialogue between a Gooroo and a Disciple concerning God, the soul, and sin. Jaffna: 1852. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Summary of a Body of Divinity. In the Tamil Language. By the late Rev. C. T. E. Rhenius, Missionary. Fourth Edition. Madras: 1852. 12mo.
Light of Truth. A Rejoinder to Abbe Dubois's Refutation of Heresy. By Rev. G. W. McMillan, etc. Madras: 1853. 18mo. *Tamil.*
A Manual Dictionary of the Tamil Language..... Jaffna: 1842. 8vo. 3 copies.
Abridgment of Rhenius' Tamil Grammar. Second Edition; with additions and improvements. Madras: 1845. 12mo.
Abridgment of Tamil Grammar.... Jaffna: 1848. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Easy Reader....Jaffna: 1846. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Tamil Instructor. Nos. 1-5. Manepy and Jaffna: 1847-51. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Negandu: Part XI....Jaffna: 1843. 8vo. *Tamil.*
The Classical Reader, or Selections from Standard Tamil Authors. Jaffna: 1847. 8vo.
Tamil Calendar: for the years 1835-1844, bound in one volume: for the years 1845, 1847-1850, 1853, separate. Jaffna: 1834-53. 8vo.
The Morning Star. Published semi-monthly.... devoted to Education, Science, and Literature, etc. .... Jaffna. Vols. i, ii, iv (of Vol. iv, 2 copies). 4to. 1841-44. Vols. v-xiii, xv. folio. 1845-53, 1855. *English and Tamil.*
Physical Science: in the form of a Dialogue. For the use of Schools.... Jaffna: 1843. 16mo. *Tamil.*
A Catechism on the Elements of Geography, in three Parts, with an Atlas.... Jaffna: 1847. 18mo. *Tamil.*
The Oriental Astronomer. being a Complete System of Hindu Astronomy, accompanied with a Translation, and Numerous Explanatory Notes. With an Appendix. Jaffna: 1848. 8vo. 3 copies. *Tamil.*
An Elementary Arithmetic, combining many of the peculiarities of the European and Tamil Systems. Jaffna: 1849. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Tamil Geography for the use of Schools. Hindustan.... Third Edition. Jaffna: 1850. 12mo.
Elements of Logic.... By William Nevins. Jaffna: 1850. 18mo. *Tamil.*
Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene.... Jaffna: 1853. 12mo. *Tamil.*
An Elementary Algebra. By Daniel L. Carroll..... Jaffna: 1855. 12mo. *Tamil.*
Three Chronological Charts, in Tamil and English.
Four small Tamil books, without title, place, or date.
First Lessons in English and Tamil. Designed to assist Tamil youth in the study of the English language.... Parts I and II. Jaffna: 1847. 18mo.
Phrase-Book; or Idiomatic Exercises in English and Tamil. Designed to assist Tamil youth in the study of the English language. Third Edition. Jaffna: 1848. 12mo.
Ten English school-books, published for the use of Tamil scholars.
The Sidath Sangarawa, a Grammar of the Singhalese Language, translated into English, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by James De Alwis, etc. Colombo: 1852. 8vo.

Report of the American Ceylon Mission; for the year 1852. Jaffna: 1853. 8vo. 4 copies. Also, bound up with it, Brief Sketch of the American Ceylon Mission, with an Appendix. Jaffna: 1849. 8vo.

From the Royal University of Norway, at Christiania.

Det Kongelige Norske Frederiks Universitets Aarsberetning for 1854, for 1855. Christiania: 1857. 12mo. pp. 32, 37.

Beiträge zur Lateinischen Grammatik. I. Von L. C. M. Aubert. Christiania: 1856. 8vo. pp. viii, 50.

Quelques Observations de Morphologie Végétale, faites au Jardin Botanique de Christiania par J. M. Norman, etc., et publiées.... par H. H. Rasch, etc. Christiania: 1857. 4to. pp. 32.

Observations sur les Phénomènes d'Érosion en Norvége, recueillies par J. C. Hörbye, etc., et publiées par B. M. Keilhau, etc. Christiania: 1857. 4to. pp. viii, 56.

Al-Mufassal, Opus de Re Grammatica Arabicum, auctore Abu 'l-Kâsim Mahmûd Bin 'Omar Zamahs'ario. Ad fidem Codicum Manu scriptorum edidit J. P. Broch, theologiæ candidatus.... Christianiæ: 1859. 8vo.

From the Commissioner of Indian Affairs.

Information respecting the History, Condition, and Prospects of the Indian Tribes of the United States. Collected and prepared.... by Henry R. Schoolcraft, LL.D. Part VI. Philadelphia: 1857. 4to.

From the Commisioner of Patents.

Report of the Commissioner of Patents for the Year 1855. Arts and Manufactures. Vol. i. (2 copies). Washington: 1856. 8vo.

The same, for the Year 1856. Agriculture; Mechanics. Vol. i–iii. Washington: 1857. 8vo.

From Rev. C. H. A. Dall, of Calcutta.

Vividhârtha-sangraha. [A Bengâlî periodical]. iv. 43, 45. Calcutta: 1857. 4to.

From Capt. C. H. Davis, U. S. N., of Cambridge.

Essai de Grammaire de la Langue des Iles Marquises, par un prêtre de la Société de Picpus, missionaire aux Iles Marquises [René Dordillon, bishop of Cambisiopalire]. Valparaiso: 1857. 8vo.

From Dr. T. T. Devan.

The Beginner's First Book in the Chinese Language (Canton Vocabulary).... [By Thomas T. Devan, M. D.] Hongkong: 1847. 8vo.

From the Hon. East India Company.

Rig-Veda-Sanhita, the Sacred Hymns of the Brahmans; together with the Commentary of Sayanacharya. Edited by Max Müller, M. A., etc. Vol. iii. London: 1856. 4to.

Rig-Veda-Sanhitá.... Translated from the Original Sanskrit, by H. H. Wilson, etc., etc. Vols. ii, iii. London: 1854, 1857. 8vo.

A Glossary of Judicial and Revenue Terms, and of Useful Words, occurring in official documents relating to the administration of the government of British India, from the Arabic, Persian, Hindustání, Sanskrit.... and other languages.... By Horace Hayman Wilson, etc., etc. London: 1855. 4to. pp. xxiv, 732.

From Mr. R. W. Emerson, of Concord, Mass.

The Sraddha, the Keystone of the Brahminical, Buddhistic, and Arian Religions, as illustrative of the dogma and duty of adoption among the Princes and People of India. By D. Urquhart. London: 1857. 8vo. pp. 44.

From M. P. E. Foucaux, of Paris.

Grammaire de la Langue Tibétaine. Par Ph. Ed. Foucaux, etc. Paris: 1858. 8vo.

From M. Garcin de Tassy, of Paris.

Mantic Uttaïr ou le Langage des Oiseaux, poème de philosophie religieuse par Farid-uddin Attar, publié en persan par M. Garcin de Tassy, etc. Paris: 1857. roy. 8vo.

Les Auteurs Hindoustanis et leurs Ouvrages, par M. Garcin de Tassy, etc. Paris: 1855. 8vo. pp. 47.
Chants Populaires de l'Inde, traduits par M. Garcin de Tassy. Paris: 1854. 8vo. pp. 49.
Le Bostan, Poème moral de Saadi: Analyse et Extraits par M. Garcin de Tassy, etc. Paris: 1859. 8vo. pp. 24.
Discours de M. Garcin de Tassy à l'Ouverture de son Cours d' Hindoustani.... le 5 Mai, 1859. Paris: 1859. 8vo. pp. 20.

From the German Oriental Society.

Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. x. 4—xiv. 2. Leipzig: 1856-60. 8vo.
Register zu Band i-x der Zeitsch. d. D. M. G. Leipzig: 1857. 8vo.
Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, herausgegeben von der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. Band i. Leipzig. 8vo.
No. 1. Mithra. Ein Beitrag zur Mythengeschichte des Orients von Dr. Friedrich Windischmann. 1857. pp. iv, 90.
No. 2. Al-Kindî, genannt "der Philosoph der Araber." Ein Vorbild seiner Zeit und seines Volkes. 1857. pp. 54.
No. 3. Die fünf Gâthâs, oder Sammlungen von Liedern und Sprüchen Zarathustras, seiner Junger und Nachfolger. Herausgegeben, übersetzt, und erklärt von Dr. Martin Haug, etc. Erste Abtheilung. Die erste Sammlung (Gâthâ ahunavaiti) enthaltend. 1858.
No. 4. Ueber das Çatrunjaya Mâhâtmyam. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Jaina. Von Albrecht Weber. 1858.
No. 5. Ueber das Verhältniss des Textes der drei Syrischen Briefe des Ignatius zu den übrigen Recensionen der Ignatianischen Literatur. Von Richard Adelbert Lipsius. 1859.
Indische Studien.... herausgegeben von Albrecht Weber. iv. 1-3. Leipzig: 1857-58. 8vo.
Biblioteca Arabo-Sicula, ossia Raccolta di Testi Arabici che toccano la Geographia, la Storia, le Biografie, e la Bibliografia della Sicilia, messi insieme da Michele Amari. Lipsia: 1855. 8vo.

From Capt. James Glynn, U. S. N., of New Haven.

The Urh-Ya, a Chinese Dictionary, profusely illustrated with cuts. In four Parts, large roy. 8vo size.
Chinese Repository, xviii. 4. Canton: 1849. 8vo.

From Rev. William Goodell, of Constantinople.

The New Testament in the Turkish Language, Armenian character. Constantinople: 1856. roy. 8vo.

From the Ducal Library at Gotha.

Die Persischen Handschriften der Herzoglichen Bibliothek zu Gotha. Verzeichnet von Dr. Wilhelm Pertsch. Wien: 1859. 8vo.

From Rev. Lewis Grout, of Umsunduzi, S. Africa.

An English-Kafir Dictionary of the Zulu-Kafir Language, as spoken by the Tribes of the Colony of Natal. By James Perrin, etc. Pietermaritzburg: 1855. 16mo.
Remarks on the Proper Treatment of Cases of Polygamy, as found already existing in Converts from Heathenism. By Dr. J. W. Colenso, Bishop of Natal. Pietermaritzburg: 1855. 8vo. pp. 27.
A Reply to Bishop Colenso's "Remarks ...." By an American Missionary. Pietermaritzburg: 1855. 8vo. pp. 56.
A Sermon delivered .... in Durban, Natal, June 8, 1856. By Rev. Lewis Grout. Pietermaritzburg: 1856. 8vo. pp. 24.
A Discourse .... delivered .... at Durban and Pietermaritzburg, during the autumn of 1857. By Rev. Lewis Grout. Pietermaritzburg: 1857. 8vo. pp. 48.
A Discourse, delivered .... in Durban, Natal, October 25th, 1857. By the Rev. Lewis Grout, etc. Pietermaritzburg: 1857. 8vo. pp. 39.
The Cape Monthly Magazine. Vol. iii, No. 13: Jan. 1858. Cape Town. 8vo.

Acts of the Apostles, translated by the American Missionaries into the Zulu Language. Emsunduzi: 1859. 8vo. pp. 76.
A Grammar of the Zulu Language; accompanied with a Historical Introduction, also with an Appendix. By Rev. Lewis Grout, etc. Natal: 1859. 8vo.

From Prof. S. S. Haldeman, of Columbia, Pa.

Elements of Latin Pronunciation, for the Use of Students in Language .... By S. S. Haldeman, etc. Philadelphia: 1851. 12mo. pp. 76.
Investigation of the Power of the Greek *Z* by means of Phonetic Laws—On the Relation between Chinese and the Indo-European Languages—Report on the Present State of our Knowledge of Linguistic Ethnology—by S. S. Haldeman. Cleveland and Albany: 1856–57. 8vo. pp. 37.

From Rev. E. E. Hale, of Boston.

The Quarterly Journal of the American Unitarian Association. Vol. v, Nos. 2, 3. Boston: 1858. 8vo.

From F. E. Hall, Esq., of India.

Mukhtasar al-Ma'ân, a rhetorical work, by Mas'ûd Ben Umar, called Sa'ad al-Taftazânî. Calcutta: A. H. 1228 [A. D. 1813]. 4to.
Nûr al-Anwâr fî Sharh al-Minâr, a work on jurisprudence, by Shaikh Ahmad, called Shaikh Juyûn Ben Abu Sa'îd, etc. Delhi: A. H. 1234 [A. D. 1818]. 4to.
Karâbâdîn-i-Kabîr. A. H. 1249 [A. D. 1833]. fol. *Persian.*
Makhzan al-Adwiyah, by Muhammad Husain Khâni. 2 vols. 4to. *Persian.*
A Treatise on the Yoga Philosophy, by N. C. Paul, etc. Benares: 1851. 8vo. pp. iv, 63.
Collectio Davidis, i. e. Catalogus celeberrimæ illius bibliothecæ Hebrææ, quam .... collegit R. Davides Oppenheimerus .... libros Hebræos ex omni fere literarum genere tam editos quam manu exaratos continens. Hamburgi: 1826. 12mo. pp. xvi, 744.
Three stones, bearing Sanskrit inscriptions, from Central India (see above, pp. 499–537).

From the Family of the late Baron Hammer-Purgstall, of Vienna.

Literatur-Geschichte der Araber .... von Hammer-Purgstall. Zweite Abtheilung. 7ter Band. Wien: 1856. 4to.

From B. H. Hodgson, Esq., of Dursley, England.

On the Aborigines of India. Essay the First; on the Kocch, Bódó, and Dhimál Tribes, in Three Parts .... By B. H. Hodgson, Esq., etc. Calcutta: 1847. 8vo.
Collection of lesser essays on the aboriginal tribes of India, by B. H. Hodgson, Esq., extracted from various volumes of the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal.
Illustrations of the Literature and Religion of the Buddhists. By B. H. Hodgson, Esq., etc. Serampore: 1841. 8vo.

From W. B. Hodgson, Esq., of Savannah.

Remarks on the Recent Travels of Dr. Barth in Central Africa or Soudan. A Paper read before the Ethnological Society of New York, Nov. 1858, by William B. Hodgson. 8vo. pp. 18.

From Rev. C. C. Hoffman, of West Africa.

The Acts of the Apostles, translated into the Grebo Tongue; by the Rev. John Payne, D.D., etc. New York: 1851. 16mo. pp. 98.
The Litany, or General Supplication, with the Confirmation Service [in Grebo]. Cavalla, W. Afr.: 1858. 12mo. pp. 15.
The Cavalla Messenger [Grebo and English], iii. 10; ix. 1. Cavalla: 1855–59. 4to.
The Gospel according to St. John, translated into the Mpongwe Language: by Missionaries of the A. B. C. F. M., Gaboon, Western Africa. New York: 1852. 12mo.

From Mrs. H. R. Hoisington, of Centre Brook, Conn.

Manuscripts and Diagrams by the late Rev. H. R. Hoisington, to wit:—
- Meteorological Journal and Astrological Meteorology. 1840, Aug. 8—1841, Feb. 2.
- Astrological Journal, with Tables. Aug. 27—Dec. 7, 1840.
- Translation, from the Tamil, of part of the Skanda-Purâṇa, being an account of the universe; with maps.
- Diagrams representing the Puranic view of the earth and of the universe; from a temple in South-India.
- Figure of Kâmadhenu, the cow of plenty, with explanations.
- Figure of the so-called impression of Buddha's foot, Adam's Peak, Ceylon; with a plan of the temple.

From Prof. C. A. Holmboe, of Christiania.

Traces de Buddhisme en Norvége avant l'Introduction du Christianisme, par M. C. A. Holmboé, etc. Paris: 1857. 8vo. pp. 75.

From J. J. Jarves, Esq., of Florence.

Art-Hints. Architecture, Sculpture, and Painting. By James Jackson Jarves, etc. London: 1855. 12mo.

A Japanese book and map.

From the Chev. N. Khanikoff.

Extrait d'une Lettre de Mons. N. Khanykof à M. Dorn, datée de Nihmetabad $\frac{\text{29 Sept.}}{\text{9 Oct.}}$, 1855.

do. do. datée de Tébriz, le $\frac{5}{17}$ Dec. 1855.

do. do. datée de Nihmetabad, le $\frac{4}{16}$ Sept. 1856.

do. do. datée de Tébriz, le $\frac{8}{20}$ Avril, 1857.

[all extracts from the Mélanges Asiatiques of the Imperial Academy of St. Petersburg.]

On a certain Arabic Inscription at Derbend .... [in Russian]. 8vo. pp. 10, and 2 plates. [2 copies.]

From Rev. E. N. Kirk, D.D., of Boston.

Moise de Khorène .... Histoire d' Arménie. Texte Arménien et Traduction Française. Par M. P. E. Le Vaillant de Florival, etc. Paris: s. a. 2 vols. 8vo.

From Dr. Adalbert Kuhn, of Berlin.

Zeitschrift fur Vergleichende Sprachforschung, auf dem Gebiete des Deutschen, Griechischen, und Lateinischen, herausgegeben von Dr. Adalbert Kuhn, etc. viii. 1–6; ix. 1–4. Berlin: 1858–59. 8vo.

Beiträge zur Vergleichenden Sprachforschung auf dem Gebiete der Arischen, Celtischen, und Slawischen Sprachen, herausgegeben von A. Kuhn und A. Schleicher. i. 1–4; ii. 1, 2. Berlin: 1856–59. 8vo.

From Prof. Christian Lassen, of Bonn.

Indische Alterthumskunde. Band iii. Leipzig: 1857–58. 8vo.

From L. A. Huguet-Latour, Esq., of Montreal.

Various pamphlets and Journals, concerning education and agriculture in Canada.

From the Lodiana Mission of the Presbyterian Board.

A Dictionary of the Panjâbî Language, prepared by a Committee of the Lodiana Mission. Lodiana: 1854. 4to.

From Dr. D. J. Macgowan, of Shanghai.

Shanghai Almanac and Miscellany, for the years 1852–55. Shanghai: 1851–54. 8vo.

Chinese and Foreign Gazette. Vol. i. 1854–55. Vol. ii. 1855–56. Ningpo. 8vo.
The Ninth Annual Report of the Chinese Hospital at Shanghae, from Jan. 1st to Dec. 31st, 1855. By the Committee. Shanghae: 1856. 8vo. pp. 15.
Notices of Chinese Buddhism, by Rev. J. Edkins, Shanghae. 1855. 8vo. pp. 39.

From Rev. W. A. Macy, of Shanghai.

The Gospel of Matthew, in Manchu and Chinese. Shanghai: 1858. roy. 8vo. size. xylographed.

From Messrs. Maisonneuve & Cie, of Paris.

Recherches sur l'Écriture des différents Peuples anciens et modernes; ouvrage renfermant une grande collection d' alphabets et de nombreux fac-simile d'écritures reproduits en or et en couleur, par L. Léon de Rosny. Livraisons 1–4. Paris: 1857. 4to.

From Hon. G. P. Marsh, of Burlington, Vt.

On the Rosheniah Sect, and its Founder, Báyezíd Ansárí. By J. Leyden, M.D. 4to. pp. 66.

From Rev. J. A. Merrick, of Paris, Ky.

Three Tracts, in the Assiniboine Chippewa Language, to wit:—
The Young Cottager. Montreal: 1848. 12mo. pp. 34.
On the Holy Scriptures, with a Hymn to Christ. [New York: 1852.] 12mo. pp. 12.
The Creed—The Commandments—The Lord's Prayer. [London: 1853] 12mo. pp. 5.
Four coins, two silver and two copper, not yet identified: one copper cash.

From J. Muir, Esq., of Edinburg.

Original Sanskrit Texts on the Origin and Progress of the Religion and Institutions of India; collected, translated into English, and illustrated by Notes .... By J. Muir, etc. Part First. The Mythical and Legendary Accounts of Caste. London: 1858. 8vo.

From Prof. K. F. Neumann, of Munich.

Geschichte des Englischen Reichs in Asien. Von Karl Friedrich Neumann. Leipzig: 1857. 2 vols. 8vo.
Das Reich Japan und seine Stellung in der Westöstlichen Weltbewegung. Von Karl Friedrich Neumann. [München: 1857.] 12mo.

From the North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.

Journal of the North-China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society. Vol. i, Nos. 1, 2. Shanghai: 1858–59. 8vo.

From the Oriental Society of France.

Revue de l'Orient. Bulletin de la Société Orientale de France. 16me année. Nros. i–iv. Paris: 1858. 8vo.

From Prof. Joseph Packard, D.D., of Fairfax Co., Va.

The Gospel of Matthew, in Shanghai Colloquial, Chinese character. Shanghai. 8vo size. xylographed.
The same, romanized. Shanghai. 8vo size. xylographed.
A Geography, in Shanghai Colloquial, romanized; with maps. Shanghai. 8vo size. xylographed.

From Mr. A. H. Palmer.

Documents and Facts illustrating the Origin of the Mission to Japan, authorized by the Government of the United States, May 10th, 1851 .... By Aaron Haight Palmer. Washington: 1857. 8vo. pp. 22.

From Rev. J. Perkins, D.D., of Orûmiah.

The Old Testament in Modern Syriac, with References. 4to. pp. 1004.

From the Philological Society of London.

Proceedings of the Philological Society. Vols. i-vi. London: 1844-54. 8vo.
Transactions of the Philological Society. 1854, 1855, 1856. London. 8vo.

From Dr. Charles Pickering, of Boston.

The Geographical Distribution of Animals and Plants. By Charles Pickering, etc. Boston and London: 1854. fol.

From Prof. A. F. Pott, of Halle.

Etymologische Forschungen auf dem Gebiete der Indo-Germanischen Sprachen, unter Berücksichtigung ihrer Hauptformen .... von Aug. Fried. Pott, etc., etc. Zweite Auflage in vollig neuer Umarbeitung. Erster Theil. Präpositionen. Lemgo und Detmold: 1859. 8vo. pp. xxvi, 859.

From Rádhákánta Deva Bahádur, of Calcutta.

Çabdakalpadrumapariçishtah An appendix to the Çabdakalpadruma, or Sanskrit Encyclopedia, of Rádhákánta Deva. Calcutta: 1779 [A. D. 1856]. 4to. pp. 1396.

From Rájendralála Mitra, of Calcutta.

Vividhártha-Sangraha ...., a Bengálí monthly magazine, published in numbers of 24 pages. Vols. ii, iii. Calcutta. 1851-52 4to.
Bibliotheca Indica. No 78. Chhándogya Upanishad .... translated .... by Rájendralál Mittra. Fasciculus 1st Calcutta 1854. 8vo.
do. Nos. 47, 48, 80. Chaitanya Chandrodaya, or the Incarnation of Chaitanya; a Drama, in ten acts, by Kavikarnapura. With a commentary explanatory of the Prákrita passages, by Pandita Viswanátha S'ástrí. Edited by Rájendralál Mittra. Calcutta: 1853-54. 8vo.
do. Nos. 51, 73, 143-5. The Lalita-Vistara, or Memoirs of the Life and Doctrines of S'ákya Sinha. Edited by Rájendralál Mittra. Fasciculi 1-5. Calcutta: 1853-58. 8vo.
do. Nos. 125, 126. The Taittiríya Bráhmana of the Black Yajur Veda, with the Commentary of Sáyanácharya, edited by Rájendralál Mittra, etc. Fasciculi 1, 2. Calcutta: 1855. 8vo.

From M. Reinaud, of Paris.

Question Scientifique et Personelle, soulevée au sein de l'Institut, au sujet des dernières découvertes sur la Géographie et l'Histoire de l'Inde, avec les explications de M. Reinaud, etc. Nouvelle édition, revue et augmentée d' une deuxième partie. Paris. 1859. 8vo pp. 36.

From M. Ernest Renan, of Paris.

Nouvelles Considérations sur le Caractère Général des Peuples Sémitiques, et en particulier sur leur tendance au monothéisme, par M. Ernest Renan. [Extrait du Journal Asiatique] Paris. 1859. 8vo.

From Rev. Elias Riggs, D.D., of Constantinople.

Outline of a Grammar of the Turkish Language, as written in the Armenian Character. By Elias Riggs, etc. Constantinople: 1856 16mo pp iv, 56.
Gospel of Matthew, in the Kûrdish Language, Armenian Character. ("Translated by a native helper of the Assyrian Mission of the A B. C. F M. and the first book printed in Kûrdish, so far as I am aware.—E. R") Constantinople: 1856. 12mo.

From Prof. E. Rodiger, of Halle.

Gulielmi Gesenii Thesaurus .... Veteris Testamenti. Tomi Tertii Fasciculus Novissimus .... edidit Æmilius Roediger, etc. Lipsiæ: 1858. 4to.

From Dr. F. L. O. Roehrig, of Philadelphia.

De Turcorum Linguæ Indole ac Natura scripsit F. L. O. Roehrig. Philadelphiæ: 1859. 8vo. pp. 30.

From Professors Roth and Whitney.

Atharva-Veda-Sanhita, herausgegeben von R. Roth und W. D. Whitney. Zweite Abtheilung [das 20ste Buch des Textes enthaltend]. Berlin: 1856. 8vo.

From the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland.

Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland. xvi. 2; xvii. 1. London: 1856–59. 8vo.

From the Royal Society of Northern Antiquaries.

Sur la Construction des Salles dites des Géants, par S. M. le Roi Frédéric VII de Danemark. Copenhague: 1857. 8vo. pp 19.

Cabinet d' Antiquités Américaines à Copenhague. Rapport Ethnographique par C. C. Rafn. Copenhague: 1858. 8vo. pp. 60.

Various papers concerning the Royal Society of Northern Antiquaries.

From Prof. E. E. Salisbury, of New Haven.

Journal de Constantinople. Nos. 759, 760, 762, 764. 1856. fol.

From Prof. B. Silliman, Jr., of New Haven.

The Gospel of Mark, in Zulu. Emkungunhlovu: 1856. 16mo. pp. 59.

An Arithmetic, in Zulu. Etekwini: 1856. 18mo.

The Psalms, in Zulu. Port Natal: 1850. 8vo.

The Epistle to the Romans, in Zulu. Port Natal: 1854. 16mo. pp. 54.

Acts of the Apostles, in Zulu. Emsunduzi: 1859. 8vo. pp. 76.

A Zulu Primer. Emsunduzi: 1859. 8vo. pp. 8.

The Three Epistles of the Apostle John, translated into Delaware Indian, by C. F. Dencke. [English and Delaware, on opposite pages] New York: 1818. 24mo. pp. 21.

From the Smithsonian Institution.

Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge. Vols. viii–x. Washington: 1856–58. 4to.

Reports of the Smithsonian Institution, for 1855; for 1856; for 1857. Washington: 1856–58. 8vo.

From Prof. J. A. Spencer, D.D., of New York.

Egypt and the Holy Land .... By J. A. Spencer, D.D., etc. Fourth Edition. New York: 1854. 12mo.

From Rev. D. T. Stoddard, of Orûmiah.

"Green Pastures for the Lord's Flock," .... translated from the English into the Modern Syriac. sm. 4to.

A Full Arithmetic, in Modern Syriac. sm. 4to.

A Compendium of Church History; translated from the English into the Modern Syriac. sm. 4to.

"Scripture Facts," .... translated into Modern Syriac. 12mo.

Baxter's Saints' Rest, translated into Modern Syriac. 12mo.

"Threefold Cord;" .... translated from English into Modern Syriac. 16mo.

From the Imperial Academy of Sciences of St. Petersburg.

Bulletin de la Classe Historico-Philologique de l'Académie Impériale des Sciences de St.-Pétersbourg. Tomes ix–xv. St.-Pétersbourg: 1852–58. 4to.

Mémoires de l'Académie Impériale des Sciences de St.-Pétersbourg. Sixième Série. Sciences Politiques, Histoire, Philologie. Tomes viii, ix. St.-Pétersbourg: 1855–59. 4to.

'Aly Ben Schems-Eddîn's Chanisches Geschichtswerk, oder Geschichte von Gîlân in den Jahren 880 (=1475) bis 920 (=1514). Persischer Text. Herausgegeben von B. Dorn. St. Petersburg: 1857. 8vo.

'Abdu'l-Fattâh Fûmeny's Geschichte von Gîlân in den Jahren 923 (=1517) bis 1038 (=1628). Persischer Text. Herausgegeben von B. Dorn. St. Petersburg: 1858. 8vo.

Auszüge aus Muhammedanischen Schriftstellern, betreffend die Geschichte und Geographie der südlichen Küstenländer des Kaspischen Meeres, nebst einer kurzen Geschichte der Chane von Scheki. Arabische, Persische, und Türkische Texte. Herausgegeben von B. Dorn. St. Petersburg: 1858. 8vo. pp. 47, 626.

From the Superintendent of the Coast Survey.

Report of the Superintendent of the Coast Survey, ... 1857. Washington: 1858. 4to.

From L. W. Tappan, Esq., of Boston.

A Javanese manuscript, on four strips of palm-leaf.

From Nicholas Trübner, Esq., of London.

The Literature of American Aboriginal Languages, by Hermann E. Ludewig. With additions and corrections by Prof. Wm. W. Turner. Edited by Nicholas Trubner. London: 1858. 8vo.

From Prof. S. H. Turner, D.D., of New York.

The Epistles to the Romans, to the Galatians, to the Ephesians, and to the Hebrews, in Greek and English. With an Analysis and Exegetical Commentary, by Samuel H. Turner, D.D. 4 vols. New York: 1855-56. 8vo.
Thoughts on the Origin, Character, and Interpretation of Scripture Prophecy. In Seven Discourses .... With Notes. By Samuel H. Turner, D.D., etc. New York: 1856. 12mo.

From the Imperial-Royal Geographical Society of Vienna.

Mittheilungen der Kaiserlich-königlichen Geographischen Gesellschaft. Jahrgänge i, ii, iii. 1, 2. Wien: 1857-59. 8vo.

From Rev. Edward Webb, of Dindigul.

The Tamil Quarterly Repository. Vols. i-iv. Madras: 1854-57. roy. 8vo.

From Prof. Albrecht Weber, of Berlin.

Ueber das Daçakumâra-Caritam, die Fahrten der zehn Prinzen, von A. Weber. [pp. 18-56 of the Monatsberichte d. Kon. Ak d. Wiss. zu Berlin, 1859] 8vo.
Ueber ein Indisches Wurfel Orakel, von A. Weber. [pp. 158-180 of do.] 8vo.
Zwei Vedische Texte uber Omina und Portenta. Von A. Weber. [pp. 313-413 of the Abhandlungen d. Kon. Ak d. Wiss. zu Berlin, 1858] 4to.
Die Vajrasûcî des Açvaghosha. Von A. Weber. [p. 205-264 of do., 1859] 4to.

From Dr. S. W. Williams, of Canton.

A Tonic Dictionary of the Chinese Language, in the Canton Dialect. By Samuel Wells Williams. Canton: 1856. 8vo. pp. xxxvi, 832.

From Messrs. Williams and Norgate, of London.

The Languages of the Seat of War in the East. With a Survey of the Three Families of Language, Semitic, Arian, and Turanian. By Max Müller, etc. Second Edition, with an Appendix on the Missionary Alphabet, and an Ethnological Map, drawn by Augustus Petermann. London: 1855. 8vo.
Early Christianity in Arabia; a Historical Essay. By Thomas Wright, etc. London: 1855. 8vo.
The Book of Jonah in four Semitic Versions, viz. Chaldee, Syriac, Æthiopic, and Arabic. With corresponding Glossaries, by W. Wright. London: 1857. 8vo.
A Pocket Dictionary of the English and Turkish Languages. By J. Sauerwein. London: 1855. 18mo.
Williams and Norgate's Foreign Catalogues. London. 8vo.
Buddhism and Buddhist Pilgrims. A Review of M. Stanislas Julien's "Voyages des Pèlerins Bouddhistes" By Max Müller, etc. .... Together with a Letter on the original meaning of 'Nirvâṇa.' London: 1857. 8vo. pp. 54.

Modern Investigations on Ancient India. A Lecture delivered in Berlin March 4th, 1854, by Professor A. Weber. Translated from the German by Fanny Metcalfe. London: 1857. 8vo. pp. 31.
Analecta Nicæna: Fragments relating to the Council of Nice. The Syriac Text, from an ancient MS. in the British Museum. With a Translation, Notes, etc. By B. Harris Cowper. London: 1857. roy. 8vo. pp iv, 38.
Essays on the Religion and Philosophy of the Hindus, by the late H. T. Colebrooke, Esq. A New Edition. London: 1858. 8vo.
A Reading Book of the Turkish Language, with a Grammar and Vocabulary; .... By William Burckhardt Taylor, etc. London: 1854. 8vo.
Gilchrist's Oordoo Risaluh. Or Rules of Hindoostanee Grammar. Calcutta: 1831. 8vo. lithographed.
The Philological Essays of the late Rev Richard Garnett of the British Museum. Edited by his Son. London: 1859. 8vo.
On the Christian Duty of the British Government in India, addressed to the Right Honorable * * * * by Abd al-Wáhid. London: 1859. 8vo. pp. 22.
Selections from Papers on Indigo Cultivation in Bengal, with an Introduction and a few Notes, by a Ryot. Calcutta: 1858. 8vo.
Georgii Guilielmi Kirschii Chrestomathia Syriaca cum Lexico. Denuo edidit Georgius Henricus Bernstein, etc Pars Prior. Chrestomathia ex Codd MSS. emendata et aucta.—Pars Posterior. Lexicon penitus novatum. Lipsiae: 1832-36. 2 vols 8vo.
The Mutinies and the People, or Statements of Native Fidelity, exhibited during the Outbreak of 1857-58. By a Hindu. Calcutta: 1859. 8vo.

From Prof. H. H. Wilson, of London.

Rig-Veda Sanhitá .... Translated from the Original Sanskrit. By H. H. Wilson, etc., etc. [Vol. i] London: 1850. 8vo.

From Dr. Joseph Wilson, U. S. N.

A Japanese Fan, inscribed with a traveller's Guide. Accompanied with a manuscript notice, transcription, and partial translation, by Dr. J. Wilson.
The Bible, in the Tahitian Language London 1847. 8vo. pp. 988.
A Tahitian and English Dictionary, with introductory remarks on the Polynesian Language, and a short Grammar of the Tahitian Dialect; with an Appendix.... Tahiti: 1851. 8vo
Isaiah to Malachi, in the Tonga Language. Vavau. 8vo.
The New Testament, in the Tonga Language London: 1852. 12mo.
Catechisms, etc, in the Tonga, Fíjí, Wallis Island, and Samoan Languages. Vavau and Uvea: 1846-57.
Genesis, Exodus, and Psalms, in the Fíjí Language. Viti: 1854. 12mo.

From Exchange of Duplicates.

Mithridates oder allgemeine Sprachenkunde mit dem Vater Unser als Sprachprobe in bey nahe fünf hundert Sprachen und Mundarten, von Johann Christian Adelung, etc. Erster Theil — do, do .... fortgesetzt .... von Dr Johann Severin Vater, etc. Zweyter und dritter Theile. Berlin: 1806-1817. 4 vols. 8vo
Anthologia Sententiarum Arabicarum. Cum scholiis Zamachsjarii. Edidit, vertit, et illustravit Henricus Albertus Schultens. Lugduni Batavorum: 1772. 4to.
The New Testament in Arabic. London: 1820. 8vo.
Aperçu de la Langue des Iles Marquises et de la Langue Taïtienne, précédé d'une Introduction sur l'histoire et la géographie de l'Archipel des Marquises, par J. Ch. Ed. Buschmann, etc. Accompagné d'un vocabulaire inédit de la langue Taïtienne par le Baron Guillaume de Humboldt. Berlin: 1843. 8vo.
Lettres à M. le Duc de Blacas d'Aulps, etc, relatives au Musée Royal Egyptien de Turin; par M Champollion le Jeune. Première Lettre—Monuments Historiques. [Avec une Notice Chronologique de la xviii^{e} Dynastie Egyptienne de Manéthon; par M. Champollion Figeac.]—Seconde Lettre.—Suite des Monuments Historiques; suite de la Notice Chronologique, etc. Paris: 1824-26. 8vo
Grammatica Linguæ Mauro-Arabicæ juxta vernaculi idiomatis usum. Accessit Vocabularium Latino Mauro-Arabicum. Opera et studio Francisci de Dombay, etc. Vindobonæ: 1800. 4to.

A Dissertation on the Nature and Character of the Chinese System of Writing, ... By Peter S. Duponceau, LL.D., etc. To which are subjoined, a Vocabulary of the Cochinchinese Language, by Father Joseph Morrone, etc., with .... notes .... by M. de la Palun, etc.; and a Cochinchinese and Latin Dictionary. .... Philadelphia: 1838. 8vo.

Andreæ Theophili Hoffmanni, etc., Grammaticæ Syriacæ Libri III. Halæ: 1827. 4to.

Prufung der Untersuchungen über die Urbewohner Hispaniens vermittelst der Vaskischen Sprache. Von Wilhelm von Humboldt. Berlin: 1821. 4to.

Macrizi Historia Regum Islamiticorum in Abyssinia. Interpretatus est et una cum Abulfedæ Descriptione Regionum Nigritarum e codd. Bibl. Leidensis arabice edidit Fredericus Theodorus Rinck, etc. Lugduni Batavorum: 1790. 4to.

Vocabulaire Océanien-Français et Français-Océanien des Dialectes parlés aux Iles Marquises, Sandwich, Gambier, etc. .... par l'Abbé Boniface Mosblech, etc. Paris: 1843. 12mo.

Das Alexandrinische Museum. Eine .... gekrönte Preisschrift von G. Parthey, Dr. Mit einem Plane von Alexandrien. Berlin: 1838. 8vo.

Historia Praecipuorum Arabum Regnorum Rerumque ab iis Gestarum ante Islamismum. E codd. manuscr. Arab. Biblioth. Reg. Haun. collegit vertit et animadversiones addidit D. Janus Lassen Rasmussen, etc. Hauniæ: 1817. 4to.

Die Identitat der Hindu, Perser, Pelasger, Germanen und Slaven dargethan aus Sprache, Religion und Sitte von F. A. Rauch. Erste Abtheilung. Marburg: 1829. 12mo.

Outlines of a Grammar, Vocabulary, and Phraseology, of the Aboriginal Language of South Australia, spoken by the Natives in and for some distance around Adelaide. By C. G. Teichelmann and C. W. Schurmann, etc. Adelaide: 1840. 8vo.

Fior di Pensieri sulle Pietre Preziose di Ahmed Teifascite. Opera stampata nel suo originale Arabo, colla traduzione Italiana appresso, e diverse note di Antonio Raineri. Firenze: 1818. 4to.

Propositions Philosophiques adressées aux Savants de tous les Pays, par un Oriental Constantinople: 1849. 8vo. pp. 12.

Principes d'Etymologie Naturelle basés sur les Origines des Langues Sémitico-Sanscrites, par H. J. F. Parrat, etc. Paris: 1851. 4to. pp. 64.

Abulghasi Bahadur Chani Historia Mongolorum et Tatarorum nunc primum tatarice edita auctoritate et munificentia illustrissimi Comitis Nicolai de Romanzoff, etc. Casani: 1825. fol.

Philologisch-kritische Zugabe zu den .... zwei Mongolischen Original-Briefen der Konige von Persien Argun und Oeldshaitu an Philipp den Schonen; von Isaac Jacob Schmidt. St. Petersburg: 1824. 8vo. pp. 31, 3.

Journal of the Indian Archipelago and Eastern Asia. Vol. i. 1, 6 suppl., and Vols. v–vii. Singapore: 1847, 1851–53. 8vo.

Wiwoho or Mintorogo, a Javanese Poem, from the Kawi of Hempoe Kanno, edited by J. F. C. Gericke. [From the Verhandelingen van het Batav. Genootsch. van Kunsten en Wetenschappen, Deel xx] Batavia: 1845. 8vo. large paper.

Romo, a Javanese Poem, in the Version of Joso Dhipoero, edited by C. F. Winter. [From the Verh. v. h. Batav. Gen. v. K. en W., Deel xxi] Batavia: 1847. 8vo.

Ardjoena Wiwâha. Benevens Balineschen interlinearen Commentarius. Het eerste echte Kawi-Werk, waarvan de oorspronkelijke Tekst gedrukt wordt .... door R. Friederich. [From the Ver. v. h. Batav. Gen. v. K. en W., Deel xxiii] Batavia: 1850. 4to.

Boma Kawja, a Poem of Bhâuma, son of the Earth, in the original Kawi, edited by R. Friederich. [From the Verh. v. h. Batav. Gen. v. K. en W., Deel xxiv] Batavia: 1852. 4to.

Manik Maja, a Javanese Poem, edited by Dr. J. J. de Hollander. Batavia: 1852. 8vo.

Beschrijving van een Gedeelte der Residentie Riouw, door E. Netscher. 8vo.

Grundung der Stadt Pataliputra und Geschichte der Upakosa. Fragmente aus dem Kathâ Sarit Sâgara des Soma Deva. Sanskrit und Deutsch von Hermann Brockhaus. Leipzig: 1835. 8vo. pp. iv, 16, 15.

Mataparîkshâ .... An Examination of Religions; Part the First; containing a consideration of the Hindu Sastras, with an English Version and Preface. Mirzapore: 1852. 12mo.

Beiträge zur Kritik des Poetischen Theils im Hitopadeça. Von Otto Böhtlingk. [From the Mél. Asiat. ...., de l'Acad. Imp. des Sc. de St.-Pétersbourg, Tome i] St. Petersburg: 1851. 8vo. pp. 10.
Projet d'une Société de Manuscrits Sanskrits. Bonn: s. a. 8vo. pp. 7.
Abhandlung über das Schul- und Lehrwesen der Muhamedaner im Mittelalter .... Von Dr. Daniel Haneberg, etc. München: 1850. 4to. pp. 40.
Exposition of the Principles of Mohammedan Jurisprudence, by H. Tornauw. St. Petersburg: 1850. 8vo. *Russian.*
Kufische Münzen. Von G. H. F. Nesselmann. [Aus d. neuen Preuss. Prov.-Blättern ....] Konigsberg: 1854. 8vo. pp. 12.
Kârnâma-i-Hydary, or, Memoirs of the Brave and Noble Hyder Shah, surnamed Hyder Ally Khán Bahádur. To which is annexed, a Sketch of the History of his Illustrious Son, Tippoo Sultan. Compiled from the different works written by English, French, and Oriental Authors. [By Prince Ghulâm Mohammed, son of Tippoo Sultan] Calcutta: 1848. 4to. *Persian.*
Fihrist Hamalât-i-Haidarî, etc. Hindustânî abstract of the above. Calcutta: 1849. 4to.
Ausfuhrlicher Bericht uber die in Konstantinopel vom October 1851 bis October 1852 erschienenen Orientalischen Werke. Von Freiherrn Ottokar M. v. Schlechta Wssehrd, etc. [Aus d. Junihefte d. J. 1854 d. S. d. phil.-hist. Cl. d. Kais. Akad. d. Wiss. bes. abgedr.] Wien: 1854. 8vo. pp. 38.
Plan der Real-Encyclopädie des Judenthums. Zunachst für die Mitarbeiter. Krotoschin: 1844. 12mo. pp. 55.
Bechinoth Olam. Betrachtungen uber das Weltleben von Jedajah Penini Bedarschi, mit interpunktirtem ebraischem Texte, und einer .... Uebersetzung von M. E. Stern .... Wien: 1847. 12mo.
De Israelitarum per Mare Rubrum Transitu. Scripsit L. F. C. Tischendorf, etc. Cum Tabula. Lipsiæ: 1847. 8vo. pp. 32.
Dialogues, and a small portion of the New Testament, in the English, Arabic, Haussa, and Bornu Languages. London: 1853. transv. fol. lithographed.
Grammar of the Bornu or Kanuri Language; with Dialogues, Translations, and Vocabulary. London: 1853. 8vo.
Epilegomena zu Dr. Th. Benfey's Griechischem Wurzellexikon von W. Sonne, etc. Wismar: 1847. 8vo. pp. iv, 64.
Archiv fur Kunde Oesterreichischer Geschichts-Quellen. Herausgegeben von der .... Commission der Kais. Akad. der Wiss. Erstes Heft. Zweites Heft. Wien: 1848. 8vo.
Mahâsim al-Athâr wa Hakâik al-Akhbâr, "Beauties of Foot-prints and Realities of Historical Narratives;" a history of the Ottoman Empire, in Turkish. By Ahmad Wâsif Effendi Constantinople: A. H. 1246 (=A. D. 1830). 2 vols. in 1. fol.
Kitâb Bahth al Matâlib fî 'Ilm al-'Arabîyah, "Discussion of Points of Inquiry respecting the Science of the Arabic Language;" by Jabrîl Fudhât al-Halabî. Malta: 1836. 8vo.
Al-Ajwibah aj-Jalîyah fî Usûl an-Nahwîyah; "Clear Answers respecting the Principles of Grammar." Malta: 1832. 8vo.
Marâh al-Arwâh; "Resting place for Minds;" on Arabic inflection. By Ahmad Bin 'Alî Bin Mas'ûd. Bûlâk: A. H. 1246 (=A. D. 1830). 8vo.
A collection of Arabic poetry and prose. s. l. and s. a. 8vo.
Abu Nasri Ismaelis Ebn Hammad Al-Gieuharii Farabiensis Purioris Sermonis Arabici Thesaurus, vulgo dictus Kitâb es Sihâh, id est, Liber Sehah, sive Lexicon Arabicum. Particula I. E codicibus manuscriptis summa fide edidit ac versione Latina instruxit Everardus Scheidius. Trajecti ad Rhenum: [1786]. 4to.
Liturgiæ Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ Partes Præcipuæ: .... in linguam Arabicam traductæ operâ Edvardi Pocockii, etc. Londini: 1826. 12mo.
The Anglo Arabic Primer and Vocabulary. .... Malta: 1832. 18mo.
Fables, in Hindoostanee [Devanâgarî character], for the use of Schools. Second Edition. .... Serampore: 1821. 8vo.
Dialogues in English and Malay, the latter in both the Roman and the Arabic character. s. l. and s. a. 8vo. incomplete at end.
Muskokee, or Creek First Reader. By W. S. Robertson, A.M., and David Winslett. New York: 1856. 12mo.

III. List of Members.

May, 1860.

1. CORPORATE MEMBERS.

Names marked with † are those of Life Members.

Ezra Abbot, Jr.,	Cambridge, Mass.
Prof. Charles A. Aiken,	Hanover, N. H.
Rev. William R. Alger,	Boston.
Rev. David O. Allen,	Lowell, Mass.
Pres. Martin B. Anderson,	Rochester, N. Y.
Rev. Rufus Anderson,	Boston.
Rev. C. W. Andrews,	Shepherdstown, Va.
George B. Bacon,	New Haven.
Prof. Henry M. Baird,	New York.
Prof. Elisha Ballantine,	Bloomington, Ind.
Prof. Elijah P. Barrows,	Andover, Mass.
John R. Bartlett,	Providence, R. I.
Prof. Charles Beck,	Cambridge, Mass.
Rev. Hiram Bingham,	New Haven.
Rev. George W. Blagden,	Boston.
Prof. James J. Blaisdell,	Beloit, Wisc.
Prof. James R. Boise,	Ann Arbor, Mich.
Charles L. Brace,	New York.
Fisk P. Brewer,	New Haven.
Rev. Charles H. Brigham,	Taunton, Mass.
Prof. Samuel G. Brown,	Hanover, N. H.
Rev. Samuel R. Brown,	Auburn, N. Y.
William C. Bryant,	New York.
Rev. Ebenezer Burgess,	Boston.
Prof. Henry C. Cameron,	Princeton, N. J.
Prof. William H. Campbell,	New Brunswick, N. J.
Dr. Elbert H. Champlin,	New York.
Pres. Aaron L. Chapin,	Beloit, Wisc.
Pliny E. Chase,	Philadelphia.
Josiah Clark,	Easthampton, Mass.
Rev. James F. Clarke,	Jamaica Plain, Mass.
†Joseph G. Cogswell,	New York.
Rev. Henry M. Colton,	Middletown, Conn.
Alexander I. Cotheal,	New York.
Prof. Alpheus Crosby,	Salem, Mass.
Prof. Howard Crosby,	New Brunswick, N. J.
Pres. E. A. Dalrymple,	Baltimore.
Prof. James D. Dana,	New Haven.
Prof. George E. Day,	Walnut Hill, O.
John W. DeForest,	New Haven.
Charles R. Degen,	New York.
Rev. James T. Dickinson,	Middlefield, Conn.
Epes S. Dixwell,	Cambridge, Mass.

Prof. Henry Drisler,	New York.
Samuel F. Dunlap,	New York.
Rev. Benjamin W. Dwight,	Clinton, N. Y.
Prof. Theodore W. Dwight,	New York.
Prof. Charles Elliott,	Oxford, O.
Ralph W. Emerson,	Concord, Mass.
Rev. Charles C. Everett,	Bangor, Me.
Edward Everett,	Boston.
Richard S. Fellowes,	New Haven.
Pres. Cornelius C. Felton,	Cambridge, Mass.
Chanc. Isaac Ferris,	New York.
Rev. Henry M. Field,	New York.
Prof. George P. Fisher,	New Haven.
Charles Folsom,	Cambridge, Mass.
George Folsom,	New York.
Comm'r Andrew H. Foote, U.S.N.,	Brooklyn, N. Y.
†John M. Forbes,	Boston.
Dwight Foster,	Worcester, Mass.
Prof. William C. Fowler,	Durham Centre, Conn.
Prof. Convers Francis,	Cambridge, Mass.
Prof. Josiah W. Gibbs,	New Haven.
Prof Basil L. Gildersleeve,	University of Virginia.
Daniel C. Gilman,	New Haven.
†Capt. James Glynn, U.S.N.,	New Haven.
Prof. William W. Goodwin,	Cambridge, Mass.
John A. C. Gray,	New York.
Rev. David Green,	Windsor, Vt.
Prof. W. Henry Green,	Princeton, N. J.
Prof. George W. Greene,	New York.
Prof. Arnold Guyot,	Princeton, N. J.
Prof. Henry H. Hadley,	New York.
Prof. James Hadley,	New Haven.
Prof. S. Stehman Haldeman,	Columbia, Pa.
Rev. Edward E. Hale,	Boston.
Fitz-Edward Hall,	India.
Alpheus Hardy,	Boston.
Prof. Gessner Harrison,	Albemarle Co., Va.
Samuel F. Haven,	Worcester, Mass.
Prof. Frederick D. Hedge,	Cambridge, Mass.
Prof. Roswell D. Hitchcock,	New York.
William B. Hodgson,	Savannah, Ga.
Rev. Frederick W. Holland,	East Cambridge, Mass.
Henry A. Homes,	Albany, N. Y.
Nathaniel L. Hooper,	Boston.
Fisher Howe,	Brooklyn, N. Y.
Joseph Howland,	Fishkill, N. Y.
Prof. William Irvin,	New Brunswick, N. J.
Prof. Melanchthon W. Jacobus,	Allegheny City, Pa.
Charles W. Jenks,	Boston.
†Prof. Joseph W. Jenks,	Boston.
†Rev. William Jenks,	Boston.
Prof. Charles C. Jewett,	Boston.

Prof. Ebenezer A. Johnson,	New York.
Rev. Edward C. Jones,	Philadelphia.
Prof. Asahel C. Kendrick,	Rochester, N. Y.
William L. Kingsley,	New Haven.
Rev. Edward N. Kirk,	Boston.
Prof. George M. Lane,	Cambridge, Mass.
J. Peter Lesley,	Philadelphia.
Prof. Tayler Lewis,	Schenectady, N. Y.
Prof. Alexander MacWhorter,	Troy, N. Y.
Richard C. McCormick,	New York.
Rev. J. H. McIlvaine,	Rochester, N. Y.
Rev. John A. Merrick,	Paris, Ky.
†Rev. James L. Merrick,	So. Amherst, Mass.
Prof. James C. Moffat,	Princeton, N. J.
George H. Moore,	New York.
Rev. T. V. Moore,	Richmond, Va.
Rev. Mark Murphy,	New Brighton, N. Y.
Charles E. Norton,	Cambridge, Mass.
Rev. Samuel Osgood,	New York.
Prof. John J. Owen,	New York.
Prof. Joseph Packard,	Theol. Sem'y, Fairfax Co., Va.
Dr. Peter Parker,	Washington.
Rev. Solomon Peck,	Boston.
†Gregory A. Perdicaris,	Trenton, N. J.
Dr. Charles Pickering,	Boston.
Rev. Swan L. Pomroy,	Boston.
Henry W. Poole,	Boston.
George W. Pratt,	New York.
William C. Prime,	New York.
Prof. John Proudfit,	New Brunswick, N. J.
Prof. John N. Putnam,	Hanover, N. H.
William A. Reynolds,	Philadelphia.
†Prof. Edward Robinson,	New York.
George R. Russell,	Jamaica Plain, Mass.
D. Waldo Salisbury,	Boston.
Prof. Edward E. Salisbury,	New Haven.
Stephen Salisbury,	Worcester, Mass.
Frank B. Sanborn,	Concord, Mass.
Prof. Philip Schaff,	Mercersburg, Pa.
Prof. M. Schele de Vere,	University of Virginia.
David C. Scudder,	Boston.
Prof. Julius H. Seelye,	Amherst, Mass.
Oswald Seidenstücker,	Philadelphia.
Charles Short,	Philadelphia.
Prof. M. J. Smead,	Richmond, Va.
Rev. Cornelius B. Smith,	New York.
Prof. Henry B. Smith,	New York.
J. Hosford Smith,	New York.
Rev. Thomas Smyth,	Charleston, S. C.
Reinhold Solger,	Roxbury, Mass.
Prof. Evangelinus A. Sophocles,	Cambridge, Mass.
Prof. Jesse A. Spencer,	New York.

Charles Stoddard,	Boston.
Rev. Charles A. Stoddard,	Boston.
Rev. Collins Stone,	Columbus, O.
†William W. Stone,	New York.
Prof. Calvin E. Stowe,	Andover, Mass.
John Tappan,	Boston.
Bayard Taylor,	New York.
Rev. James B. Taylor,	Richmond, Va.
Dr. Samuel H. Taylor,	Andover, Mass.
Prof. Thomas A. Thacher,	New Haven.
Rev. Joseph P. Thompson,	New York.
Charles Tracy,	New York.
Rev. Selah B. Treat,	Boston.
Prof. Samuel H. Turner,	New York.
Prof. William S. Tyler,	Amherst, Mass.
Rev. Stephen H. Tyng,	New York.
William J. Vaughn,	Tuscaloosa, Ala.
Rev. Thomas E. Vermilye,	New York.
Rev. Ferdinand De W. Ward,	Geneseo, N. Y.
Rev. Joseph Warren,	Quincy, Ill.
Rev. George T. Washburn,	South India.
Richard P. Waters,	Salem, Mass.
Rev. John Wheeler,	Burlington, Vt.
Prof. Andrew T. White,	Ann Arbor, Mich.
Dr. Moses C. White,	New Haven.
Prof. Josiah D. Whitney,	Northampton, Mass.
Prof. William D. Whitney,	New Haven.
Dr. Joseph Wilson, U.S.N.,	Philadelphia.
Rev. John L. Wilson,	New York.
Prof. Samuel J. Wilson,	Allegheny City, Pa.
Rev. George W. Wood,	New York.
Pres. Theodore D. Woolsey,	New Haven.
Dr. Joseph E. Worcester,	Cambridge, Mass.

Omitted from the List last published, Oct. 1856.

*Dr. Henry W. Wales,	Boston.

Deceased since October, 1856.

Prof. Ethan A. Andrews,	New Britain, Conn.
George R. Gliddon,	Mobile, Ala.
Rev. A. L. Holladay,	Charlottesville, Va.
Charles Kraitsir,	Boston.
Rev. William A. Macy,	Shanghai.
Rev. Theodore Parker,	Boston.
Prof. William W. Turner,	Washington.
Hon. Sidney Willard,	Cambridge.

2. CORRESPONDING MEMBERS.

Rev. John C. Adamson,	New York.
Rev. Henry Ballantine,	Missionary at Ahmednuggur, India.
James R. Ballantyne,	Benares, India.
Rev. Cephas Bennett,	Missionary at Maulmain, Farther India.
Rev. William A. Benton,	Missionary at Bhamdun, Syria.
Otto Blau,	Trebizond.
William H. I. Bleek,	Port Natal, S. Afr.
Rev. Henry Blodgett,	Missionary at Shanghai, China.
Bishop William J. Boone,	Missionary at Shanghai, China.
Charles W. Bradley,	Ningpo, China.
Rev. Elijah C. Bridgman,	Missionary at Shanghai, China.
Prof. Hermann Brockhaus,	Leipzig.
John P. Brown,	Constantinople.
Rev. Nathan Brown.	
Heinrich Brugsch,	Berlin.
Rev. Albert Bushnell,	Missionary at Gaboon, W. Afr.
Rev. Simeon H. Calhoun,	Missionary at Abeih, Syria.
J. Cor,	Constantinople.
Rev. E. B. Cross,	Missionary at Tavoy, Farther India.
Rev. Charles H. A. Dall,	Missionary at Calcutta.
Prof. August Dillmann,	Kiel.
Rev. Jacob L. Döhne,	Missionary at Table Mountain, S. Afr.
Rev. Harrison G. O. Dwight,	Missionary at Constantinople.
Rev. James H. Dwight,	Constantinople.
Rev. William B. Dwight,	Constantinople.
Rev. Cornelius V. A. Van Dyck, M.D.,	Missionary at Beirut, Syria.
Prof. Romeo Elton,	Exeter, England.
Prof. Gustav Flügel,	Dresden.
Rev. J. Edwards Ford,	Missionary at Beirut, Syria.
Dr. S. Fränkel,	Jerusalem.
Rev. Jogachunder Gangooly,	Calcutta.
Rev. William Goodell,	Missionary at Constantinople.
Rev. Lewis Grout,	Missionary at Umsunduzi, S. Afr.
Max Grünbaum,	New York.
Rev. Cyrus Hamlin,	Missionary at Constantinople.
Rev. C. C. Hoffmann,	Missionary at Cape Palmas, W. Afr.
Prof. C. A. Holmboe,	Christiania, Norway.
Dr. Samuel R. House,	Missionary at Bangkok, Siam.
James J. Jarves,	Florence, Italy.
Rev. Henry H. Jessup,	Missionary at Tripoli, Syria.
Rev. J. W. Johnson,	Missionary at Hongkong, China.
Rev. George Jones, U.S.N.	
Prof. Mirza Kasem Beg,	St. Petersburg.
Chev. Nicholas Khanikoff,	St. Petersburg.
Rev. Jonas King,	Missionary at Athens.
Peter I. von Koeppen,	St. Petersburg.
L. Léon de Rosny,	Paris.
P. E. LeVaillant de Florival,	Paris.
Dr. D. J. Macgowan,	Missionary at Ningpo, China.

Dr. Edward M'Gowan,	Jerusalem.
Rev. Dwight W. Marsh,	Missionary at Mosul.
Rev. William A. P. Martin,	Missionary at Ningpo, China.
Rev. Francis Mason,	Missionary at Toungoo, Farther India.
Dr. D. B. M'Cartee,	Missionary at Ningpo, China.
Thomas T. Meadows,	Ningpo, China.
Rev. Benjamin C. Meigs,	Missionary to Ceylon.
Dr. A. D. Mordtmann,	Constantinople.
Rev. Homer B. Morgan,	Missionary at Antioch, Syria.
John Muir,	Edinburgh.
Prof. Max Müller,	Oxford.
Bishop John Payne,	Missionary at Cape Palmas, W. Afr.
Rev. Justin Perkins,	Missionary at Orûmiah, Persia.
James W. Redhouse,	Constantinople.
Adolphe Regnier,	Paris.
Ernest Renan,	Paris.
Rev. Samuel A. Rhea,	Missionary in Kurdistan.
Rev. Elias Riggs,	Missionary at Constantinople.
Dr. G. Rosen,	Jerusalem.
Prof. Rudolph Roth,	Tübingen.
Rev. William G. Schauffler,	Missionary at Constantinople.
Rev. Henry M. Scudder,	Missionary in Southern India.
Rev. William W. Scudder,	Missionary in Southern India.
Rev. William H. Steele,	Newark, N. J.
Henry Stevens,	London.
Rev. William Tracy,	Missionary at Pasumalie, S. India.
Rev. William M. Thomson,	Missionary in Syria.
Rev. Henry J. Van Lennep,	Missionary at Tocat, Turkey in Asia.
Rev. Daniel Vrooman,	Missionary at Canton.
Rev. William Walker,	Missionary at Baraka, W. Afr.
Rev. Edward Webb,	Missionary at Dindigul, S. India.
Prof. Albrecht Weber,	Berlin.
Prof. Gustav Weil,	Heidelberg.
Dr. Samuel W. Williams,	Canton.
Rev. W. Frederic Williams,	Missionary at Mosul.
Rev. Miron Winslow,	Missionary at Madras, India.
William Winthrop,	Malta.
Rev. Austin H. Wright, M.D.,	Missionary at Orûmiah, Persia.

Deceased since October, 1856.

Rev. William Aitchison,	Missionary at Shanghai, China.
Dr. Henry A. De Forrest,	Stockbridge, Mass.
Rev. Henry R. Hoisington,	Centre Brook, Conn.
Rev. Eli Smith,	Missionary at Beirut, Syria.
Rev. David T. Stoddard,	Missionary at Orûmiah, Persia.

3. HONORARY MEMBERS.

Râja Apûrva Krishṇa Bahâdur,	Calcutta.
James Bird,	London.
Prof. Otto Böhtlingk,	St. Petersburg.
Sir John Bowring,	Hongkong.
Prof. Franz Bopp,	Berlin.
Richard Clarke,	London.
Prof. Heinrich von Ewald,*	Göttingen.
M. Champollion Figeac,	Paris.
Prof. Georg Wilhelm Freytag,	Bonn.
His Excellency Fuad Effendi,	Constantinople.
Julius Fürst,	Leipzig.
Prof. Jacob Grimm,	Berlin.
Brian Houghton Hodgson,	Dursley, England.
Prof. Stanislas Julien,	Paris.
Rev. John Dunmore Lang,	Sidney, N. S. Wales.
Prof. Christian Lassen,	Bonn.
Prof. Richard Lepsius,	Berlin.
Duc de Luynes,	Paris.
Prof. Julius Mohl,	Paris.
Prof. Julius Heinrich Petermann,	Berlin.
Prof. August Friedrich Pott,	Halle.
Râja Râdhâkânta Deva Bahâdur,	Calcutta.
Prof. Reinaud,	Paris.
Prof. Emilius Rödiger,	Halle.
Prof. Friedrich Rückert,	Coburg.
His Excellency Safvet Effendi,	Constantinople.
Prof. Garcin de Tassy,	Paris.
Prof. C. J. Tornberg,	Lund.
Sir J. Gardiner Wilkinson,	London.

Deceased since October, 1858.

Baron Joseph von Hammer-Purgstall,	Vienna.
Baron Alexander von Humboldt,	Berlin.
Prof. Karl Ritter,	Berlin.
Prof. Horace Hayman Wilson,	London.

ERRATA.

p. 148, ll. 2, 3 from below—exchange the words *former* and *latter*.
p. 156, l. 28—for *plants* read *planets*.
p. 157, l. 25—for 73-89 read 80-90.
p. 168, table, 3rd column (Ptolemy), l. 1—for 36^h read 6^h.
p. 173, l. 34—for *Ward* read *Warren*.
p. 176, l. 20—for 84-88 read 31.
p. 183, l. 41—for 5059.556 read 5059.64.
p. 191, l. 22—for *day-sine* read *earth-sine*.
p. 264, l. 4—for *sines* read *signs*.
p. 267, l. 20—for *longitude of* read *of longitude*.
p. 334, l. 12—for *as-Sarfah* read *aṣ-Sarfah*.
p. 335, l. 15—for *fourteenth* read *thirteenth*.
p. 427, l. 2 from below—for 1962nd read 1917th.
p. 507, l. 11—for व्याखान° read व्याख्यान°.
p. 513, l. 31—for 32,34 .... *Varídhará* read { 32 ...... *Varídhará*. . / 34 ...... *Unnatá*.

References made in the notes on the earlier chapters of the Sûrya-Siddhânta to the latter portion of chapter xii are in several instances wrong by one verse, owing to an error of the manuscript consulted.